AN EXEGETICAL AND EXPOSITORY SYNTAX

Of

BIBLICAL HEBREW

by

James D. Price
# Table of Contents

Table of Contents .................................................................................................................. iii
List of Tables and Graphs ........................................................................................................ xvi
List of Symbols and Abbreviations ........................................................................................ xix
Preface ................................................................................................................................... xxi

**CHAPTER 1: Introduction** ....................................................................................................... 1
  1.1 Language .......................................................................................................................... 2
  1.2 Semantics .......................................................................................................................... 2
  1.3 Lexicography ..................................................................................................................... 5
  1.4 Parts of Speech for Hebrew ............................................................................................... 7
    1.4.1 Nouns .......................................................................................................................... 8
    1.4.2 Adjectives ..................................................................................................................... 8
    1.4.3 Adverbs ....................................................................................................................... 8
    1.4.4 Verbs ........................................................................................................................... 9
    1.4.5 Quantifiers ................................................................................................................... 9
    1.4.6 Prepositions ................................................................................................................ 9
    1.4.7 Conjunctions ............................................................................................................. 10
    1.4.8 Pronouns ..................................................................................................................... 10
    1.4.9 Interjections ............................................................................................................... 10
    1.4.10 Particles ................................................................................................................... 11
  1.5 Syntax and Semantics ......................................................................................................... 11
  1.6 Syntax of Hebrew Sentences ........................................................................................... 12
  1.7 Syntax of Hebrew Discourse ............................................................................................ 12
  1.8 How an Author Writes a Literary Composition ................................................................. 13
  1.9 How an Expositor Understands an Ancient Hebrew Text ............................................... 15

**CHAPTER 2: The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Nouns** ...................................................... 18
  2.1 Noun Defined .................................................................................................................... 18
    2.1.1 Nouns Classified ......................................................................................................... 19
    2.1.2 Common Nouns .......................................................................................................... 19
    2.1.3 Proper Nouns ............................................................................................................. 21
    2.1.4 Gentile Nouns ............................................................................................................ 23
    2.1.5 Concrete Nouns ......................................................................................................... 25
    2.1.6 Countable Nouns ...................................................................................................... 25
    2.1.7 Measurable Nouns .................................................................................................... 25
    2.1.8 Abstract Nouns ......................................................................................................... 25
    2.1.9 Characteristic Nouns ................................................................................................ 26
  2.2 The Derivation of Hebrew Nouns ...................................................................................... 26
    2.2.1 Primary Nouns .......................................................................................................... 26
    2.2.2 Nouns Derived From Verbs ...................................................................................... 27
    2.2.3 Nouns Derived from Other Nouns .......................................................................... 29
    2.2.4 Nouns Derived From Adjectives ............................................................................ 29
  2.3 The Attributes of Nouns .................................................................................................... 30
    2.3.1 The Number Attribute .............................................................................................. 31
    2.3.2 The Gender Attribute ............................................................................................... 35
    2.3.3 The Determination Attribute .................................................................................... 39
    2.3.4 The Personal Attribute ............................................................................................. 45
    2.3.5 The Range Attribute ................................................................................................ 47
Table of Contents

4.11 Summary ........................................................................................................... 101
Definition ...................................................................................................................... 101
Classification ............................................................................................................... 101
Attributes ..................................................................................................................... 101
Comparison .................................................................................................................. 101
Syntactic Slots ............................................................................................................ 101

CHAPTER 5: The Syntactic Attributes of Finite Verbs .................................................. 103
5.1 Introduction ......................................................................................................... 103
5.2 Verb Defined ........................................................................................................ 104
5.3 Verbal Roots and Stems ....................................................................................... 104
5.4 Verbs Classified .................................................................................................... 105
  5.4.1 Copulative Verbs ........................................................................................... 106
  5.4.2 Intransitive Verbs ......................................................................................... 107
  5.4.3 Transitive Verbs ........................................................................................... 108
  5.4.4 Transitive Verbs With Oblique Object ......................................................... 108
  5.4.5 Transitive Verbs with Double Objects .......................................................... 110
  5.4.6 Transitive Verbs of Speech .......................................................................... 112
  5.4.7 Transitive Verbs of Perception or Thought ................................................... 113
  5.4.8 Transitive Verbs with Pronoun Suffix ............................................................ 113
  5.4.9 Nonfinite Verbs ............................................................................................. 114
5.5 The Derivation of Hebrew Verbs .......................................................................... 115
  5.5.1 Primary Verbs ................................................................................................ 115
  5.5.2 Verbs Derived From Nouns ......................................................................... 115
  5.5.3 Verbs Derived From Adjectives ................................................................... 116
  5.5.4 Verbs Derived From Other Verbs ................................................................. 116
  5.5.5 Verbs Derived From Quantifiers .................................................................. 117
  5.5.6 Verbs Derived From Adverbs ...................................................................... 117
  5.5.7 Verbs Derived From Prepositions ................................................................. 117
5.6 The Attributes of Hebrew Verbs .......................................................................... 117
  5.6.1 Number ......................................................................................................... 118
  5.6.2 Gender ......................................................................................................... 119
  5.6.3 Person ........................................................................................................... 119
  5.6.4 Voice ............................................................................................................. 120
  5.6.5 Aspect ........................................................................................................... 121
  5.6.6 Mood ............................................................................................................. 130
  5.6.7 Emphasis ....................................................................................................... 152
  5.6.8 Negation ........................................................................................................ 155
5.7 The Syntactic Slot of Verbs .................................................................................. 158
5.8 Summary .............................................................................................................. 158
   Definition ............................................................................................................... 158
   Classification .......................................................................................................... 158
   Derivation ............................................................................................................... 158
   Attributes ............................................................................................................... 159
   Tense ....................................................................................................................... 159
   Waw Consecutive ................................................................................................... 159
   Syntactic Slots ...................................................................................................... 159

CHAPTER 6: The Syntactic Attributes of Nonfinite Verbals ......................................... 161
6.1 The Infinitive Absolute ......................................................................................... 162
  6.1.1 As a Cognate Adverb .................................................................................... 162
  6.1.2 As a Verbal Noun .......................................................................................... 163
  6.1.3 As Substitute for a Finite Verb ....................................................................... 164
  6.1.4 As Idioms of Recurrent Action ...................................................................... 166
  6.1.5 Negation ........................................................................................................ 167
6.2 The Infinitive Construct ......................................................................................... 167
6.2.1 With a Named Subject .................................................. 168  
6.2.2 With a Named Object .................................................. 169  
6.2.3 The Infinitive as Subject .............................................. 169  
6.2.4 The Infinitive as Object .............................................. 170  
6.2.5 As Genitive of a Noun .................................................. 170  
6.2.6 As Object of a Preposition .......................................... 170  
6.2.7 As Complement of a Verb ............................................ 172  
6.2.8 Negation ................................................................. 173  
6.2.9 Verbal Noun Equivalent ............................................. 173  
6.2.10 Speech Introducing Conjunction .................................. 173  
6.3 The Participle ................................................................ 174  
6.3.1 The Participle As a Substantive ..................................... 175  
6.3.2 Participles as Verbal Adjectives ...................................... 176  
6.3.3 Participles in the Verb Phrase ........................................ 178  
6.3.4 As Adverbial Adjunct ................................................... 178  
6.3.5 Negation ..................................................................... 179  
6.4 Summary .................................................................... 179  
The Infinitive Absolute ......................................................... 179  
The Infinitive Construct ........................................................ 179  
The Participle ..................................................................... 180  
CHAPTER 7: Hebrew Quantifiers .............................................. 181  
7.1 Quantifiers Defined ......................................................... 181  
7.2 Quantifiers Classified ...................................................... 182  
7.3 The Syntactic Attributes of Quantifiers ................................ 182  
7.3.1 Number .................................................................... 182  
7.3.2 Gender ....................................................................... 183  
7.3.3 Range ........................................................................ 183  
7.3.4 Determination ............................................................. 184  
7.3.5 Negation ..................................................................... 184  
7.4 General Quantifiers ......................................................... 185  
7.4.1 The Universal Quantifier יִקְבַּל ........................................ 185  
7.4.2 The word יִקְבַּל ............................................................ 186  
7.4.3 The Word יִקְבַּל ............................................................ 187  
7.4.4 The word יִקְבַּל ............................................................ 188  
7.5 Cardinal Numbers ............................................................ 189  
7.5.1 Cardinals 1-10 .............................................................. 190  
7.5.2 Cardinals 11-19 ............................................................ 198  
7.5.3 Cardinals 20-29 ............................................................ 200  
7.5.4 Cardinals 30-99 ............................................................ 201  
7.5.5 Cardinals 100-999 ......................................................... 202  
7.5.6 Cardinals 1,000-999,999 .............................................. 205  
7.5.7 10,000 and Up ............................................................ 207  
7.6 Ordinal Numbers ............................................................... 209  
7.7 Summary .................................................................... 210  
Definition ........................................................................ 210  
Classification .................................................................... 210  
Attributes ........................................................................... 210  
Modifiers ........................................................................... 211  
Syntactic Slots ................................................................... 211  
CHAPTER 8: Hebrew Prepositions .............................................. 212  
8.1 Prepositions Defined ....................................................... 212  
8.2 Derivation of Preposition ................................................ 212  
8.2.1 Primary Prepositions .................................................... 212  
8.2.2 Compound Prepositions ................................................ 213
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table of Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.2.3 Combined with a Noun ......................................................... 216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3 Distribution of Prepositions .................................................... 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4 Functions of Prepositions ....................................................... 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.1 Forming Adverb Phrases ........................................................ 220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.2 Governing Verbal Complements ................................................. 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.3 Subordinating Infinitive Clauses ............................................. 223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5 Forming Conjunctions ............................................................... 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6 Summary ................................................................................. 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syntactic slots</strong> ......................................................................... 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 9: Hebrew Conjunctions ...................................................... 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1 Compound Conjunctions .............................................................. 226</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2 Coordinating Conjunctions .......................................................... 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.1 Conjunctive Connectors ............................................................ 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.2 Disjunctive Connectors ............................................................. 232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.3 Adversative Connectors ............................................................ 233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.4 Comparatives ........................................................................ 235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2.5 Juxtaposition ......................................................................... 238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3 Subordinating Conjunctions ........................................................ 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3.1 Temporal ............................................................................. 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3.2 Result-Consequence ................................................................ 240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3.3 Reason-Result/Cause-Consequence .......................................... 241</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3.4 Purpose-Result ....................................................................... 242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3.5 Manner-Means ...................................................................... 243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3.6 Conditionals ......................................................................... 243</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4 Speech Introducing Conjunctions ................................................. 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5 Practical Value ......................................................................... 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6 Summary ................................................................................. 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 10: Hebrew Pronouns .......................................................... 252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1 Pronouns Defined .................................................................... 252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2 Personal Pronouns .................................................................... 253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2.1 Nominative Pronouns ............................................................. 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2.2 Accusative Pronouns ............................................................... 260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2.3 Genitive Pronouns ................................................................ 262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3 Demonstrative Pronouns ............................................................ 267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3.1 Predicate Demonstratives ....................................................... 269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3.2 Attributive Demonstratives ..................................................... 270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.4 Interrogative Pronouns ............................................................... 272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5 Relative Pronouns .................................................................... 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6 Summary ................................................................................ 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pronouns Defined</strong> ....................................................................... 274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Slots</strong> ....................................................................................... 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Syntactic Rule</strong> .......................................................................... 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 11: The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Particles .................. 276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1 Particles Defined ..................................................................... 276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2 The Article ............................................................................. 276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3 Interrogatives .......................................................................... 278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4 Interjections ........................................................................... 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4.1 גור Attracts Attention ............................................................ 280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4.2 נא Adds Politeness or Formality .............................................. 282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4.3 יש Calls for Meditation ............................................................ 283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4.4 מך Expresses Intensity ............................................................ 283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4.5 יח Expresses Sorrow or Misery ............................................... 283</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

vii
### Table of Contents

15.8 The Substantive Transformation ................................................................. 398  
15.9 Coordinate Adjective Phrases ......................................................................... 398  
15.10 Rules for Syntactic Analysis of Adjective Phrases ......................................... 399  
15.11 Summary of Analysis Rules for Adjective Phrases ......................................... 401  

CHAPTER 16: The Syntax of Hebrew Adverb Phrases ........................................... 402  
16.1 Dependent Adverb Clause .............................................................................. 403  
16.2 Dependent Comparative Clause .................................................................... 404  
16.2.1 The Similarity Degree of Comparison ......................................................... 404  
16.2.2 The Superior Degree of Comparison ............................................................ 404  
16.2.3 The Superlative Degree of Comparison ....................................................... 405  
16.3 Rules for Syntactic Analysis of Adverb Phrases .............................................. 406  
16.4 Summary ....................................................................................................... 407  

CHAPTER 17: The Syntax of Hebrew Verb Phrases .............................................. 408  
17.1 Semantic Emphasis Transformation .............................................................. 408  
17.2 The Aspect Transformation ............................................................................ 409  
17.3 The Durative Aspect Transformation ............................................................. 410  
17.4 The Mood Transformation ............................................................................. 411  
17.5 The Transformation of Formality and Politeness ............................................ 412  
17.6 The Directive Transformation ........................................................................ 414  
17.7 The Dependent Clause Transformation with a Verb ....................................... 415  
17.8 Analysis Rules for Verb Phrases ..................................................................... 416  
17.9 Summary ....................................................................................................... 416  

Semantic Emphasis Transformation ................................................................. 416  
The Aspect Transformation .................................................................................. 416  
The Durative Aspect Transformation ................................................................ 417  
The Mood Transformation .................................................................................. 417  
The Transformation of Formality and Politeness ................................................ 417  
The Directive Transformation ............................................................................. 417  
The Dependent Clause Transformation with a Verb ........................................ 417  

Analysis Rules for Verb Phrases ......................................................................... 417  

CHAPTER 18: Analyzing Hebrew Sentences ...................................................... 418  
18.1 The Restoration of Deletion and Substitution ............................................... 419  
18.1.1 Restore Elided Elements ............................................................................. 420  
18.1.2 Restore Antecedents of Pronouns ............................................................... 420  
18.1.3 Restore Antecedents of Other Substitutes ................................................. 421  
18.2 Analyze Phrases ............................................................................................ 421  
18.3 Determine Syntactic Roles ............................................................................ 422  
18.3.1 The Subject ................................................................................................ 422  
18.3.2 The Verbal Complements .......................................................................... 422  
18.3.3 The Adjuncts .............................................................................................. 423  
18.4 Analysis of Sentences .................................................................................... 423  
18.4.1 Copulative Sentences ............................................................................... 424  
18.4.1.1 Classification Copulative Sentence (§ 12.1.2) ........................................... 424  
18.4.1.2 Classification Becoming Copulative Sentence (§ 12.1.2) ....................... 425  
18.4.1.3 Attributive Copulative Sentence (§ 12.1.4) ............................................ 426  
18.4.1.4 Predicate Adverb Copulative Sentence (§ 12.1.5) ............................... 427  
18.4.1.5 Similarity Copulative Sentence (§ 12.1.7) ............................................. 428  
18.4.2 Verbal Sentences ....................................................................................... 429  
18.5 Discourse Analysis ....................................................................................... 458  
18.6 Summary ....................................................................................................... 459  

CHAPTER 19: Sequence Transformations .......................................................... 460  
19.1 The Coordination Transformation .................................................................. 461  
19.1.1 Timeless Coordination ............................................................................. 462  
19.1.2 Simultaneous Coordination ..................................................................... 463
## Table of Contents

19.1.3 Sequential Coordination ................................................................................. 464
19.1.4. Disjunctive Coordination ............................................................................ 467
19.1.5 Adversative Coordination ............................................................................. 469
19.1.6 Comparative Coordination ........................................................................... 470
19.1.7 Juxtaposition ................................................................................................. 474
19.2 The Subordination Transformation .................................................................. 475
  19.2.1 Temporal ....................................................................................................... 475
  19.2.2 Result-Consequence .................................................................................... 476
  19.2.3 Reason-Result/Cause-Consequence ............................................................ 477
  19.2.4 Purpose-Result ........................................................................................... 478
  19.2.5 Manner-Means ............................................................................................ 478
  19.2.6 Conditional Conjunctions ............................................................................ 479
  19.2.7 Subordinate Infinitive Sentence .................................................................. 483
19.3 The Sentence Emphasis Transformation ......................................................... 485
19.4 The Deletion Transformation .......................................................................... 486
  19.4.1 Simple Deletion ............................................................................................ 487
  19.4.2 Compound Phrases ...................................................................................... 487
  19.4.3 Adjuncts ....................................................................................................... 488
  19.4.4 Determination ............................................................................................... 489
19.5 The Substitution Transformation ..................................................................... 493
  19.5.1 Pronoun Substitution .................................................................................... 493
  19.5.2 General Substitution .................................................................................... 497
19.6 Summary ........................................................................................................... 500
  
  Coordination Transformations ............................................................................... 500
  The Subordination Transformations ..................................................................... 500
  The Sentence Emphasis Transformation ............................................................. 501
  The Deletion Transformation ................................................................................. 501
  The Substitution Transformation ........................................................................... 501

CHAPTER 20: The Syntax of Hebrew Discourse ....................................................... 502
  20.1 The Syntactic Structure of Hebrew Discourse ............................................... 503
  20.2 Distribution of Verbal Forms ......................................................................... 506
  20.3 Types of Sentence Structure .......................................................................... 511
  20.3.1 Sentence Type C10—hya ............................................................................. 514
  20.3.2 Sentence Type C1—x hya ............................................................................ 515
  20.3.3 Sentence Type Cpw—w hya ......................................................................... 516
  20.3.4 Sentence Type Ci0—yhy .............................................................................. 518
  20.3.5 Sentence Type Ci—x yhy ............................................................................. 519
  20.3.6 Sentence Type Ci—wayyhy .......................................................................... 520
  20.3.7 Sentence Type Cy0—yâ ............................................................................... 522
  20.3.8 Sentence Type Cy1—x yâ ............................................................................ 522
  20.3.9 Sentence Type Cy0—yâ ............................................................................... 523
  20.3.10 Sentence Type Cn1—x yâ ........................................................................... 524
  20.3.11 Sentence Type Ve—x .................................................................................. 525
  20.3.12 Sentence Type Vp0—qtl (x) ........................................................................ 525
  20.3.13 Sentence Type Vp1—x qtl ........................................................................... 527
  20.3.14 Sentence Type Vpw—Wqtl .......................................................................... 528
  20.3.15 Sentence Type Vi0—yql (x) ...................................................................... 529
  20.3.16 Sentence Type Vi1—X ytl ........................................................................... 531
  20.3.17 Sentence Type Viw—Wyyqtl ........................................................................ 533
  20.3.18 Sentence Type Vdp0—hya (x) qotel ............................................................... 536
  20.3.19 Sentence Type Vdp1—X hya (x) qotel ............................................................ 536
  20.3.20 Sentence Type Vdpw—w hya (x) qotel .......................................................... 537
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>20.3.21 Sentence Type Vdi0—yhyh (X) qotel</td>
<td>538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.22 Sentence Type Vdi1—X yhyh (X) qotel</td>
<td>538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.23 Sentence Type Vdiw—wayyhyh (X) qotel</td>
<td>539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.24 Sentence Type Vdy0—יִּ֖ (X) qotel</td>
<td>539</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.25 Sentence Type Vdy1—X יִ֖ (X) qotel</td>
<td>540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.26 Sentence Type Vdn0—ייִ֖ (X) qotel</td>
<td>540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.27 Sentence Type Vdn1—X יִ֖ (X) qotel</td>
<td>541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.28 Sentence Type Vde0—qotel</td>
<td>541</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.29 Sentence Type Vde1—X qotel</td>
<td>543</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.30 Sentence Type Vdqc0—qotel (X) Cop</td>
<td>544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.3.31 Sentence Type Vdqc1—X qotel (X) Cop</td>
<td>545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4 Types of Literary Structure</td>
<td>545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.1 The Historical Narrative Type</td>
<td>545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.2 Description of Details</td>
<td>550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.3 Descriptive Lists</td>
<td>552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.4 Procedural Type</td>
<td>554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.5 Instructional Type</td>
<td>556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.6 Juridical Type</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.7 Predictive Prose Type</td>
<td>561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.8 Expository Prose Type</td>
<td>564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.9 Expository Poetry Type</td>
<td>567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.4.10 Predictive Poetry Type</td>
<td>570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5 Summary</td>
<td>572</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5.1 The Ten Principal Literary Types of Discourse</td>
<td>572</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.5.2 The 31 Principal Types of Sentence Structure</td>
<td>572</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>20.5.3 Distribution of Significant Sentence Types</strong></td>
<td>573</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAPTER 21: The Analysis of Hebrew Discourse</td>
<td>575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.1 The Role of Prominence in Discourse</td>
<td>575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.2 Discourse Affinity</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.2.1 Position Affinity</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.2.2 Semantic Affinity</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.2.3 Conjunctive Affinity</td>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.3 Conjunctions as Discourse Markers</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.4 Grouping Principles</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.4.1 Unpacking</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.4.2 Greatest Discourse Affinity</td>
<td>579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>21.4.3 Conjunctive Compatibility</strong></td>
<td>579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.4.4 Completeness</td>
<td>580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.4.5 Conjunctive Priority</td>
<td>580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.4.6 Acquired Semantic Affinity</td>
<td>580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.4.7 Iteration</td>
<td>580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.5 Natural Outline</td>
<td>580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.5.1 Outline Headings</td>
<td>580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.5.2 Assembling the Outline</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.6 Analysis Illustrated</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.7 Historical Narrative (Job 42:7-9)</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.7.1 First Clustering Cycle</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.7.2 Second Clustering Cycle</td>
<td>585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.7.3 Third Clustering Cycle</td>
<td>585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.7.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle</td>
<td>586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.7.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle</td>
<td>589</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.7.6 Commentary (Job 42:7-9)</td>
<td>589</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table of Contents

21.7.7 Natural Outline (Job 42:7-9) .......................................................... 591
21.8 Descriptive Discourse (Psalm 1) ....................................................... 592
  21.8.1 First Clustering Cycle ............................................................... 592
  21.8.2 Second Clustering Cycle .......................................................... 594
  21.8.3 Third Clustering Cycle ............................................................. 594
  21.8.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle ........................................................... 594
  21.8.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle ............................................................. 594
  21.8.6 Commentary (Psalm 1) ............................................................. 595
  21.8.7 Natural Outline (Psalm 1) ........................................................ 597
21.9 Procedural Discourse (Exodus 25:23-30) ........................................... 598
  21.9.1 First Clustering Cycle ............................................................. 598
  21.9.2 Second Clustering Cycle .......................................................... 598
  21.9.3 Third Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 600
  21.9.4 Commentary (Exodus 25:23-30) ............................................... 600
  21.9.5 Natural Outline (Exodus 25:23-30) ............................................ 601
21.10 Instructional Discourse (Exodus 13:11-13) ....................................... 602
  21.10.1 First Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 602
  21.10.2 Second Clustering Cycle ....................................................... 603
  21.10.3 Third Clustering Cycle ........................................................... 603
  21.10.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle .......................................................... 603
  21.10.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 603
  21.10.6 Commentary (Exodus 13:11-13) ............................................... 603
  21.10.7 Natural Outline (Exodus 13:11-13) .......................................... 605
21.11 Juridical Discourse (Exod. 20:2-17) ................................................. 606
  21.11.1 First Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 609
  21.11.2 Second Clustering Cycle ........................................................ 610
  21.11.3 Third Clustering Cycle ........................................................... 611
  21.11.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle .......................................................... 611
  21.11.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 611
  21.11.6 Sixth and Final Clustering Cycles ............................................. 611
  21.11.7 Commentary (Exodus 20:1-17) ................................................ 611
  21.11.8 Natural Outline (Exodus 20:1-17) ............................................ 613
21.12 Case Laws (Exod. 22:15-16; Eng. 16-17) ....................................... 613
  21.12.1 First Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 614
  21.12.2 Second Clustering Cycle ........................................................ 614
  21.12.3 Third Clustering Cycle ........................................................... 614
  21.12.4 Commentary (Exodus 22:15-16) ............................................... 615
  21.12.5 Natural Outline (Exodus 22:15-16) .......................................... 615
21.13 Predictive Discourse (Isaiah 2:2-4) ............................................... 615
  21.13.1 First Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 617
  21.13.2 Second Clustering Cycle ........................................................ 618
  21.13.3 Third Clustering Cycle ........................................................... 618
  21.13.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle .......................................................... 618
  21.13.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 619
  21.13.6 Commentary (Isaiah 2:2-4) ..................................................... 619
  21.13.7 Natural Outline (Isaiah 2:2-4) ................................................ 621
21.14 Expository Discourse (Isa. 8:19-22) ............................................. 621
  21.14.1 First Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 622
  21.14.2 Second Clustering Cycle ........................................................ 623
  21.14.3 Third Clustering Cycle ........................................................... 624
  21.14.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle .......................................................... 624
  21.14.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 624
  21.14.6 Sixth Clustering Cycle ............................................................ 624
  21.14.7 Commentary (Isaiah 8:19-22) ................................................ 624
# Table of Contents

21.14.8 Natural Outline ........................................................................................................ 627  
21.15 Summary ...................................................................................................................... 628  

CHAPTER 22: The Accents in the Hebrew Bible .................................................................. 629  
22.1 Textual Problems ........................................................................................................... 629  
22.2 Masoretic Notes ............................................................................................................ 629  
22.3 Phonetic Union ............................................................................................................. 630  
22.4 Accent Marks ............................................................................................................... 630  
22.5 The Importance of the Accents .................................................................................... 631  
22.6 Three Purposes of Primary Accents .......................................................................... 632  
22.6.1 Marking Stress ......................................................................................................... 632  
22.6.2 Marking Syntactic Relationship ............................................................................ 633  
22.6.3 Marking Musical Cantillation ................................................................................. 633  
22.7 The Accents Used in the Prose Books ........................................................................ 634  
22.7.1 The Laws of the Prose Accents .............................................................................. 635  
22.7.2 Interpreting the Prose Accents .............................................................................. 642  
22.8 Accents Used in the Books of Poetry ......................................................................... 651  
22.8.1 The Laws of the Poetic Accents ............................................................................ 652  
22.8.2 Interpreting the Poetic Accents ............................................................................ 654  
22.9 Conclusion ................................................................................................................... 656  

CHAPTER 23: Pausal Forms with Non-Pausal Accents ..................................................... 657  
23.1 Pausal Forms in the Prose Books ................................................................................. 660  
23.1.1 Silluq and Athnach ................................................................................................. 663  
23.1.2 Tipchah .................................................................................................................. 663  
23.1.3 Little Zaqeph .......................................................................................................... 665  
23.1.4 Great Zaqeph ........................................................................................................ 667  
23.1.5 Great Shalsheleth ................................................................................................. 668  
23.1.6 Tebir ....................................................................................................................... 668  
23.1.7 Pashta ..................................................................................................................... 669  
23.1.8 Zarqa ....................................................................................................................... 669  
23.1.9 Rebia ....................................................................................................................... 669  
23.1.10 Geresh ................................................................................................................ 670  
23.1.11 Garshaim ............................................................................................................. 670  
23.1.12 Pazer ..................................................................................................................... 671  
23.1.13 Legarmeh ............................................................................................................. 671  
23.1.14 Munach ................................................................................................................. 671  
23.1.15 Mahpaker ............................................................................................................ 671  
23.2 Pausal Forms in the Poetical Books .......................................................................... 671  
23.2.1 Silluq and Ole WeYored ...................................................................................... 673  
23.2.2 Great Rebia .......................................................................................................... 673  
23.2.3 Other Accents ...................................................................................................... 674  

23.3 Conclusion .................................................................................................................... 674  

Chapter 24: Hebrew Syntactic Idioms .............................................................................. 675  
24.1 The Idiom of Distribution ......................................................................................... 675  
24.2 The Idiom of Intensity ............................................................................................... 677  
24.3 Idiom of Possession ................................................................................................... 679  
24.4 Idiom of Becoming ..................................................................................................... 679  
24.5 The Idioms of Comparison ....................................................................................... 680  
24.5.1 The Same Degree of Comparison ...................................................................... 681  
24.5.2 The Superior Degree of Comparison Comparison of subject: .......................... 681  
24.5.3 The Superlative Degree of Comparison ............................................................... 681  
24.5.4 The Inferior Degree of Comparison ................................................................... 683  
24.5.5 The Most Inferior Degree of Comparison ........................................................... 683  
24.6 The Idiom of Empathic Wish ...................................................................................... 683  
24.7 Idioms with the Infinitive Absolute .......................................................................... 684
Table of Contents

24.7.1 The Idiom of Intensity .......................................................... 684
24.7.2 The Idiom of Continuance ...................................................... 684
24.7.3 The Idiom of Continuous Action .............................................. 685
24.7.4 The Idiom of Recurrent Action ................................................. 685
24.8 The Idiom of Clause Subordination ............................................ 685
24.9 The Idiom of Temporal or Logical Sequence ................................ 686
24.10 The Idiom of Numbers ............................................................. 686
Glossary of Terms ................................................................. 687
APPENDIX ONE: Hebrew Verb Tenses ........................................ 691
26.1 Confusion Introduced ............................................................. 691
26.2 Tenses Presupposed ............................................................... 692
  26.2.1 No Tense in Akkadian ......................................................... 693
  26.2.2 No Tense in Arabic ............................................................ 693
  26.2.3 No Tense in Ugaritic ......................................................... 693
  26.2.4 Hebrew Expresses Tense .................................................... 694
26.3 Proto-Semitic Ideal ............................................................... 694
26.4 Other Explanations ............................................................... 695
26.5 Present View Justified ............................................................ 696
  26.5.1 Lack of Morphemes ............................................................ 696
  26.5.2 Semantic Incompatibility .................................................... 697
  26.5.3 Contradictory Idioms ........................................................ 697
  26.5.4 Prominence Competition ................................................... 698
  26.5.5 Feature Dominance .......................................................... 698
Appendix Two: The Content of the Various Literary Types .................. 699
  I. Historical Narrative ............................................................. 699
  II. Descriptive Details: How Things Were Done or What Things Were Like
       ............................................................................................. 700
  III. Descriptive Lists ............................................................... 700
  IV. Procedural: How to Do Something, Sacrificial, Etc. ....................... 700
  V. Instructional: Hortatory, String of Commands ................................ 701
  VI. Juridical: Commandments and Law Codes ................................ 701
  VII. Predictive Prose ............................................................... 701
  VIII. Expository Prose: Prayers, curses, etc. .................................... 702
  IX. Poetry: Expository ............................................................. 702
  X. Poetry: Prophetic ............................................................... 702
BIBLIOGRAPHY ................................................................. 705
  Elementary Hebrew Grammars ..................................................... 705
  Advanced Hebrew Grammars ....................................................... 706
  Hebrew Syntax ............................................................................ 707
  Hebrew-English Interlinear Texts .................................................. 707
  Parsing Guides ........................................................................ 708
  Hebrew Lexicons ..................................................................... 708
    Student Lexicons .................................................................... 708
    Comprehensive Hebrew Lexicons .............................................. 708
  Word-Study Books .................................................................... 709
  Concordances ........................................................................... 709
    Hebrew Concordances ................................................................ 709
    English Concordances .............................................................. 710
  Books on Hebrew Accents ........................................................... 710
  Critical Commentaries .............................................................. 711
  Helpful Literature ..................................................................... 711

XV
List of Tables and Graphs

Table 2.1 Frequency Distribution of Common Nouns ................................................................. 19
Table 2.2 Frequency of Most Often Common Nouns ................................................................. 20
Table 2.3 Frequency Distribution of Proper Nouns ................................................................. 21
Table 2.4 Frequency of Most Often Proper Nouns ................................................................. 22
Table 2.5 Frequency Distribution of Gentilic Nouns ................................................................. 23
Table 2.6 Frequency of Most Often Gentilic Nouns ................................................................. 23
Table 3.1 Frequency Distribution of Adjectives ........................................................................ 71
Table 3.2 List of Most Frequent Adjectives ............................................................................... 72
Table 4.1 Frequency Distribution of Adverbs .......................................................................... 88
Table 4.2 List of Most Frequent Adverbs ............................................................................... 89
Table 4.3 Adverbs with Pronoun Suffix .................................................................................... 99
Table 5.1 Frequency Distribution of Finite Verbs ..................................................................... 103
Table 5.2 Frequency Distribution of Most Frequent Finite Verbs ............................................. 104
Table 5.3 Frequency Distribution of Verbal Stems .................................................................. 105
Table 5.4 Distribution of Finite Verbal Forms ........................................................................ 106
Table 5.5 Summary of Verb Forms in Various Temporal Settings ............................................ 130
Table 5.6 Summary of Hebrew Moods .................................................................................... 150
Table 5.7 English Mode Auxiliaries ......................................................................................... 151
Table 5.8 English Auxiliaries for Hebrew Moods ................................................................. 152
Table 6.1 Distribution of Non-Finite Verbals ........................................................................... 161
Table 6.2 Distribution of the Infinitive Absolute ..................................................................... 162
Table 7.1 Frequency of Numbers ............................................................................................. 190
Table 7.2 Cardinal Numbers 1-10 .......................................................................................... 191
Table 7.3 Frequency of the Cardinal Numbers 1-10 ............................................................... 191
Table 7.4 Frequency of the Cardinal Numbers 11-19 ............................................................. 198
Table 7.5 Multiples of Ten ........................................................................................................ 201
Table 7.6 The Ordinal Numbers ............................................................................................... 209
Table 8.1 Primary Prepositions ................................................................................................. 213
Table 8.2 Double Prepositions ................................................................................................. 214
Table 8.3 Triple Prepositions .................................................................................................... 215
Table 8.4 Double Hybrid Prepositions ..................................................................................... 216
Table 8.5 Triple Hybrid Prepositions ....................................................................................... 217
Table 8.6 Quadruple Hybrid Prepositions ............................................................................... 216
Table 8.7 Distribution of Prepositional Governance ................................................................. 218
Table 9.1 Frequency of Hebrew Conjunctions ........................................................................ 227
Table 10.1 Inflection of Personal Pronouns ............................................................................. 254
Table 10.2 Nominative Pronoun Frequency ............................................................................ 256
Table 10.3 Frequency of Independent Accusative Pronoun ..................................................... 260
Table 10.4a Frequency of Accusative Pronouns Suffixxed to Finite Verbs .............................. 260
Table 10.4b Frequency of Accusative Pronouns Suffixed to Participles ............................... 260
Table 10.4c Frequency of Accusative Pronouns Suffixed to Infinitives ............................... 261
Table 10.5 Suffixed Genitive Pronoun Frequency ................................................................. 262
List of Tables and Graphs

Table 10.6 Predicate Demonstrative Pronouns ................................................................. 267
Table 10.7 Attributive Demonstrative Pronouns ................................................................. 267
Table 10.8 Demonstrative Pronoun Frequency ................................................................. 268
Table 11.1 Frequency of Interrogative Particles ................................................................. 279
Table 11.2 Frequency of Additional Interrogative Particles .................................................. 280
Table 11.3 Frequency of Interjections .................................................................................. 281
Table 11.4 Frequency of Negatives ...................................................................................... 288
Table 11.5 Parts of Speech Negated by ָּשָּׁי ...................................................................... 289
Table 11.6 Compound Conjunctions With ָּשָּׁי .................................................................. 317
Table 14.1 Distribution of Appositive Noun Strings ............................................................. 350
Table 14.2 Distribution of Identity Noun Strings ................................................................. 351
Table 14.3 Distribution of Noun-Adjective Strings .............................................................. 353
Table 14.4 Frequency Distribution of Construct Strings ....................................................... 366
Table 19.1 Frequency of Nouns Never with a Definite Article ............................................. 490
Table 19.2 Most Frequent Nouns Never with Definite Article ............................................ 490
Table 19.3 Frequency of Nouns Always with Definite Article ............................................ 491
Table 19.4 Words Occurring More Than Four Times ......................................................... 491
Table 19.5 Frequency of Proper Nouns Always with Definite Article .................................. 491
Table 19.6 Most Frequent Proper Nouns Always with Definite Article ............................... 492
Table 19.7 Frequency of Proper Nouns Sometimes with Definite Article ............................ 492
Table 19.8 Most Frequent Proper Nouns Sometimes with Definite Article .......................... 493
Table 20.1 Distribution of Verbals ..................................................................................... 507
Table 20.2 Distribution of Verbals by Book ....................................................................... 508
Table 20.3 Distribution of Finite Verbs for the Entire Hebrew Bible .................................... 510
Table 20.4 Distribution of Finite Verbs for the Books of Poetry .......................................... 510
Table 20.5 Distribution of Verses with No Finite Verb for Entire Bible ............................... 511
Table 20.6 Distribution of Verses with No Finite Verb for Poetic Books .............................. 511
Table 20.7 Frequency of Sentence Types .......................................................................... 514
Table 20.8 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Historical Narrative .................. 547
Table 20.9 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Description of Details ................ 551
Table 20.10 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Descriptive Lists ...................... 553
Table 20.11 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Procedural Literature ................ 555
Table 20.12 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Instructional Literature ............ 557
Table 20.13 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Juridical Literature .................. 560
Table 20.14 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Predictive Prose ....................... 562
Table 20.15 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Expository Prose ....................... 565
Table 20.16 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Expository Poetry .................... 568
Table 20.17 Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Predictive Poetry ...................... 570
Table 20.18 Distribution of Significant Sentence Types by Literature Type .......................... 574
Table 22.1 Ordered Ranks of the Conjunctive Accents ....................................................... 643
Table 23.1 Summary of Total Words by First Letter of the Lemma .................................... 659
Table 23.2 Distribution of Major Pausal forms by Part of Speech ...................................... 660
Table 23.3 Distribution of Pausal Forms by Accent for the Prose Books .............................. 661
Table 23.3 Distribution of Pausal Forms by Accent for the Prose Books .............................. 662
Table 23.4 Minor Pausal Forms with Pausal Accents for the Prose Books ............................ 692
List of Tables and Graphs

Table 23.5 Normal Forms with Pausal Accents for the Prose Books ........................................664
Table 23.6 Distribution of Pausal Forms by Accent For Poetic Books .......................................672

List of Graphs

Graph 20.1 Distribution of Number of Finite Verbs Per Verse ..............................................510
Graph 20.2 Distribution of Number of Finite Verbs Per Verse for Books of Poetry .................511
List of Symbols and Abbreviations

Symbols

General Symbols
* = does not exist as quoted, usually the syntax has been rearranged

Parts of Speech
A = adjective
C = conjunction
D = adverb
F = construct form of an adjective
I = interrogative particle
J = a construct form of a noun
M = Quantifier
N = noun
O = sign of definite direct object
P = preposition
Q = predicate
R = pronoun
S = sentence or clause
V = verb
W = waw conjunctive
X = variable part of speech, represents one of several possible different parts of speech
∅ = Zero element, representing something left out

1 Superscripts designate different kinds of a symbol: N\textsuperscript{s} = subject noun (phrase). Subscripts designate different instances of a symbol: N_{i}, N_{j} two instances of nouns with different referents.
Abbreviations


Gen.—Genesis
Exod.—Exodus
Lev.—Leviticus
Num.—Numbers
Deut.—Deuteronomy
Josh.—Joshua
Judg.—Judges
Ruth—Ruth
Sam.—Samuel
Kgs.—Kings
Chr.—Chronicles
Ezr.—Ezra
Neh.—Nehemiah
Est.—Esther
Job—Job
Psa.—Psalms
Prov.—Proverbs
Eccl.—Ecclesiastes

Song—Song of Solomon
Isa.—Isaiah
Jer.—Jeremiah
Lam.—Lamentations
Ezek.—Ezekiel
Dan.—Daniel
Hos.—Hosea
Joel—Joel
Amos—Amos
Obad.—Obadiah
Jon.—Jonah
Mich.—Michah
Nah.—Nahum
Hab.—Habakkuk
Zep.—Zephaniah
Hag.—Haggai
Zech.—Zechariah
Mal.—Malachi
Preface

This book is the completion of a lifetime goal, beginning with my Ph.D. studies at Dropsie College for Hebrew and Cognate Languages in the 1960s, and extending through the thirty-three years of teaching Hebrew at the graduate level in Seminary. While there are many first-year Hebrew Grammars, there are very few written at the intermediate level, and none written from the perspective of a linguistic theory, and none include much on the significance on the accents, or on syntactic analysis and discourse analysis. Expositors and translators really need those missing ingredients in order to round out their skills. This book is designed to fill that need at the intermediate level.

Scholars have not agreed on what linguistic theory best models Biblical Hebrew, so linguistic theory has been left virtually untouched at the intermediate level. But experience has shown that it is a helpful teaching tool, providing a depth of understanding beyond what is achieved by studying simply syntax. A transformational text-linguistic grammar does a decent job of explaining how the elements of phonology, orthography, morphology, grammar, syntax, semantics, and discourse neatly interrelate with one another as a functioning unified system. This book is based on such a grammar of Biblical Hebrew the complexities of which lie unseen in the background except for a few basic elements that surface as needed. Students need not fear being introduced to helpful linguistic concepts. They open the eyes of understanding.

Hebrew grammars of whatever academic level have little to say about the accents in the Biblical text and they are usually ignored by expositors and translators. But the accents often contribute to an understanding of the text, frequently resolving what would otherwise be ambiguous. This book provides a chapter that explains the role of each accent; in addition, pertinent comments are provided on the accents in the illustrative examples throughout the book.

Intermediate Hebrew grammars provide the structures of Hebrew Syntax, but have little to say about syntactic analysis. However, in addition to the meaning conveyed by the words of a sentence, the syntactic structure of a sentence is also information bearing. Syntactic analysis enables an expositor to extract all the information contained in a sentence. This book provides the basic principles and methods of syntactic analysis.
Intermediate Hebrew grammars have little to say about syntax at the discourse level and nothing to say about discourse analysis. However, in addition to the information in the sentences of a discourse, the syntactic structure of a discourse is information bearing. Discourse analysis enables an expositor to extract all the information contained in a discourse. This book provides the basic principles and methods of discourse analysis.

It has been my blessing to have the skill to write computer programs and to have access to an electronic form of the text of the Hebrew Bible with morphological codes. These programs enable the collection of research data that in former generations was either unavailable or acquired by tedious time-consuming manual labor. This book provides pertinent statistical tables and charts of information related to the subject matter under discussion.

Finally, it is now possible to publish books in electronic form, enabling relatively easy display of charts, tables, diagrams, pictures, and characters of different languages in multiple sizes, shapes, and colors. In addition, the book may have the capability of searching for any desired word or phrase, and may have cross-reference links and links to external information. This book is published in electronic form to take advantage of those features; the text should be opened with PDF Complete software or the equivalent in order to access all the available features. This work is dedicated to the glory of God and a better understanding of His Word.

James D. Price
Chattanooga, Tennessee
January, 2016
Revised October, 2019
Acknowledgments

I wish to thank my many students and friends who have encouraged me to persist to the end. Particular thanks is given to my colleague and friend, Dr. Gregory D. Stephens, who gave many helpful suggestions and words of support. Words cannot express my appreciation for the help provided by Dr. Anne A. Arnett, a former student and longtime friend, who carefully edited every page in minute detail. Any remaining errors are mine not hers. Finally, sincere appreciation is given to Doris, my loving wife of seventy years, who encouraged me and endured many lonely hours while the project was under way.

Thanks to the Westminster Hebrew Institute of Westminster Theological Seminary Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, for the use of their Westminster Hebrew Morphology Database. The English translation in all illustrative examples is from the New King James Version (Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers, 1994); in a few instances the wording was modified to better illustrate the topic under discussion.
CHAPTER 1
Introduction

The mental processes by which a person extracts meaningful information from a written text is known as exegesis. The mental processes by which a person understands and explains such information is known as exposition. Lexicology\(^1\) is the study of the meaningful information conveyed by words. Syntax is the study of the meaningful information conveyed by the sequential order in which the words of a text are arranged. This book is a study of the syntax of Biblical Hebrew written from the perspective of exegesis and exposition. It is designed to help students of the Hebrew Bible extract from a text all the meaningful information conveyed in it, and help them gain an understanding of the message of the text that can be explained to others.

The book is written for students of Biblical Hebrew studying beyond the introductory level. It differs from other books of this sort in that it is built upon a formal linguistic model of the language classified as text-linguistics.\(^2\) Students need not be intimidated by such high-sounding words because they will not be required to learn the complexities of advanced linguistic studies. But they will benefit from studying the elements of the language from the perspective of an integrated whole rather than independently studying words, phrases, clauses,\(^3\) and text. The model shows how all these elements fit together to construct coherent, informative discourse; it shows how to extract significant information from the text—the stuff used for preaching and teaching. It provides analytical methods that enhance exegesis and exposition. It views exegesis and exposition

---

\(^1\) The glossary of terms at the end of this work may be consulted for unfamiliar terms.


\(^3\) In this work, I use the terms *clause* and *sentence* somewhat interchangeably, with *clause* generally referring to a simple sentence.
from the perspective of the mental processes and linguistic principles the sacred author used while putting the text together in its completed form.

The book assumes that the students have an understanding of the concepts and technical terms acquired from an introductory Hebrew grammar. But it begins by studying again all the parts of speech of the language, taking the concepts to a more advanced level. It gradually introduces the use of symbols and simple formulas to represent grammatical and syntactic structures. It eventually introduces the concept of transformations, showing how this apparent complication actually simplifies the study of the language and exposes important relationships that make exegesis fun and opens the door to valuable information for preaching and teaching. The linguistic model actually aids both the teaching and learning processes. New concepts are clearly explained and illustrated by examples from the Hebrew Bible.

1.1 Language

A natural language is a medium whereby people in a given cultural community communicate with one another about the world of experience and thought they share. It consists of the collection of meaningful words understood and used by the people of the community, and a collection of grammatical and syntactic forms (templates) whereby the words of the language may be arranged in meaningful sequences that are understood and used by the community. Words are the labels (symbols or signs) by which a language makes reference to the physical and mental entities of human experience and communication. They are the building blocks that appear in sequential strings that make up a meaningful message in a language. A message in a language consists of a succession of words arranged in sequential patterns that form meaningful phrases, clauses, sentences, paragraphs, and so forth. The words convey information and the grammatical and syntactic structures also convey information; together they construct meaningfully coherent expressions when the information to which these elements refer is consistent with reality in some sense—that is, the elements are in semantic agreement.

1.2 Semantics

Semantics is the branch of linguistics dealing with the meaning associated with words and human discourse in general. Humans were created with a variety of capabilities. Among them is the ability to sense, distinguish, compare, categorize, remember, understand, reason, learn, and communicate. They have five senses by means of which they experience the perceivable properties of the entities in the physical world in which they live. They have the ability to distinguish one perception from another, and to mentally organize the various distinct perceptions into hierarchical categories. They have the ability to store this body of information in memory and discover
meaningful relationships among the various categories. They learn to associate the distinct entities of life’s experience with the unique combination of categories, characteristics, and capabilities into which each naturally falls. That is, each entity has its own combination of associated categories, characteristics, and capabilities.

The human mind classifies the entities in the world of experience into categories having the same characteristics and capabilities. For example, entities are classified into hierarchical animate and inanimate categories. The entities in the animate category are further classified into subcategories such as animals, birds, fish, and creeping things. Likewise, the entities in the animal category are further classified into subcategories such as cow, horse, sheep, dog, cat, etc. Categories are hierarchical in that entities in a given sub-category have all the characteristics and capabilities of their upper level categories; but they do not share the distinctive characteristics and capabilities of the entities in their sister sub-categories. So that cats have all the characteristics and capabilities of animals and animates, but not the distinctive characteristics and capabilities of dogs, sheep, horses, and cows.

The entities within a given category have the same characteristics but the value of such characteristics varies from entity to entity. For example, for the physical characteristic height, a person may be classified as tall, medium, short, or as having some precise measure such as 6’10”. For the characteristic weight, a person may be classified as light, medium, heavy, obese, or have some precise measure such as 129 lb. Within a given category, the unique combination of characteristic values distinguishes one entity from all its companions.

Because humans have the capacity to communicate and learn, throughout history the people of various distinct cultural communities have instinctively developed names for the entities, categories, characteristics, characteristic values, capabilities, and relationships, they perceive in their world of experience. These names constitute the words of a given cultural community. A given word refers to its associated entity and to all the known information naturally inherent to the entity’s categories, characteristics, capabilities, and interrelationships. I call the entity to which a word refers its referent. I call the total accumulated referential information in a community’s words its knowledge base. Over time the perceived boundaries that distinguish the categories, characteristics, capabilities, and interrelationships inherent in the community’s knowledge base have

---

4 The discussion of categories here is based on the view of the common person, not that of the professional biologist.

5 The process continues from generation to generation as new entities and perceptions are encountered or as perceptions change.
become well-defined. People communicate by means of such words arranged in meaningful sequences. The content and structure of a community’s knowledge base is reflected in its literature.\(^6\)

I refer to all the organized information in an individual person’s mind as his knowledge base. This knowledge base is acquired gradually throughout one’s lifetime from cradle to grave through personal experience and learning from others. Beginning at birth with only innate knowledge, a person’s knowledge base takes on greater content and organizational precision as life goes on. The perceived boundaries that distinguish categories, characteristics, capabilities, and interrelationships are rather ill-defined at first, but become more well-defined with increased experience, instruction, and understanding; the well-informed instruct the less-informed. The average adult acquires a knowledge base that may be referred to as common knowledge—the knowledge one may presume everyone has in a given communication context. People in a given language community have essentially the same knowledge base as far as its basic content and structure are concerned; what differs from person to person is the number of words in their personal knowledge base and the accuracy and degree of precision to which the perceived boundaries of their knowledge base are well-defined, that is, the boundaries are consistent with the boundaries as defined in the knowledge base of the community.

Confusion and misunderstanding occur where a person’s organizational boundaries are ill-defined or inaccurate. In a written text, unless it is merely rehearsing known information, an informed author conveys new information to presumed uninformed readers. The new information is conveyed in terms of the common knowledge the readers are assumed to have. An authoritative well-informed author may be assumed to have correctly stated the intended message.\(^7\) Confusion and misunderstanding are usually the result of a reader’s deficient common knowledge and linguistic competence.

Knowledge bases differ between people groups as far as content and organization are concerned, but all are the same at the foundational level because the human brain is essentially the same for all, and the fundamental world is the same. The content and structure of knowledge bases is the curriculum of the field of linguistics known as semantics. An understanding of semantics is essential to the syntax of Biblical Hebrew because of its significance at the level

\(^6\) The term literature here includes all the different kinds of written documents of a community such as genealogies, histories, marriage and business contracts, obituaries, public records, treaties, personal letters, text books, novels, poetry, dictionaries, encyclopedias, etc.

\(^7\) Of course, not all authors are well-informed, and so also may be the source of confusion and misunderstanding.
of meaning and coherence. It is essential to the exegesis of Biblical Hebrew because it is the source of accurate deep-structure information that is commonly thought of as inference.  

1.3 Lexicography

Throughout history most literate cultural communities have collected lists of the words of their language together with the meaning associated with each word in its various grammatical and semantic contexts. Such definitions are based on how the words are used in the community’s various literary genres, idioms, and figures of speech. The definition of a word is given in terms of the other words in the language of the community—the unknown in terms of the known, the unfamiliar in terms of the familiar, the complex in terms of the simple, the new in terms of the old. Such a list is known as a dictionary or a lexicon. The science and compilation of lexicons is known as lexicography.

A lexicon lists the word associated with the entity being defined, and identifies the categories, characteristics, and capabilities that distinguish the entity from and associate it with the other entities in the semantic domain of the community. Lexicons usually list the etymological derivation of a word together with any pertinent cognate information; in addition, related synonyms are listed along with a discussion of their differing nuances. Lexicons do not provide exhaustive definitions, only the information sufficient for the task, rightly assuming that users naturally and intuitively know and understand what is left unsaid. Lexicographers may be assumed to have been well-informed, authoritative members of the community. As previously stated: A given word refers to its associated entity and to all the known information naturally inherent to the entity’s categories, characteristics, capabilities, and interrelationships. I refer to a word, together with all its associated semantic information, as a lexeme.

Because people tend to minimize effort, in the arena of lexicography they tend to minimize the number of words; that is, they use the same “word” to refer to more than one entity when the entities are semantically distinct enough to avoid contextual confusion. For example, English uses the word “bee” in contexts such as “honey bee,” “spelling bee,” “sewing bee,” “ship’s bee,” and “the letter bee (B)” without confusion. Semantic context distinguishes the referents. I refer to this practice as the conservation of symbols. Words that refer to more than one entity should be listed separately for each distinct entity.

---

8 In this context, inference is based on what is known rather than on what is implied.
Because most language communities are not isolated but have political, commercial, and cultural exchange with other language communities, bilingual lexicons have been developed by the competent bilingual members of the communities. Bilingual lexicons map the lexemes of one language with their semantic equivalents in the other. To the extent that the world view of one language community corresponds with that of the other, the task is simple but tedious; in the area of cultural idioms and figures of speech the task is more difficult but not impossible. Several advanced Hebrew-English lexicons exist having extended lexical and semantic information; but they are not organized according to the structure and depth of information needed for the knowledge base described above.\(^9\) However, they are adequate for the needs of pastors and students of Biblical Hebrew.

Entities are the elemental topics of communication. Meaningful coherent statements logically discuss one or more of the categories, characteristics, capabilities, or interrelationships that the entities of a given discourse have in common. Those areas of semantic commonness that the entities of a discourse share are what I refer to as their semantic context. The entities of meaningful coherent discourse exhibit mutual logical consistency within the domain of their semantic context; that is, they have semantic concord—they make sense together. Meaninglessness and incoherence characterize statements about entities having no mutual semantic context or having no semantic concord. For example:

Joseph was fair of form and fair of appearance. (Gen. 39:6)

The word “Joseph” is a proper noun referring to a human being in the context of the Genesis 39 story. Human beings have, among many others, the semantic characteristics of physical form and visual appearance. This sentence is a grammatically correct predicate adjective copulative clause which defines the value of Joseph’s physical form as fair and his visual appearance as fair. These are values known to be common among humans for those semantic characteristics, and in Hebrew culture they are regarded as quite complementary. So the elements of the sentence may be regarded as having grammatical and semantic concord. Whereas, the sentence:

The fish flew over the moon and roosted on a star

while being grammatically correct, lacks any semantic concord, because fish don’t have the capability to fly or to move about in outer space, and stars are not places for roosting.

---

1.4 Parts of Speech for Hebrew

The words of a language that refer to the entities of a community’s world of experience, and to their associated categories and characteristics, constitute the topics of discussion in the language. They are the subjects or predicate complements of the sentences of discourse. Grammarians classify these words as nouns. Words that name the values of characteristics are classified as adjectives. Words that name actions, states, or relationships are classified as verbs. Grammarians classify every word of a language according to its role or function in the composition of sentences. This classification of a word is known as its part of speech. Biblical Hebrew has approximately ten parts of speech: nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, quantifiers, prepositions, conjunctions, pronouns, particles, and interjections. The following table lists the number of times the various Hebrew parts of speech occur in the Bible, and the following sections contain a brief simplified justification for each part of speech. Justification is provided in greater detail in the individual chapters of this work that deal with each part of speech individually.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Speech</th>
<th>Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common Nouns</td>
<td>3,763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proper Nouns</td>
<td>2,776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentilic Nouns</td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs</td>
<td>3,200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepositions</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunctions</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interjections</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particles</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>10,642</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The count is based on the morphological codes in the Groves-Wheeler Westminster Morphology and Lemma Database (WTM) of the Hebrew Bible, release 4.4.
1.4.1 Nouns

Words classified as nouns answer the semantic questions “who?” (i.e., Adam, David) “what?” (i.e., altar, kingdom) or “what class?” (i.e., mankind, mammalia) or “what kind?”\(^\text{11}\) They have a unique grammatical form and occupy the elementary syntactic slot\(^\text{12}\) of subject or object in a clause. A few examples are:

- בָּהֵן — mountain;
- יָד — hand;
- שֵׁשָׁה — sun;
- שְׁבַּם — rod, staff;
- קָדר — wall;
- שֶׁבֶת — table.

1.4.2 Adjectives

Words classified as adjectives answer the semantic question “what quality?”\(^\text{13}\) They have a grammatical form much like nouns, but unique in some respects, and they occupy the elementary slots of copulative complement (i.e., predicate adjective) and modifier of nouns. A few examples are:

- בָּשָׁם — needy, poor
- בְּשֹׁם — pleasant
- בָּבָר — mighty, valiant
- בְּבָר — speckle
- בָּר — perennial
- בְּר — clean, innocent
- בָּבָר — cruel, fierce
- בְּבָר — blind
- בָּבָר — spotted, marked
- בְּבָר — dainty
- בְּבָר — fat
- בְּבָר — poor
- בָּבָר — big, large, great
- בְּבָר — naked

1.4.3 Adverbs

Words classified as adverbs answer the semantic questions “when?” “where?” “how?” “why?” and so forth. They have an uninflected grammatical form that rejects pronoun suffixes. They may occupy the elementary syntactic slots of copulative complement and modifier of nouns, adjectives, and verbs. A few examples are:

---

\(^{11}\) “Kind” is used in the sense of characteristics not class membership. Adjectives tend to define specific values of characteristics (i.e., red is the value of the characteristic color).

\(^{12}\) A slot is a position in a grammatical or syntactic structure into which defined constituents occur. The various parts of speech have different designated slots (places) where they may occur in a sentence or discourse.

\(^{13}\) The term quality is used here in the sense of a value of a characteristic, such as “tall” or “short” for the characteristic height, or as “wide” or “narrow” for the characteristic width.
1.4.4 Verbs

Words classified as verbs name actions, states, and relationships. They have unique grammatical forms, and they occupy a unique elementary syntactic slot. A few examples are:

- רעב — he is hungry
- טמוד — he stood
- אושב — he loved (someone)
- לכה — he took (something)
- שישו — he drank (something)
- ודבך — he understood (something)

1.4.5 Quantifiers

Words classified as quantifiers answer the semantic questions “how much?” or “how many?” or “what rank order?” They have a “mixed” grammatical form, and occupy syntactic slots differing from those of adjectives, either preceding or following the noun they modify. A few examples are:

1. שאלות — 2. ציון — 3. נקודות —
4. מספרים — 5. נקודות — 6. נקודות —
7. נקודות — 8. נקודות — 9. נקודות —

1.4.6 Prepositions

Words classified as prepositions answer the semantic question “what adverbial relationship?” They have a unique grammatical form that permits them to govern pronoun suffixes, and they occupy a unique syntactic slot: (1) they form elementary adverb phrases with nouns; (2) they join some verbs with their complement. A few examples are:

- בא — beside
- און — with; among
- באל — in front of
- על — on top of; above
- לפני — in front of
- לפני — in front of; before
- סביב — around
- אחרי — after

---

14 Ordinal numbers function as adjectives, but they are discussed in chapter 7 (§ 7.6) along with the cardinal numbers because of usual association with them.
1.4.7 Conjunctions

Words classified as conjunctions function at the text level to join clauses and clusters of clauses.\(^{15}\) Semantically they answer the question “what logical relationship?” They have an uninflected grammatical form and a unique syntactic slot. A few examples are:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \(\text{ג} \) — and
  \item \(\text{מ} \) — also
  \item \(\text{א} \) — also/yea
  \item \(\text{י} \) — or
  \item \(\text{כ} \) — but
  \item \(\text{ר} \) — except
\end{itemize}

1.4.8 Pronouns

Words classified as pronouns function at the text level as substitutes for known information. They have their own grammatical form and occupy the same slots as nouns. When a noun or noun phrase would occur unambiguously redundant in a text, the author often replaces the redundant noun or noun phrase with a pronoun. The pronoun is given the syntactic slot and the same grammatical and semantic characteristics of the noun or phrase it replaces, and it conveys the same information as the noun or phrase it replaces. The noun or phrase the pronoun replaced is known as its *antecedent*.\(^{16}\) A few examples are:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \(\text{א} \) — I;
  \item \(\text{א} \) — we
  \item \(\text{א} \) — you;
  \item \(\text{א} \) — you (pl.)
  \item \(\text{א} \) — he;
  \item \(\text{א} \) — them
\end{itemize}

1.4.9 Interjections

Words classified as interjections express an exclamation. They are capable of standing alone—that is, they are not a necessary part of a phrase or clause. A few examples are:

---

\(^{15}\) In the surface structure—the words as found in the text—conjunctions also join words and phrases, but all these are explained on the basis of deep structure transformations, as explained in Chapter 19, see also § 1.7.

\(^{16}\) Similar types of substitution occur with other parts of speech, sentences, and even paragraphs. This is discussed in the appropriate subsequent chapters.
1.4.10 Particles

Words classified as particles constitute a class of miscellaneous utility words usually un-inflected and functioning in their own unique syntactic slot. A few examples are:

ךְ — surely

הִנֵה — behold

נָא — particle of entreaty

חָלִיל — far be it!

1.5 Syntax and Semantics

The structural restraints a language imposes on the inflectional forms of its words is known as its morphological grammar. The structural restraints a language imposes upon the sequence of the words in its phrases and clauses is referred to as its syntax. The study of syntax is known as syntactics, and a technical description of the syntax of a language is called a grammar of the syntax of the language. The syntax of a language defines how a statement should be made without direct reference to its semantic content, that is, without defining what is to be stated.

A companion to the syntactical system is a structural system that governs the combinational patterns (forms) that lexemes may assume. This structural system is called the semantics of a language, and a technical description of the system is called a semantic grammar of the language. The semantics of a language is very complex. It amounts to a symbolic model of the world of human experience and thought. It is the equivalent of a knowledge-base that is common to the users of the language. Research in the area of semantics has made much progress, but is still in its infancy. Theoretically, the semantics of a language would identify the relationships of its lexemes that could be true in the world of experience and thought.

The two systems, syntax and semantics, must operate harmoniously together in order to produce sensible sentences. A syntactic grammar without semantic restraints produces meaningless but grammatically correct sentences. A semantic grammar without syntactic restraints produces information without coherence. Such unrestrained grammars are interesting but useless for composing meaningful statements. The harmonious operation of semantics and syntax within a given semantic domain produces coherent clauses or sentences.
1.6 Syntax of Hebrew Sentences

A simplified description of the syntax of Hebrew sentences consists of (1) the syntax rules for the small number of kernel clauses\textsuperscript{17} of the language, and (2) a small number of transformations that may alter the structure of the kernel clauses. Transformations are rules that alter the structure of a clause or phrase in a permissible fashion, adding pertinent information in the process. For example: the rule for one type of kernel clause is:

Sentence \((S)\)\textsuperscript{18} = subject noun \((N^s)\) + verb \((V)\) + object noun \((N^o)\)

Using symbols to represent the elements of the rule, the rule reads:\textsuperscript{19}

\[ S = N^s + V + N^o \]

A transformation rearranges the elements of a rule into lawful alternatives, such as:

\[ S = V + N^s + N^o \]
\[ S = N^o + V + N^s \]
\[ S = N^s + N^o + V, \text{ etc.} \]

Chapter 12 defines the syntax of Hebrew kernel clauses in more detail, and Chapter 13 defines the transformations on the kernel clauses in more detail.

1.7 Syntax of Hebrew Discourse

A simplified description of the syntax of Hebrew discourse consists of (1) the syntax rules for a small number of kernel clause sequences of the language, and (2) a small number of transformations that may alter the structure of the kernel clause sequences. Transformations are rules that alter the sequence of clauses in a permissible fashion, adding pertinent information in the process. For example: the rule for one type of kernel clause sequence is:

\[ S = N^s + V + N^o \]

---

\textsuperscript{17} I define a kernel clause in Hebrew as a basic clause in its default form. It is in the active voice, indicative mood, declarative mode, with subject-verb-object word order, having no expressed emphasis or prominence, no elided elements, and no pronoun substitution. The order and content of the elements of a kernel clause may be altered by transformations. The elements of all the rules in this book are in English order unless otherwise indicated. Students find this arrangement easier than switching from left-to-right to right-to-left all the time.

\textsuperscript{18} The terms sentence and clause are used interchangeably here; a clause is usually thought of as simpler in form than a sentence, but both have a subject and predicate.

\textsuperscript{19} The rules are written in English order for the reader’s convenience, but they operate in the reverse order for the Hebrew clauses. The symbols mark the syntactic slots in which the designated constituent must stand in the clause. The symbols represent a single word or an equivalent phrase.
Sentence sequence ($S_s$) = protasis$^{20}$ ($S^p$) + conjunction (C) + apodosis ($S^a$)

Discourse transformations make permissible alterations to the order and content of the sentences, adding significant information to the sentence in the process. Students are exposed to the basic elements of Hebrew discourse syntax without being encumbered with the technical details that make it work. This occurs in Chapter 19.

1.8 How an Author Writes a Literary Composition

A literary text is more than the sum of the words of which it is composed. It is like a work of art, a musical symphony, an intricately woven tapestry, a complex piece of machinery. Its composition is like the work of an engineer who perceives the need of a machine to accomplish a particular objective, and who designs and assembles its individual parts into a functioning, purposeful mechanism. Each part is selected on the basis of what it can do and the role it will play in the overall operation of the device. Beginning with the individual functional parts, he assembles related parts into functional sub-assemblies, connecting the parts together in frames with nuts and bolts according to the designed purpose and function of each sub-assembly. Sub-assemblies are successively connected together with nuts and bolts in larger frames until the whole mechanism is constructed into a fully operational machine, fulfilling the purpose for which it was designed. Without the prior intelligent design and the predetermined order of assembly, the machine would not exist and the objective for which it was perceived would not have been accomplished. All there would be is a truckload of unassembled parts accomplishing no purpose, no objective.

In like fashion, the author of a literary composition first conceives of a community of readers having a need to know what he knows, and has a purposeful reason for providing them with that knowledge. He determines the content of the common knowledge of his target audience of readers and uses that knowledge as the basis for expressing the new knowledge to be conveyed. New information is expressed in terms of old information. New entities yet unknown are defined in terms of their similarities to, and differences from known entities. From the target audience’s body of common knowledge, he selects the words that refer to the entities, categories, characteristics, qualities, capabilities, and relationships that are pertinent to the new information to be conveyed, remembering, of course, the body of information associated with each word. These are the

$^{20}$ The term protasis—what is placed first—refers to the first sentence in a sequence, and apodosis—what is given afterward—refers to the second, usually used with reference to conditional sentences, but expanded to include subordinate sentences in general.
terms in which the new information must be expressed. These are the parts, as it were, from which the new machine must be constructed.

The assembling of a machine begins with its smallest parts, so also the assembling of a literary composition begins with the smallest constituents. Guided by the design of the message he has prepared in his mind, the author successively links constituents together in meaningful sequential clusters by means of appropriate connectives in accordance with the restraints imposed by the grammar, syntax, text structure, and semantics of the language. The constituents of a cluster mutually restrict the semantic range of one another and express an element of meaning pertinent to the design of the overall message. The syntactic structure imposed upon a cluster and the associated linking connectives add meaningful information to it. It is important here to emphasize that the author had good reason for arranging the elements of his message in the sequential order he chose; syntactic structure conveys significant information. A cluster takes on the syntactic role of its head constituent and functions as a syntactic unit. The clustering cycle continues until the composition is complete.

The overall structure of a composition is governed by the customary literary form a community has for its different types of literature, be it an obituary, birth notice, public announcement, business contract, international treaty, law code, constitution, instruction manual, text book, theological treatise, or a scientific or philosophical essay. Each type has its own customary form (genre). The second governing principle is the common sense rule of first things first. The old information needed to express new information should have appeared previously in the text or be part of the assumed common knowledge of the target audience; and the new information should appear in the syntactic slot the conventions of syntax (and the reader) expect.21

A good author feels obligated to meet the needs and expectations of his readers. He knows they prefer things to be simple, easy, and interesting; so he will minimize monotony by reducing unnecessary redundancy, and by providing uncomplicated substitutes when reference to complex expressions must be repeated. Obviously, this practice increases the workload of the reader’s memory and associative capacities, but that’s what makes a text interesting. The practice also is a challenge to an expositor, who must understand elision and substitution, and be able to recover elided information and all that is in the antecedents of the substitutes. This explanation of how an author consciously or subconsciously composes a message is somewhat simplified, but is sufficient

---

21 Meeting these expectations enhances the reader’s comprehension of the text. One expects the author to depart from such expectations only for rhetorical reasons.
for the present. A person’s knowledge of how a message was synthesized (composed) informs the way he should analyze it.

Of course, the value and reliability of a text is no better than the knowledge, literary skill, purpose, and integrity of its author. Likewise, how a text is read, interpreted, and understood depends on the knowledge, language skills, purpose, and integrity of its readers. Error, misunderstanding, and misuse are always possible by accident or intent. But the texts of a well-informed, authoritative, honest author merit trust and respect. The Biblical prophets and apostles and their writings fall into that category.

1.9 How an Expositor Understands an Ancient Hebrew Text

Expositors of Biblical Hebrew should move themselves back in history to the days of the prophets and become an informed member of their audience. Among other things, they should know the people, their language, history, culture, geography, and theology. They should know the vocabulary and grammar of Biblical Hebrew, together with the syntax of phrases, clauses, and text; they should develop an understanding of Biblical Hebrew semantics, and acquire a knowledge base comparable to that of an average ancient Israelite reader. Obviously, that ideal cannot be achieved, but it is the goal for which an expositor should strive, and reliable scholarly resources are available in all those areas of study.

An expositor analyzes a text in the same manner and in the same order in which the author synthesized (composed) it. Of course, he first identifies the author and his intended audience, then reads and rereads the entire message until he has a reasonably decent understanding of its content, purpose, and intent. With that background information, he distinguishes new information from old information by observing which terms are being defined and which terms are the basis of definitions. Old information is independent, new information is dependent. In phrases, old information is more deeply imbedded in syntactic structures than new. The analysis procedure begins with phrases, then clauses, then paragraphs, etc. A phrase is a constituent with a modifier. A constituent’s modifier restricts its semantic domain in some fashion, depending on that part of the domain to which the modifier refers, thereby contributing to the definition of the constituent and adding its own element of meaning to the phrase. Modifiers are derived from explicit old

---

22 I follow the traditional convention that adjectives derived from proper nouns are capitalized.

23 Independent in the sense that it has no external restraints on its meaning.

24 Dependent in the sense that old information defines its meaning.
information contained in prior context or in common knowledge. A complete phrase constitutes a unit of meaning in the clause of which it is a contributing element.

After the analysis of phrases is complete, the clauses are analyzed. Clauses are reduced to their default kernel form by systematically undoing the clause transformations the author imposed, thus bringing to conscious awareness the information added thereby. Clause transformations are imposed in hierarchical order and should be undone in that order, beginning from lowest to highest hierarchy, being guided by semantic restraints (common sense). A complete clause (sentence) constitutes a unit of meaning in the paragraph of which it is a contributing element.

After the analysis of clauses is complete, paragraphs are analyzed. The author had linked the clauses of a paragraph together in sequential clusters by connectives according to their logical and semantic interrelationships. This was done by hierarchically ordered text transformations, guided by semantic restraints. The analysis of a paragraph consists of systematically undoing the text transformations the author imposed on the clauses, beginning from lowest to highest hierarchy, being guided by semantic restraints, thus bringing to conscious awareness the information added by the transformations. A complete paragraph constitutes a unit of meaning in the message of which it is a contributing element.

After the analysis of paragraphs is complete, the whole text is analyzed. The author had linked paragraphs together in sequential clusters by connectives according to their logical and semantic interrelationships. This was done by hierarchically ordered text transformations, guided by semantic restraints. The analysis of a complete text consists of systematically undoing the text transformations the author imposed on the paragraphs, beginning from lowest to highest hierarchy, being guided by semantic restraints, thus bringing to conscious awareness the information added thereby.

In this way all the information of a text is extracted, together with all its logical and semantic interrelations. An expositor uses this information to understand and explain what the text says. No part of the text is interpreted independently apart from its grammatical, syntactical, and semantic context, both near and far. This analytical procedure is essentially what takes place naturally in the mind of a native reader simultaneously as the eyes peruse the text; it is known as the natural or literal method of interpretation.

---

25 Modifiers are regarded as the remnant of one or more old-information clauses that are dependent on the head element of the phrase. Elision eliminates the redundant constituents of the clause(s), leaving only the remnant as the modifier. The full content of such dependent clauses is significant to the expositor.
On the surface this methodology seems tedious, complicated, and too difficult to master. However, as the student becomes more familiar and experienced with the language, the methodology becomes second nature and what initially seemed difficult becomes self-evident. It is the purpose of this book to bring students of Biblical Hebrew close to this level of competence.

The teaching strategy of this book follows the following steps:

1. A thorough review of Hebrew parts of speech. This may seem elementary, but experience indicates that many students—even advanced ones—are weak in this discipline.
2. Define and illustrate the syntax of the various types of kernel clauses of Hebrew discourse.
3. Define and illustrate the various types of transformations that may operate on kernel clauses.
4. Define and illustrate the syntax of the various types of phrases that occur in Hebrew discourse. It may seem that this step should come before step 2 above, but as it turns out, phrases are all derived from parts of speech with one or more dependent clauses.
5. Define and illustrate the procedure for analyzing Hebrew sentences, that is, the methodology for the exposition of sentences.
6. Define and illustrate how Hebrew sentences are linked together to compose meaningful paragraphs and discourse.
7. Define and illustrate the procedure for analyzing Hebrew discourse, that is, the methodology for the exposition of discourse.

The next chapter begins the thorough study of Hebrew parts of speech.
CHAPTER 2
The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Nouns

This chapter presents the attributes of Hebrew nouns associated with their syntactic relationships in phrases and clauses. The details of phonology and morphology are not considered except as they apply to syntax. The content of this chapter is similar to that presented in other works of Hebrew syntax except where it is necessary to relate the material to “transformational” concepts in preparation for subsequent chapters. The chapter is foundational, not an exhaustive treatment of all the particulars of Hebrew nouns.

2.1 Noun Defined

A noun is the name of a person, animal, place, thing, quality, state, idea, or action. Nouns are distinguished from other parts of speech by certain morphological and syntactic attributes. Nouns serve as the subject of a verb, direct or indirect object of a verb, object of a preposition, or as an appositive to another noun. Although Hebrew nouns share certain inflectional morphemes with adjectives, the inflection of Hebrew nouns is uniquely different from all other parts of speech, including adjectives. For example, apart from a few exceptions, a given Hebrew noun inflects in only one gender, whereas adjectives inflect in both genders. Some Hebrew nouns inflect with morphemes contrary to their true number and gender (יָשָׁר—women), but adjectives exhibit consistent agreement of their morphemes and attribute values (בריות טובות—good women).

1 Nouns may also occupy the slot of casus pendens and of an adverbial accusative.
2.1.1 Nouns Classified

Nouns fall into various classifications depending upon the entity they name. The classification affects the inflection of the words to some extent. The classes are not wholly unique; they may overlap. There are at least the following classes of nouns: (1) common nouns, (2) proper nouns, (3) Gentilic nouns, (4) concrete nouns, (5) countable nouns, (6) measurable nouns, (7) abstract nouns, and (8) characteristic nouns. Only the first three categories are noted in the lexicons and in the morphological codes in the WTS text.

2.1.2 Common Nouns

There are 3,657 words that are classified as common nouns, occurring 107,546 times in the WTS text. Table 2.1 lists the number of common nouns by frequency distribution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Number of Common Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;= 10</td>
<td>2684</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 50</td>
<td>673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 200</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 600</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>601 to 700</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>701 to 800</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>801 to 900</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>901 to 1100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1101 to 1300</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1301 to 1500</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1501 to 1700</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 1700</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is evident that many common nouns occur very infrequently and relatively few occur very often. In fact 1,197 occur only once, only 167 occur more than 100 times, and only 43 occur more than 400 times. Table 2.2 lists the 43 common nouns occurring more than 400 times.

A common noun is a name that represents any or all members of a common class.

- יָרָד — man;
- חֵדָר — donkey;
- בְּעָר — house
## Table 2.2
Frequency of Most Often Common Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>כָל</td>
<td>all</td>
<td>5413</td>
<td>אָח</td>
<td>brother</td>
<td>629</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בּוֹן</td>
<td>son</td>
<td>4933</td>
<td>לֵב</td>
<td>heart</td>
<td>600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָלָלים</td>
<td>God</td>
<td>2601</td>
<td>רָאשִׁי</td>
<td>head</td>
<td>596</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֶלֶךְ</td>
<td>king</td>
<td>2525</td>
<td>בַת</td>
<td>daughter</td>
<td>586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אּרֶץ</td>
<td>land</td>
<td>2504</td>
<td>מִים</td>
<td>water</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יוֹם</td>
<td>day</td>
<td>2302</td>
<td>הֵר</td>
<td>mountain</td>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶיש</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>2187</td>
<td>גּוּן</td>
<td>nation</td>
<td>554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פָנֶה</td>
<td>face</td>
<td>2126</td>
<td>אָדָם</td>
<td>man</td>
<td>546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בֵית</td>
<td>house</td>
<td>2043</td>
<td>קֹול</td>
<td>sound</td>
<td>505</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עָם</td>
<td>people</td>
<td>1867</td>
<td>פָה</td>
<td>mouth</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָז</td>
<td>hand</td>
<td>1618</td>
<td>עֹבֶד</td>
<td>army</td>
<td>485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דָבָר</td>
<td>word</td>
<td>1441</td>
<td>קֹדֶשׁ</td>
<td>holiness</td>
<td>469</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶבֶד</td>
<td>father</td>
<td>1210</td>
<td>עַלּוֹם</td>
<td>eternity</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עִיר</td>
<td>city</td>
<td>1086</td>
<td>מְשֹׁפְט</td>
<td>judgment</td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עַיֵּן</td>
<td>eye</td>
<td>885</td>
<td>שֵם</td>
<td>heaven</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָד</td>
<td>year</td>
<td>875</td>
<td>שֵׁר</td>
<td>prince</td>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שֵם</td>
<td>name</td>
<td>864</td>
<td>שֶׁר</td>
<td>midst</td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֶפֶשׁ</td>
<td>servant</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>הֲדָבָר</td>
<td>sword</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נֶפֶשׁ</td>
<td>woman</td>
<td>781</td>
<td>בָּשָׂר</td>
<td>silver</td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָם</td>
<td>soul</td>
<td>754</td>
<td>מוֹבֶה</td>
<td>altar</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָכָה</td>
<td>priest</td>
<td>750</td>
<td>מָכָה</td>
<td>place</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רֶדֶב</td>
<td>way</td>
<td>706</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The name may be used collectively of the entire class (םֹּאֵל — mankind); it may represent unspecified members of the class (םֹּאֵל — men), and so forth. These nouns may take a definite article, and a pronoun suffix.²

### 2.1.3 Proper Nouns

There are 2,617 words that are classified as proper nouns. Table 2.3 lists the number of proper nouns by frequency distribution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Number of Proper Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;= 10</td>
<td>2247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 50</td>
<td>298</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 200</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 700</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>701 to 900</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>901 to 1100</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 1100</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is evident that many proper nouns occur very infrequently and relatively few occur very often. In fact 1,085 occur only once, only 17 occur more than 200 times. Table 2.4 lists the 17 proper nouns occurring more than 200 times.

A proper noun is the name of a particular member of a class, either a person or place.³ The name is regarded as unique to the particular member and is not shared with any other. Proper nouns that refer to persons are singular and determinate by nature; they usually do not take the definite article⁴ or pronoun suffix. They take the gender of the person named.

---

² There are 3,657 different common nouns in the Hebrew Bible, occurring 107,546 times. They have the definite article 22,302 times and pronoun suffixes 23,586 times.

³ There are 2,819 different proper nouns in the Hebrew Bible, occurring 33,404 times. They have the definite article 1,109 times.

⁴ The few exceptions should properly be regarded as Gentilics (GKC § 125 d). הַַֽמְנַש ֶּׁ֑ה (Deut. 3:13, etc.); הַַֽלֵּו ִ֔י (Josh. 13:14, etc.). In addition, a number of other personal nouns regularly take the definite article, perhaps
Chapter 2

The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

Table 2.4

Frequency of Most Often Proper Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>יהוה</td>
<td>Yahweh</td>
<td>6828</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ישראל</td>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>2506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דוד</td>
<td>David</td>
<td>1075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יהודה</td>
<td>Judah</td>
<td>819</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>משה</td>
<td>Moses</td>
<td>766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מצרים</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>681</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ירושלים</td>
<td>Jerusalem</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אדני</td>
<td>Lord</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שאול</td>
<td>Saul</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יוחב</td>
<td>Jacob</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אהרן</td>
<td>Aaron</td>
<td>347</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לוי</td>
<td>Levi</td>
<td>307</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פרעה</td>
<td>Pharaoh</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שלמה</td>
<td>Solomon</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בבל</td>
<td>Babylon</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יוחנן</td>
<td>Joshua</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יוסף</td>
<td>Joseph</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Proper nouns that refer to cities are determinate by nature; they usually do not take the definite article,\(^5\) and never a pronoun suffix. They usually are feminine.

—Jerusalem     —Sodom     —Hebron

———

idiomatically: מַלֵּך (Lev. 18:21, etc.); נַעַק (Josh. 15:14, etc.); בֶּשָּׁל (Judg. 6:25, etc.); עֵמֶלֶק (2 Sam. 1:1, etc.); plus a few others.

\(^5\) A few names of cities take the definite article, perhaps also idiomatically: הָעֶּר א (Ai Gen. 12:8, etc.); הָהַר מִרְמָה (Hormah Num. 14:45, etc.); הַר בְּלָּלח (Riblah Num. 34:11); הַכְּפִירַה (Chephirah Josh. 9:17); הַשָּׁרִי (Sharon Isa. 33:9, etc.); plus a few others.
Proper nouns that refer to rivers, mountains, and territories are determinate by nature; some of them take the definite article, but never a pronoun suffix. They usually are feminine.

- הַיַרְדֵֵ֔ן — the Jordan
- הַנֶֶָּּֽֽֽגְׁבָה — the Negev
- הַמֹרִיָָ֛ה — Moriah
- הַמַכְׁפֵלָָ֛ה — Machpelah
- הַגִּלְׁעָד — Gilead
- הַמִצְׁפָה — Mizpah
- הַפִסְגָָּה — Pizgah

Proper place names may also take a locative ה affix.

### 2.1.4 Gentilic Nouns

Gentilic nouns refer to the descendants of an ancestral forefather, the inhabitants of cities, nations, or ethnic groups. They are classified as adjectives by lexicographers, as proper nouns in the now discontinued software program BibleWorks, and as Gentilics in this work. There are 233 different Gentilic nouns, occurring 1,825 times. Table 2.5

#### Table 2.5
**Frequency Distribution of Gentilic Nouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Number of Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;= 10</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 50</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 100</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is evident that most Gentilic nouns occur infrequently. In fact 113 occur only once, only 28 occur more than 10 times, and only 2 occur more than 100 times, Table 2.6 lists those that occur more than 10 times.

#### Table 2.6
**Frequency of Most Often Gentilic Nouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>לֵוִי</td>
<td>Levite</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פְלִשְׁתִי</td>
<td>Philistine</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֱמֹרִי</td>
<td>Amorite</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יְהוּדִי</td>
<td>Jew</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כַשְׁדִים</td>
<td>Chaldeans</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כְנַעֲנִי</td>
<td>Canaanite</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 2

The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>הִתִי</td>
<td>Hittite</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יְבוּסִי</td>
<td>Jebusite</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עִבְרִי</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִצְרִי</td>
<td>Egyptian</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gentilic nouns are derived from the name of an associated ancestor, city, nation, or ethnic group, usually by adding a long i-class vowel on the end of the associated name. They may take the definite article, but rarely a pronoun suffix.

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>רְאוּבֵן</td>
<td>Reuben</td>
<td>רְאוּבֵנִי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>גָד</td>
<td>Gad</td>
<td>גָדִי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֵוִי</td>
<td>Levi</td>
<td>לֵוִי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בִנְׁיָמִן</td>
<td>Benjamin</td>
<td>בּרָאוּמִּי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יִשְׁרָאֵל</td>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>יִשְׁרְׁאֵלִי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חֵָֽת</td>
<td>Heth</td>
<td>חִתִי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יְבוּס</td>
<td>Jebus</td>
<td>יְבוּסִי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קְנֵַּ֔עַן</td>
<td>Canaan</td>
<td>קְנֵנִּי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עֲמָלֵֵ֥ק</td>
<td>Amalek</td>
<td>עֲמָלֵקִי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲרָם</td>
<td>Aram</td>
<td>אֲרַמִי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָוָּֽאֵב</td>
<td>Moabite</td>
<td>מָוָּֽאֵבִי</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָואָּבִים</td>
<td>Moabites</td>
<td>מָואָּבִים</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָואָּבִָּֽית</td>
<td>Moabitess</td>
<td>מָואָּבִָּֽית</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָואֲבִיָּ֤ה</td>
<td>Moabitess</td>
<td>מָואֲבִיָּ֤ה</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Gentilic nouns generally occur as collectives, but may be inflected for number and gender.

6 There are 233 Gentilic nouns in the Hebrew Bible, occurring a total of 1,825 times. Of this total, 1,269 have the definite article.

7 For example, מַלְיָּֽה (our Levites Neh. 10:1).
Chapter 2 The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

2.1.5 Concrete Nouns
Concrete nouns are names of discrete objects that exist in space and time, and that can be perceived by the senses.

— mountain; — hand; — sun; — rod, staff; — wall; — table.

2.1.6 Countable Nouns
Some nouns are class names of objects that may be counted, that is, those things that are identified as unique unit members of the class. These are called countable nouns.

— three boys; — four books; — five days.

2.1.7 Measurable Nouns
Some nouns are the names of substances that are not spoken of as unique units. When quantified they require a countable unit of measure.

— oil; — wine; — water; — wheat.

2.1.8 Abstract Nouns
Some nouns are names of abstractions of the mind that cannot be perceived by the senses. These are called abstract nouns.

— love; — hatred; — old age; — youth.

Many abstract nouns are the names of unique concepts rather than class names. These behave much like proper names. That is, they are only singular; they are determinate by nature, and do not take either a definite or indefinite article, except when limited by a genitive.
2.1.9 Characteristic Nouns

Some nouns are the names of characteristics possessed by entities named by other nouns. Characteristic nouns have associated adjectives that specify specific values of the named characteristic.

- קְנָה — size; קְנָּה — weight; קְנָה — appearance; קְנָה — taste.

2.2 The Derivation of Hebrew Nouns

Some Hebrew nouns are primary nouns that seem to exhibit no dependence on other words. Other nouns seem to be derived from a corresponding verb, noun, or adjective.

2.2.1 Primary Nouns

Many Hebrew nouns in the Bible have no corresponding verb, noun, or adjective to which its derivation may be traced. Other Hebrew nouns have corresponding verbs that seem to be derived from that noun. Still others seem to be the source of derivation for other nouns or adjectives. For convenience, these various nouns are called primary nouns. The majority of the primary nouns are concrete nouns.

- אָב — father, אָב — fire
- בַּע — brother, בַּע — womb
- אֵח — man, אֵח — field
- אָל — God, אָל — hair
- יָל — land, earth, יָל — rod, staff, scepter
- הָר — mountain, הָר — table
- יִר — hand, יִר — name
- יִם — day, יִם — sun
- יִים — water, יִים — gate
- קָמ — voice, sound, קָמ — handmaid
- קָר — wall, קָר — midst
- קָר — frost, ice

---

8 Verbs frequently are classified as denominative (i.e., derived from a noun) if they are used in the piel stem and not in the qal.
2.2.2 Nouns Derived From Verbs

Many Hebrew nouns have a corresponding verb to which its derivation may be traced. Some such nouns name the doer of the verbal deed, others name the recipient of the action, still others are the names of the abstract ideas of the deeds themselves.

Nouns that name the doer of the deed. Although the active participle regularly is used to designate the doer of the verbal deed, many verbs have a corresponding noun to serve this function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>מָלֵךְ — he reigned</td>
<td>מַלֵךְ — king</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלְתָּה — queen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נָסִיך — he went out</td>
<td>נָסִירָה — offspring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מְשִׂיק — be like</td>
<td>מְשִׁיק — proverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עָבֹד — he served</td>
<td>עָבֶד — servant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Nouns that name the recipient of the deed. Although the passive participle may be used to designate the recipient of the verbal action, many verbs have a corresponding noun to serve this function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>מָלֵךְ — he reigned</td>
<td>מִלְתָּה — kingdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלְתָּה — kingdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲכֹל — he ate</td>
<td>אֲכֹל — food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲכֹל — food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מְאֹל — food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מְאֹל — food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יִדְעֶה — he knew</td>
<td>יִדְעָה — knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִשְׁפַּט — deed, work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׁמַע — he heard</td>
<td>שָׁמַע — hearing, report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׁמַע — report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פָּרָה — he begot</td>
<td>פָּרָה — boy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פָּרָה — girl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פָּרָה — son</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֵלֶדֶת — generations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֵלֶדֶת — kindred</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נָשִׁי — he lifted up</td>
<td>נָשִׁי — one lifted, prince</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נָשִׁי — burden</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נָשִׁי — uprising</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

Verbs  Nouns
רֵעָה — he pastured  מִרְעָה — pasturage
— shepherd

Nouns that name the abstract idea of the verbal deed. Although the infinitive construct may be used to designate the abstract idea of the verbal action, many verbs have a corresponding noun to serve this function. These are called verbal nouns.

Verbs  Nouns
לָדוֹת — he delights  לָדוֹת — delight
שלָח — he sent  מַשְׁלָח — sending
אָהֵב — he loved  אָהֵב — love
טוֹב — he overthrew  מְטַמְּקֵה — an overthrow
שפט — he judged  מְשָׁפֵט — judgment

These verbal nouns are observed to have both subjects and objects, very much like the corresponding finite verb.

כִּתְבָּה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֲבוֹדֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל
like the love of the LORD for children of Israel (Hos. 3:1)
כִּתְבָּה יְהוָה אֱלֹהִים אֲבוֹדֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל
as God's overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah (Amos 4:11)
מְשָׁפֵט אֲחָתוֹ
my judgments against them (Jer. 1:16)

Nouns that name the abstract idea of the verbal state. Hebrew has many stative verbs that declare a state of being. Such verbs have a corresponding noun that names the abstract idea of the verbal state.

Verbs  Nouns
תָּנָה — he is unclean  טָמָא — uncleanness
גָּדָל — he is great  גָּדָל — greatness
גָּדָלוּת — greatness
כָּרָשָׁה — he is holy  קָרָשָׁה — holiness
עָרָם — he is crafty  עָרָם — craftiness
עָרָם — craftiness
יַמָּה — he is thirsty  יָמָה — thirst
גָּבֹה — it is long  גָּבֹה — length
כָּפָה — it is sweet  כָּפָה — sweetness
2.2.3 **Nouns Derived from Other Nouns**

Some Hebrew nouns seem to be the names of abstractions related to another noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Noun</th>
<th>Derived Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>נער</td>
<td>נוער</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כל</td>
<td>מכולל</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כל</td>
<td>מכולל</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חלה</td>
<td>חלה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ילד</td>
<td>יהלמה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שופט</td>
<td>שופט</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>או הער</td>
<td>ער</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>צדק</td>
<td>צדק</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קרא</td>
<td>מקרא</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ראש</td>
<td>ראש</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מתים</td>
<td>תורים</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ראש</td>
<td>ראש</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שער</td>
<td>שער</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שמות</td>
<td>שמות</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אילמה</td>
<td>אילמה</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2.4 **Nouns Derived From Adjectives**

Some Hebrew nouns seem to be the names of abstractions related to an adjective which has no corresponding stative verb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Adjective</th>
<th>Derived Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אכזר</td>
<td>אכזר</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ידיב</td>
<td>ידיב</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נר</td>
<td>נר</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עב</td>
<td>עב</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עיר</td>
<td>עיר</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עונס</td>
<td>עונס</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 2  
The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Source Adjective</th>
<th>Derived Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>דainty</td>
<td>דaintyness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sluggish, lazy</td>
<td>sluggishness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>little, young</td>
<td>youth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>called</td>
<td>proclamation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>empty, vain</td>
<td>emptiness, vanity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thin</td>
<td>thin cake</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.3 The Attributes of Nouns

Nouns have seven information bearing attributes in addition to their lexical information. Each of these attributes may assume one of several values. The attributes are as follows:

1. Number
2. Gender
3. Determination
4. Person
5. Range
6. Case
7. Negation

The first five are usually specified by morphemes. Case is specified in Biblical Hebrew by word order only, although there is historical evidence that case was originally specified by morphemes. Negation is specified by a prepositive negative particle.

---

9 Lexical information is conveyed by means of root and stem.

10 The values of attributes do not uniquely map to morphemes, but do so in combinations. For example, the combination—masculine, plural, absolute—is specified by the morpheme יִקְשֹׁת— and the combination—feminine, plural, absolute—is specified by the morpheme יִקְשָׁת—. So it is imprecise to refer to a singular morpheme because no specific part of a morpheme independently specifies singularity. However, the terms singular morpheme, plural morpheme, etc. are used imprecisely in this work in order to avoid the greater confusion that results from using a more precise term like logeme.

11 The determinate accusative is identified by the prepositive particle PR, although it is occasionally lacking, especially in poetry.
2.3.1 The Number Attribute

Hebrew nouns are inflected with three number morphemes (singular, dual, plural). However, the syntax of nouns recognizes only two number values (singular, plural). Singular nouns govern singular verbs and adjectives. Dual and plural nouns govern plural verbs and adjectives. The number morpheme of some nouns does not correspond with the grammatical number of the noun. The grammatical number of a noun is determined by the manner in which it governs adjectives and verbs, and by the grammatical number of the pronoun that may stand in its place.

The singular morpheme. The singular morpheme indicates various conditions of the true number, depending on the class of the noun.

1. The singular morpheme indicates a single unit of most countable nouns. This has a corresponding singular attribute value.

   - מלך — king
   - שער — gate
   - הר — mountain
   - נער — lad

2. The singular morpheme indicates a single collective group of certain countable nouns, corresponding to the singular attribute value. Collectives take the singular value when viewed as a single collective whole, but the plural value when viewed as a group of individuals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Countable</th>
<th>Collective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>יישו — a man</td>
<td>יאנש — mankind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נלך — a tree</td>
<td>דבק — trees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כבש — a cow</td>
<td>כבש — cattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עז — a sheep</td>
<td>עז — sheep</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. The singular morpheme is used with some proper names, abstract nouns, measurable nouns, and other non-countable nouns. This morpheme corresponds to the singular attribute value.

   - יוסף — Jacob
   - מר — Moab
   - צור — Tyre

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proper Names</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>יוסף — Jacob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מר — Moab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>צור — Tyre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abstract Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>נסיבות — innocence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עזרא — youth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

12 GKC § 123, 124; RJW 1-16; VNK §24.3.

13 Of the 107,546 common nouns in the WTS text, 77,597 are marked as singular, 28,073 are marked as plural, and 1,876 are marked as dual.
(4) The singular morpheme is used in conjunction with the determination morpheme to define the various points of view that a class name may express. This is discussed in detail in the section on the attribute of determination.

The dual morpheme. The dual morpheme is limited to certain substantives. Adjectives and verbs are inflected with the singular and plural morphemes only. The dual morpheme expresses several values of the number attribute.

(1) The dual morpheme may indicate plurality of countable objects occurring naturally in pairs, corresponding to the plural attribute value. In this case the dual morpheme does not imply duality, but simply plurality. Words that take the dual morpheme do not take the plural morpheme without a change of meaning (רֶגֶל —feet; cf. רְגֵלִים —soldiers).

- עיניים —eyes
- יזים —hands
- אפינים —nostrils
- עיניים —ears
- שש כנפים —six wings
- כנפים —feet
- גְּדָמִים —bronze fetters (for hands or feet)

(2) The dual morpheme may indicate pairs of certain countable nouns that may appear naturally in sequential pairs. In this case the dual morpheme expresses duality without the number two. However the corresponding attribute value is plural because adjectives and verbs in syntactic concord with the given dual require the plural. (שְׁנָהָיוֹן תּוֹבָה —two good years). These nouns use the plural morpheme to express any other type of plurality.

- יומִים —two (sequential) days
- שבָּעָה יומִים —seven days
- משָׁפַות —two burdens (Gen. 49:14)
- שָׁנָה —two (sequential) years
- سابיעים —seven years

(3) The dual morpheme indicates a multiple of two for the numbers “hundred” and “thousand.”
(4) The dual morpheme is used with certain proper names that have the singular attribute value.

Egypt — Jerusalem

The plural morpheme. The plural morpheme indicates various conditions of the true number, depending on the class of the noun.

(1) The plural morpheme indicates simple plurality of countable nouns, corresponding to the plural attribute.

- kings: יהודים
- altars: מקדשים
- boys: נערים
- girls: נערות

(2) For non-countable nouns, the plural morpheme is used to express certain variations of the lexical meaning. In all these cases the attribute value is singular.

The plural morpheme may be used to express abstract concepts derived from concrete concepts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concrete concept</th>
<th>Derived abstract</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>בנות</td>
<td>נשים</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>גברים</td>
<td>נשים</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נשים</td>
<td>נשים</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נשים</td>
<td>נשים</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נשים</td>
<td>נשים</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נשים</td>
<td>נשים</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The plural morpheme is used to indicate intensity, majesty, or ownership, for certain nouns.

- God (Gen. 1:1)
- master (Isa. 1:3)
- lord (Isa. 19:4)
- grave (2 Kgs. 22:20)
- violent death (Isa. 53:9)
- heavy rain (Ezr. 10:9)

---

14 The word occurs only in the construct form of the plural.
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

The plural morpheme is used to indicate natural products in unnatural conditions, for certain nouns.

- חָמֵם —wheat (in grain)  חָמָם — (in ear)
- קָסֵפָם —spelt (in grain)  קָסָף — (in ear)
- רֶמֶם —shed blood  דם —blood

The plural morpheme is used to indicate extension, when the object consists of many parts.

- רַאָיָים —back of neck  צְמֵה —face

The plural morpheme is used to indicate composition of material, for certain nouns.

- כְּסֹפַר —lumps of earth (cf. כֹּפֶר —dust)
- קָסִיף —pieces of silver (cf. כָּסָף —silver)

3) The plural morpheme is used in conjunction with the determination morpheme to define various points of view that a class name may express. This is discussed in detail in the section on the attribute of determination.

*The number attribute in compound phrases.* Compound noun phrases usually govern plural verbs.

- והמלך והיהם נשבו לשתות
  The king and Haman sat down to drink. (Est. 3:15)
  (The plural verb agrees with the plural compound subject.)

However, a compound noun phrase may be viewed as a collective in which case it governs a singular verb.

- בֶּעָנָיָם הוֹם הָיוֹם בָּא נֵּחַ וְשֵם וְ֚חֵם וָ֭פֶת בֵּ֧נֵי נַוּחַ...אֶל־הַתֵּבָּֽה׃
  On the very same day Noah and Shem, Ham, and Japheth, Noah's sons. . . entered the ark (Gen 7:13)
  (The singular verb agrees with the plural compound subject.)

In clauses where the verb appears first, the verb may be singular even though the subject is compound.

- וְלָכָּל הַמֵּלֶךְ זֵרֶם עָלָיו נְמוּטָם
  Then the king and Haman came to the banquet. (Est. 5:5)

- וְלָכָּל רַאִילֵּה אלפים אֲלֵהוֹת
  Then Rachel and Leah answered and said to him (Gen. 31:14)
  (Note that the first verb is singular and the second is plural.)
In compound noun phrases naming a group consisting of a person of superior rank and some subordinates, the verb may agree with the principal member of the group.


gemālēy ‘āqā‘ām yāma‘ilēt
My maids and I will fast likewise. (Est. 4:16)

האשה וילדה ודודה לאמית
the wife and her children shall be her master’s (Exod. 21:4)

### 2.3.2 The Gender Attribute

Associated with the gender attribute are three values (masculine, feminine, common) and two morpheme values (masculine, feminine).

*The masculine morpheme.* The masculine morpheme is used to specify various information, some associated with gender, some not.

1. The masculine morpheme indicates the masculine gender for most animate objects, corresponding to the masculine attribute.

   - מָלֵךְ — king
   - פַּר — bull
   - אָיִל — ram
   - נָחָר — male donkey
   - אֵב — father

   (cf. מֶלָכִים — kings, פָּרִים — bulls, עֲלֵימִים — rams, נַחֲרִים — male donkeys, אֲבוֹת — fathers)

2. The masculine morpheme indicates the feminine gender for a few animate objects, corresponding to the feminine attribute.

   - נָשָׁה — female goat
   - נַשִּׁים — women

   (cf. מָלָאָה — woman)

3. The masculine morpheme is used with some inanimate objects having no gender, with a corresponding masculine attribute. In such cases, the morpheme is merely a syntactic marker to govern the attribute values of associated modifiers and verbs.

   - בֵית — house
   - בַתִּים — houses

---

15 GKC §122; RJW 17-27; VNK §24.2. The morphological gender of a given noun is determined by the semantic culture of the Hebrew people. The value is defined by the dictionary, external to any text or discourse. Thus, in a given text, the gender attribute of nouns is an independent variable.

16 Of the 107,546 common nouns in the WTS text, 73,776 are marked as masculine, 26,844 are marked as feminine, and 6,926 are marked as both.
(4) The masculine morpheme is used with certain objects having no gender, to express a meaning derived from a related noun, with a corresponding masculine morpheme. Common to this case are certain abstract nouns and collectives.

Examples of abstracts:

- יי"ו — life (cf. יי"ו — living creature)
- יי"ו — old age (cf. יי"ו — old man)
- יי"ו — youth (cf. יי"ו — lad)
- יי"ו — virginity (cf. יי"ו — virgin)
- יי"ו — bloodguiltiness (cf. יי"ו — blood)

Examples of collectives:

- יי"ו — fleet (cf. יי"ו — ship)
- יי"ו — hair (cf. יי"ו — a hair)

(5) The masculine morpheme is used with some objects having no gender, with a corresponding feminine attribute. In this case, also, the morpheme is merely a syntactic marker. Common to this case are certain inanimate objects, parts of the body, and names of countries and cities.

Examples of inanimate objects:

- יי"ו — talent  יי"ו — talents
- יי"ו — city  יי"ו — cities
- יי"ו — jar  יי"ו — jars
- יי"ו — sandal  יי"ו — sandals

Examples of parts of the body:

- יי"ו — foot  יי"ו — feet\(^\text{17}\)
- יי"ו — ear  יי"ו — ears
- יי"ו — horn  יי"ו — horns
- יי"ו — eye  יי"ו — eyes

\(^{17}\) Some of these are masculine dual forms instead of masculine plural, but they are plural in number.
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

Examples of place names:

- רְמָז — Egypt
- יְרָשְׁלָמִים — Jerusalem
- מָאוֹב — Moab
- כְּרָמִים — Chaldea

The feminine morpheme. The feminine morpheme is clearly distinguished for most feminine nouns. However, certain feminine nouns have a zero morpheme in the singular that gives the appearance of a masculine form.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֶמוֹת — mother</td>
<td>אִמֹת — mothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>וֶרֶב — sword</td>
<td>וְרוֹב — swords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כֵּס — cup</td>
<td>כֹּס — cups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֵפֶלֶת — female donkey</td>
<td>אֵפֶלֶת — female donkeys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲשָׁה — fire</td>
<td>(singular only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) The feminine morpheme is used to indicate the feminine gender of most animate objects with the corresponding feminine attribute.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>מְלָכָה — queen</td>
<td>מְלָכָה — queens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לַיְדָה — girl</td>
<td>לַיְדָה — girls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נְבוֹת — lass</td>
<td>נְבוֹת — lasses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֱמוֹת — mother</td>
<td>אֱמוֹת — mothers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פְּרוֹת — cow</td>
<td>פְּרוֹת — cows</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שַׁצְרְיָה — female goat</td>
<td>שַׁצְרְיָה — female goats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֵפֶלֶת — female donkey</td>
<td>אֵפֶלֶת — female donkeys</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) The feminine morpheme is used with certain inanimate objects having no gender, with a corresponding feminine attribute.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>וֶרֶב — sword</td>
<td>וְרוֹב — swords</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כֵּס — cup</td>
<td>כֹּס — cups</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲשָׁה — fire</td>
<td>(singular only)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(3) The feminine morpheme is used to express certain abstract ideas having no gender, with a corresponding feminine attribute. Such words are used only in the singular.
(4) The feminine morpheme is used with certain collective nouns, with a corresponding feminine attribute.

- caravan — נַחַר
- exiles — נַעֲרָה

(5) The feminine morpheme is used with some objects having no gender, to indicate a single component of a collective concept, with a corresponding feminine attribute.

- a ship — נְבֵי
- fleet (cf.) — נְבֵי
- a hair — שָׁנָה
- hair (cf.) — שָׁנָה

(6) The feminine morpheme is used to indicate certain neuter concepts, with a corresponding feminine attribute.

- these things — נְבֶל
- wonderful things — נְבֶל

(7) The feminine morpheme is used with some animate objects to indicate office, intensity, or completeness, with a corresponding masculine attribute.

- preacher (Eccl. 1:1) — נַקַּר

(8) The feminine morpheme is used with certain masculine nouns, with a corresponding masculine attribute.

- fathers (cf. אָבִי) — אָבֵי

The common gender. Some nouns behave grammatically as though they have a common gender attribute. That is, regardless of their gender morpheme, they may fit into either a masculine or feminine context.18

18 The BibleWorks software program classifies 37 words as having both genders. הָעַיּוֹן (Gen. 1:2); הָעַיּוֹן (Gen. 1:2); הָעַיּוֹן (Gen. 9:12); הָעַיּוֹן (1 Sam. 1:3); כְּ (Gen. 2:8); כְּ (Exod. 21:24); כְּ (Gen. 3:24); כְּ (Gen. 4:2); כְּ (Gen. 15:16); כְּ (Gen. 7:14); כְּ (Gen. 8:11); כְּ (Gen. 10:5); כְּ (Gen. 15:1); כְּ (Gen. 15:12); כְּ (Gen. 15:17); כְּ (Gen. 19:24); כְּ (Gen. 18:11); כְּ (Gen. 25:16); כְּ (Gen. 32:3); כְּ (Gen. 12:16); כְּ (Gen. 37:35); כְּ (Gen. 40:9); כְּ (Gen. 49:12); כְּ (Gen. 50:26); כְּ (Exod. 16:3);


\[\text{sign} \]—usually masculine, but sometimes feminine (Josh. 24:17).

\[\text{land} \]—usually feminine, but sometimes masculine (Ezek. 21:24).

\[\text{cattle} \]—usually masculine, but sometimes feminine (Gen. 33:13)

\[\text{road, way} \]—usually masculine, but sometimes feminine (Num. 9:10)

**Gender in compound noun phrases.** Compound noun phrases usually govern masculine verbs and adjectives. In the special case where all members of the compound group are feminine, the gender attribute is feminine.

Then Rachel and Leah answered and said to him (Gen. 31:14) (The first verb is singular as permitted when it is first. The second verb is plural in concord with the plural subject. Both verbs are feminine because all members of the subject are feminine.)

In the case where the compound subject is long and the verb appears first, the verb may be in gender concord with the nearest noun of the compound subject.

So Esther's maids and eunuchs came and told her. (Est. 4:4) (The first verb is feminine plural in concord with \[\text{maids} \] only. The second verb is masculine plural in concord with the usual practice for mixed gender compound subjects.

Then his wife Zeresh and all his friends said to him (Est. 5:14) The verb is feminine singular in concord with \[\text{Zeresh} \], even though the compound subject is of mixed gender. When the compound subject is lengthy, the verb may be in concord with only its nearest member.

**2.3.3 The Determination Attribute**\(^{19}\)

The determination attribute specifies the degree to which the exact identity of the given noun is defined. The determination attribute is a marker that indicates that the referent of the given noun has already been introduced in the discourse, or that the referent is well known in the common knowledge of the original audience. Associated with the determination attribute are two attribute values (determinate, non-determinate) and two morphemes (the definite article prefix, a zero morpheme, i.e., no prefix).

\[\text{שַׁבָת} \] (Exod. 16:23); \[\text{עָב} \] (Exod. 19:9); \[\text{עֲבֹת} \] (Exod. 28:14); \[\text{אָשֵּׁד} \] (Num. 21:15); \[\text{שׁוּשַּׁן} \] (1 Kgs. 7:19); \[\text{תַן} \] (Job 30:29); \[\text{עֲגָבָה} \] (Psa. 118:27); \[\text{שׁוּשַׁן} \] (Gen. 15:17); \[\text{עֲבֹת} \] (Ezek. 23:11); \[\text{נוּר} \] (Dan. 3:6).

\(^{19}\) GKC §125-127; RJW 82-93; VNK §24.4.
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

*Proper nouns.* Proper nouns are determinate by nature because they are names of specific persons, places, concepts, etc. They always take the attribute value “determinate,” and they never require the definite article morpheme.\(^\text{20}\)

*Common nouns.* Common nouns may take either the determinate or nondeterminate attribute value.\(^\text{21}\) The determinate attribute is associated with common nouns (1) that have been named or defined in previous context, (2) that are well known (i.e., equivalent to a proper noun), or (3) that have bound forms delimited by determinate phrases or pronouns (i.e., they are construct forms). The same is true for countable, measurable, and characteristic nouns.

*Abstract nouns.* Abstract nouns do not usually take the determinate attribute when used in the free (absolute) form, but may be made determinate by a determinate genitive.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{אהבה} & \quad \text{— love} \\
\text{אהבה אלוהים} & \quad \text{— the love of God.}
\end{align*}
\]

The definite article morpheme is *not* used with determinate common nouns in the following cases:

(1) common nouns with a bound form (i.e., construct state nouns).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{בית תמר} & \quad \text{— The house of the king.} \\
\text{בנו יגאל} & \quad \text{— The sons of Jacob.}
\end{align*}
\]

(2) common nouns with a pronoun suffix.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{מלכיكم} & \quad \text{— Your kings} \\
\text{מלכותה} & \quad \text{— His kingdom}
\end{align*}
\]

In these cases the nouns in the construct state are made determinate by a determinate genitive.

Combinations of the determination attribute and the number attribute are used to specify the various degrees to which the exact identity of the given nouns is defined.

*The singular, non-determinate combination.* The singular, non-determinate combination specifies one of the following degrees of determination, depending on the context in which the named class is used.

\[^{20}\text{However, see the previous discussion of proper nouns for some apparent idiomatic exceptions.}\]

\[^{21}\text{Of the 107,546 instances of common nouns in the WTS text, 22,301 are marked as definite by a prepositive definite article.}\]
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

(1) The noun refers to a typical representative of the class, where English must use the indefinite article, as in

A man is ________
A man does_________

where the noun is used only as the subject of a clause.

Which if a man does, he shall live by them. (Neh. 9:29)

Will a man rob God? (Mal. 3:8)

Yet a man is born to trouble (Job 5:7)

Will a man make gods for himself? (Jer. 16:20)

(2) The noun is a predicate object and refers to nonspecific member(s) of the class, where English uses the plural, as in “I will cause men to walk upon you” (Ezek. 36:12).

I will multiply men upon you (Ezek. 36:10)

Yes, I will cause men to walk on you (Ezek. 36:12)

You devour men (Ezek. 36:13)

to therefore you shall devour men no more (Ezek. 36:14)

I will increase their men like a flock. (Ezek. 36:37)

Why do You make men like fish of the sea? (Hab. 1:14)

(3) The noun is a predicate nominative or predicate object which refers to the class collectively, where English uses no article, as in “What is man...?”

Examples (Predicate object):

I will consume man and beast (Zep. 1:3)

I will multiply upon you man and beast. (Ezek. 36:11)
Chapter 2  

The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

Example (Predicate Nominative):

What is man that You are mindful of him? (Psa. 8:4 [5])

(4) The noun is a predicate nominative and refers to that which possesses or manifests all the essential characteristics and nature of the named class. English uses no article and may use the plural when the subject is plural.

Now the Egyptians are men, and not God; And their horses are flesh, and not spirit. (Isa. 31:3)

For He is not man, that He should relent. (1 Sam. 15:29)

You are men, I am your God (Ezek. 34:31)

(5) The noun is a predicate nominative and refers to a specific unnamed member of the class where English uses the indefinite article.

And Esau was a skillful hunter, a man of the field; but Jacob was a mild man. (Gen. 25:27)

Look, Esau my brother is a hairy man, and I am a smooth-skinned man. (Gen. 27:11)

And he was a successful man. (Gen. 39:2)

Noah was a just man. (Gen. 6:9)

Note that these predicate nominatives all have an adjective modifier. In these cases the Hebrew noun does not make use of the indefinite article as in the next category.

(6) The noun is the subject or predicate object and refers to a specific unnamed, not previously mentioned member of the class, where English must use the indefinite article, and where Hebrew may use the optional indefinite article דא.

Note that the word דא may also be used as an indefinite article with personal nouns, i.e., אישה מצרית — an Egyptian (Gen. 39:1), אישה וגרית — a harlot (Jer. 3:3).
Now there was a certain man from Zorah (Judg. 13:2)
Now there was a certain man of Ramathaim Zophim (1 Sam 1:1)
Now a certain man saw it and told Joab (2 Sam. 18:10)
There is a certain people scattered... (Est. 3:8)
Now a certain man from the mountains of Ephraim (Judg. 17:1)
I have gotten a man from the LORD (Gen. 4:1)
I have killed a man (Gen. 4:23)
Now a certain man found him (Gen. 37:15)

The plural non-determinate combination. This combination specifies one of the following degrees of determination, depending on the context in which the named class is used.

1. The noun is a predicate nominative and refers to specific, unnamed members of the class, where English uses the plural.

2. The noun is the subject or predicate object and refers to a specific, unnamed, not previously referenced group of members of the named class, where English uses the plural quantifier “some,” and where Hebrew may use the optional indefinite plural article בְּנֵי.

The first example omits the optional indefinite article בְּנֵי which is found in the others.
Chapter 2 \hspace{1cm} The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

(3) The noun refers to the class collectively, either in a general sense, or as viewing the class as a group of individuals. This is in contrast with the singular collective that views the class as a whole. English uses the plural.

The singular-determinate combination. The singular-determinate combination specifies one of the following degrees of determination, depending on the context in which the named class is to be used.

1. The noun refers to a previously mentioned member of the named class, where English and Hebrew use the singular with a definite article.

2. The noun is the subject and refers to the class collectively as a whole, where English uses the singular.

3. The noun refers to the class collectively, either in a general sense, or as viewing the class as a group of individuals. This is in contrast with the singular collective that views the class as a whole. English uses the plural.

Note that in this last example the determinate combination specifies the previously mentioned (the young man) refers to the previously mentioned (man), a permissible but unusual change of noun.

(2) The noun is the subject and refers to the class collectively as a whole, where English uses the singular.

Man shall not live by bread alone. (Deut. 8:3)

For looks at the outward appearance (1 Sam. 16:7)

Let neither nor , , , nor , taste any thing (Jon. 3:7)

Let and be covered with sackcloth (Jon. 3:8)
(3) The noun refers to things or classes of things that are well-known, where English usually uses the indefinite singular with no article.

where there is gold (Gen. 2:11)

Abraham was very rich in livestock, in silver, and in gold. (Gen. 13:2)

to work in gold, in silver, and in bronze (Exod. 31:4)

(4) The noun is in the second person, a vocative. The definite article is a sign of the vocative. The noun may be preceded by a second person pronoun. If it is a subject, it governs a second person verb.

As your soul lives, O king, I do not know. (1 Sam. 17:55)

Help, O king! (2 Sam. 14:4)

The plural determinate combination. This combination specifies that the noun refers to previously mentioned or well-known objects, where English uses the plural with the definite article.

There were certain men . . . , and those men said to him, . . . (Num. 9:6, 7)

The second הם (those men) is determinate because it refers to the previous nondeterminate הם (certain men).

This combination also specifies the second person vocative for plural nouns in a second person context.

Hear, you deaf; And look, you blind (Isa. 42:18)

However, the vocative is frequently lacking the definite article in both the singular and plural.

2.3.4 The Personal Attribute

The personal attribute of nouns distinguishes between the participants of a narrative or discourse. Three attribute values are associated with the personal attribute:
First Person—designates the speaker or narrator
Second Person—designates the reader or listener
Third Person—designates one distinct from the first and second person

With the plural attribute, the first person plural includes the speaker/narrator, and others identified as either second person, third person, or both. The second person plural includes the readers/listeners and perhaps others distinct from the second or first person. The third person plural includes those distinct from the first and second persons. First and second person nouns occur only in speech.

Hebrew has no morphemes to indicate the value of the personal attribute for nouns, consequently this attribute is not generally recognized as a characteristic of nouns. However, the personal attribute is recognized as a necessary characteristic of nouns by various syntactic restraints on the language.23

(1) Pronouns agree with their antecedent noun in number, gender, and person.

(2) Verbs agree with their subject noun in number, gender, and person.24 A single ungrammatical example illustrates the truth of this statement.

[A boy sat upon the chair]

The Hebrew sentence is ungrammatical because the verb (2nd, mas., sing.) does not agree with the subject (3rd, mas., sing.).25

The majority of nouns take the third person attribute. For the second person attribute (vocative), the definite article morpheme is usually used with common nouns, but not with proper nouns.

Help, my lord, O king! (2 Kgs. 6:26)

In other cases an accompanying pronoun is used to identify the person attribute.

23 The personal attribute is grammatically independent of the other nominal attributes. For example, second person (vocative) nouns are found in the context of all three cases: (1) nominative: 2 Sam. 14:4; Isa. 42:18; Zech. 3:8; (2) genitive: Psa. 9:3; 24:1; 30:9; (3) accusative: 2 Sam. 22:50; Psa. 130:1.

24 Verbs have no semantic number, gender, or person. A verb is inflected in grammatical concord with the number, gender, and person of its subject, even when its subject has been elided.

25 For this sentence to be grammatically correct, the subject noun מְלֹא, must be understood as vocative (second person).
But you, son of man, hear what I say to you. (Ezek. 2:8)

I, Daniel, was mourning (Dan. 10:2)

The LORD rebuke you, Satan! The LORD who has chosen Jerusalem rebuke you! (Zech. 3:2)

In still other cases, the personal attribute of subject nouns may be identified only by the conjugate form of the predicate verb.

The personal attribute of compound noun phrases is determined as follows:

1. the first person attribute governs the phrase if at least one of the nouns is first person.

2. the second person attribute governs the phrase if at least one of the nouns is second person, but not first person.

3. the third person attribute governs the phrase in all other cases.

2.3.5 The Range Attribute

The attribute of range specifies the degree of limitation imposed upon the class of objects named by the given noun. If the range of a noun includes all the members of the class it names, the range is regarded as “free.” If the range includes only a part of the members of the class, the range is regarded as “bound.” This attribute corresponds with the absolute-construct state men-

GKC § 128, 130; RJW 28-30; VNK §25.1-3.
tioned in other grammars, and called the bound structure by Williams. Associated with the range attribute are two attribute values (free, bound), and two morpheme values (absolute, construct).\textsuperscript{27}

*The absolute morpheme.* The absolute morpheme is used under three conditions:

1. The absolute morpheme is used to identify common nouns that are unlimited in range except by context. The corresponding attribute has the value free.

2. The absolute morpheme is used to identify common nouns that have a genitive relationship with an immediately preceding noun in the construct state (bound). The corresponding attribute has the value free.

\[
\text{herōn ṭiml̄n}
\]

The absolute noun ṭiml̄n (the king) limits the range of the construct noun herōn (the words of) to those words coming from the king.

3. The absolute morpheme is used also for all nouns to which the range attribute does not apply, that is, for all proper nouns. Proper nouns are completely bound, since they specify one unique object. The corresponding attribute has the value free.

*The construct morpheme.* The construct morpheme is used to identify nouns that are limited in range by an immediately following noun or pronoun suffix.\textsuperscript{28} The noun in the construct form is called the *nomen regens* and the noun that follows in the absolute form is called the *nomen rectum*. The *nomen rectum* limits the range of the *nomen regens*. The *nomen regens* and *nomen rectum* have a genitive relationship, the *nomen rectum* being in the genitive case. The construct morpheme is never used with proper nouns.

\[
\text{ṭiml̄n ḫr̄n}
\]

The houses of the king

\textsuperscript{27} Of the 107,546 instances of common nouns in the WTS text, 51,862 have the absolute form and 55,673 have the construct form. Of the construct forms, 23,586 have a pronoun suffix, 23,154 govern a non-determinate noun, 6,699 govern a determinate noun, and 2,234 do not govern a noun.

\textsuperscript{28} Of the 55,684 instances of construct common nouns in the WTS text, 23,585 have a pronoun suffix, 5,385 have a following absolute noun (5,081 with a conjunctive accent, 282 with a near disjunctive and 22 with a remote); 5,623 have a following absolute noun with an definite article (5,145 with a conjunctive accent, 467 with a near disjunctive, and 11 with a remote); 11,097 have a following proper noun (361 with a definite article, 10,155 have a conjunctive accent, 922 have a near disjunctive, and 20 have a remote); 458 have a following Gentilic noun (271 with a definite article, 371 have a conjunctive accent, 87 have a near disjunctive, and none have a remote); and 6,846 have a following construct noun (5,053 have conjunctive accents, 1,697 have near disjunctives, and 96 have remotes).
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

The absolute noun בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ (the king), the *nomen rectum*, limits the range of the construct noun בֵּיתָן (houses), the *nomen regens*, to those houses belonging to the king.

*The law of determination.* The determination attribute value of a construct noun is defined by the value of the attribute of the governing (limiting) noun. That is, a construct noun (*nomen regens*) is determinate if the absolute noun governing it (*nomen rectum*) is determinate, and it is nondeterminate if the absolute noun is nondeterminate. Construct nouns never take the definite article.

בֵּית הַמֶּלֶךְ —the houses of the king

בֵּיתָן —houses of a king

The construct noun בֵּיתָן (houses of) is determinate in the first example by the determinate absolute noun “the king”; in the second example it is nondeterminate because of the nondeterminate absolute noun “a king.”

Although this rule of determination is quite rigid, there are a few instances where the construct noun is nondeterminate in spite of a determinate *nomen rectum*. This is particularly the case with proper nouns.29

הַיּוֹלָה —a feast of the LORD (Exod. 10:9)

בֶּת הַשָּׁרָאָל —a virgin of Israel (Deut. 22:19)

חֲלָמִים —a piece of ground (2 Sam. 23:11)

*The law of coordination.* Construct nouns are not usually joined together by conjunctions when they are bound by the same *nomen rectum*, as illustrated in the following erroneous example:

[אֵתְשֵׁשׁי, נָעְרֵי. יִשְׂרָאֵל ]

men and brethren of Israel

Instead, the absolute noun is repeated with each construct.

[אֵתְשֵׁשׁי יִשְׂרָאֵל יִשְׂרָאֵל]

Men of Israel and brethren of Israel.

A few exceptions are found.

כְּסֵי הַלָּשׁוֹן שָׁמָיִם: the literature and language of the Chaldeans (Dan. 1:4)

מבַחֲרוֹת וּצֵאִים the choice and best of Lebanon (Ezek. 31:16)

29 GKC § 127e.
Absolute nouns may be grouped together by conjunctions when they jointly limit the same construct noun.

אֱלֹהִיָּא הַשָּׁלוֹם הַשְּׂלָל
the mother of Jacob and Esau (Gen. 28:5)

The law of successive genitives. Construct nouns may appear in sequence, in which case the successive limitation is as follows:

\[(J_1(j_2(j_3N)))\text{ English order}\]

(ביר (בָּנִי (מלך יִשְׂרָאֵל))
(The house of (the sons of (the king of Israel)))

The absolute noun \(N (ִיִּשְׂרָאֵל —Israel)\) limits the range of the immediately preceding construct noun \(J_3 (ֲמִלְךָ —king)\) to only the king of Israel. The noun phrase \(J_3N (ֲמִלְךָ יִשְׂרָאֵל —the king of Israel)\) limits the range of the next preceding construct noun \(J_2 (בָּנִי —sons)\) to only the sons of the king of Israel. The noun phrase \(J_2J_3N (בָּנִי יִשְׂרָאֵל —the sons of the king of Israel)\) limits the next preceding construct noun \(J_1 (בֵּית —house)\) to only the house of the sons of the king of Israel.

This hierarchy of range limitation continues in the same manner to the fourth and successive construct nouns that may occur. Practicality is the only limit to the number of construct nouns that may appear in sequence.\(^{31}\)

The law of nonintervention.\(^{32}\) Nothing may intervene between a construct noun and the genitive absolute noun (nomen rectum) that governs it. There are five qualifications to this otherwise invariant law.

(1) A construct noun may follow another construct noun when there is a series of genitives. This forms a construct chain of more than two links, the last of which is an absolute noun. The law of nonintervention then applies to the entire series.

יִמּוֹת יִשְׂרָאֵל
the days of the years of the life of my fathers (Gen. 47:9)

\(^{30}\) The symbol \(N\) represents a noun; the symbol \(J\) represents a construct noun and the subscript number distinguishes one from the other.

\(^{31}\) The longest string of construct nouns is four which occurs three times: Exod. 39:32; Exod. 40:6; Neh. 10:36.

\(^{32}\) Blau, p. 54; GKC § 128; Muraoka § 129a.
(2) The definite article may precede the *nomen rectum*. However, since the definite article is merely a prepositive morpheme of the *nomen rectum*, it does not constitute an intervention.

(3) The locative He may follow the first construct as a postpositive terminative suffix;\textsuperscript{33} it is regarded as the equivalent of a morpheme and not as an intervention.

(4) Although it is not common, the construct may receive a pronoun suffix. Usually the pronoun is attached to the *nomen rectum* even though it modifies the construct.

But where the sense of style requires, the construct may receive the pronoun suffix. This is necessary to avoid ambiguity. Since the pronoun is a suffix, it must be regarded as part of the construct word, and not as an intervention.

(5) Although it is not common, a negative may precede the *nomen rectum*. The negative is usually attached to the *nomen rectum* by *Maqqeph*, making it equivalent to another construct. Actually, as demonstrated later, a negative may be regarded as a prepositive morpheme, and thus part of the *nomen rectum*. As such, it is not an intervention.

\textsuperscript{33} UT, 11.1
Apart from these five qualifications, the law of nonintervention is not broken. Apparent violations of this law are best explained on the basis of phonetics and rhythm, as the next section explains.

Other Uses of the Construct Form. A construct form comes about when the language places two words in such close rhythmical relationship that they receive only one major accent. The first word of the pair is linked to the following word by Maqqeph, it loses its major accent, and undergoes phonetic changes that produce the construct form. The second word receives the major accent and retains its standard (absolute) form.35

The genitive relationship between nouns regularly produces this condition: The nomen regens has the construct form and the nomen rectum has the absolute form. This construction is known as a construct chain; and because it is so common in Hebrew, it may mistakenly be regarded as the only use of the construct form. Actually, since the construct form is brought about by phonetic and rhythmical, not syntactical influences, Hebrew less frequently exhibits other cases of the construct form not associated with the genitive relationship between nouns. The most common cases are the use of the construct form with adjectives and participles. Gesenius noted several such constructions: “The construct state . . . is frequently employed in rapid narrative as a connective form, even apart from the genitive relation.”36 The following cases were listed:

(1) The construct form frequently governs prepositional phrases, particularly in prophecy and poetry, especially when the construct word is a participle.

as the joy in the harvest (Isa. 9:3 [2])

those who go down to the stones of the pit (Isa. 14:19)


35 GKC § 89a. Sometimes the Maqqeph is lacking, in which case the construct form retains its major accent (usually a conjunctive accent); but the word retains its construct form as though the accent were not present.

36 GKC § 130 a-c.

37 A construct noun precedes a prepositional phrase 125 times (76 have conjunctive accents and 48 have near disjunctive accents).
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

(2) The construct form frequently governs a relative pronoun clause.\(^{38}\)

\[
\text{לְׁהַצִֵ֥יל אֶת־אִישֶָ֖הּ מִיַּ֣ד מַכֵָ֑הוּ}
\]

the place where Joseph was confined (Gen. 40:3)\(^{39}\)

\[
ְׁ
\]

all the days that the cloud stayed above the tabernacle. (Num. 9:18)

(3) The construct form frequently governs a participle functioning as a substantive.\(^{40}\)

\[
ְׁ
\]

to rescue her husband from the hand of the one attacking him (Deut. 25:11)

(4) The construct form frequently governs an infinitive construct clause functioning as a modifier.\(^{41}\)

\[
ְׁ
\]

Now it came to pass, at the time for her to give birth, (Gen. 38:27)

(5) The construct form frequently governs a cardinal number quantifying a noun phrase.\(^{42}\)

\[
ְׁ
\]

A construct noun is followed by a relative pronoun clause 224 times (192 have conjunctive accents, 17 have near disjunctives, and 15 have remotes).

\[
ְׁ
\]

Note the disjunctive accent on a construct form. But this is a necessity because of the laws of accents in spite of the syntax.

\[
ְׁ
\]

A construct noun is followed by a participle 610 times (482 have conjunctive accents, 123 have near disjunctives, and 5 have remotes).

\[
ְׁ
\]

A construct noun is followed by an infinitive construct 142 times (84 have conjunctive accents, 52 have near disjunctives, and 6 have remotes).

\[
ְׁ
\]

A construct noun is followed by a cardinal number 377 times (284 have conjunctive accents, 83 have near disjunctives, and 10 have remotes).
And Noah was five hundred years old, (Gen. 5:32)

The men took hold of his hand, his wife’s hand, and the hands of his two daughters (Gen 19:16)

And at that time we took the land from the hand of the two kings of the Amorites who were on this side of the Jordan, (Deut. 3:8)

(6) The construct form rarely governs an ordinal number quantifying a noun phrase. your sons shall sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation." (2 Kgs. 10:30 NKJ)

(7) The construct form frequently governs an adjective. "and if you see among the captives a beautiful woman (Deut. 21:11)

He delivers them out of the hand of the wicked. (Psa. 97:10)

(8) The construct form occasionally governs an interrogative pronoun. And said, "Whose daughter are you? (Gen. 24:23)

So what wisdom do they have? (Jer. 8:9)

(9) The construct form occasionally governs an adverb. This shall be a continual burnt offering throughout your generations (Exod. 29:42)

The width of the court on the east side shall be fifty cubits. (Exod. 27:13)

43 A construct noun is followed by an ordinal number 3 times (2 have conjunctive accents, one has a near disjunctives): 1 Kgs. 6:31; 2 Kgs. 10:30; 15:12.

44 A construct noun is followed by an adjective 642 times (602 have conjunctive accents, 37 have near disjunctives, and 3 have remotes).

45 A construct noun is followed by an interrogative 13 times (always with a conjunctive accent).

46 A construct noun is followed by an adverb 54 times (45 have conjunctive accents, 8 have near disjunctives, and 1 has a remote).
(10) The construct form rarely governs a personal pronoun usually functioning in place of the copulative verb.\(^{47}\)

כִ֥י אֹ֙וֹת הִ֜וא בֵָּ֤י וּבֵָּֽינֵיכֶםֹ֙ לְׁדֹרִֹ֣תֵיכֵֶ֔ם
For it is a sign between Me and you throughout your generations. (Exod. 31:13)

(11) The construct form rarely governs a negative.\(^{48}\)

וְׁ֜זֶָ֗ה מְׁקִ֣וֹם לֹא־יָדַָּֽע־אֵָּֽל׃
And this is the place of him who does not know God. (Job 18:21)

(12) The construct form rarely governs an infinitive absolute functioning as a noun.\(^{49}\)

לֶָ֭֔קַחַת מוּסִַ֣ר הַשְׁכֵָ֑ל
To receive the instruction of wisdom, (Prov. 1:3)

(13) The construct form sometimes governs an independent clause.\(^{50}\) But these may be understood as cases where the relative pronoun is elided.

בּוֹרְחֵ֗והֶל:  by the hand of (whomever else) You may send (Exod. 4:13)

(14) The construct form is sometimes followed by Waw conjunctive when the connection is strong.\(^{51}\)

מִשְׁלָּה פָרֹֹ֙חַ וְׁתָגֵָ֗ל אַַ֚ף גִּלִַ֣ת וְׁרַנֵֵּ֔ן
at the noise of the horsemen, the wagons, and the chariots (Ezek. 26:10)

The word פָרֹֹ֙חַ (horsemen) has the construct form.

פָרֹֹ֙חַ תִפְׁרַ֜ח וְׁתָגֵָ֗ל אַַ֚ף גִּלִַ֣ת וְׁרַנֵֵּ֔ן
It shall blossom abundantly and rejoice, Even with joy and singing. (Isa. 35:2)

\(^{47}\) A construct noun is followed by a personal pronoun 5 times (always with a conjunctive accent): Exod. 31:13; 14; 17; 2 Kgs. 9:17; Nah. 2:9.

\(^{48}\) A construct noun is followed by a negative 3 times (one has a conjunctive accent, and two have a near disjunctive): Job 18:21; Psa. 81:6; Lam. 1:14.

\(^{49}\) A construct noun is followed by an infinitive absolute 4 times (always with a conjunctive accent): Prov. 1:3; 31:8; Isa. 14:23; Ezek. 16:49.

\(^{50}\) A construct noun is followed by a finite verb 24 times: Exod. 4:13; Lev. 7:9; 14:26; 1 Sam. 25:15; 2 Sam. 22:1; 1 Chr. 29:3; Job 21:30; 24:19; Psa. 71:18; 74:3; 90:15x2; 104:9; 129:6; 148:6; Prov. 17:14; Isa. 15:1-2; 29:1; 40:4; Jer. 20:8; 48:36; Hos. 1:2; 14:3.

\(^{51}\) A construct noun is followed by Waw conjunctive 4 times, always with a conjunctive or near disjunctive accent: Isa. 33:6; 35:2; Ezek. 31:16; Dan. 1:4.
None of the above should be mistaken for a construct chain: no genitive relationships were indicated. They represented the purely phonetic and rhythmical cases.

**Construct Forms of Other Parts of Speech.** The same phonetic and rhythmical conditions occasionally produce construct-like forms in other parts of speech, such as particles, adverbs, prepositions, pronouns, and even verbs. When such words are closely related rhythmically to a following word attached by *Maqqeph*, the accent is drawn away from the word, resulting in a construct-like reduction of the vowel of a final closed syllable.

Examples of particles:
- מִי (there is), but מְיָה
- נָא (sign of accusative), but נָה

Example of an adverb:
- כָּךְ (thus, so), but כָּה (so be it, Josh. 2:21)

Examples of prepositions:
- בָּא (with), but בָּה
- בָּשָׂר (through), but בָּשָׂר (through the window, Josh. 2:15)

Example of a pronoun:
- מָה (what?), but מָה

Examples of verbs:
- לָקֶר (be separated), but לָקֶר (Gen. 13:9)
- לָהַמר (look), but לָהַמר (Gen. 15:5)
- יָכֶר (he will write), but יָכֶר (Josh. 8:32)
- יָמָש (he will rule), but יָמָש (Isa. 19:4)
- יָרַם (he will tread), but יָרַם (Isa. 41:25)

---

52 Later discussion of relative pronoun clauses and infinitive phrases explains how a genitive relation may exist with a preceding construct.
2.3.6 The Case Attribute

The use of case ending morphemes was discontinued in Hebrew about 1000 BC. Consequently, case is not included in the grammatical inflection of nouns. However, the syntax of the language clearly indicates that the attribute of case is still operative in Hebrew and that the information associated with case is conveyed by word order, and in some cases by a particle.

The case attribute designates the syntactic role that a noun plays in a sentence or clause. It distinguishes between the subject, object, and various oblique roles. There are no case morphemes, but there are three values associated with the case attribute (nominative, genitive, accusative).

2.3.6.1 The nominative case. The nominative case is associated with three syntactic roles.

(1) The subject nominative. The nominative case is used with a noun that is the subject of a clause or sentence.

กาאַֽרְוָ֣ר אֵלָּ֣הָּ
the serpent said to the woman (Gen. 3:4)

(2) The predicate nominative. The nominative case is used with a noun that is the predicate of a copulative clause.

כָּֽפָרָ֥וָ֣ר אֵלָּ֣הָּ מַעְרִ֥ים
For you were strangers in the land of Egypt. (Deut. 10:19)

(3) The rhetorical absolute nominative. When a word or phrase is placed first in a sentence for rhetorical emphasis, and then resumed later in the sentence by a pronoun or other word, the word or phrase given such rhetorical emphasis is called a rhetorical absolute (casus pendens). The nominative case is used with the rhetorical absolute even when it is resumed later in the sentence by a genitive or accusative.

Examples of resuming nominative:

כָּֽפָרָ֥וָ֣ר אֵלָּ֣הָּ מַעְרִ֥ים
The land . . . it is not like the land of Egypt (Deut. 11:10)

The nominative absolute is הָֽאֵלָּ֣הָּ מַעְרִ֥ים (the land); it is resumed by the nominative pronoun הָֽאֵלָּ֣הָּ מַעְרִ֥ים (it).

53 RJW, 31-60.
54 The particle הָֽאֵלָּ֣הָּ מַעְרִ֥ים is used as the sign of a determinate accusative.
55 GKC § 143.
56 The pronoun הָֽאֵלָּ֣הָּ מַעְרִ֥ים may be regarded as the copulative in this case, rather than a resumptive pronoun.
The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

2.3.6.2 The genitive case. The genitive case is associated with words that occupy an oblique role in sentences and clauses. The genitive case is associated with the following sentence functions:

(1) The object of prepositions. Prepositions govern nouns in the genitive case. The syntax of prepositional phrases is described in a later chapter. The classes of prepositional phrases may be categorized as follows:

(a) The genitive is the object of a verb governed by means of the preposition.

(b) The genitive is the indirect object of a verb governed by means of the preposition.

(c) The genitive expresses agent, instrument, etc., in verbal clauses, by means of the preposition.

(d) The genitive is related to another noun by means of the preposition.

(2) The construct noun relationship. When two nouns are in the construct-absolute relationship, the nomen rectum is in the genitive case. The genitive relationship comes about from construct transformations on deep-structure dependent clauses. The transformations are not defined here, but in the examples that follow the underlying dependent clauses are identified. The construct relationship expresses various types of the genitive; the type of genitive depends upon the relationship between the two nouns in the dependent clause from which the genitive is derived. The following is a list of the most common types of the genitive.
(a) *The genitive of subject.* When the genitive names the subject of the dependent clause, it is called the subjective genitive. The construct (*nomen regens*) is a verbal noun derived from the verb of the dependent clause.

\[
\text{their hands} \\
\text{the works of}
\]

Clause: *Their own hands made idols.* \(^{57}\) (Jer. 1:16)

\[
\text{a land} \\
\text{flowing with milk and honey (Deut. 6:3)}
\]

Clause: *The land flows with milk and honey.*

Because of the LORD’s *love* for Israel forever
Clause: *The LORD will love Israel forever.* \(^{58}\) (1 Kgs. 10:9)

(b) *The genitive of object.* When the genitive names the object of the verb in the dependent clause, it is called the objective genitive. The construct noun (*nomen regens*) is a verbal noun or a participle derived from the verb of the dependent clause.

\[
\text{a land} \\
\text{flowing with milk and honey (Deut. 6:3)}
\]

Clause: *The land flows with milk and honey.*

The verb was transformed into a construct verbal noun governing its compound object in the genitive.

\[
\text{violence against your brother Jacob (Obad. 10)}
\]

Clause: *You did violence against your brother Jacob.*

The verb “did violence” was transformed into a construct verbal noun governing its object in the genitive.

\(^{57}\) The verb (made) was transformed into a construct verbal noun (works) governed by the subjective genitive (their hands).

\(^{58}\) Note that the verb (love) was transformed into a verbal noun governed by the subjective genitive (the LORD); the verbal noun continues to govern an accusative object and an adverb.
haters of covetousness (Exod. 18:21)
Clause: The men hate covetousness.

(c) *The genitive of possession.* When the genitive noun names the owner of the *nomen regens*, it is called the possessive genitive.

the house of the king (1 Kgs. 9:10)
Clause: The king has a house.

the wisdom of Solomon (1 Kgs. 5:10, Heb.)
Clause: Solomon has wisdom

(d) *The genitive of material.* When the genitive noun names the material of which the *nomen regens* is composed, it is called the genitive of material.

articles of silver and articles of gold (1 Kgs. 10:25)
Clause: Some articles were made of silver and some articles were made of gold.

an ark of acacia wood (Exod. 25:10)
Clause: The ark was made of acacia wood.

(e) *The genitive of characteristic.* When the genitive noun names a quality or attribute of the *nomen regens*, it is called the characteristic genitive. The genitive is frequently translated into English as an adjective.

a mighty man of power,
or a powerful and mighty man. (1 Sam. 9:1)
Clause: The mighty man has power.

a wife of virtue,
or a virtuous wife (Prov. 31:10)
Clause: The wife has virtue.

balances of justice,
or just balances (Lev. 19:36)
Clause: The balances weigh according to justice.

(f) *Genitive of purpose or result.* When the genitive noun names the purpose or result or the *nomen regens*, it is called the genitive of purpose.

sheep for slaughter (Psa. 44:22 [23])
Clause: The sheep were for the purpose of slaughter.
(g) *Genitive of kind.* When the genitive noun names the genus or kind of the *nomen regens*, it is called the genitive of kind.

\[
\text{על מין} \quad \text{עֵין}
\]

wood of acacia, or acacia wood (Exod. 37:10)
Clause: The genus of the wood is acacia.

(h) *Genitive of source.* When the genitive noun names the source of the *nomen regens*, it is called genitive of source.

\[
\text{ברר ירה} \quad \text{בִּרְרָה יָהָה}
\]

the word of the LORD (Jer. 1:2)
Clause: The LORD spoke a word.

(i) *Genitive of agent.* When the genitive noun names the agent of the action of a construct passive participle, it is called the genitive of agent.

\[
\text{יאל אָלֶיה} \quad \text{אִלֶה}
\]

Smitten by God (Isa. 53:4)
Clause: God struck him.

\[
\text{שָׁרַף פָּרָה} \quad \text{שָׁרַף פָּרָה}
\]

burned with fire (Isa. 1:7)
Clause: Fire burned your cities.

(j) *Genitive of number.* When the genitive noun names the thing quantified by a construct number or other quantifier, it is called the genitive of number.

\[
\text{ULATE מְלֶךָ} \quad \text{מְלֶךָ}
\]

one of your cities (Deut. 13:12 [13])

\[
\text{על מִלֶּךָ} \quad \text{מִלֶּךָ}
\]

both her kings (Isa. 7:16)

\[
\text{על כֹּל לוֹֹוֹ} \quad \text{כֹּל לוֹֹוֹ}
\]

all nations (Isa. 2:2)

(k) *Genitive of name.* When the genitive noun gives the name of the *nomen regens*, it is called the genitive of name.

\[
\text{אר ארֶה} \quad \text{ארֶה}
\]

the river Euphrates (Gen. 15:18)
Clause: the name of the river is the Euphrates.

\[
\text{אר מִלִּיְהָ} \quad \text{מִלִּיְהָ}
\]

the land of Egypt (Exod. 7:19)
Clause: The name of the land is Egypt.

\[
\text{אר מְרוֹמֵל} \quad \text{מְרוֹמֵל}
\]

the mountain Carmel (1 Kgs. 18:19)
Clause: The name of the mountain is Carmel.
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

(1) **Genitive of extent.** When the genitive noun names the limit or extent of the *nomen regens*, it is called the genitive of extent.

- **NIQPA**
  - Water (up to the) ankles (Ezek. 47:3)
  - Clause: The water reached to Ezekiel's ankles.

- **MIQPA**
  - water (up to the) waist (Ezek. 47:4)
  - Clause: The water reached to Ezekiel's waist.

(m) **Genitive of time.** When the genitive noun names a point of time for the *nomen regens*, it is called the genitive of time.

- **NI✌PA**
  - at the time of evening (Gen. 24:11)
  - Clause: The time was evening.

- **NI✌PA**
  - at the time of noon (Jer. 20:16)
  - Clause: The time was noon.

(n) **The cognate genitive of comparison.** When the genitive noun is the determinate plural of the construct noun, it is called the cognate genitive of comparison. This is an idiom that expresses the superlative degree of comparison with respect to members of the class named by the nouns.

- **NI✌PA**
  - the song of songs, or the best song (Song 1:1)

- **NI✌PA**
  - the Holy of Holies, or the Most Holy (place) (Exod. 26:34)

- **NI✌PA**
  - God of gods and Lord of lords (Deut. 10:17)

(3) **The construct adjective relationship.** When a noun is the *nomen rectum* of a construct adjective, it is in the genitive case. Adjectives take the construct form in only very limited circumstances.

(a) **Genitive of specification.** When the genitive noun names the part to which a construct adjective applies, it is called the genitive of specification. When an adjective modifies only a part of an object, the adjective takes the construct form and its genitive names the part.
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

2.3.6.3 The accusative case. The accusative case is associated with eight syntactic roles.

(1) The objective accusative. When the noun is the direct object of a transitive verb, it takes the accusative case. Hebrew usually uses the particle "who" with a determinate accusative of direct object. The "who" is the sign of a determinate accusative; it is not translated.

In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth (Gen. 1:1)

The nondeterminate accusative direct object does not use "who".

And the earth brought forth grass (Gen 1:12)

With verbs requiring two accusatives, determinate accusatives are preceded by "who", and nondeterminate accusatives are not.

Examples of one determinate and one nondeterminate accusative:

stiff of neck or stiff-necked (Exod. 32:9)
Clause: The necks of the people are stiff.

handsome in form and handsome in appearance (Gen. 39:6)
Clause: The form of Joseph was handsome and his appearance was handsome.

(b) Genitive of comparison. When the genitive noun names the class of a thing being compared by a construct superlative adjective, it is called the genitive of comparison.

the best of his own field and the best of his own vineyard (Exod. 22:5 [4])
the best of the sheep and oxen (1 Sam. 15:9,15)
in the best of the land (Gen. 47:6,11)
the best of the devoted things (1 Sam. 15:21)
to the best (place) in the house of the women (Est. 2:9)
the youngest of his sons (2 Chr. 21:17)
from the greatest to the least of them (Jon. 3:5)
(The pronouns are in the genitive case.)
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

Then he built of the stones an altar (1 Kgs. 18:32)

he made his sons judges (1 Sam. 8:1)

And the Lord God formed man of dust (Gen. 2:7)

Example of two determinate accusatives:

You shall teach them to your children (Deut. 11:19)

(2) The cognate accusative. For certain kinds of emphasis Hebrew may use an accusative noun derived from the same root letters as the verb; such an accusative noun is called a cognate accusative. This idiom is used to express intensity, concreteness, and so forth.

Literally: There they feared a fear (Psa. 14:5)
Expressing the idiom of intensity: They are in great fear there.

Literally: and they conspired a conspiracy (2 Kgs. 12:20 [21])
Expressing concreteness: And they made a conspiracy.

(3) The accusative of part. Hebrew uses the accusative to express the part or member specially affected by the action.

he was diseased in his feet (1 Kgs. 15:23)

let us not strike him in the life (Gen. 37:21)
(i.e., let us not kill him)

For you have struck all my enemies on the cheek bone. (Psa. 3:7 [8])

(4) The temporal accusative. Hebrew uses the accusative to express duration of time. The accusative is identified by the absence of a preposition and by the use of the accusative particle הַגָּלוֹת when the noun of time is determinate.

Examples of determinate time period:

unleavened bread shall be eaten seven days (Exod. 13:7)

I prostrated myself before the Lord forty days and forty nights (Deut. 9:25)
Examples without נָן (note absence of prepositions):

קָפֵר הָאֲכָל כָלִיָּמִי תְרֵעָה:
And you shall eat dust all the days of your life (Gen. 3:14)

לֶחָה | מַעֲקֵל
stay this night (Ruth 3:13)

שִׁיחֵם שִׁנֵּים בָּלָה
he reigned two years (2 Sam. 2:10)

וַיהְלַם לֶכֶה
and he sent them away by night (Josh. 8:3)

(5) The spatial accusative. Hebrew uses the accusative of space to express extent or termination with verbs of motion. Like the temporal accusative, it is identified by the absence of prepositions and by the use of the accusative particle נָן when the place is determinate.

Examples of determinate place with נָן.

לָלַה אֲרֵר תְהֹרָה:
and go up to the mountains (Num. 13:17)

לָלַה אֲרֵר הָאָרֶץ תְהֹרָה יְהוֹאָלָה מֵאֵית הַגְּדוֹלָה מַלְאֹת הַגְּדוֹלָה
and we went through all that great and fearful wilderness (Deut. 1:19)

Example without נָן:

לֵגֶה קֶשֶׁל
and go out to the field (Gen. 27:3)

(6) Accusative of reason. Hebrew uses an accusative noun (or phrase) to state a reason for the verbal action.

קַלְּרוֹבָה תּוֹמָה רָאָה שֶׁמֶר נְשָׁת
You will not go there for fear of briars and thorns (Isa. 7:25)

(7) Adverbial accusative. Hebrew uses the accusative to express manner; nouns used adverbially without prepositions are regarded as accusatives. The particle נָן is not used in this construction. See the later discussion on adverbs.

הָשֵׂבָה בְּרֶמֶשֶׁת:
and you dwelt in safety (1 Sam. 12:11)

קָפֵר אֲחָלָה קְפִּימָה:
and make you walk upright (Lev. 26:13)

59 See also Judg. 19:18; Ezek. 21:25.

60 Categories (4), (5), and (6) above may also be regarded as adverbial accusatives.
(8) **Accusative of subject.** Occasionally Hebrew uses the accusative anomalously with the subject of a verb, frequently so with impersonal passives.

- **לְיִשְׁרָאֵל לָא כֹהֵן מוֹרֶה**
  - the iron (ax head) fell into the water (2 Kgs. 6:5)
- **לֹא אֱלֹהִי אֱמֶָ֗ת וּלָֹא כֹהֵֵ֥ן מוֹרֶֶ֖ה וּלְֵׁ֥א תוֹרָָּֽה׃**
  - Or shall all the fish of the sea be gathered together for them (Num. 11:22)
- **וְׁיָמִֵ֥ים רַבִֶ֖ים לְׁיִשְׁרָאֵָ֑ל**
  - and the words of Esau were told to Rebekah (Gen. 27:42)

### 2.3.7 The Negation Attribute

The negation attribute designates the positive or negative meaning of a given substantive. The lexicon records the positive meaning. The negative meaning may be specified by antonyms or by affixing the negative morpheme. Associated with the negation attribute are two attribute values (positive, negative) and two morphemes (a zero morpheme, the negative morpheme). The positive attribute is designated by the zero morpheme. The negative is regarded herein as a morpheme, not as a separate word. It is much like English non- and un-. Several reasons justify regarding the negative as a morpheme.

1. In all cases the negative immediately precedes the substantive; nothing may intervene.
2. If the substantive requires the inseparable preposition, it is attached to the negative.

- **וְׁיָמִֵ֥ים רַבִֶ֖ים לְׁיִשְׁרָאֵָ֑ל לְׁ לִֹ֣א׀ אֱלֹהִֵ֣י אֱמֶָ֗ת וּלָֹא כֹהֵֵ֥ן מוֹרֶֶ֖ה וּלְֵׁ֥א תוֹרָָּֽה׃**
  - For a long time Israel has been without the true God, without a teaching priest, and without law; (2 Chr. 15:3)

The usual negative is **לָא**. Hebrew substantives are usually used with their positive meaning and there is no morpheme to designate it as such. The opposite, negative, or antithetical meaning of a substantive is expressed by the use of the prepositional morpheme **לָא**, usually joined to the substantive with Maqqeph. **לָא** is used for unconditional negation, referring to that which is not a member of the class named by the noun.

- **כִּי לָא אֱלֹהִי אֱמֶָ֗ת וּלָֹא כֹהֵֵ֥ן מוֹרֶֶ֖ה׃**
  - as if a staff could lift up, (as if it were) not wood! (Isa. 10:15)
- **כִּי לָא אֱלֹהִי אֱמֶָ֗ת וּלָֹא כֹהֵֵ֥ן מוֹרֶֶ֖ה׃**
  - For He is not a man, that He should relent. (1 Sam. 15:29)

---

61 GKC § 152; RJW, 406.

62 It negates a noun 228 times.
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Attributes of Nouns

La אָשֶׁר רָכִּים גְּאוּ הָאָשֶׁר
Litally: Not a man of words am I. (Exod. 4:10)\(^{63}\)
NKJV: I am not eloquent.

Examples of a negated nomen rectum governing a construct:

בָּרִךְ לֹא אָשֶׁר בָּרִיךְ לֹא אָשֶׁר
a sword not of man and a sword not of mankind (Isa. 31:8)

אָמַּוּדָה לֹא יָבוּד
a morning without clouds (2 Sam. 23:4)

Examples of negated substantives governed by an inseparable preposition:

בַּלְאַרְאֵל . . . בַּלְאַרְאֵל
by (what is) not God . . . by (those who are) not a nation (Deut. 32:21)

סְמַעֲתֵךְ לֹא בָּרֵךְ
you who rejoice in naught (Amos 6:13)\(^{64}\)

ךְֶשֶׁבֶת בַּלְאַלְוָדִים
sworn by (those that are) not gods (Jer. 5:7)\(^{65}\)

Occasionally other negatives are used with nouns. The following sections discuss their usage and special sense.

The negative הָא. Sometimes a substantive is negated by הָא, with the meaning “without.”

This negative also intervenes between the substantive and inseparable prepositions.

לֹא יִמְתָּה בֵּית מֶשֶׁר
He shall die for lack of instruction (Prov. 5:23)

זְנוּת אָרֹנים לֹא לְאָלֶף מְסָפֶּר
and cedar trees without number (1 Chr. 22:4)

However, normally when הָא precedes a noun it is the negative copulative of a predicate nominative clause in which the noun has first position prominence.

The negative בְּלַי. Sometimes a substantive is negated by בְּלַי, with the meaning “without.” This negative also intervenes between the substantive and inseparable prepositions.

---

\(^{63}\) See also Isa. 31:3.

\(^{64}\) Some translations render this phrase as the name of a place: Lo-dabar.

\(^{65}\) Other examples: 2 Chr. 13:9; Psa. 44:13; Prov. 13:23; Job 10:22; Jer. 22:13; Hos. 1:9, 2:25.

\(^{66}\) It negates a noun 29 times: Deut. 4:42; 19:4; Josh. 20:3; 20:5; Job 4:11; 6:6; 8:11; 24:7; 24:8; 24:10; 30:8; 31:19; 31:39; 33:9; 34:6; 35:16; 36:12; 38:2; 38:41; 39:16; 41:25; 42:3; Psa. 59:5; 63:2; Isa. 5:13; 5:14; 28:8; Jer. 9:9; Zep. 3:6.
Chapter 2  The Syntactic Atributes of Nouns

The negative בֶּלַּהֲךָ. 67 Sometimes a substantive is negated by בֶּלַּהֲךָ, with the meaning “without,” or “not.”

מֵקַּע בֵּלַּהֲךָ טַּרְחֶּֽה

Literally: a smiting without withdrawal (Isa. 14:6) 68
NKJV: a continual stroke

The negative סֶנֶבָּא. 69 Sometimes a substantive may be negated by סֶנֶבָּא. This negative also intervenes between the substantive and inseparable prepositions.

לִשַּׁע סֶנֶבָּא טַּרְחֶּֽה

Till (there is) no place (Isa. 5:8)

בֵּאָמִּיס סֶנֶבָּא טַּרְחֶּֽה

and they are spent without hope (Job 7:6)

בֵּאָמִּיס לָאָלָבָא בֵּאָמִּיס טַּרְחֶּֽה

in the lack of people (is) the downfall of a prince (Prov. 14:28)

The negative לָא. 70 Although לָא is used almost exclusively with verbs, it sometimes negates nouns when the context is non-indicative, speech, or poetry.

סֶנֶבָּא לָא כְּלָבָא סֶנֶבָּא טַּרְחֶּֽה

Receive my instruction, and not silver. (Prov. 8:10)

סֶנֶבָּא לָא כְּלָבָא סֶנֶבָּא טַּּרְחֶּֽה

Let another man praise you, and not your own mouth;
A stranger, and not your own lips. (Prov. 27:2)

It is used with a noun, לָא כְּלָבָא, “no death” (Prov. 12:28). The early versions, however, read לָא כְּלָבָא, “to death.”

67 It negates a noun 7 times: Gen. 43:3, 5; Num. 32:12; Job 14:12; Isa. 14:6; Ezek. 16:28; Dan. 11:18.
68 Note that the negative is between a construct noun and its nomen rectum.
69 It negates a noun 7 times: Job 7:6; Prov. 14:28; 26:20; Isa. 5:8; 41:12; 45:14; Dan. 8:25.
70 It negates a noun 9 times: 2 Sam. 1:21 2x; Psa. 83:2; Prov. 8:10; 12:28; 17:12; 27:2; Isa. 62:6; Joel 2:13.
2.4 Modifiers of Nouns

Nouns form phrases by being modified by various parts of speech. They may be modified by adjectives, adverbs, quantifiers, other nouns, pronouns, and dependent clauses. The syntax of noun phrases is discussed in Chapter 14.

2.5 The Syntactic Slots of Nouns

Nouns function in several syntactic roles in language. They occupy the subject and object slots of sentences, the predicate nominative slot, the object slot of a preposition, the casus pendens slot, and the adverbial accusative slot. These syntactic roles of nouns are discussed in subsequent chapters.

2.6 Summary

This chapter discusses the definition, classification, derivation, and attributes of nouns.

Definition
A noun is the name of a person, animal, place, thing, quality, state, idea, or action.

Classification
There are at least the following classes of nouns: (1) common nouns, (2) proper nouns, (3) Gentilic nouns, (4) concrete nouns, (5) countable nouns, (6) measurable nouns, (7) abstract nouns, and (8) characteristic nouns.

Derivation
Some Hebrew nouns are primary nouns that seem to exhibit no dependence on other words. Other nouns seem to be derived from a corresponding verb, noun, or adjective.

Attributes
Nouns have seven information bearing attributes. Each of these attributes may assume one of several attribute values. The following table lists the attributes and the attribute values each may assume:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Attribute Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Number</td>
<td>singular, plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Gender</td>
<td>masculine, feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Determination</td>
<td>determinate, non-determinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Person</td>
<td>first, second, third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Range</td>
<td>free (absolute), bound (construct)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Case</td>
<td>nominative, genitive, accusative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. Negation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slots</th>
<th>Subject slot:</th>
<th>Object of verb slot:</th>
<th>Predicate nominative slot:</th>
<th>Object of preposition slot:</th>
<th>Casus pendens slot:</th>
<th>Adverbial accusative slot:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$N^p + Q$</td>
<td>$V + N^o$</td>
<td>$V^c + N$</td>
<td>$P + N$</td>
<td>$N + S$</td>
<td>$S + N^d$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Q = predicate)</td>
<td>(V = verb)</td>
<td>($V^c$ = copulative verb)</td>
<td></td>
<td>($P$ = preposition)</td>
<td>($S$ = sentence/clause)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**
- $N^p$: Positive noun
- $N^o$: Object of verb
- $V$: Verb
- $V^c$: Copulative verb
- $P$: Preposition
- $S$: Sentence/Clause
- $N^d$: Adverbial accusative
CHAPTER 3
The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Adjectives

This chapter presents the characteristics of Hebrew adjectives associated with their syntactic relationships in phrases and clauses. The details of phonology and morphology are not considered except where it is necessary to relate the material to “transformational” concepts in preparation for subsequent chapters. The chapter is foundational, not an exhaustive treatment of all the particulars of Hebrew adjectives.

There are 357 words classified as adjectives in the WTS text, occurring a total of 9,517 times. Table 3.1 lists the number of adjectives by frequency distribution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Number of Adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;= 10</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 50</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 200</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 600</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>601 to 800</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 800</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is evident that most adjectives occur infrequently and relatively few occur very often. In fact 97 occur only once, only 17 occur more than 100 times, and only 4 occur more than 400 times. Table 3.2 lists the 17 adjectives occurring more than 100 times. Actually, the two most frequent ones function as demonstrative pronouns, not adjectives.
Table 3.2
List of Most Frequent Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>זֶה</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>1781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֵלֶה</td>
<td>this</td>
<td>746</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>גָּדוֹל</td>
<td>great</td>
<td>524</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רַב</td>
<td>many</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>טוב</td>
<td>good</td>
<td>373</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רֶע</td>
<td>evil</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רָשָע</td>
<td>wicked</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רָעָה</td>
<td>evil</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>צַדִיק</td>
<td>righteous</td>
<td>206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ראשון</td>
<td>first</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>זָקֵן</td>
<td>old</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אחר</td>
<td>another</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>גבורה</td>
<td>mighty</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חכם</td>
<td>wise</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ישר</td>
<td>upright</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חי</td>
<td>living</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קדוש</td>
<td>holy</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.1 Adjective Defined

Adjectives are words that modify nouns by defining the values of their characteristics, their comparison with other nouns, or their capability or suitability to verbal ideas. Besides these semantic distinctives, adjectives differ from nouns in their morphology and their syntactic role. Nouns have an independent value of gender,¹ and inflect only for their given gender, either

¹ The morphological gender of a given noun is determined by the semantic culture of the Hebrew people. The value is defined by the dictionary, external to any text or discourse. Thus, in a given text, the gender attribute of nouns is an independent variable.
masculine or feminine; adjectives have a dependent value of gender, and inflect for either gender, depending on the gender of the noun they modify.

Nouns are either singular or plural, depending on the semantics of the discourse—that is, the value of their number attribute is defined external to grammar and syntax; for adjectives the value of the number attribute is defined by the rules of syntax—that is, its value is dependent on the number attribute of the noun it modifies. Some nouns may inflect in the dual form for expressing the plural; adjectives have no dual form. In the construct form, most common nouns may govern another noun in the genitive case; adjectives enter this construction under very limited conditions. However, the greatest difference is that adjectives have their own syntactic slots.  

There are two types of adjectives: (1) common adjectives, and (2) derived adjectives. Common adjectives define characteristics, and derived adjectives express comparison, capability, or suitability. Words expressing quantity are treated as a separate part of speech (quantifiers) in Chapter 7.

### 3.2 Common Adjectives

The entities of human discourse belong to various classes, and common nouns are the names of those classes. Entities are defined by the classes to which they belong. They may also be defined by the characteristics they possess; common adjectives are the value names of those characteristics.

The name of a characteristic functions as a noun, whereas the value of the characteristic functions as an adjective. The name of the characteristic may be regarded as the class name of the set of values the characteristic may assume. For example, the characteristic “size” is the class name for the set of “size-values” such as “huge, large, big, . . . little, small, tiny, . . .” A class of objects that possess the characteristic “size” has a “size-value” to correspond with each member of the class. For example, the class “boy” possesses the characteristic “size,” thus each boy in the class has a “size-value” that defines his size with respect to all other boys. All boys with the same “size-value” form a sub-class of boys with a common characteristic value. The clause “These boys are small” defines a sub-class of boys that may be referred to as “small boys.”

Common adjectives usually come in pairs, a value and its symmetrical opposite.

---

2 It is true that an adjective may occupy the slot of a noun, but this is not the primary slot of an adjective; and this occurs only by the accidents of syntax—that is, it sits there only because the noun it modifies has been elided by the law of deletion (§ 14.3.3; 19.4).
little—big
small—large
tiny—huge

A characteristic such as “size” may be ascribed to an object class as a possession. For example:

Boys have (the characteristic) size.

For the clause the boy is big, the underlying deep structure is:

There is a boy.
Boys have (the characteristic) size.
The value of (the characteristic) size for the (previously mentioned) boy is big (as distinguished from other boys of a different size).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Adjectives</th>
<th>Common Adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>יִנְיֹם — needy, poor</td>
<td>נֵס — pleasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָשָׁר — mighty, valiant</td>
<td>קְדֻעַ — speckled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יַעַנְיָה — perennial</td>
<td>קֶפֶר — clean, innocent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָשָׁר — cruel, fierce</td>
<td>צֶהֶר — blind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יַעַנְיָה — spotted, marked</td>
<td>צֵנְבָא — dainty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָבָא — fat</td>
<td>יָנִיה — poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יוֹלֵל — big, large, great</td>
<td>נָרָם — naked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>זָד — insolent, presumptuous</td>
<td>צְנַל — sluggish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָמָר — male</td>
<td>קְדֻעַ — stripped, streaked</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יַט — hot</td>
<td>קְדֻע — barren</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יַט — new</td>
<td>צְהֵרָה — ready</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קָנָח — dark brown, black</td>
<td>צָנָח — ancient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָבָא — wise</td>
<td>צָנָח — rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָפָא — free</td>
<td>צָנָח — little, insignificant, young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָפָא — pure</td>
<td>קָט — small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָפָא — good</td>
<td>קֶל — easy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>זָרָא — beloved</td>
<td>קְט — short, brief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָפָא — barefooted</td>
<td>קֶר — cold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָפָא — old (opp. of new)</td>
<td>קָשְׁה — hard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָפָא — white</td>
<td>קֶר — bad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָפָא — comely, seemly</td>
<td>יֶר — thin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 3 The Syntactic Attributes of Adjectives

3.3 Derived Adjectives

Adjectives may be derived from nouns, verbs, quantifiers, and other adjectives.

3.3.1 Adjectives Derived from Nouns

Adjectives derived from nouns frequently express the idea “characterized by N.”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Derived Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>נזונה</td>
<td>widowed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נדן</td>
<td>outer, external</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>משונה</td>
<td>free, independent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כבשה</td>
<td>deceptive, disappointing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מחנה</td>
<td>full of branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>טווח</td>
<td>uncircumcised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פליטה</td>
<td>calling for judgment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>צבוע</td>
<td>colored</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>правד, נפתול</td>
<td>just, righteous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>צפונה</td>
<td>northern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קוטב</td>
<td>eastern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קריוש, חבר</td>
<td>sacred, holy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קסנה</td>
<td>jealous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ראש</td>
<td>first, chief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רגל</td>
<td>on foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חסד</td>
<td>compassionate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רעה, קדוש</td>
<td>bad, evil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רעה</td>
<td>hairy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לוח</td>
<td>middle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.3.2 Adjectives Derived from Verbs

Hebrew frequently derives adjectives from verbs. Nearly every stative verb has a corresponding adjective that means “characterized by the state V.” Nearly every active verb has a corresponding adjective that means “characterized by the action V.”

It is often said that in Hebrew stative verbs are only conjugated adjectives. This is probably incorrect, but the similar vocalization has led some to this conclusion. Actually it is a linguistic coincidence that the stative participle semantically overlaps with the adjective; consequently the stative participle usually functions as an adjective. Most adjectives derived from stative verbs are common adjectives. English has very few stative verbs, consequently Hebrew statives are usually translated into English as the verb BE + the stative adjective.

Examples of adjectives derived from stative verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stative Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>טֵרָה — it is long</td>
<td>טֵרָה — long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>גָּפֵר — he is guilty</td>
<td>גָּפֵר — guilty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בַּשָּׂר — it is crushed</td>
<td>בַּשָּׂר — thin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָרְסָה — she is with child</td>
<td>יָרְסָה — with child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עָרֶשׁ — he is old</td>
<td>עָרֶשׁ — old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הדֹּר — it is united</td>
<td>הדֹּר — united</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כָּפָה — he is unclean</td>
<td>כָּפָה — unclean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֹא — he is heavy</td>
<td>לֹא — heavy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֹרֶשׁ — it is bitter</td>
<td>מֹרֶשׁ — bitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כָּרַס — he is stubborn</td>
<td>כָּרַס — stubborn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>זָרַז — he is strong</td>
<td>זָרַז — strong</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִילָה — it is deep</td>
<td>מִילָה — deep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִיָּה — he is afflicted</td>
<td>מִיָּה — poor, afflicted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בָּאָה — he is thirsty</td>
<td>בָּאָה — thirsty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׂרָה — it is narrow</td>
<td>שָׂרָה — narrow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בָּשָׂר — he is small</td>
<td>בָּשָׂר — small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בָּשָׂר — he is small</td>
<td>בָּשָׂר — small</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בָּרְס — he is approaching</td>
<td>בָּרְס — approaching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רַע — he is hungry</td>
<td>רַע — hungry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בָּשָׂר — he is satisfied</td>
<td>בָּשָׂר — satisfied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלָה — it is quiet</td>
<td>מִלָה — quiet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Stative verbs sometimes have derived adjectives other than the stative participle. Some have the form of the passive participle or the infinitive absolute.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stative Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֲבֹד — he is treacherous</td>
<td>אֲבֹד — treacherous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲכָל — it is crushed</td>
<td>אֲכָל — crushed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בֹּז — it is high</td>
<td>בֹּז — high</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בֹּר — he is strong</td>
<td>בֹּר — strong, mighty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בֹּל — he is great</td>
<td>בֹּל — great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חָס — he is sinful</td>
<td>חָס — sinful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דֶּל — it is smooth</td>
<td>דֶּל — smooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָי — he lives</td>
<td>הָי — alive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָב — he is gracious</td>
<td>הָב — gracious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָס — he is kind, good</td>
<td>הָס — kind, pious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָש — he is silent</td>
<td>הָש — deaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָע — he is clean</td>
<td>הָע — clean</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָב — it is white</td>
<td>הָב — white</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָח — it is sweet</td>
<td>הָח — sweet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָכ — he is foolish</td>
<td>הָכ — foolish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָש — he is pleasant</td>
<td>הָש — pleasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָמ — it is deep</td>
<td>הָמ — deep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָר — he is shrewd</td>
<td>הָר — shrewd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָט — he is rich</td>
<td>הָט — rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָס — it is limp</td>
<td>הָס — limp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָב — he is approaching</td>
<td>הָב — near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָב — it expanded</td>
<td>הָב — broad, wide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָי — he is compassionate</td>
<td>הָי — compassionate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׁו — it is black</td>
<td>שָׁו — black</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Many adjectives are derived from active verbs. Some have the form of the passive participle.

Examples of adjectives derived from active verbs:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active Verbs</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>כָּת — he beat, crushed</td>
<td>כָּת — crushed, beaten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָמ — he taught</td>
<td>לָמ — taught</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Active Verbs

| He hastened | Speedy, swift |
| He forgave  | Forgiving    |
| He ascended | High        |
| He exulted  | Exultant    |
| He twisted  | Twisted     |
| He caused to tremble | Dreadful |
| He advanced, grew old | Removed, old |
| He attended | Attentive   |
| He returned, turned back | Apostle |
| He hired    | Hired      |
| He dominated| Domineering |

3.3.3 Adjectives Derived from Quantifiers

A few adjectives are derived from quantifiers. Although ordinal numbers may be regarded by some grammarians as adjectives, they are treated as a special class of quantifiers in this work.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantifier</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>Entire, perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Much, many</td>
<td>Great</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.3.4 Adjectives Derived from Adjectives.

A few adjectives are derived from other adjectives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Derived Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cruel, fierce</td>
<td>Cruel, fierce</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern</td>
<td>Eastern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former, chief</td>
<td>First</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.4 The Attributes of Adjectives

Adjectives have five information-bearing attributes in addition to lexical meaning. Each attribute may assume one of several values. The attributes are as follows:

1. Number
2. Gender
3. Determination
4. Range
5. Negation

The first four are specified by morphemes much like those of nouns, the fifth by a prepositive negative particle. Historically, as in the situation of nouns (§ 2.3.6), Hebrew adjectives also had the attribute of case, and syntax required the adjective to agree with the case of the modified noun. But the case morpheme no longer exists and case has no practical function in Biblical Hebrew for adjectives.

The attributes of number, gender and determination are required by syntax to be in concord with the associated attribute values of the modified substantive. These attributes serve merely as tags to associate the given adjective with the substantive it modifies; they have no meaning apart from the noun of reference. The attributes and morphemes are usually in exact correspondence for adjectives.

3.4.1 The Number Attribute

Associated with the number attribute of adjectives are two attribute values (singular, plural).

3.4.1.1 The singular number. The singular is used when the noun of reference is grammatically singular. For nouns for which the number attribute is meaningless and the morpheme is used to express other information, the concord between noun and adjective varies. Plurals of respect may be modified with either singular or plural adjectives.

---

3 The information conveyed by number, gender, and determination is grammatical, not semantic. These attributes of adjectives are dependent variables. Their values are determined by syntactic role, not by any semantic information external to grammar.


5 An adjective takes the plural attribute and morpheme when it modifies a dual noun. Of the 9,517 instances of an adjective, 6,731 are singular and 2,786 are plural.
Collective nouns are modified by singular adjectives when the collective class is viewed as a whole.

אָדָם כַּעַר a cruel lord (Isa. 19:4)

3.4.1.2 The plural attribute. The plural is used when the noun of reference has the plural attribute value, that is, with countable nouns with either the dual or plural morpheme.

םְעֵהָוָה עַדְרַי other gods (Deut. 9:19)

ירֵם רְפֵה weak hands (Job 4:3)

With collectives the plural adjective is used when the named class is viewed as a group of individuals.

חֲדָסִים כִּנּוֹנֶנָיוֹת יָםָּו the people found with him (1 Sam. 13:15)

3.4.2 The Gender Attribute

Associated with the gender attribute of adjectives are two attribute values (masculine, feminine).  

The masculine gender. The masculine is used when the noun of reference has the masculine attribute value.

The feminine gender. The feminine is used when the noun of reference has the feminine attribute value.

Whenever the morphological form of a noun contradicts its true semantic gender, the morphological form of an attributive adjective agrees with the true semantic gender of the noun, not with its morphological form. Of the 9,517 instances of an adjective, 6,681 are marked masculine, 2,081 are marked feminine, and 755 are marked both, indicating an ambiguous inflection.
3.4.3 The Determination Attribute

Associated with the determination attribute of adjectives are two values (determinate, non-determinate). The morpheme for encoding the determinate value is the prepositive definite article, and the non-determinate value is encoded by a zero morpheme. The concept of determination is meaningless for adjectives. The use of the determination attribute for adjectives is purely as a syntactic marker to show grammatical relationship. Its value is entirely dependent on the syntactic role a given adjective plays. In the attributive slot, the value of the determination attribute is defined by the governing noun. In the predicate slot, the value of the determination attribute takes the default value non-determinate when the clause expresses classification and the determinate value when it expresses identity.

3.4.3.1 For attributive adjectives. Attributive adjectives exhibit concord of the determination attribute with that of the modified noun. If the noun is determinate, the attributive adjective is determinate, otherwise it is not.

the high hills (Gen. 7:19)
the great trials (Deut. 29:3)

3.4.3.2 For non-attributive adjectives. Non-attributive adjectives, such as predicate adjectives, do not necessarily exhibit determination concord with the noun of reference. Determination is defined by the sense required by the context.

Example of non-determinate predicate adjective:

Joseph was handsome in form and appearance. (Gen. 39:6)
(expressing classification)

Example of determinate predicate adjective:

David was the youngest (1 Sam. 17:14)
(expressing identity)

7 Of the 9,517 instances of an adjective, 2,773 have a prepositive definite article.
3.4.4 The Range Attribute

The range attribute is similar to the range attribute of nouns; it corresponds with the absolute-construct state. Associated with the range attribute are two values (free, bound); the free value is encoded by the absolute form of the adjective, and the bound value by the construct form. The free attribute (absolute morpheme). The free attribute is the most common value used with adjectives. The bound attribute is used only in special cases.

The bound attribute (construct morpheme). The bound attribute is used in a few instances to express the following:

(1) The superlative degree with the thing compared in the genitive.

Example with a genitive noun:

כֵּן

the smallest of his sons (2 Chr. 21:17)

Examples with a genitive pronoun:

מָהָר

the best of them

מְנַדְּמֶלֹם יִרְדֶּמֶל קַכֶּמ

from the largest to the smallest of them

(2) The characteristic named in the genitive. When the characteristic defined by the adjective is not clear from the context, then the characteristic is named by a genitive.

יִסְדָּר חֶזֶק נְחֵי מְרָאָה:

nice of form and nice of appearance (Gen. 39:6)

רְעִית מְרָאָה

bad of appearance (ugly) (Gen. 41:3)

כְּוָרָּה מְרָאָה דַּּגִּים:

for she was good of looks (Est. 1:11)

(3) The specification named in the genitive. When the limits of the adjective are not clear from the context, then the limit is named by a genitive.

---

8 Of the 9,517 instances of an adjective, 8,694 are marked as absolute and 823 are marked as construct. Of the construct adjectives, 179 have pronoun suffixes, 397 govern a common noun, 66 govern a determinate noun, 122 govern a proper noun, 2 govern a participle functioning as a noun (1 Sam. 21:16; Isa. 19:11), 5 govern another adjective (Ruth 4:1; 2 Kgs. 6:8; Psa. 7:10; 35:16; Ezek. 21:34), 6 govern prepositional phrases, 34 are followed by a conjunction, 9 are followed by a finite verb, two govern an adverb (Isa. 10:25; 29:17), and one governs an infinitive construct (Jer. 13:23).
83

(4) The object named in the genitive. Adjectives derived from verbs may govern an object. In such cases, a construct verbal adjective may govern the object in the genitive.

ים כבד עון
a people laden with iniquity (Isa. 1:4)

(5) With a genitive pronoun suffix. A noun may be modified by an adjective; but if the noun is redundant, it may be elided as understood, leaving only the adjective standing in its place. In this case, the adjective functions as a noun and may govern a genitive pronoun suffix.

וַיִּקְרָָא אֶת־כָּל־חַרְטֻמֵֵי מִצְרֶַ֖יִם וְׁאֶת־כָּל־חֲכָם
And he called for all the magicians of Egypt and all its wise men. (Gen 41:8)

3.4.5 The Negation Attribute

The negation attribute designates the positive or negative meaning of the given adjective. The lexicon records the positive meaning. Associated with the negation attribute are two attribute values (positive, negative). The negative meaning is different than the antonym in that it usually includes a broader range of values on the quality scale. The negative of a value may imply its symmetric opposite; but more likely it implies any value outside the range named, and in the direction of the symmetric opposite.

Examples: not little—big, large, huge
not small—big, large, huge
not big—small, little, tiny
not large—small, little, tiny

Hebrew adjectives are usually used with their positive meaning. The positive meaning is designated by a zero morpheme. The negative meaning is expressed by the use of the prepositive particle אל, usually joined to the adjective with Maqqeph. In all cases, אלה immediately precedes the adjective.

ילא חכם
an unwise son (Hos. 13:13)

---

9 GKC § 152a (n. 1), u and v; RJW 400, 411.
Chapter 3

The Syntactic Attributes of Adjectives

In Modern Hebrew a determinate negated adjective takes the definite article before the negative. Although this condition is not found in the Bible, it may be regarded as part of the Hebrew used in the literature of that era.

In Modern Hebrew a determinate negated adjective takes the definite article before the negative. Although this condition is not found in the Bible, it may be regarded as part of the Hebrew used in the literature of that era.

Occasionally adjectives are negated by other negative particles, such as בַּלְּ, בַּלּ, בַּלּ, בַּלּ, and אַל.

3.5 The Comparison of Adjectives

Hebrew expresses six degrees of comparison: (1) the superlative degree, (2) the superior degree, (3) the similar degree, (4) the same degree, (5) the inferior degree, and (6) the most inferior degree. Unlike English which has three forms for expressing comparison—tall, taller, tallest; Hebrew has no corresponding morphological forms for such comparison. Hebrew expresses comparison by other grammatical and syntactical mechanisms that are discussed in later chapters.

---

10 Haiim B. Rosen, A Textbook of Israeli Hebrew, 2nd ed. (Chicago: The University of Chicago Press, 1969) p. 45. The fact that the article attaches to the negative supports the premise that the negative is a morpheme.
3.6 Modifiers of Adjectives

Adjectives form phrases by being modified by various parts of speech. They may be modified by nouns, adverbs, qualifiers, and dependent clauses. The syntax of adjective phrases is discussed in Chapter 15.

3.7 The Syntactic Slots of Adjectives

Adjectives function in several syntactic roles in language. They may occupy the predicate adjective slot of copulative sentences, and the attributive slot in noun phrases. In special circumstances, an adjective may occupy a noun slot. These syntactic roles of adjectives are discussed in subsequent chapters.

3.8 Summary

This chapter discusses the definition, classification, derivation, and attributes of adjectives.

Definition

Adjectives are words that modify nouns by defining the value of their characteristics, their comparison with other nouns, or their capability or suitability to verbal ideas.

Common Adjectives

Substantives may also be defined by the characteristics they possess; common adjectives are the value names of those characteristics.

Derived Adjectives

Adjectives may be derived from nouns, verbs, quantifiers, and other adjectives.

Attributes

Adjectives have five information bearing attributes. Each of these attributes may assume one of several values. The following table lists the attributes and the values each may assume:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Attribute Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Number</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Gender</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Determination</td>
<td>determinate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Range</td>
<td>free (absolute)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Negation</td>
<td>positive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Syntactic Slots

Adjectives may stand in three different syntactic slots (English order):

1. In the predicate adjective slot of copulative clauses:
   \[ N^a + V^c + A \]  \hspace{1cm} (N^a = Subject noun; V^c = copulative verb; A = Adjective)

2. In the attributive adjective slot of a noun phrase:
   \[ N + A \]

3. In a noun slot after the noun it modifies has been elided:
   \[ A \rightarrow N \]
CHAPTER 4
The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Adverbs

This chapter presents the characteristics of Hebrew adverbs associated with their syntactic relationships in phrases and clauses. The details of phonology and morphology are not considered except as they apply to syntax. The content of this chapter is similar to other works on Hebrew syntax except where it is necessary to relate the material to “transformational” concepts in preparation for subsequent chapters. The chapter is foundational, not an exhaustive treatment of all the particulars of Hebrew adverbs.

4.1 Adverbs Defined

Traditionally, an adverb is defined as a part of speech that modifies a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. This definition is not fully adequate. A study of the Hebrew words traditionally classified as adverbs reveals that they fall into several classes that define values for such semantic characteristics as time, space, manner, purpose, result, cause, condition, intensity, and so forth. These words are found to modify any part of speech that has the given semantic characteristic. Verbs usually possess most of these characteristics; thus adverbs are most often found modifying verbs (consequently, the name adverb). Adjectives and adverbs possess the characteristic of intensity and are found modified by intensity adverbs. Many nouns have time and space characteristics and are found modified by temporal and spatial adverbs. On the other hand, negatives are regarded herein as morphemes in Hebrew, not as adverbs. Likewise, quantifiers are treated as a separate part of speech.

4.2 Adverbs Are Sparse

There are 88 words classified as adverbs in the WTS text, occurring a total of 7,349 times. Table 4.1 lists the number of adverbs by frequency distribution. It is evident that most adverbs occur relatively infrequently and relatively few occur very often. In fact 21 occur only once, only
17 occur more than 100 times, and only 6 occur more than 400 times. Table 4.2 lists the 17 adjectives occurring more than 100 times.

### Table 4.1

**Frequency Distribution of Adverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Number of Adverbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;= 10</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 50</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 200</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 600</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>601 to 800</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 800</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As in many languages, adverbial concepts are expressed in Hebrew most often by prepositional phrases or subordinate clauses. Many languages, such as English, have adverbs that express an equivalent of a prepositional phrase. Hebrew has a few true adverbs of this kind.¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prepositional Phrase</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Hebrew</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in this place</td>
<td>here</td>
<td>פה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in that place</td>
<td>there</td>
<td>שם</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at this time</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>ותנ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at that time</td>
<td>then</td>
<td>אז</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adverbs often are nouns or adjectives that are transformed into adverbs by the addition of an adverbial morpheme.

**Examples from English:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prepositional Phrase</th>
<th>Equivalent Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>with vigor</td>
<td>vigorously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in kindness</td>
<td>kindly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>like a clock</td>
<td>clockwise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prompt</td>
<td>promptly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ These words are actually “pro-adverbs” and function as substitutes for previously defined or understood adverbial expressions. See the discussion of substitution transformations in § 19.2.
### Table 4.2
List of Most Frequent Adverbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>שָם</td>
<td>there</td>
<td>834</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אַיִן</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>788</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אַל</td>
<td>not</td>
<td>729</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בָּה</td>
<td>thus</td>
<td>577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עָז</td>
<td>still</td>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עָה</td>
<td>now</td>
<td>433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָה</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>סְבִיב</td>
<td>around</td>
<td>336</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מְאֹד</td>
<td>very</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָכֵן</td>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲזֶה</td>
<td>surely</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>טְלִיךְ</td>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֵז</td>
<td>then</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מַעַל</td>
<td>upward</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יֵש</td>
<td>there is</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רַק</td>
<td>only</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>תָּמִיד</td>
<td>continually</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few Hebrew adverbs are derived from substantives or adjectives by the addition of an adverbial morpheme.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun or Adjective</th>
<th>Derived Adverb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אָמתה — truth</td>
<td>אַמֲט — truly, indeed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>אַמֲט — truly, verily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קִרְיָה — favor, grace</td>
<td>קִרְיָה — freely, gratuitously</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רָיק — empty</td>
<td>רָיק — vainly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דְשֶׁה — silence</td>
<td>דְשֶׁה — silently</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דֶפֶת — suddenness</td>
<td>דֶפֶת — suddenly</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Hebrew occasionally uses an accusative noun or noun phrase to express an adverbial idea. At times, Hebrew idiomatically uses a verb to express an adverbial idea.

At times, the infinitive absolute may function as an adverb. This is to be expected because its primary function seems adverbial. See the discussion of the infinitive absolute in Chapter Six.

### 4.3 Adverbial Classes

Hebrew adverbs fall into seven classes according to meaning and syntactic role: interrogative adverbs, temporal adverbs, spatial adverbs, adverbs of manner, adverbs of intensity, assertive adverbs, and qualifying adverbs.

#### 4.3.1 Interrogative Adverbs

Interrogative adverbs pose the questions to which the other classes of adverbs supply the answer.

1. Temporal interrogative adverbs and phrases
   - **חֶטֶר** —when?
   - **לְמָה** —when? (Exod. 8:5 Heb.)
   - **עֲרֵר-שֶׁנֶר** —how long? (Exod. 10:7)
   - **אֲבַרְבַּרְבַּר, עַמֵּר-טֹוּד** —how long yet? (Jer. 13:27)
   - **כֶּה** —how long?, how often?
   - **עֲרֵר-יַע** —until when?, how long?

---

2 See § 2.3.6.3 (7) on the adverbial accusative. Muraoka §102c suggests that a few adjectives may function adverbially; but his examples are quantifiers, or they can be understood as accusative substantives functioning adverbially.
(2) Spatial interrogative adverbs

—where? (Hos 13:10, 14)
—where?
—where?
—where?
—where?
—where?
—from where?

(3) Manner interrogative adverbs

—how?
—how?
—how?

(4) Purpose interrogative adverbs

—why?
—why?, wherefore?

(5) Reason interrogative adverb

—why?, for what reason?

(6) Cause interrogative adverb

—because of what?

(7) Condition interrogative adverb

—wherefore?, upon what ground?

(8) Intensity interrogative adverb

—how much?

4.3.2 Temporal Adverbs

Temporal adverbs name values for temporal characteristics. They answer the adverbiale question when? (לַאֵֽֿיֵוֶּֽהָ, etc.), and they modify verbals and substantives that have the named temporal characteristic. The following are some of the more common temporal adverbs:

—then, at that time —formerly
—afterwards —in time past, of old
4.3.3 Spatial Adverbs

Spatial adverbs name values for spatial characteristics. They answer the adverbial questions *where?* (איה, etc.), *from where?* (מכאן), and so forth. They modify verbals and substantives with the named spatial characteristic. The following are some of the more common spatial adverbs:

- **איה** — behind
- **מעלה** — upwards
- **אחורי** — backward
- **מעברה** — before and behind
- **הלילה** — out there, onwards,
- **+') — all around
  further
- **ל timeZone** — here
- **פר timeZone** — here, hither
- **הנה** — here, hither
- **داخل** — inward
- ** 함수** — here
- **בר** — on high
- **ל ahead** — forward
- **שם** — there, thither
- **מקווה** — downwards
- **שם** — thither
- **מעל** — above
- **שם** — beneath
- ** Swords** — on every side

Directional adverbs of space are formed by attaching the locative ה to nouns of place, including proper place names.
Occasionally, nouns of space are used adverbially in the accusative case.

Noun: ירושלים — Jerusalem
Adverb: ירושלימה — to Jerusalem

Noun: מצרים — Egypt
Adverb: מצריםמ — to Egypt

Noun: קרח — east
Adverb: קרחא — eastward

Noun: קרח — east
Adverb: קרחא — eastward

4.3.4 Adverbs of Manner

Adverbs of manner define the manner in which a verbal action takes place. They answer the question how? (איך, איך, איך), and modify only verbals. The following are some of the more common adverbs of manner:

Noun: אמת — truly, really
Adverb: מהר — quickly, speedily

Noun: בטוח — safely
Adverb: מהר — hastily

Noun: חופשי — freely, gratuitously
Adverb: מהר — suddenly

Noun: הורה — together
Adverb: קהל — as mourners

Noun: הורה — together
Adverb: כל — swiftly

Noun: חכם — thus
Adverb: מהנה — haughtily

Noun: כל — so, thus
Adverb: מהנה — emptily, vainly

Noun: בלע + pronoun — alone
Adverb: כל — thus

Noun: יפה — gently
Adverb: כליל — entirely, wholly

4.3.5 Adverbs of Intensity

Adverbs of intensity name the intensity or degree of an action or characteristic. They answer the question how much? (כמה, כמה, כמה), they modify verbals, adjectives, and other adverbs. There are only a few.

Noun: יותר — more
Adverb: מעט — a little

Noun: כהאר — very
Adverb: המשךHttpStatus: 200, message: OK
4.3.6 Asseverative Adverbs

Asseverative adverbs express some degree of emphasis; they modify clauses as a prepositive. The following are some of the more common asseverating adverbs:

- **לְבָנִים** — verily, of a truth
- **הָנָבָיִים** — truly, indeed
- **שָׁלֹשׁ** — surely
- **הַנְּבָיִים** — truly, indeed
- **לְבָנִים** — surely

Although לְבָנִים is classified as an adverb meaning “verily, truly,” it is used only in response to a curse, oath, salutatory message, or doxology. It stands alone, not modifying other expressions. Therefore, it seems better to understand the word as an uninflected stative verb meaning “it is true!” or “may it be true!”

4.3.7 Qualifying Adverbs

Qualifying adverbs express some restriction or emphasis upon the word, phrase, or clause it modifies. These adverbs are prepositives; they may modify a variety of parts of speech.

Restrictive adverbs place a limitation on the words they modify. The more common ones are:

- **אֶחָד** — only
- **שָׁלֹשׁ** — only
- **אֶחָד** — only, except (after neg.)
- **אֲרוּל** — perhaps

Emphatic adverbs place emphasis on the words they modify. The more common ones are:

- **וָאֶז** — even, yea
- **וָאֶז** — even, yea

4.3.8 יֵש The Existential Adverb

יֵש is classified as an adverb, but it functions as a substitute for the copulative verb הָיָה in certain syntactic contexts. It occurs 137 times in the Old Testament. It always occurs in direct discourse (quotations) except in Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, and Lamentations where perhaps one may assume the language is the vernacular. Excluding initial conjunctions and particles, it is always at the head of the clause except for the few cases where one of the clause constituents is

---

3 BDB 53.
granted position prominence. It may function as a substitute for the copulative verb הָיָה when it would be in the timeless perfect aspect. It also stands in place of הָיָה when it functions as the auxiliary verb along with participle to express the timeless durative aspect. It may take a subject pronoun as a suffix.

In copulative clauses, יש is found in the existential clause, the predicate nominative clause, the predicate adverb clause, the clause of possession, but not in the predicate adjective clause. When the subject of the clause is a pronoun it is attached as a suffix to יש.

**אָמְרַיְתָּם מַלְּתָּו דָּרְכִּי**

If You will now prosper my way (Gen 24:42)

The existential copulative clause declares the existence of its predicate complement. It has only one constituent besides יש—a substantive phrase.

**יֵשְׁנִי וּמְמַלֶּכֶה**

There is a nation and a kingdom (1 Kgs. 18:10)

Sometimes the predicate complement is a relative pronoun clause functioning as a substantive.

**הֲכִּי יֶש־עֵ֔וֹד אֲשֵֶ֥ר נוֹתֶַ֖ר לְׁבִֵ֣ית שָאָ֑וּל**

Is there still anyone who is left of the house of Saul (2 Sam. 9:1)

With an elided complement, it serves as an affirmative answer to a question posed with יש.

**וַיַֹּ֕אמֶר הֲיֵֵ֥ש דָבֶָ֖ерь מֵאִֵ֣ת יְׁהוָָ֑ה וַיָֹ֤אמֶר יִרְׁמְׁיָ֙הוֹ֙ יֵֵ֔ש**

The king . . . said, "Is there any word from the LORD?"

And Jeremiah said, "There is." (Jer. 37:17)

The predicate nominative clause declares some classification of its subject; the predicate complement names the classification. The subject stands next to יש.

---

4 Judg. 19:19; 1Sam. 21:5; Eccl. 8:6; Isa. 43:8.
5 ישנ (Gen. 24:42; 43:4; 44:20; Judg. 6:36); ישר (Gen. 24:49; Deut. 13:4); ישנ (Deut. 29:14; 1Sam. 14:39; 23:23; Est. 3:8).
6 1Sam. 21:5; 1 Kgs. 18:10; 2 Kgs. 9:15; Job 11:18; 33:32; Prov. 19:18; 20:15; 23:18; 24:14; Eccl. 1:10; 2:21; 4:8; 5:12; 6:1; 8:14x3; 9:4; 10:5; Isa. 43:8; Jer. 31:6; Lam. 3:29.
7 Neh. 5:2, 3, 4.
8 1 Sam. 9:12; 2 Kgs. 10:15.
The predicate adverb clause defines some adverbial characteristic of its subject. The predicate complement usually is governed by an adverbial preposition. When the preposition governs a pronoun, the phrase usually stands next to יֵֵ֥ש. 9

The LORD is in this place (Gen. 28:16)

When the preposition governs a noun phrase, its phrase usually takes the third slot. 10

אִֶ֖יש בַָ֑מֹ֙ אַנְׁשֵּֽׂהִל

Competent men are among them (Gen. 47:6)

When the preposition governs a noun phrase, its phrase usually takes the third slot. 10

The copulative clause of possession is idiomatic, the subject is governed by the preposition ל and the thing possessed stands alone. 11

For a tree has hope (Job 14:7)

In a verbal clause, when the verb is in the durative aspect, the verb phrase consists of a participle accompanied by the finite auxiliary verb היה. 12 When the verb phrase expresses the

---

9 Ḥes b'imāḇā'î məḵōs lō nīlō (Gen. 47:6; Num. 13:20; Deut. 29:17×2; Judg. 18:14; 1 Sam. 9:11; 14:39; 20:8; 23:23; 2 Sam. 14:32; Ezr. 10:44; Job 6:30; Jer. 14:22; 23:26; Jon. 4:11; Mal. 1:14); Ḥes šē (Gen. 23:8; 2 Kgs. 2:16; 3:12; 10:15; Prov. 3:28) Ḥes šē (Job 33:23); šē šē (2 Chr. 16:9); Ḥes šē (1 Sam. 21:4); Ṣē šē (Neh. 5:5) Ḥes šē šē (Job 9:33).

10 With ב (Gen. 8:24; Gen. 28:16; 42:1; 42:2; Exod. 17:7; Num. 22:29; 2 Kgs. 4:2; 5:8; 2 Chr. 25:8; Job 6:6; Psa. 7:4; 73:11; 135:17); מ (Isa. 44:8; Jer. 37:17); מ (Lam. 1:12); מ (Judg. 6:13); מ (Job 16:4); מ (Prov. 14:12; 16:25); מ (Gen. 44:26; Jer. 27:18).

11 Gen. 31:29; 33:9; 33:11; 39:4, 5, 5, 8; 43:7; 44:19; 44:20; Judg. 19:19, 19; Ruth 1:12; 1 Sam. 17:46; 2 Sam. 19:29; 1 Kgs. 17:12; 2 Kgs. 10:15; 1 Chr. 29:3; 2 Chr. 15:7; 25:9; Ezr. 10:2; Job 14:7; 25:3; 28:1; 38:28; Eccl. 2:13; 4:9; 8:6; Jer. 31:16, 17; 41:8; Mich. 2:1.

12 The verb is often elided when its conjugation is self-evident from the current context.
timeless durative aspect. הָיָה may stand in place of יֵשׁ. When the subject of the clause is a pronoun, it becomes a suffix to יֵשׁ:13

אֵֶֽוֵשׁ יִֽשׁ יֵֽשׁ לְאֹּתַֽהְמ—If you will deal kindly and truly with my master (Gen. 24:49)

Otherwise, the participle remains in the appropriate syntactic slot for the verb, and יֵשׁ is fronted, nearly always being first in the clause after any conjunctives.14

ָאֵֽוֵשׁ יִֽשׁ אָֽלֹהִים שָׁפָֽטִים בָּֽאֶֽרֶץ׃ Surely God is judging in the earth." (Psa. 58:11)15

יֵֵֽשׁ is never negated except for rare unexpected instances:

לֹא יֵֵֽשׁ בֵֵֽיןֲ֑נוּ מֹכִֵֽיחַ יָשֵֽׁת
Nor is there any mediator between us, (Job 9:33)

לֹא אֵַֽיְֵֽוֵשׁ בְּפֵַֽיֲנַֽם׃ Nor is there any breath in their mouths. (Psa. 135:17; see also 1 Sam. 21:9, BDB p. 35)

When the negative form of a יֵֵֽשׁ clause is needed, לא stands in place of יֵֵֽשׁ. The syntax of לא is discussed in § 11.5.2.

4.3.9 Other Adverbials

In Hebrew, adverbials of purpose, result, cause, and condition seem to be expressed only by prepositional phrases and subordinated clauses, not by single adverbs.

4.4 Attributes of Adverbs

Adverbs have only one attribute—negation—with two values (positive, negative). The positive value is expressed with a zero morpheme, and the negative, although a rather rare event,16 with the prepositive particle לא.

לֹא־כִֵ֣ן—Not so! (Gen 48:18)

לֹא עַתֵָ֔ה—not now (Num. 24:17)


14 Deut. 29:14, 17; 2 Kgs. 4:13; Psa. 58:12; Eccl. 6:11; 7:15x2; Jer. 14:22; Mal. 1:14.

15 The plural participle is unusual, but does sometimes occur with the plural of majesty (GKC § 132.h).

16 Of the 88 adverbs in the WTS morphological codes, 15 are negated a total of 62 times.
4.5 Semantic Concord of Adverbs

Hebrew adverbs are observed to exhibit semantic concord with their syntactic environment. Thus, the time aspect of temporal adverbs agrees with the temporal sense of the verbal tense or with that of temporal clauses. The spatial aspect of locative adverbs agrees with the spatial sense of the verb and/or that of demonstrative pronouns. The nonsense of the following English sentences illustrates the point.

17 See also Judg. 18:10; 21:9; 2 Kgs. 7:5, 10; Isa. 34:12; Jer. 8:22.

18 See also Deut. 4:39; 1 Kgs. 8:60; 2 Kgs. 4:6; Psa. 74:9; Isa. 45:5, 6, 14, 18, 21, 22; 46:9; Jer. 48:2; 49:7; Joel 2:27; Mal. 2:13.

19 See also 2 Kgs. 3:11; 2 Chr. 18:6.
The man came there and went here.
The man will eat yesterday.
This house there is in that yard here.

In like manner, the other adverbial connotations must be in harmony with the corresponding notions of the context. Actually, this is in harmony with the broad principle of semantic concord in any intelligible communication.

### 4.6 Comparison of Adverbs

Like some adjectives and stative verbs, adverbs may be expressed in comparative degrees. Comparison of adverbs is expressed by means of the preposition מ—from. This is explained in greater detail in § 16.2.

### 4.7 Numbers as Adverbs

Occasionally, a cardinal number is used adverbially. But these may be instances where the word ים is elided. This also is true for ordinal numbers.

### 4.8 Adverbs with Pronoun Suffixes

Ordinarily an adverb is not expected to have a grammatical relationship with a pronoun. However, some words classified as adverbs in the WTS text do have pronoun suffixes. Table 4.3 lists these adverbs and the number of times each has a pronoun suffix.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אַיִן</td>
<td>is not</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>סָבִיב</td>
<td>around</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עוֹד</td>
<td>yet</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יֵש</td>
<td>there is</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָט</td>
<td>gently</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

20 Lev. 16:34; Neh. 13:20; Job 33:29.

21 Gen. 22:15; 1 Kgs. 18:44; Est 2:19.
mostly functions as a negative existential copulative, not as an adverb. It frequently takes its subject pronoun as a suffix.

אַיִן mostly functions as a negative existential copulative, not as an adverb. It frequently takes its subject pronoun as a suffix.

וַיְתֻלְּקָה חֲנֶֽוֹךְ אֶת־הָָּֽאֱלֹהִָ֑ים וְׁוַיִּתְּהַלֵֵ֥ךְ חֲנֶ֖וֹךְ אֶת־הָָֽאֱלֹהִָ֑ים׃

And Enoch walked with God; and he was not, for God took him. (Gen. 5:24)

Originally סָבִיב was a substantive, but its frequent use as an adverbial accusative led to its role as an adverb. When grammatically related to a pronoun, it may take it as a suffix.

תִָּֽהְׁיֶֹ֙ינָהֹ֙ הֶעָרִִ֣ים הָאֵֵ֔לֶה עִִ֣יר עִֵּ֔יר וּמִגְרָשֶֶ֖יהָ סְׁבִיבֹתֶָ֑יהָ

Every one of these cities had its common-land surrounding it; thus were all these cities. (Josh. 21:42)

The same is true of עוֹד, and אַט.

וַתִּפְנָּ֤וּ מִשָּם֙ הָָּֽאֲנָשִֵּ֔ים וַיֵלְכֶ֖וּ סְדָֹ֑מָה וְׁאַבְרָהֵָּ֔ם עוֹדֵ֥נוּ עֹמֵֵ֥ד לִפְׁנֵֵ֥י יְׁהוָָּֽה׃

Then the men turned away from there and went toward Sodom, but Abraham still stood before the LORD. (Gen. 18:22)

I will lead on slowly at a pace which the livestock that go before me. (Gen. 33:14)

Normally יֵש functions as an existential copulative, not as an adverb. It is used as an auxiliary to a participle, carrying its subject pronoun as a suffix and providing the personal attribute of the predicate.

אָמְרֵי־יֵשְׁךָ֛ מְׁשַלֵֵ֥חַ אֶת־אָחִֶ֖ינוּ אִתָָ֑נוּ נֵרְׁדַָּ֕ה וְׁנִשְׁבְׁרֵ֥ה לְׁךֶ֖ אָֹּֽכֶל׃

"If you are sending our brother with us, we will go down and buy you food. (Gen. 43:4)

4.9 Modifiers of Adverbs

Adverbs may form phrases by receiving a preceding qualifier or a following adverb in semantic concord with its adverbial characteristics.

4.10 The Syntactic Slots of Adverbs

Adverbs may occupy the predicate complement slot of copulative clauses, the attributive slot of noun phrases, adjective phrases, and verb phrases, and the attributive slot of predicates or

22 BDB p. 686.
Chapte 4

The Syntactic Attributes of Adverbs

clauses. Some may also stand in the attributive slot of adverb phrases. The syntactic roles of adverbs are discussed in subsequent chapters.

4.11 Summary

This chapter discusses the definition, classification, attributes, and comparison of adverbs.

Definition

Adverbs define the values for such semantic characteristics as time, space, manner, purpose, result, cause, condition, intensity, and so forth.

Classification

Adverbs may be classified into classes: Interrogative adverbs; adverbs of space, time, manner, intensity, asseveration; qualifying adverbs, and others.

Attributes

Adverbs have only one attribute: Negation. However, adverbs exhibit semantic concord with the words they modify.

Comparison

Adverbs may be compared much like adjectives are compared.

Syntactic Slots

Adverbs may stand in seven different syntactic slots:

1. In the predicate complement slot of copulative clauses:
   \[ N^s + V^c + D \quad (N^s = \text{Subject noun}; V^c = \text{copulative verb}; D = \text{Adverb}) \]

2. In the attributive slot of a noun phrase:
   \[ N + D \]

3. In the attributive slot of an adjective phrase:
   \[ A + D \quad (A = \text{Adjective}) \]

4. In the attributive slot of an adverb phrase:
   \[ D + D \]

5. In the attributive slot of a verb phrase:
   \[ V + D \text{ or } D + V \]
(6) In the attributive slot of a predicate phrase:

\[
\begin{align*}
Q + D & \text{ or } \\
D + Q & \quad (Q = \text{Predicate})
\end{align*}
\]

(7) In the attributive slot of a clause:

\[
\begin{align*}
S + D & \text{ or } \\
D + S & \quad (S = \text{Sentence/clause})
\end{align*}
\]
CHAPTER 5
The Syntactic Attributes of Finite Verbs

This chapter presents the characteristics of Hebrew verbs associated with their syntactic relationships in phrases and clauses. The details of phonology and morphology are not considered except as they apply to syntax. The content of this chapter is similar to that presented in other works on Hebrew syntax except where it is necessary to relate the material to “transformational” concepts in preparation for subsequent chapters. The chapter is foundational, not an exhaustive treatment of all the particulars of Hebrew verbs.

5.1 Introduction

There are 1,614 words that are classified as verbals, occurring 72,569 times in the WTS text. Of these, 1,452 are finite verbs, occurring 55,806 times. Table 5.1 lists the number of finite verbs by frequency distribution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Number of Finite Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt;= 10</td>
<td>950</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 50</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 200</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401 to 500</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>501 to 600</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>601 to 700</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>701 to 800</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>801 to 900</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>901 to 1000</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 1000</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
It is evident that many finite verbs occur relatively infrequently and comparatively few occur very often. In fact 371 occur only once, only 81 occur more than 100 times, and only 24 occur more than 400 times. Table 5.2 lists the 24 finite verbs occurring more than 400 times.

### Table 5.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אמר</td>
<td>say</td>
<td>4239</td>
<td>שמעים</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>934</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>היה</td>
<td>be</td>
<td>3405</td>
<td>שלח</td>
<td>send</td>
<td>724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עשה</td>
<td>do</td>
<td>2050</td>
<td>עלה</td>
<td>go up</td>
<td>701</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בא</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>1926</td>
<td>אכל</td>
<td>eat</td>
<td>647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נתן</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>1708</td>
<td>קורא</td>
<td>call</td>
<td>657</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הלך</td>
<td>walk</td>
<td>1184</td>
<td>מת</td>
<td>die</td>
<td>611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ראו</td>
<td>see</td>
<td>1077</td>
<td>שממ</td>
<td>put</td>
<td>527</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דבר</td>
<td>speak</td>
<td>935</td>
<td>נשב</td>
<td>sit</td>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שב</td>
<td>return</td>
<td>892</td>
<td>קם</td>
<td>arise</td>
<td>540</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לקח</td>
<td>take</td>
<td>893</td>
<td>קרא</td>
<td>command</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ציא</td>
<td>form</td>
<td>795</td>
<td>נשא</td>
<td>lift up</td>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ידע</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>769</td>
<td>נבッド</td>
<td>Strike</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**5.2 Verb Defined**

A verb is the name of an action, deed, state of being, or relationship. Besides these semantic characteristics, verbs are distinguished from other parts of speech by certain unique morphological and syntactic characteristics. Verbs are the principal part of a predicate; they require a named or implied subject and usually a named or implied object; this is true even when the verb has been transformed into one of the nonfinite verbals.

**5.3 Verbal Roots and Stems**

Most Hebrew verbs are constructed from a three-consonantal root from which a variety of stems are derived. The stems usually (but not always) convey some variation of the meaning associated with root from which they are derived, but no consistent rule exists that accurately predicts the variation; meaning must be found in the lexicons. Table 5.3 lists the frequency distribution of the stems of the verbals in the WTS text.
Table 5.3
Frequency Distribution of Verbal Stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Qal</td>
<td>50,105</td>
<td>Pilpel</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qal Passive</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Hithpalpel</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Niphal</td>
<td>4,143</td>
<td>Polal</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piel</td>
<td>6,454</td>
<td>Pulal</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pual</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>Poal</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hiphil</td>
<td>9,416</td>
<td>Hothpaal</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hophal</td>
<td>395</td>
<td>Palel</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hithpael</td>
<td>836</td>
<td>Pealal</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hishtaphel</td>
<td>170</td>
<td>Nithpael</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polel</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>Pilel</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hithpolel</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>Polpal</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poel</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Tiphil</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4 Verbs Classified

Verbs fall into various classifications depending (1) on the type of action, state, or relationship that it names, (2) on the manner in which it governs an object, and (3) on the way the verbal idea is viewed (finite or nonfinite).

Regarding the first classification, verbs may be categorized as copulative, stative, or active. Copulative verbs express the state of being or existence. Stative verbs express a particular state of being or relationship. Active verbs express actions or events.

Regarding the second classification, verbs may be categorized as intransitive or transitive. Intransitive verbs express the state of being or action of the subject alone; there is no recipient of the action or state. Transitive verbs express the relationship of the subject with the object; the action or relationship involves two or more participants, a doer and one or more recipients.

Regarding the third classification, verbs may be categorized as finite or nonfinite. Finite verbs are fully inflected and function as the principal element of a predicate. Nonfinite verbs (or verbals) are the infinitives and participles. Infinitives are noninflected, and participles inflect as a substantive. Nonfinite verbals do not normally function as the principal element of a predicate. The participle is an exception when it is part of a verb phrase. Nonfinite verbals are discussed in Chapter 6.
Finite verbs inflect according to three basic morphological forms: (1) perfect, (2) imperfect, and (3) imperative. The imperative form seems to be derived from the imperfect. Table 5.4 lists the frequency of each form in BHS.

Table 5.4
Distribution of Finite Verbal Forms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Form</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>20,717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>15,853</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Way-yiqtol</td>
<td>14,974</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>4,262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>55,806</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.4.1 Copulative Verbs

Copulative verbs express the state of being, existence, or equality. They are used in a unique class of clauses that declare various facets of existence, classification, characteristic definition, and possession. Copulative verbs are the principal constituent of the predicate of a copulative clause; they are found in the following syntactic construction in a kernel clause:¹

Nₘ + Vₙ (existential clause)
Nₘ + Vₙ + N (predicate nominative clause)
Nₘ + Vₙ + A (predicate adjective clause)
Nₘ + Vₙ + D (predicate adverb clause)
Nₘ + Vₙ + ע + N (possessive clause)

where the symbol Nₘ represents a subject noun phrase, Vₙ represents a copulative verb phrase, N represents a predicate nominative phrase, A represents a predicate adjective phrase, and D represents a predicate adverb phrase;¹ the symbol + means juxtaposition. The principal copulative verb is נון—it is. The particle י and its negative י are used as a substitute for נון in some

¹ For transliterated verb forms, I use the root קטל found commonly in standard parsing charts.
² In this chapter, all the formulas used to define syntactic structures refer only to the word order of kernel clauses. Variations of word order are the result of transformations discussed in later chapters.
³ The term phrase is included because the slot may be occupied by the indicated word plus a modifier, if any.
⁴ D includes prepositional phrases which nearly always function adverbially (§ 8.4.1; 12.1.5; 16.0). Cameron Sinclair includes as predicate complements participles and numerical quantifiers (“Are Nominal Clauses a Distinct Clausal Type?” in Cynthia L. Miller, ed., The Verbless Clause in Biblical Hebrew; Winona Lake, IN: Eisenbrauns, 1999, p. 61). Participles, however, really belong to to durative aspect verb phrases (5.6.5.3) and numerical quantifiers really belong to noun phrases (14.3.2)
Chapter 5  The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Verbs

transformations. The symbols are arranged in left-to-right English order; obviously, they will be in right-to-left order for the Hebrew text. These clauses form an important group of kernel clauses known as “copulative clauses.” The syntax of kernel clauses is discussed in Chapter 12.

5.4.2 Intransitive Verbs

Intransitive verbs express the state of being or action of the subject alone. Intransitive verbs govern no object, either actual or implied; they are found in the following syntactic structure:

N + V

5.4.2.1 Intransitive stative verbs. Intransitive stative verbs express the state of being of the subject alone. They often have the characteristic stative vocalization: קָנַן or קְנָן, קָנַב or קְנָב, but occasionally קָנַל or קְנָל. Clauses using intransitive stative verbs usually may accept comparative transformations, but never the passive transformation.

רֵעֵב — he is hungry
רֵז — he is old
מְגַל — he is great
כְבָד — he is heavy
קְטַן — he is small

5.4.2.2 Intransitive active verbs. Intransitive active verbs express the action of the subject alone; the verb does not govern an object, either actual or implied. Intransitive active verbs do not accept passive transformations.

יֵשַׁב — he sat, dwelt
יִשַׁת — he slept
יָמַד — he stood
שָׁכַב — he slept, lay down
קָם — he arose
מָת — he died
כָּכָה — he wept

5 The passive, middle, and reflexive voices are regarded as transformations on the active voice.

6 Some verbs have both an intransitive and transitive meaning; the transitive meaning does accept the passive transformation.
5.4.3 Transitive Verbs

Transitive verbs express the state of being or action that exists between the subject and one or more objects. These verbs take an accusative direct object and are found in the following syntactic construction:

\[ N^s + V + N^o \]  \( (N^o = \) accusative object noun phrase) 

5.4.3.1 Transitive stative verbs. Transitive stative verbs express a state of being or relationship that exists between the subject and an object.

- בָּהְבָּ— he loved (someone)
- שֶׁנֶּ— he hated (someone)
- אָלָמָ— it is full (of something)
- יָבִיב— he understood (something)

5.4.3.2 Transitive active verbs. Transitive active verbs express activity that exists between the subject and an object.

- דֶּבֶר— he spoke (language, words, etc.)
- בָּלָבָ— he dressed (person, thing)
- לֶבֶש— he put on (clothes)
- לָת— he took (something)
- נֶגֶנ— he played (music)
- יָסַם— he tried, tested (something)
- אָסַב— he hindered (someone); he delayed (something)
- יָסַב— he accepted (things); he received (things)
- יָשָה— he drank (something)

5.4.4 Transitive Verbs With Oblique Object

Hebrew verbs generally govern an object in the accusative case. However, many verbs govern a direct object by means of a preposition. The sense of the verb is determined by the preposition, but the preposition may or may not be translated into English. For example: קאֵמר — he believed something — where the preposition is not translated. In some cases the preposition must be translated by a different preposition in English. For example: כָּפַר—“he was afraid of something”—where the preposition כ— from— becomes of in English. These verbs are found in the following syntactic construction:

\[ ]

7 Some verbs like לֶבֶש have both an active meaning (put on) and a stative meaning (wear).
NS + V + P + N  \( (P = \text{Preposition}) \)

**Examples of verbs governing the object with \( \ddot{\text{N}} \):**

— he believed (someone/something)

and you did not believe Him (Deut. 9:23)

I did not believe the words  

(1 Kgs. 10:7)

**Examples of verbs governing the object with \( \text{B} \):**

— he played (musical instrument)

A man who knows how to play a harp (1 Sam. 16:16)

**Examples of verbs governing the object with \( \text{N} \):**

— he feared (someone)

But you shall fear your God (Lev. 19:14)

— he was afraid of (something)

I am afraid of Him.  

(Job 23:15)

**Examples of verbs governing the object with \( \ddot{\text{L}} \):**

— surround (something)

The men of Sodom surrounded the house (Gen. 19:4)

— command (someone)

When I command the locusts to devour the land (2 Chr. 7:13)
Example of verb governing the object with נָרַב:—he pursued (someone)
and they did not pursue the sons of Jacob. (Gen 35:5)

A distinction must be made between intransitive verbs that are modified by adverbia-
ral preposition phrases and transitive verbs that govern an object with a preposition. The distinction is that
transitive verbs may undergo the passive transforma-
tion whereas the intransitive verbs do not; prepositional phrases may be omitted without leaving
the predicate incomplete; and the noun of the prepositional phrase cannot semantically complement the verb.

5.4.5 Transitive Verbs with Double Objects

Some Hebrew verbs govern two objects. Some govern both objects in the accusative case; some govern one accusative and one oblique object.

5.4.5.1 Double accusative verbs. Some Hebrew verbs require two accusatives to complete
their sense; they are found in the following syntactic construction:

\[ N^5 + V + N^1 + N^2 \]

In these clauses either accusative noun phrase may be determinate and be governed by the particle經.

Examples of verbs governing one accusative of person and one of thing:

— he girded (someone) with (something)
You have girded me with might for the battle (2 Sam. 22:40)

— he taught (someone) (something)
I will teach transgressors Your ways (Psa. 51:13)

— he crowned (someone) with (something)
And with glory and honor You crown Him (Psa. 8:6)

— he stripped (someone) of (something)

— he clothed (someone) with (something)
Moses stripped Aaron of his garments and put them on Eleazar his son. (Num. 20:28)

Examples of verbs governing one accusative of thing and one of material:

- **וַיַּלְבֵּשֵׁנִי אֶת־אָבִּנֵיו**
  - he wrapped (something) with (something)
  (Exod. 29:9)

- **וְֹֹֹתְּלֶכֶּּ֥ת אֶת־אֹתָֹ֙ם**
  - he filled (something) with (something)
  (Gen. 21:19)

- **וְֹֹֹתְּלֶכֶּּ֥ת אֶת־הַבְּרִיחִֶ֖ם**
  - he covered (something) with (something)
  (Exod. 29:9)

Note that the English translation usually requires a preposition for the second object although the Hebrew requires an accusative.

### 5.4.5.2 Accusative-plus-genitive verbs

Some Hebrew verbs that govern two objects govern one object in the accusative case and one object by means of a preposition. They are found in the following syntactic construction:

\[ \text{N}^g + V + \text{N}^o_1 + P + \text{N}^o_2 \]

The meaning of the verb is associated with the preposition, thus the preposition must be specified in the dictionary.

Examples of verbs governing the second object with ל:

- **וַיֵּּֽן מָלֵּּ֥ת אֶת־כֵֶ֧סֶף הַפְׁדֻיִָ֛ם לְׁאַהֲרֵֹ֥ן וּלְׁבָנֶָ֖יו**
  - he gave (something) (to someone)
  (Num. 3:51)

  And Moses gave their redemption money to Aaron and his sons, (Num. 3:51)
5.4.5.3 Double genitive verbs. Some Hebrew verbs require two genitives to complete their sense; they are found in the following syntactic construction:

$$N^s + V + P_1 + N_1 + P_2 + N_2$$

The meaning of the verb is associated with the preposition, thus the preposition must be specified in the dictionary.

הַמֶֶּ֡לֶךְ  שָבִֵ֣י מִגִּנַֹ֙ת  הַבִּיתָ֜ן אֶל־בִֵ֣ית׀  מִשְׁתִֵ֣ה  הַיַָ֗יִן
And the king returned from the palace garden to the place of the banquet of wine, (Est. 7:8)

כִִ֣י לָֹּֽא־אֶֶ֠תֵן מֵאֶֹ֙רֶץ בְׁנֵי־עַמָּ֤וֹן לְךֹ֙יְֹרֵשַ֣ה
for I will not give any of the land of the people of Ammon to you as a possession, (Deut. 2:19)

5.4.6 Transitive Verbs of Speech

Verbs expressing speech acts may govern a direct object or a sentence linked by a speech introducing conjunction ($C^{sp}$) (§ 9.4); they are found in the following syntactic construction:

$$N^s + V + N^o$$

or

$$N^s + V + C^{sp} + S$$

יתֶּּ֡רֹא אֲמָרְךָ אֶת־הַדָּבִָ֣ר הַזֶֶ֖ה בְּאֶָּרֶץ יְהוּדָה אֶל־בֵּית אָבִיו
"Because you say this word, "The oracle of the LORD!" (Jer. 23:38)

זַעְּד אֲמָרְךָ אֶת־הַדָּבְּרָה הַזָּאת בְּאֶָּרֶץְךָ וּבְּבָּתֵּים
"They shall again say this word in the land of Judah and in its cities (Jer. 31:23)
5.4.7 Transitive Verbs of Perception or Thought

Verbs expressing acts of perception or thought may govern a direct object or a sentence linked by the conjunction כי; they are found in the following syntactic construction:

\[ N^s + V + N^o \]

or

\[ N^s + V + C^p + S \]

And they heard that they were their neighbors who dwelt near them. (Josh. 9:16)

Then Eli perceived that the LORD had called the boy. (1 Sam. 3:8)

5.4.8 Transitive Verbs with Pronoun Suffix

When an object of a verb has been transformed into a pronoun, it may be attached to the verb as a suffix or remain as an independent accusative pronoun. If the 55,806 finite verbs, 4,710 have a pronoun suffix and 1,712 have an independent accusative pronoun.

And you did not allow me to kiss my sons and my daughters. (Gen. 31:28)

You have forsaken Me," says the LORD. (Jer. 15:6)
5.4.9 Nonfinite Verbs

Nonfinite verbs are verbals that do not inflect like finite verbs and function in a role other than that of a finite verb. Hebrew has two nonfinite verbals: the participle and the infinitive.\(^8\) Participles and infinitives are the product of transformations on clauses. When a clause is transformed so as to function in the role of a substantive, its verb is changed in form to an infinitive; when a clause is transformed to function in the role of an adjectival, its verb is changed into a participle.

*The infinitive.* The Hebrew infinitive has two forms: the infinitive absolute, and the infinitive construct.

5.4.9.1 The infinitive absolute is not a true infinitive, but a cognate adverb; it is used to add semantic emphasis to a finite verb.\(^9\) The infinitive absolute is discussed in more detail in § 6.1.

\[\text{מִכֵּֽ֥ץ עֵָּֽ֖ץ־הַגֶֶָּּ֖֖ן אָכֵֹ֥ל׃} \]

Of every tree of the garden you may freely eat (Gen. 2:16)

\[\text{אָכֹל׃ שָבֵּ֔וֹעַ} \]

You shall eat plentifully and be satisfied (Joel 2:26)

5.4.9.2 The infinitive construct is a noninflected verbal noun, expressing the abstract idea of verbal action. Because it is a verbal, it may have a named subject and govern an object. It functions like the English gerund and the English infinitive. However, it does not function with auxiliaries in verb phrases like the English infinitive. The infinitive construct is discussed in more detail in § 6.2.

5.4.9.3 The participle. The participle is a verbal adjective expressing the state of continued action. Because it is like an adjective, it is inflected with all the morphemes of an adjective, and because it is a verbal it may govern an object and be modified by an adverb. Together with the auxiliary verb הָיָּה, the participle is used to express durative action\(^{10}\) in a verb phrase. The participle is discussed in more detail in § 6.3.

---

\(^8\) The verbal nouns and verbal adjectives may also come under this category, because everything that applies to Hebrew participles and infinitives is also true of them.

\(^9\) The infinitive absolute also may stand in place of a finite verb, where its conjugate form is clear from the context, or where it functions as a noun.

\(^{10}\) The participle stands alone when the auxiliary would normally be omitted.
5.5 The Derivation of Hebrew Verbs

Many Hebrew verbs are primary concepts that seem to exhibit no dependence on other words for their meaning. Other verbs seem to be derived from corresponding nouns, adjectives, verbs, quantifiers, and even adverbs and prepositions.

5.5.1 Primary Verbs

Many Hebrew verbs have no corresponding noun or adjective to which the derivation of its meaning may be traced. Other verbs seem to be the source from which is derived the meaning of corresponding nouns, adjectives, or verbs. For convenience these various verbs are called primary verbs. Because primary verbs are so numerous and common, no examples are listed.

5.5.2 Verbs Derived From Nouns

Many Hebrew verbs have a corresponding noun to which its derivation may be traced; these are called denominative verbs. In Hebrew, denominative verbs are frequently in the piel stem without a corresponding qal stem; however, some denominative verbs are in the qal, hiphil, and even the hithpael stems.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Derived Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֹהֵל — tent</td>
<td>אֹהֵל — he pitched a tent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲגָר — ear</td>
<td>הָאֵזָר — he gave ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶפְּדָה — ephod</td>
<td>אֶפְּדָה — he put on an ephod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בֵּינֵל — fodder</td>
<td>בֵּינֵל — he gave fodder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>גִּנְשָׁה — rain</td>
<td>גִּנְשָׁה — he sent rain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רַבִּיר — a word</td>
<td>רַבִּיר — he spoke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דְּג — fish</td>
<td>דְּג — he fished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>גָד — ashes</td>
<td>גָד — he removed ashes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֵאִיר — pitch, asphalt</td>
<td>מֵאִיר — he covered with pitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מַרְחָך — winter</td>
<td>מַרְחָך — he wintered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מַכָּה — priest</td>
<td>מַכָּה — he ministered as priest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָכֶב — heart</td>
<td>لָכֶב — he ravished the heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְבָנָה — a brick</td>
<td>לְבָנָה — he made brick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָלָה — salt</td>
<td>מָלָה — he salted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלָּה — king</td>
<td>מִלָּה — he reigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נְבוֹא — prophet</td>
<td>נְבוֹא — he prophesied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שִׁפַּר — dust</td>
<td>שִׁפַּר — he threw dust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קְרֵי — summer</td>
<td>קְרֵי — he passed the summer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 5.5.3 Verbs Derived From Adjectives

A few verbs in Hebrew have a corresponding adjective to which their derivation may be traced.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Derived Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>חָזֶק — new</td>
<td>חָזֶק — he renewed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יִסּוּר — foreign</td>
<td>יִסּוּר — he treated as foreign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׂרָה — blind</td>
<td>שָׂרָה — he blinded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יַעֲלֵה — uncircumcised</td>
<td>יַעֲלֵה — he counted as uncircumcised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בֶּן — simple</td>
<td>בֶּן — he was simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עֶש — bad, evil</td>
<td>עֶש — he is evil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.5.4 Verbs Derived From Other Verbs

Nearly every primary verb in Hebrew has one or more derived verbs, based upon the stem system of the verbal conjugation.\(^{11}\) The Hebrew verb has seven standard stems and a number of secondary stems (see § 5.3). The qal stem is the base stem, usually expressing the simple active meaning; the other stems are called derived stems. The niphal stem usually expresses the passive of the qal, or occasionally the reflexive. The piel stem expresses some intensive variation of the meaning of the qal; the pual stem expresses the passive of the piel; and the hithpael usually expresses its reflexive. The hiphil stem usually expresses some causative variation of the meaning of the qal; the hophal stem expresses the passive of the hiphil.

Few verbs have corresponding derived verbs in all stems. Some verbs do not use the qal stem, but one or more of the derived stems. Since the derived stems are so common in Hebrew, only one example is given:

---

### 5.5.5 Verbs Derived From Quantifiers

A few Hebrew verbs have corresponding quantifiers to which their derivation may be traced.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantifier</th>
<th>Derived Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>עָרַבִּים — four</td>
<td>הָבֵא — he squared</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חֹמֶשׁ — five</td>
<td>חֹמֶשׁ — he took a fifth part of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כִּלָּה — all</td>
<td>כִּלָּה — it is complete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עָשָׂר — ten</td>
<td>עָשָׂר — he gave a tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שֵׁלֶשׁ — three</td>
<td>שֵׁלֶשׁ — he divided into three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שֵׁשׁ — six</td>
<td>שֵׁשׁ — he gave a sixth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.5.6 Verbs Derived From Adverbs

At least one Hebrew verb seems to have its derivation traced to an adverb.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Derived Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>חָלַל — out there</td>
<td>נָקַל — she was removed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.5.7 Verbs Derived From Prepositions

At least one Hebrew verb seems to have its derivation traced to a preposition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Derived Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>עָצֵל — beside</td>
<td>עָצֵל — he laid aside$^{12}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5.6 The Attributes of Hebrew Verbs

Hebrew verbs possess the following attributes, the values of which are defined by inflectional morphemes or other syntactic markers: (1) number, (2) gender, (3) person, (4) voice, (5)

---

$^{12}$ BDB 69.
aspect, (6) mood, (7) emphasis, and (8) negation. The first three must have concord agreement with the subject of the verb; they are determined at the clause level. The value of the remaining attributes are determined at the discourse level (Chapter 19) by the semantic expectations of the context.

5.6.1 Number

Two values are associated with the number attribute: singular and plural. The number attribute is a dependent variable used as a marker to link the verb with its subject. The value is governed by concord with the number attribute of its subject.

5.6.1.1 Singular. The singular attribute of the verb is used:

(1) with singular subjects

Now Adam knew Eve his wife, (Gen. 4:1)

(2) with collective subjects (usually the class is viewed as a single whole)

Then the people fled from the Philistines. (2 Sam. 23:11)

(3) sometimes when the verb is first in the sentence, regardless of the number attribute of the subject

But her brother and her mother said, "Let the young woman stay with us a few days, at least ten; after that she may go." (Gen. 24:55)

5.6.1.2 Plural. The plural attribute is used:

(1) with plural or dual subjects

all the fountains of the great deep were broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened. (Gen. 7:11)

(2) often with collective subjects (usually when the subject is viewed as group of individuals).

and the people crossed over opposite Jericho (Josh. 3:16)

13 Of the finite verbs, 40,597 are singular and 15,209 are plural.
5.6.2 Gender

Two values are associated with the gender attribute: masculine and feminine.\textsuperscript{14} The gender attribute is a dependent variable used as a marker to link the verb with its subject. The value is governed by concord with the gender attribute of the subject.

5.6.2.1 Masculine. The masculine attribute is used with masculine or mixed-gender subjects.

Joy (masc.) and gladness (fem.) will be found (masc. sing.) in it (Isa. 51:3)

Then Rachel and Leah answered (fem. sing.) and said to him (Gen. 31:14)

In the case where the compound subject is long and the verb appears first, the verb may be in gender concord with the nearest noun of the compound subject.

So Esther’s maids (fem.) and eunuchs (masc.) came (fem. pl.) and told (masc. pl.) her. (Est. 4:4)

Then his wife Zeresh (fem. sing.) and all his friends (masc. pl.) said (fem. sing.) to him (Est. 5:14)

5.6.3 Person

There are three values associated with the personal attribute: first person, second person, and third person.\textsuperscript{15} The attribute is a dependent variable used as a marker to link the verb with its subject (§ 2.3.4). The value is governed by concord with the person attribute of the subject.

5.6.3.1 First Person. The first person attribute is used when the writer or speaker is the subject of the verb.

And I, Daniel, fainted and was sick for days (Dan. 8:27)

It is used whenever the writer or speaker is part of a compound subject. The first person plural may or may not include the second person (reader/listener) or the third person.

the lad and I will go (1 com. pl.) yonder (Gen. 22:5)

\textsuperscript{14} Of the finite verbs, 39,798 are masculine, 4,893 are feminine, and 11,115 are marked common gender.

\textsuperscript{15} Of the finite verbs, 6,905 are first person, 11,051 are second person, and 37,850 are third.
5.6.3.2 Second Person. The second person attribute is used whenever the subject of the verb includes the reader or hearer, but not the writer or speaker.

לֹא תִשְׁתִּי נַעֲרֹתֶּ֑י אֲנִֵ֥י וְׁנַעֲרֹתֶַ֖י אָצִ֣וּם כֵָ֑ן
You and your maids shall not drink (2mp) wine forever. (Jer. 35:6)

5.6.3.3 Third Person. The third person attribute is used whenever the subject of the verb does not include the writer or reader, speaker or hearer.

5.6.4 Voice

The voice attribute of a verb expresses the relationship of the verbal action to the subject. Four basic values are associated with this attribute: (1) the active voice, (2) the middle voice, (3) the passive voice, and (4) the reflexive voice. These attribute values are defined by the stem of the verb as follows:

5.6.4.1 Active Voice. The active voice is expressed by the qal, piel, and hiphil stems. It is used whenever the subject is the executor of the verbal action.

וַיֶּחֱזְקָּדָו מִן־הַפְּלִשְׁתִי בַּקִֶ֣לַע וּבָאֵֶּ֔בֶן
So David prevailed over the Philistine with a sling and a stone (1 Sam. 17:50)

5.6.4.2 Middle Voice. The middle voice is expressed by the niphal stem of some verbs. It is used whenever the subject is acting on his own behalf.

נְשַׁאֲלָּהּ מִמֶּ֥נֶֽהְוּ דָוִֹּד לָרוּץֹּ בֵּֽית־לָהְוּ עִירֵּ֔וֹ
David earnestly asked permission of me that he might run over to Bethlehem, his city (1 Sam 20:6)

5.6.4.3 Passive Voice. The passive attribute is expressed by the qal passive,\(^{16}\) the niphal (for some verbs), pual, and hophal stems, and at times by the hithpael. It is used whenever the subject is the recipient of the verbal action.

שיָ֖ם אֵֽקַר אֶֽבֶרְרָּהּ אֶֽשֶֹרְהָֽהּ
There Abraham was buried, and Sarah his wife. (Gen. 25:10)

---
^{16} The qal passive is rare in Hebrew but it is believed to appear in places like Num. 32:5—יִרְדֶּשׁ; Gen. 19:4—יִרְדֶּשׁ; see GKC §53u.
The reflexive attribute is expressed by the hithpael and niphal stem. It is used whenever the subject is both executor and recipient of the verbal action.

He shall not defile himself for his father or his mother; (Lev. 21:11)

or if he is able he may redeem himself. (Lev. 25:49)

It is evident that the verbal stem does not uniquely define the voice attribute. The exact value varies from verb to verb and must be determined from the dictionary.17

In general, it may be assumed that the passive, middle, and reflexive voice are the result of transformations on kernel clauses in the active voice. The syntax of these transformations is discussed § 13.2.

5.6.5 Aspect

The attribute of aspect refers to the quality of action, state, or relationship named by the verb. There are three primary values of the aspect attribute in Hebrew: perfect, imperfect, and durative.18 The perfect aspect views the action as completed in some sense of the term; the imperfect views the action as incomplete in some sense; and the durative views the action as an enduring process in some sense.19 The more explicit nuances of the quality of action are expressed by additional contextual cues.

---

17 The verb stem may also signify a secondary value such as the reciprocal, the tolerative, or the repetitive. These also are specified by the dictionary.

18 Most grammarians recognize only perfect and imperfect as aspects, because there are only two aspect conjugations of the finite verb; but the durative also is a quality of action, and rightly an aspect.

19 The entire subject of aspect is still under debate among linguists, and the final word has not yet been given. The results of the debate affect semantic decisions, translation, and hermeneutics. For the purposes of this work, I take the present position. That is sufficient for the study of the syntactic structures of Biblical Hebrew.
The perfect aspect is designated by the perfect conjugation of the verb; the imperfect aspect is designated by the imperfect conjugation; however, the durative is designated by the participle,\(^{20}\) accompanied by the auxiliary verb הָיָה or its equivalent.\(^{21}\)

Earlier grammarians referred to these conjugations as marking tenses.\(^{22}\) The perfect was regarded as past tense or preterit, and the imperfect as future. This tense view for Biblical Hebrew developed under the influence of Medieval Hebrew which had borrowed the tense concept from European languages and incorporated it into its own conjugational system. Modern Hebrew inherited this tense inflection, and consequently has lost true aspect. However, it is now recognized that Biblical Hebrew inflected the verb according to aspect and not tense. Each aspect is used equally well in past, present, and future time; consequently, aspect does not directly specify temporal connotations.

The earlier confusion about tense came about because the perfect aspect (completed action) naturally occurs most often in past time; the imperfect aspect (incomplete action) naturally occurs most often in future time; and the durative aspect occurs most often in present time. Biblical Hebrew has a means of expressing tense, but it is not directly related to the conjugate forms of the verb; it is expressed semantically by means of verbs, nouns, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions having various temporal connotations (see Appendix One).

5.6.5.1 The perfect aspect. The perfect aspect (specified by the perfect conjugation) expresses some sense of completed action, state, or relationship. Semantic context determines whether the perfect aspect is to be interpreted as aoristic (point action), as gnomic (universal or timeless truth), or as perfective (point action with a continuing effect), together with their more subtle variations.\(^{23}\) The perfect aspect usually is limited to the indicative mood.\(^{24}\)

*Timeless completed action* is expressed by the perfect aspect in a timeless context. The action, state, or relationship is viewed as complete, but the verb expresses universal or timeless

\(^{20}\) The participle is part of the conjugation of verbs in English as well as in other languages.

\(^{21}\) The auxiliary verb is part of the durative verb phrase (§ 17.3), but it is frequently elided by a deletion transformation whenever its presence is redundant (§ 19.4).

\(^{22}\) Some continue to do so; thus Muraoka § 111 e-g. See Appendix One for a more lengthy discussion and defense of the aspect view.

\(^{23}\) The use of the perfect aspect with Waw Consecutive is discussed in chapter 9 (§ 9.2.1 b).

\(^{24}\) The perfect aspect is used in certain conditional sentences: the taken-for-granted true-to-fact conditional, and the contrary-to-actual-fact. On rare occasions the precative perfect is used in Hebrew, Phoenician, and Ugaritic (Blommerde, 18).
(gnomic) truth. To express this aspect, English uses the simple perfect tense for active verbs and the simple present tense for statives.

אמר יבלי בלבלו יאכ אלוהים
The fool has said in his heart, “There is no God.” (Psa. 14:1a)

הם והשערים והטרים יוללו
They are corrupt, they have done abominable works. (Psa. 14:1b)

The ox knows its owner
And the donkey its master’s crib;
But Israel does not know,
My people do not consider. (Isa. 1:3)

Past time completed action is expressed by the perfect aspect in a past tense context. The action, state, or relationship is viewed as complete, having taken place prior to the current time of the narrative. This is the most common use of the perfect aspect. English uses various past tenses to translate this depending on sense and context.

בראשית ברא אלהים את השמיים ואת הארץ
In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth. (Gen. 1:1)
(simple past)

ולבח כלב לגרד עזר ['-]
Now Laban had gone to shear his sheep (Gen. 31:19)
(perfect)

וכלך אבסך סבך דבר אלרי יוה
So Abram departed as the LORD had spoken to him. (Gen. 12:4)
(perfect)

Present time completed action is expressed by the perfect aspect in a present tense context. The action, state, or relationship is viewed as complete although it is simultaneous or contemporary with the current time of the narrative. This is often used in indirect discourse. English uses the simple present to express this aspect.

— I know (Gen. 4:9)
— we remember (Num. 11:5)
— I despise (Amos 5:21)
— I swear (Jer. 22:5)
— I counsel (2 Sam. 17:11)
— I testify (Deut. 8:19)
— I lift up (Gen. 14:22)
Future time completed action is expressed by the perfect aspect in a future context. The action, state, or relationship is viewed as complete or certain even though it is still in the future. English uses the emphatic future to express this aspect.

 Surely we shall die, we shall perish, we all shall perish! (Num. 17:27)

 Therefore my people shall go into captivity. (Isa. 5:13)

 For I will not leave you until I have done what I have spoken to you. (Gen. 28:15)

 When I perish, I perish. (Est. 4:16)

 5.6.5.2 The imperfect aspect. The imperfect aspect (specified by the imperfect conjugation) expresses incomplete action, state, or relationship. The incompleteness may be due to the type of action (repetitive, frequentive, habitual, iterative, periodic, progressive) or due to various uncertainties (future time, non-indicative moods). Semantic context determines how the imperfect aspect is to be interpreted and translated with respect to these various senses. The imperfect aspect is used in all moods.

 Timeless incomplete action is expressed by the imperfect aspect in a timeless context. The action, state, or relationship is viewed as repetitive, frequentive, habitual, iterative, periodic, or progressive, without specific reference to time. To express this aspect, English uses the simple present tense.

 A wise son makes a father glad. (Prov. 15:20)

 He makes me to lie down in green pastures; He leads me beside the still waters. (Psa. 23:2)

 You shall take for yourself of all food that is eaten. (Gen. 6:21)

 25 The use of the imperfect aspect with Waw Consecutive is discussed in chapter 9 (§ 9.2.1 b).
Past time incomplete action is expressed by the imperfect aspect in a past tense context. The action, state, or relationships is viewed as repetitive, frequentive, habitual, iterative, periodic, or progressive, in past time. English uses the simple past or habitual past to express this aspect.

A subordinate clause in a past tense context may express incomplete action with respect to another verb. English uses various past tenses to translate this aspect.
The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Verbs

Chapter 5

Present time incomplete action is expressed by the imperfect aspect in a present tense context. The action, state, or relationship is viewed as repetitive, frequentive, habitual, iterative, periodic, or progressive in time current to the narrative. English uses the simple present to express this aspect.

Future time incomplete action is expressed by the imperfect aspect in a future context. The action, state, or relationship is viewed as repetitive, frequentive, habitual, iterative, periodic, or progressive in time subsequent to the current time of the narrative. English uses the simple future to express this aspect.\(^{27}\)

5.6.5.3 The durative aspect. The durative aspect (specified by the participle with the auxiliary חָיָה) expresses enduring action, state, or relationship. In contrast to the imperfect aspect which views the action as an iterative process that may be symbolized by a sequence of dots (\(. . .\) etc.), the durative aspect views the action as an uninterrupted process that may be symbolized by a continuous line (_____). The durative aspect does not imply anything about the beginning or ending of the action, it focuses primarily on the continued exercise of the activity.

When the participle is used as a verb, the verbal characteristics not defined by the inflection of the participle must be supplied or implied from the context. Thus person must be defined by a personal pronoun or by the inflection of the auxiliary verb (הָיָה); and mood (if not indicative) must be defined by the inflection of the auxiliary verb (הָיָה), or implied from the context. When tense

---

\(^{27}\) The examples of the nonindicative moods should be consulted here.
is timeless or present, the auxiliary (יֵשָׁ) is omitted or replaced with שׁ or a third person pronoun; the negated auxiliary is אֵין, usually with a pronoun suffix marking person.

When the participle is used in a verb phrase, it does not employ the morphemes of the substantive that are not common with a verb. Thus the predicate participle never takes the definite article or the construct state.

*Timeless durative action* is expressed by the participle in a timeless context. The action, state, or relationship is regarded as a truth that holds for all time. English uses the simple present to translate this aspect, or the present continuous.

\[\text{דבר תלך רוחר בא} \]
\[\text{זארכו לטלש טעדה:} \]
\[\text{one generation passes away,} \]
\[\text{and another generation comes;} \]
\[\text{But the earth abides forever. (Eccl. 1:4)} \]
\[\text{[omitted auxilliaries]} \]
\[\text{כל-תנוהל הלכלכ אל-קﭧ} \]
\[\text{והמכ ארמנ תלך} \]
\[\text{All the rivers run into the sea,} \]
\[\text{Yet the sea is not full; (Eccl. 1:7a)} \]
\[\text{[omitted auxiliaries]} \]
\[\text{אל-מקכו שלטהל הלכלם} \]
\[\text{שא הד שיבך תלך:} \]
\[\text{To the place from which the rivers come,} \]
\[\text{There they return again. (Eccl. 1:7b)} \]
\[\text{[omitted auxiliaries]} \]

*Past time durative action* is expressed by the participle in a past tense context. The action, state, or relationship is viewed as in continuous exercise prior to the current time of the narrative. English uses the past continuous or the simple past, depending on sense.

\[\text{וכלשת כולה לנה אד-אמך זתרח} \]
\[\text{Now Moses was keeping the flock of Jethro (Exod. 3:1)} \]
\[\text{[omitted auxilliaries]} \]
\[\text{והמר כולה מועדח אד-יריה} \]
\[\text{And the child was ministering to the LORD (1 Sam. 2:11)} \]

---

28 GKC §116 n. The auxiliary verb יֵשָׁ is omitted in this case; the negated auxiliary is אֵין, usually with a pronoun suffix to mark the personal attribute of the subject.

29 GKC §116 o. The past tense is expressed by the auxiliary verb יֵשָׁ in the perfect aspect. The auxiliary is required where past time is not clear from the context; otherwise it is usually omitted.
And all the people were witnessing the thunderings. (Exod. 20:18)

The keeper of the prison was not looking into anything that was under Joseph’s hand (Gen. 39:23)

And Lot was sitting in the gate of Sodom (Gen. 19:1)

And I was fasting and praying before the God of Heaven (Neh. 1:4)

The oxen were plowing (Job 1:14)

Abner was strengthening his hold on the house of Saul. (2 Sam. 3:6)

Sometimes in certain contexts, the durative may express habitual or repetitive action rather than continuous action. In these cases English uses the past habitual tense.

They would kill (some of ) them. (2 Kgs. 17:25)

Seventy kings . . . used to gather their food under my table. (Judg. 1:7)

Joseph . . . used to feed the flock with his brothers (Gen. 37:2)

Present time durative action is expressed by the participle in a present tense context. The action, state, or relationship is viewed as in continuous exercise during the time contemporary with the narrative. English uses the simple present or present continuous to express this aspect.

For God knows . . . (Gen. 3:5)

As yet you exalt youself against My people (Exod. 9:17)

The Philistines are fighting against Keilah, And they are robbing the threshing floors. (1 Sam. 23:1)

30 GKC §116 n. The auxiliary verb הָיָה is omitted in this case; the negated auxiliary is נָס, usually with a pronoun suffix to mark the personal attribute of the subject.
Your brother Esau comforts himself concerning you (Gen. 27:42)

For the LORD your God is testing you (Deut. 13:4)

Surely God is judging in the earth (Psa. 58:12)

I am seeking my brothers. Where are they shepherding? (Gen. 37:16)

Future time durative action is expressed by the participle in a future tense context. The action is viewed as in continuous exercise subsequent to the current time of the narrative. English uses the future continuous or the simple future, depending on sense.

About this time next year you shall embrace a son (2 Kgs. 4:16)

For we will destroy this place (Gen. 19:13)

For yet seven days and I will cause it to rain upon the earth (Gen. 7:4)

And also the nation whom they serve I will judge (Gen. 15:14)

Your eyes shall see your teachers. (Isa. 30:20)

And let it divide the waters from the waters. (Gen. 1:6)

This gate shall be shut . . . it shall be shut. (Ezek. 44:2)

The mountain of the LORD’s house shall be established (Isa. 2:2)

It is obvious that the various verb forms are used in all the different temporal contexts—tense is expressed by contextual cues, not verbal forms. Table 5.5 summarizes the use of Hebrew verb forms in the different temporal settings.

31 GKC §116 p, the future tense is frequently expressed by the auxiliary verb הָיָה in the imperfect aspect. The auxiliary is required where future time is not clear from the context; otherwise it may be omitted.
Chapter 5

The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Verbs

5.6.6 Mood

Mood is the attribute of a verb that expresses the degree of certainty of the verbal action, state, or relationship. The action may be certain, possible, or merely potential; it may be mandatory, necessary, optional, or merely desirable. The various degrees of certainty are expressed partly by morphemes, partly by particles, and partly by semantic context.

5.6.6.1 The morphemes of mood. The verbs of Biblical Hebrew have mood morphemes that developed in pre-Biblical times from four basic mood conjugations of the imperfect. The ancestral forms were:

1. indicative—yaqtulu
2. subjunctive—yaqtula
3. hortative—yaqtulâ
4. jussive—yaqtul

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Main Verb</th>
<th>Auxiliary Verb</th>
<th>External Time Reference</th>
<th>Others</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Timeless</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durative</td>
<td>Participle</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consecutive</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Waw Consec.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durative</td>
<td>Participle</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consecutive</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Waw Consec.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durative</td>
<td>Participle</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consecutive</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Waw Consec.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Time</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incomplete</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Durative</td>
<td>Participle</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consecutive</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Waw Consec.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

32 Transliteration is used in discussing the ancestral forms in order to show final vowels that have been lost in Biblical Hebrew.
In addition, there were two energetic conjugations, *yaqtulanna* and *yaqtulan*, employing a final *Nun* (*Nun energicum*); these two conjugations seem to have been merely stylistic variants of the indicative. All these conjugations are attested in Arabic, except the hortative (*yaqtulâ*) which some believe developed from *yaqtulan* through its pausal form *yaqtula*. It seems better to postulate a separate ancestral hortative, however, than to derive this conjugation from a stylistic variant.

The imperative was formed by dropping the preformatives from the second person mood conjugations. This resulted in possibly four different imperative forms:

1. *qetulu*, from the indicative *taqtulu*
2. *qetula*, from the subjunctive *taqtula*
3. *qetulâ*, from the hortative *taqtulâ*
4. *qetul*, from the jussive *taqtul*

In the process of time, Hebrew lost the final short vowels. This resulted in the partial loss of the distinction between the mood forms. The indicative and subjunctive became *yiqtol* (*קָטַל), no longer distinguished except by semantic context; the jussive also became *yiqtol* (*קָטַל), usually not distinguished from the indicative, except in the *hiphil* stem and in some weak roots—יָקַט (ind.), but הַקָּט (juss.); יָשַׁב (ind.) but יָשָׁב (juss.). Only the hortative remained distinct as *yiqtulâ* (*לָקַט). Even so, the distinction of form for jussives and hortatives is lost in the inflections that employ endings, that is, the plural forms and those with pronoun suffixes.

The imperatives also survived in three forms, *קטל* formed from the indicative/subjunctive; *קטה* (*hiphil) formed from the jussive; and *_pm* (*hiphil) formed from the hortative. It is likely that the imperative derived from the hortative form adds a hortative flavor to the command, and the imperative derived from the jussive form adds a jussive flavor to the command.

---

33 GKC §48 b; the conjugations are similarly attested in Ugaritic (Gordon UT, 9.10, 9.11, 9.15).

34 The hortative conjugation may be attested in Ugaritic *iqra*—let me invoke, *ispa*—let me eat (Gordon UT, 9.10). The meanings suggest that these forms were not subjunctives but cohortatives. The subjunctive and hortative forms would have been orthographically the same in Ugaritic.

35 The jussive form is most common in the third person (נָשַׁב), but as demonstrated later, it is used in all three persons. See Muraoka §114 for a few short (jussive) forms that are difficult to explain.

36 The hortative form is most common in the first person (לָקַט), but as demonstrated later, it is used in all three persons.
As demonstrated later, the morphemes of the mood conjugations do not uniquely correspond with the attributes of semantic mood. In order to avoid confusion of terms when referring to forms (morphemes) and to mood (attributes), the forms are referred to as:

1. normal imperfect—yiqtōl (קְלָל) developed from the ancestral indicative / subjunctive form.
2. short imperfect—yāšōb (שֶׁב) developed from the ancestral jussive form.  
3. long imperfect—yiqtēlā (לתָל) developed from the ancestral hortative form.

For the same reason, the imperative forms are referred to as:

1. normal imperative—qētōl (קָל) 
2. short imperative—ḥāšēb (שֶׁב) 
3. long imperative—ḥaggīdā (גָּלָל)

Traditionally the use of the long or short imperative form has been regarded as evidence of emphasis or urgency;  whereas Muraoka  suggests that there is no essential difference in meaning. I suggest that the long or short imperative forms convey the same mood nuance as their corresponding imperfect forms. The imperative form just adds the directive tone to the given mood, as demonstrated in subsequent discussion.

The mood names (indicative, subjunctive, hortative, etc.) are reserved for designating the values of the mood attributes. The next section defines the various mood values and defines how these moods are specified by the inflected forms.

5.6.6.2 The attribute values of mood. Grammarians do not agree on the number and names of the moods of Hebrew verbs. This is due in part to the lack of agreement between the mood forms (morphemes) and the mood values, and in part to the lack of standard terminology among the scholars. Seven mood values are defined in this work in an effort to provide some measure of structure to the moods of Hebrew verbs; the mood values are (1) indicative, (2) subjunctive, (3) volitive, (4) hortative, (5) precative, (6) persuasive, and (7) optative. The last five moods may be expressed in two different tones: (1) simple, and (2) directive: each tone may be rendered polite, formal, or respectful by the post-positive  

37 The use of the alleged preterite form is discussed in the section on the Waw Consecutive Appendix One.
38 GKC § 48k.
39 Muraoka § 114m.
40 The particle נ is usually omitted after a pronoun suffix, but see 1 Kgs. 1:12 and Num. 11:15 for exceptions.
There is not a unique, one-to-one, mapping of the verb forms to the mood attributes. The mapping is approximate (see Table 5.6, p. 150). The precise value of the mood attribute must be decided by the semantics of the context in harmony with the forms.

Similar tones are active in English. The response to the request, “May I go home?” may be given in English as follows:

(1) simple—“You may (not) go home.”
(2) emphatic—“You shall (not) go home.”
(3) directive—“Go home!” or “Do not go home!”

Notice that the imperative form may be used even when the response is not a command, but merely a mild granting of permission. The statements are made polite by including please, or its equivalent.

In both English and Hebrew, the imperative form is used in many statements not regarded as commands.

(1) entreaty

Arise, O LORD, in Your anger. (Psa. 7:7)

Plead my cause, O LORD. (Psa. 35:1)

(2) request

Come, let us make our father drink wine. (Gen. 19:32)

(3) plea

Help, O king! (2 Sam. 14:4)

In Hebrew the simple tone is expressed by the appropriate imperfect form; it is negated by לָשָׁן with the short imperfect. The emphatic tone is negated by לָשָׁן. The directive is expressed by the corresponding imperative form, limited to positive statements in the second person. The simple tone may be expressed in all three persons, both positive and negative.

---

41 The volitive uses the normal imperfect form; the hortative and precative use the long imperfect; and the persuasive and optative use the short imperfect.

42 The volitive uses the normal imperative form; the hortative and precative use the long imperative; and the persuasive and optative use the short imperative.
The particle אַלּ may be used with negatives of the simple tone, but not the emphatic. If אַלּ is used it follows the ָאֵלָ, not the verb; it never is used with ָאֵלָ.

אלַ-אִלָּבָּאָה אָלָּאָב
Please let not the LORD be angry. (Gen. 18:30)

5.6.6.2.1 The indicative mood affirms that the action, state, or relationship is actual, true, or certain in the mind of the writer or speaker. The indicative is the usual mood of discourse. With this mood the verb may assume all values of aspect (perfect, imperfect, durative). In the imperfect aspect, the indicative mood is usually designated by the normal imperfect form. The indicative is negated by the prepositive negative אלָ. English uses the indicative mood.

בַּ-אמַר הָאֵלָב A wise son makes a father glad. (Prov. 15:20)

כָּהָ-טִהְטִי-לְחָמֵת לְחָמֵת שְׁבֵּעָה-שְׁבֵּעָה Thus Solomon gave to Hiram year by year. (1 Kgs. 5:25, vs. 11 Eng.)

נַעֲרֵ-מֵאֲה אָשֶּר אָשֶּר בִּלְפַרְגֹּת Now you shall see what I will do to Pharaoh. (Exod. 6:1)

However, at times, the indicative mood is designated by the short imperfect form.

יָרָכָּךָ יָרָכָּךָ יָרָכָּךָ The LORD will make the plague cling to you. (Deut. 28:21)

יִלְּךָ יִלְּךָ יִלְּךָ The LORD will bring you and your king. (Deut. 28:36)

5.6.6.2.2 The subjunctive mood affirms that the action, state, or relationship is merely possible, potential, or hypothetical. With this mood the verb may assume all values of aspect (perfect, imperfect, or durative) although the imperfect aspect is the most common.

Historically, the imperfect subjunctive form (yaqtula) was distinct from the imperfect indicative (yaqtulu); but with the loss of final short vowels the distinction was lost. The subjunctive form is now identical with the indicative form. Usually only context and sense designate the subjunctive mood in Biblical Hebrew; however, the short imperfect form is used at times. The subjunctive is negated by the prepositive negative אלָ or אלָל. English uses the subjunctive.

---

43 The actual reliability of the statement rests on the veracity or knowledge of the writer or speaker.

44 The perfect aspect is used in taken-for-granted and contrary-to-fact conditionals; it may also be used in hypothetical clauses (LaSor, 32.514 f).

45 The participle is used in contrary-to-present-reality conditional sentences.
The subjunctive mood may be designated by the conditional conjunctions that introduce the protasis of conditional sentences:\(^46\)

- if (introduces true-to-fact conditions)
- if, in case that (introduces juridical conditions)
- if and only if (introduces exclusive conditions)
- if and only if (introduces exclusive conditions)
- if not (introduces negative conditions)
- if (introduces contrary-to-fact conditions)
- if (introduces contrary-to-fact conditions)
- if not (introduces negative contrary-to-fact conditions)

The subjunctive mood may be designated by adverbial conjunctions of purpose that introduce a clause of purpose:

- in order that
- in order that

Please say you are my sister, that it may be well with me. (Gen. 12:13)

And let me eat, that my soul may bless you. (Gen. 27:4)

The subjunctive mood may be designated by adverbial conjunction of result that introduces a clause of potential result:

- lest

Take your wife . . .

lest you be consumed in the punishment of the city. (Gen. 19:15)

5.6.6.2.3 The volitive mood asserts that the action, state, or relationship is demanded, necessary, obligatory, or permissible in the mind or the writer or speaker. The volitive is used to express a law, a command, a prohibition, the granting of permission or assurance; these are written or spoken by those in authority to those under authority.\(^47\) Usually the simple volitive is expressed by the normal imperfect form in the general case (i.e., all three persons).\(^48\) The negative is

---

\(^46\) Examples are given in the section on the syntax of conditional sentences (§ 9.3.6).

\(^47\) The actual necessity or obligation depends on true authority of the writer or speaker.

\(^48\) Occasionally the short imperfect form is used with the volitive.
expressed by לֶא with the short imperfect. The directive volitive is expressed by the normal imperative form, limited to positive statements in the second person.

The volitive mood is used in four contexts: (1) the juridical, (2) the executive, (3) the permissive, and (4) the assurative.

*The juridical volitive* is used in formal statements of law, statutes, and commands. The commandments usually are universal, applying generally to all men at all times, being issued by divine or civil authority. As such the juridical volitive is limited to the simple and directive tones. Positive juridical commands in the second person may be expressed by the normal imperative form; in the second and third person they may be expressed by the normal imperfect form. Juridical prohibitions are emphatic, and are expressed by the prepositive negative לֶא with the normal imperfect form; the imperative form is never used in prohibitions. English uses the emphatic future indicative; the imperative is used for the directive tone.

*Examples of simple juridical commands:*

\[\text{שְׁמַרְתָּ הַצְּדָקָהְךָ אֲסָפְתָּ הַיִּרְאֵתָךְ אֶלָּהֲכֵם} \]
You shall diligently keep the commandments of the LORD your God\(^{49}\) (Deut. 6:17)

\[\text{שְׁמַחֵתְךָ זִיֵּר} \]
He shall separate himself from wine and similar drink. (Num. 6:3)

(3rd person)

*Examples of directive juridical commands:*

\[\text{כַּלְכָּר אֲבָרֶיךָ אֶלָּהֲמָךְ} \]
Honor your father and your mother. (Exod. 20:12)

\[\text{שְׁמַעְתָּ הָיִדְרֶךָ אֶלָּהֲמָךְ} \]
Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God, The LORD is one! (Deut. 6:4)

*Examples of juridical prohibitions:*

\[\text{לֹא תָּרְשֵׁי} \]
You shall not commit murder. (Exod. 20:13)

\[\text{לֹא תָּרְשֵׁי} \]
You shall not commit adultery. (Exod. 20:14)

\[\text{לֹא תָּרְשֵׁי} \]
You shall not steal. (Exod. 20:15)

---

\(^{49}\) This example employs the normal imperfect with energetic Nun which is merely stylistic, having no effect on meaning.
The executive volitive is used in statements of command, order, instructions, demand, obligation, necessity, or urgency. The commands usually are restricted in time and scope; generally they are directed to specific individuals in specific circumstances. Executive commands are issued to subordinates by those in real or assumed authority.

Usually the simple executive commands are expressed by the normal imperfect form, or at times by the short imperfect. English uses the auxiliary “let” or the emphatic future indicative.

He shall restore fourfold for the lamb. (2 Sam. 12:6)(third person)

Let there be light. (Gen. 1:3)(impersonal short form)

Let there be a firmament. (Gen. 1:6)

And you shall write Aaron’s name on the rod of Levi. (Num. 17:18, vs. 3 Eng.)

The directive executive commands are expressed by the normal imperative form, limited to positive commands in the second person. English uses the imperative.

Get out of your country. (Gen. 12:1)

Be ready for the third day. (Exod. 19:15)

Simple executive prohibitions are expressed by the short imperfect form with לא. Emphatic prohibitions are expressed with לא. English uses do not.

Do not come near your wives. (Exod. 19:15)

Do not be afraid, Abram. (Gen. 15:1)

Muraoka § 114o lists examples of commands issued in cases where execution is beyond the capability of the one receiving the command (Gen 42:16; Deut 32:50).
Executive commands are made polite or respectful by the postpositive particle נָא.

Then he said to him, “Please go and see if it is well with your brothers.” (Gen. 37:14)

Please say you are my sister. (Gen. 12:13)

Please put your hand under my thigh. (Gen. 24:2)

Please take your son, your only son . . . and go to the land of Moriah. (Gen. 22:2)

In prohibitions the particle נָא follows the negative לא. The particle נָא is not used with לא in emphatic prohibitions.

The word נָא in this example is not the particle of entreaty, but the word raw.

51 The word נָא in this example is not the particle of entreaty, but the word raw.
The permissive volitive grants permission. The simple permissive is expressed by the normal imperfect form, or at times by the short imperfect. The negative is expressed by the short imperfect with אֲלֵךְ, and is indistinguishable from a prohibition. English uses the auxiliary may.

מָכַל אֲלֵךְ אַלּוּ בֹאָּל תַּאַכָּל
Of every tree of the garden you may freely eat. (Gen. 2:16)

אַלּוּ בֹאָּל תַּאַכָּל
You may kill my two sons if I do not bring him back to you. (Gen. 42:37)

לֵשָׁר בָּאֵר הָּנָּשׁ
They may dwell in the land of Goshen. (Gen. 47:6)

לָה הָּנֶפֶם
For her he may defile himself. (Lev. 21:3)

לְהָּנֶפֶם לָא הָּנֶפֶם
He may eat the bread of his God. (Lev. 21:22)

לָנֶפֶם הַגְּוֵה טַחְתָּר
Of a foreigner you may require it. (Deut. 15:3)

אֶלֶּה אָלֶּה אֵלֶּה יִתַּנְה
No my son, we may not all go! (2 Sam. 13:25)

The directive permissive\footnote{GKC §110 b; Muraoka § 114n; see also Exod. 4:18; 2 Sam 15:9; 2 Kgs. 2:17; 6:2; Ruth 2:2.} is expressed by the normal imperative form, limited to positive permission in the second person. English uses the imperative.

רְקִם בַּעֲדוֹ הַגָּוָּר אֶתְנַא אֶלֶּה אֵלֶּה יִתַּנְה
...בֹאָּל רְצִים
“What ever happens, please let me also run” . . .
So he said to him, “Run.” (2 Sam. 18:22, 23)

רְקִם בַּעֲדוֹ הַגָּוָּר אֶתְנַא אֶלֶּה אֵלֶּה יִתַּנְה
...בֹאָּל רְצִים
“Now please let me go up and bury my father” . . .
And Pharaoh said, “Go up and bury your father.” (Gen. 50:5, 6)

The assurative volitive\footnote{GKC §110 c.} expresses assurance of future results that are beyond the control of the person addressed. This is particularly effective in the directive. The directive assurative is
expressed by the normal imperative form, limited to positive assurance in the second person. English uses the imperative.


The LORD shall send the rod of Your strength out of Zion. Rule in the midst of Your enemies! (Psa. 110:2)

You shall eat this year such as grows of itself, And the second year what springs from the same; Also in the third year sow and reap, Plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them. (Isa. 37:30)

5.6.6.2.4 The hortative mood expresses exhortation either personal or impersonal. The exhortation usually is given to peers rather than to a subordinate.

The simple hortative is expressed by the long imperfect form, and negated by לא with the long form. The emphatic negative is expressed with לא.) The directive hortative is expressed by the long imperative form, and limited to positive statements in the second person.

The hortative mood is used in three contexts: (1) determinative, (2) cohortative, and (3) exhortative.

The determinative hortative expresses determination, possibly in the sense of self exhortation. This seems to be limited to the first person; thus only the simply tone is found, but no directives. English uses the simple future indicative.

I will now turn aside and see this great sight. (Exod. 3:3) (polite)

I will set a king over me. (Deut. 17:14)

And you say, “I will eat meat.” (Deut. 12:20)

---

54 The infinitive absolute serves as an imperative here.

55 At times the negative may use the short form.
Chapter 5  The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Verbs  141

I will go and see him before I die. (Gen. 45:28)

Let not the Lord be angry, and I will speak. (Gen. 18:30)

We will go down and buy you food. (Gen. 43:4)(plural)

I will go down now and see . . . and if not, I will know. (Gen. 18:21)

I will not linger thus with you! (2 Sam. 18:4)

I will not watch the death of the boy. (Gen. 21:16)

We will sing and praise Your power. (Psa. 21:14)

The determinative may be used even in conditional sentences or following negatives. 59

Though I speak, my grief is not relieved. (Job 16:6)

The cohortative urges peers to mutual action. It is limited to the first person; thus only the simple tone is found, but no directives. English uses the auxiliary “let.”

Let us go and serve other gods. (Deut. 13:7)

Let us break Their bonds in pieces
And cast away Their cords from us. (Psa. 2:3)

56 The negative אֵין applies to an elided verb, not to גַּנַּה.

57 The negative אֵין negates the adverb כִּי (thus), not the verb.

58 The long form of final נ verbs is not always distinct from the normal form. See the examples above in Gen. 18:21 and Exod. 3:3 where parallelism calls for הָיָה to be the long form.

59 GKC §108 d-e.
Let us not give heed to any of his words. (Jer. 18:18)  
(negative)

Let us make bricks and bake them thoroughly. (Gen. 11:3)

Let not the Lord be angry, and I will speak. (Gen. 18:30)

Let us not kill him! (Gen. 37:21)  
(emphatic negative)

The exhortative urges others to desirable action that the speaker or writer does not share; thus the first person is excluded. The second person positive exhortative is found usually in the directive tone, expressed by the long imperative form. The negative is expressed by לא (not) with the short imperfect form in both second and third person.

The emphatic negative, if it occurs, would be expressed by לא. English uses the imperative; for second person negatives the auxiliary do not is used; and for first and third person negatives, let not is used.

**Examples with the long imperative:**

Come, let us make our father drink wine. (Gen. 19:32)  

Sell me your birthright as of this day. (Gen. 25:31)

“Return, backsliding Israel,” says the LORD. (Jer. 3:12)

Please come and let us reason together. (Isa. 1:18)

---

60 The long imperfect form loses the final syllable when a pronoun suffix is attached. The form is regarded as virtually long.

61 The long imperfect form in the second person is rare. An example is found in Job 11:17 (you are dark), although it does not seem to be exhortative (GKC §48 d). Gordon noted that the long form yaqtulâ is not limited to the first person in Ugaritic (UT, 9.11). This is also true in Hebrew, although the examples are rare; see Isa. 5:19 for examples of the long form in third person.

62 This example illustrates the mixture of the exhortative (לך) with the cohortative (shall).  

63 This example illustrates the use of the polite imperative form together with the cohortative. The imperative has only a virtually long form for the plural.
Examples of negated exhortatives:

Let not our hand be upon him. (Gen. 37:27)  
(impersonal)

Do not be wise in your own eyes. (Prov. 3:7)  
(second person)

Let him not trust in futile things, deceiving himself. (Job 15:31)  
(impersonal)

5.6.6.2.5 The precative mood expresses entreaty or request for permission; it is used in all three persons. The simple precative is expressed by the long imperfect in general (i.e., in all three persons); it is negated by לֹא usually with the long imperfect form. The emphatic negative is expressed by לא with the normal imperfect form. The directive precative is expressed by the long imperative form, or at times by the short imperative, limited to positive second person statements.

The precative mood is used in two contexts: (1) entreaty, and (2) request for permission.

The precative of entreaty pleads for action on behalf of oneself or others. English uses the auxiliary let for simple entreaty, and the imperative for the directive tone.

Examples of simple entreaty (first person):

Let those who persecute me be ashamed,  
But do not let me be put to shame;  
Let them be dismayed.  
But do not let me be dismayed. (Jer. 17:18)  
(negative)

Please do not let us perish! (Jon. 1:14)  
(negative)

Example of simple entreaty (2nd person):

Do not be a terror to me. (Jer. 17:17)  
(negative)

Example of simple entreaty (3rd person):

64 The second and third person are rare for the long imperfect form. See footnote 60, p. 142.
This example mixes the normal imperfect and the long imperfect to express third person entreaty. It apparently is the only example of a third person long form in the Bible.

*Examples of directive entreaty:*

Please tell me where they are feeding their flocks. (Gen. 37:16) (polite)

Arise, O LORD, in Your anger;
Lift Yourself up because of the rage of my enemies,
And awake for me to the judgment You have commanded. (Psa. 7:7)

Plead my cause, O LORD,
with those who strive with me,
Fight against those who fight against me,
Take hold of shield and buckler,
And stand up for my help. (Psa. 35:1,2)

A messenger came to Saul, saying, “Hasten and come” (1 Sam. 23:27)

Be exalted, O LORD, in Your own strength!
We will sing and praise Your power. (Psa. 21:14)

Lift up Your feet to the perpetual desolations. (Psa. 74:3)

Give heed to the voice of my cry. (Psa. 5:3)

*The precative of request* makes an appeal for permission or favor. It is made to those in authority. The simple request is expressed by the long imperfect form; it is negated by לא with the short form. (The emphatic negative is expressed by לא with the short form.) The directive is
expressed by the long imperative form, limited to second person positive requests. English used the auxiliary *let* for simple requests, and the imperative for the directive tone.

*Examples of simple requests:*

אֶנְלָכְנִי וְאֶרֶמֶטָה אֶל-אָבִי וְאֶשְׁכָּבְהוּ
Please let me go up and bury my father, and I will come back. (Gen. 50:5)

יִנַּכֵּר הָאָרֶץ
Please let us pass through your country. (Num. 20:17)

אֶרֶנְטָה נָא לְעַבָּדְהוּ
Please let me give you counsel. (1 Kgs. 1:12)

גָּלַלְנוּ נָא וְרָאֶהֱיֶנֶס יָמִים בְּמֶנָּכָר
Please let us go three days' journey into the wilderness that we may sacrifice to the LORD our God. (Exod. 3:18)

אֶרֶנְטָה נָא בְּמַאֲרָא אֵל-הָאָרֶץ
Please let me also run after the Cushite. (2 Sam. 18:22)

לִבְּךָ אוֹהַ יָאִיר אִישָּׁל אָטְלִיכָא
Follow me, and let me take you to the man. (2 Kgs. 6:19)

אֵאָטְלִיכָא נָא לְיַאֲרֶל
Let me sow, and another eat. (Job 31:8)

אֵאָטְלִיכָא נָא לָא-אֶשָּׁא מֵאֶרֶתַּא אַל-אָטָם לָא אָסָבָה
Please let me not show partiality to anyone; Nor let me flatter any man. (Job 32:21)

(negative with virtual short form)

אֵאָטְלִיכָא מְרָעָה
Do not let me see my wretchedness! (Num. 11:15)

(negative)

לָא אֶסֶּק לִשָּׁמַע אֲלֵ-כָּלִיל יִשְׁרָאֵל
Let me not hear again the voice of the LORD my God, Nor let me see this great fire anymore. (Deut. 18:16)

(emphatic negative)

*Example of the directive request:*

תַּהֲקָל לְמַכְּסָה תֶּנַּבְרָה
Grant me the place of this threshing floor, that I may build an altar on it to the LORD (1 Chron. 21:22)
5.6.6.2.6 The persuasive mood attempts to persuade another to some course of action. The simple persuasive is expressed by the short imperfect form; it is negated by אל with the short form. (The emphatic negative is expressed by אל with the short form.) The directive persuasive is expressed by the short imperative form, limited to second person positive statements. English uses the auxiliary let for simple persuasion, and the imperative for the directive tone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hebrew</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>וְלָֽעַ֣בְר יֵשַׁ֖םֶ֣תֶר הָֽאֹֽהֶלֶּ֗נִי</td>
<td>Please let a little water be brought. (Gen. 18:4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>וַחֲלָֽהְלָ֣נִי נְאָֽהֶלֶּ֗נִי</td>
<td>Please let there be an oath between us. (Gen. 26:28)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Now therefore, please let your servant remain instead of the lad. (Gen. 44:33)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>וַחֲלָֽהְלָ֣נִי נְאָֽהֶלֶּ֗נִי</td>
<td>Please do not pass on by Your servant. (Gen. 18:3) (2nd pers. negative)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please let it be dry only on the fleece, but on all the ground let there be dew. (Jdgs. 6:39) (short form and normal form)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not charge us with innocent blood. (Jon. 1:14)(2nd pers. negative)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Please let not the LORD be angry. (Gen. 18:30) (negative)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For examples of the first person short forms see Deut 18:16; Isa 41:28; 42:6; Ezek 5:16; Hos 9:15. For second person short forms see 1 Sam 10:8; Ezek 3:3; Psa 71:21; 104:20 (Muraoka § 114 g).
Example of the directive persuasive:

לך מתקענו כי נכנטרו במענה מנאור.
Go away from us, for you are much mightier than we. (Gen. 26:16)

5.6.6.2.7 The optative mood expresses a wish, desire, blessing, or curse. The optative appears to be used only in the simple tone. It is expressed by the short imperfect form, and negated by אל. The optative may occur in two degrees of possibility: (1) true-to-fact, and (2) contrary-to-fact.

The true-to-fact optative expresses a wish, desire, or blessing that is possible to happen. It is expressed by the short imperfect form, and negated by אל. English used the auxiliary *may* or *let*; at times *may* is elided.

יבאך, יוהו אלנף: יאֵר יוהו סני אליך ירתש: ישא יוהו סני אליך ירתש לך שלום: May the LORD bless you and keep you. The LORD make His face shine upon you. And be gracious to you; May the LORD lift up His countenance upon you, And give you peace. (Num. 6:24-26)

קמה נפשי מהו, שלום יחל: והנה אמרייה קמדה: Let me die the death of righteous And let my end be like his! (Num. 23:10)

אלירוה ירי בו: Let my hand not be against him. (1 Sam. 18:17) (negative)

ינתק יוהו בכני ויבנק אמך現場ון מירתה: May the LORD watch between you and me when we are absent one from another. (Gen. 31:49)

תניוה תורא ירי תשך: אלירוהו ישלה אליהם ממקומם: ראלי יהוה כי לית נתח: May that day be darkness; May God above not seek it, Nor the light shine upon it. (Job 3:4) (negatives)
The contrary-to-present fact optative is expressed by הלל (would that) with the short imperfect form, or with a verbless noun clause. It may also be expressed by ונלכ (would to God) with a verbless noun clause, or occasionally by אלול (would that). English uses the subjunctive.

In the morning you shall say, “Would to God that it were evening!”
And at evening you shall say, “Would to God that it were morning!” (Deut. 28:67)

Would that my master were with the prophet who is in Samaria! (2 Kgs. 5:3)

The contrary-to-actual-fact optative is expressed by הלל (would that) with the perfect aspect, or by ונלכ (would to God)66 with the perfect or infinitive. English uses the subjunctive.

Would that we had died in the land of Egypt!
Or would that we had died in this wilderness! (Num. 14:2)

Would that we had died when our brothers died before the LORD. (Num. 20:3)

Would that we had been content, and dwelt on the other side of the Jordan! (Josh. 7:7) (the Waw consecutive carries the mood forward)

Would to God that we had died by the hand of the LORD in the land of Egypt. (Exod. 16:3)

Would to God that I had died in your place!
O Absalom my son, my son! (2 Sam. 19:1)

---

66 This idiom adds a emotional sense of regret.
The contrary-to-fact optative would surely be negated by the prepositive negative הָאָבִיל, but there seems to be no example in Bible.67

5.6.6.2.8 Moods summarized. In summary, the normal imperfect form usually is used for the indicative, subjunctive, and simple volitive; the long imperfect form is usually used for the simple hortative and precative; and the short imperfect form is used for the simple persuasive and optative. The normal imperative form is used to express the directive volitive; the long imperfect form is used for the directive hortative and directive precative; and the short imperative form is used for the directive persuasive, and at times as an alternate for the directive precative of entreaty.

It seems that at times the short imperfect form may be used as a stylistic variant for the normal and long forms in just about any mood. The short imperfect form is used regularly with הָאָבִיל to express the simple negative of all the moods except the indicative, subjunctive, and juridical volitive (these moods are negated by הָאָבִיל with the normal imperfect). For the other moods, the emphatic negative is expressed by הָאָבִיל. Table 5.6 summarizes the relationship between the Hebrew moods and the verb forms.

Translating Hebrew moods. In English mood is expressed primarily by the modal auxiliaries will, shall, can, may, might, and must, and by their “past tense” (or conditional) alternates, would, should, could, might, and ought to. The modal auxiliary is the first word of the verb phrase; it is followed by the appropriate infinitive of the main verb. Table 5.7 summarizes the common meanings associated with the English mode auxiliaries.

The modal auxiliaries are limited to the indicative and subjunctive moods. English expresses the hortative, precative, and persuasive moods by means of the auxiliary let which precedes the subject as follows:

Let + subject + infinitive + predicate complement

English expresses the optative mood by means of the auxiliary may which precedes the subject in the same way. The infinitive without an auxiliary expresses the English imperative mood.

67 For this mood in Modern Hebrew see H. Rosen, 79-80, 227.
### Table 5.6
Summary of Hebrew Moods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tone →</th>
<th>Simple</th>
<th>Directive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Form →</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Normal</td>
<td>Long</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mood ↓</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Indicative</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Subjunctive</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Volitive:</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Juridical</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Executive</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Permissive</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Assurative</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Hortative:</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Determinative</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Cohortative</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Exhortative</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Precative:</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Entreaty</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Request</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Persuasive</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Optative:</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) True-to-fact</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Contrary-to-fact</td>
<td>±</td>
<td>±</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ means positive statement
- means negative statement (simple, emphatic)

Most English grammarians suggest that the auxiliary *will* should be used with second and third person in the simple factual indicative, and that *shall* should be used with the first person. They also suggest that *shall* should be used with the second and third person in the emphatic factual indicative, and that *will* should be used with the first person.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple</th>
<th>Emphatic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I shall</td>
<td>I will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You will</td>
<td>You shall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He (she, it) will</td>
<td>He (she, it) shall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>we shall</td>
<td>we will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>they will</td>
<td>they shall</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 5.7
English Mode Auxiliaries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mood →</th>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sense ↓</td>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fact (simple)</td>
<td>will</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fact (emphatic)</td>
<td>shall</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Command</td>
<td>shall</td>
<td>should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determination</td>
<td>shall</td>
<td>should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Certainty</td>
<td>shall</td>
<td>should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compulsion</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>must</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necessity</td>
<td>must</td>
<td>must</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obligation</td>
<td>ought to</td>
<td>ought to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duty</td>
<td>ought to</td>
<td>ought to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duty</td>
<td>should</td>
<td>should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expectation</td>
<td>should</td>
<td>should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Custom</td>
<td>should</td>
<td>should</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possibility</td>
<td>may</td>
<td>might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Permissible</td>
<td>may</td>
<td>might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential</td>
<td>might</td>
<td>might</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ability</td>
<td>can</td>
<td>could</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Willingness</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habitual</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habitual</td>
<td>will</td>
<td>used to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However, in common usage, *will* seems to be related to the simple factual indicative for all three persons, and *shall* to the emphatic. The latter is recommended for translation of the Scripture.
Simple | Emphatic
---|---
I will | I shall
You will | You shall
He (she, it) will | He (she, it) shall
We will | We shall
They will | They shall

Some of the modal senses expressed in English by auxiliaries are expressed in Hebrew by separate verbs. Table 5.8 summarizes the English auxiliaries that are used to translate the various moods in Hebrew. When Hebrew uses the directive tone, English should use the imperative.

**Table 5.8**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hebrew Mood</th>
<th>English Auxiliary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Simple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Indicative</td>
<td>will</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Subjunctive</td>
<td>would</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Volitive</td>
<td>(a) Juridical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) Executive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) Permissive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) Assurative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Hortative</td>
<td>(a) Determinative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) Cohortative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) Exhortative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Precative</td>
<td>(a) Entreaty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) Request</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Persuasive</td>
<td>let</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Optative</td>
<td>may/let</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**5.6.7 Emphasis**

The Hebrew verb may be made emphatic by means of the cognate infinitive absolute, that is, an infinitive absolute of the same root and stem as the verb to receive emphasis.68 The emphasis

---

68 For a few exceptions see 2 Sam. 1:6; 15:8; Jer. 8:13; 42:10; Zep. 1:2.
may stress the certainty of the action, its continuousness, or it may strengthen some sense of the verb.

**Emphasis of certainty.** When the certainty of action is stressed, the cognate infinitive absolute immediately precedes the verb. English uses an adverb such as *surely, certainly, or indeed* to express the equivalent stress.

וְׁעַתָָ֗ה אִם־שָמָ֤וַעַתּוּתִשְׁמְעוֹּ֙ בְׁקֹלִֵ֔י

Now therefore, if ye will indeed obey my voice . . .(Exod. 19:5)

Sometimes the infinitive absolute may be in the *qal* stem with the finite verb in a derived stem.

כָל־הַנֹגֵֵ֥עַ בָהֶָ֖ר מֵ֥וֹת

Whoever touches the mountain shall surely be put to death. (Exod. 19:12)

כִָּֽי־סָקָּ֤וֹל יִסָקֵלֹ֙ אוֹ־יָרִֹ֣ה יִיָרֵֶ֔ה

He shall surely be stoned, or shot with an arrow. (Exod. 19:13)

In this example, the finite verb יִסָקֵל is in the *niphal* (passive) stem, whereas the infinitive absolute יִסָקֵל is in the *qal* (active) stem. This demonstrates the fact that a passive verb may be modified by the infinitive absolute of the corresponding active stem.

Emphasis of certainty is expressed even with the verb הָיֵ֧וֹ.

וְׁאַ֙בְרָהֵָ֔ם הָיֵ֧וֹ לְׁגֵ֥וֹי גָּדֶ֖וֹל וְׁעָצָ֑וּם

And Abraham shall surely become a great and mighty nation (Gen. 18:18)

The cognate infinitive absolute rarely precedes a participle and never an imperative.\(^{69}\) Obviously it does not precede an imperfect with *Waw Consecutive*. In such cases, the cognate infinitive is placed after the verbal, and emphasis of certainty is not distinguished from emphasis of continuousness except by context.

**Emphasis of continuousness.** When the continuousness of the action is stressed, the cognate infinitive absolute immediately follows the verb with a linking conjunctive accent on the verb.\(^{70}\) English uses an adverb such as *continually* or an auxiliary such as *keeps on* to express the equivalent stress.

\(^{69}\) GKC § 113 r. There are two exceptions for the participle: Judg. 11:25; 20:39.

\(^{70}\) This construction occurs 32 times in the Hebrew Bible.
Emphasis of continuousness is applied even to participles, whether functioning as a verb or as a verbal adjective.  

He came out, cursing as he came. (2 Sam. 16:5)

(Lit.—he kept coming out and cursing)

*Emphasis of intensity.* When some sense of the verbal idea is to be intensified, the cognate infinitive absolute immediately precedes the verb with a conjunctive accent on the infinitive.  

Context and sense distinguish between emphasis of intensity and emphasis of certainty. English must use various adverbs appropriate for the occasion.

If ye can correctly explain it to me (Judg. 14:12)

The man solemnly warned us (Gen. 43:3)

David earnestly asked permission of me (1 Sam. 20:6)

Jacob had scarcely gone out (Gen. 27:30)

---

71 Josh. 6:13; 2 Sam. 16:5; 2 Kgs. 2:11; Jer. 23:17; 41:6.

72 This occurs 373 times with a conjunctive accent and 33 times with a near disjunctive accent (see Chapter 22).
I will greatly multiply your sorrow and your conception (Gen. 3:16)

Negation of Emphasis. Negating emphasis usually is expressed by אֵל with the finite verb, or by לא in non-indicative moods.73

ותִּישׁ אָלּוֹרִים
He did not completely drive them out. (Judges 1:28)

נָקַּה אָלֶּנֵךְ
I will not let you go altogether unpunished. (Jer. 30:11)

וֹרִית אֲנַקֶּךָ
By no means kill him. (1 Kgs. 3:26)

וֹרִית לָּנֵמיָּךְ
We will surely not kill you. (Judges 15:13)

On rare occasions the emphasis itself is negated, in which case the negative precedes the infinitive absolute,74 and English negates the emphatic adverb.

לָאֵנַרֵים תָּמִיתְךָ
You will not surely die. (Gen. 3:4)

לָאֵנַרֵים אַשְׁמִיד אַבֵּית יַעֲקֹבָּה
I will not utterly destroy the house of Jacob. (Amos 9:8)

5.6.8 Negation

Hebrew verbs express either the positive or negative sense of the verbal idea. Most verbs express a positive sense. The sense of a verb is negated by a prepositive negative particle. The lack of the negative particle expresses the positive sense, and the negative particle expresses the negative sense.

The negative לא. The verb in the perfect aspect is negated by the morpheme לא 1,748 times; in the imperfect aspect the verb is negated by לא in the indicative, subjunctive, and the juridical volitive moods, and in the emphatic tone of all the moods 2,651 times.

לָאֵנַרֵים אַשְׁמִיד אַבֵּית יַעֲקֹב
that you are not spies (Gen. 42:34)

---

73 This occurs seven times with a conjunctive accent (Exod. 5:23; 8:24; Deut. 21:14; Isa. 30:19; Jer. 6:15; 8:12; Dan. 10:3) and 22 times with a near disjunctive accent (see Chapter 22).

74 Gen. 3:4; Num. 22:37; Psa. 49:8; Amos 9:8.
The participle when used as a verbal adjective is negated by ל 36 times.\textsuperscript{75}

The negative לא. In the imperfect aspect, in the simple tone of the moods other than indicative, subjunctive, and juridical volitive, the verb is negated by לא 678 times. Usually the verb uses the short imperfect form; however, at times the hortative and precautive moods use the long form even in the negative.

The negative בל. A finite verb is negated 65 times by בל.

Once it negates an infinitive construct:

The negative בל. A finite verb is negated 6 times by בל.\textsuperscript{76}

\textsuperscript{75} Gen. 42:34; Exod. 8:22; Num. 35:23; Deut. 4:42; 19:4, 6; 28:61; 30:11; Josh. 20:5; 1 Sam. 27:4; 2 Sam. 3:34; 1 Kgs. 10:21; Job 12:3; 13:2; 29:12; 30:13; 31:1; Psa. 38:15; 55:13; 78:37; 139:21; Prov. 24:12; 26:19; Isa. 22:2; 33:1; Jer. 2:2; 4:22; 18:15; 22:6; Ezek. 4:14; 16:16; 21:5; 22:24; Hab. 1:14; Zep. 3:5; Zech. 14:18.

\textsuperscript{76} Gen. 31:20; Deut. 28:55; Job 41:18; Isa. 14:6; 32:10; Hos. 8:7.
The negative בִּלְׁתִי. A finite verb is negated 13 times by בִּלְׁתִי.77

Until there was no survivor left him (Num. 21:35)

The negative יִאָם. When the verb is in the present tense durative aspect—that is, it is a participle—it is negated by the particle יִאָם, and the particle is placed first in the clause regardless of the position of the participle,78 unless the subject is granted casus pendens prominence.

The keeper of the prison did not look into anything that was under Joseph’s hand. (Gen. 39:23)

If Your Presence does not go with us (Exod. 33:15)

In those cases where the subject is not named, the participle may follow יִאָם.

No one saw it or knew it or awoke. (1 Sam. 26:12)

Frequently the negative יִאָם receives a pronoun suffix to supply the subject for a participle, or simply in anticipation of a named subject.

He does not obey the voice of his father. (Deut. 21:18)

I will not hear. (Isa. 1:15)

If you do not restore her, know . . . (Gen. 20:7)

I will not give you straw. (Exod. 5:10)

The particle יִאָם expresses the negative of the present tense of יִהְיֶה or its equivalent שְׁ (there is).

Joseph was not in the pit. (Gen. 37:29)

For there is no food and no water. (Num. 21:5)

77 Exod. 20:20; Num. 21:35; Deut. 3:3; Josh. 8:22; 10:33; 11:8; 2 Sam. 14:14; 2 Kgs. 10:11; Isa. 10:4; 44:10; Jer. 23:14; 27:18; Ezek. 13:3.

78 GKC § 152 1.
If נִני follows the subject, it often has a pronoun suffix of reference.

יְהֹוָה אֵל
And the bush was not consumed (Exod. 3:2)

וְהָאָדָם כְּדַעְתּוֹ
And its appearance is not deeper than the skin (Lev 13:34)

5.7 The Syntactic Slot of Verbs

The finite Hebrew verb occupies only one syntactic slot—the verb slot in a clause or sentence; Chapter 12 discusses the place of the verb in a clause. The infinitive absolute occupies the slot of a cognate adverb, or a noun, and may substitute for a finite verb in special cases. The infinitive construct occupies the slot of a noun. The participle occupies the slot of an adjective, or a slot in a verb phrase expressing the durative aspect. Chapter 17 discusses the syntactic structure of verb phrases.

5.8 Summary

This chapter discusses the definition, classification, derivation, and attributes of Hebrew verbs. It also discusses the infinitive, participle, tense, and the Waw consecutive.

Definition

A verb is the name of an action, deed, state of being, or relationship.

Classification

Verbs fall into various classifications depending (1) on the type of action, state or relationship that it names, (2) on the manner in which it governs an object, and (3) on the way the verbal idea is viewed (finite or nonfinite).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Governance</th>
<th>View</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copulative</td>
<td>Intransitive</td>
<td>Finite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stative</td>
<td>Transitive</td>
<td>Nonfinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Derivation

Most verbs are primary words, but some verbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, other verbs, and even an adverb or preposition.
Attributes

Hebrew verbs possess the following attributes, the values of which are defined by inflectional morphemes or other syntactic markers: (1) number, (2) gender, (3) person, (4) voice, (5) aspect, (6) mood, (7) emphasis, and (8) negation. The following table lists the values of these attributes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>singular, plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>masculine, feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Person</td>
<td>1(^{st}), 2(^{nd}), 3(^{rd})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voice</td>
<td>active, passive, middle, reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aspect</td>
<td>perfect, imperfect, durative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mood</td>
<td>indicative, subjunctive, volitive, hortative, precative, persuasive, optative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emphasis</td>
<td>certainty, continuousness, intensity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negation</td>
<td>positive, negative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tense

Biblical Hebrew has no verb morphemes to express tense directly. Tense is a characteristic of clauses and is marked by a number of cues provided by literary form (genre), semantic context, auxiliary verbs, temporal adverbs, temporal prepositions, and by conjunctions.

Waw Consecutive

Waw Consecutive is a conjunction used only to join clauses having their verbs in first position prominence. It expresses consecution of time or logic, and may perpetuate mood and negation from the previous near context. Although it appears to frequently “convert” the aspect of the verb to which it is attached, this “conversion” is merely a translational illusion created by a common idiom of the Hebrew verb (§ 26.5.3).

Syntactic Slots

Verbs may stand in only one slot—the verb slot in a predicate:

\[ Q = V + N^0 \]  
\[ (Q = \text{Predicate}) \]

Verbs may be modified by an adverb or an infinitive absolute:

\[ V = V + D \]  
\[ (D = \text{Adverb}) \]

\[ V = V + D^v \text{ or} \]  
\[ (D^v = \text{Infinitive absolute}) \]

\[ V = D^v + V \]
A verb may be transformed into an infinitive construst.

\[ V \rightarrow V^n \]  \quad (V^n = \text{Infinitive construct})

The verb \( נָעַד \) governs a participle to express the durative aspect:

\[ V \rightarrow נָעַד + V^a \]  \quad (V^a = \text{Participle})
CHAPTER 6
The Syntactic Attributes of Nonfinite Verbals

This chapter presents the characteristics of the nonfinite verbals of Hebrew associated with their syntactic relationships in phrases and clauses. The details of phonology and morphology are not considered except as they apply to syntax. The content of this chapter is similar to that presented in other works on Hebrew syntax except where it is necessary to relate the material to “transformational” concepts in preparation for subsequent chapters. The chapter is foundational, not an exhaustive treatment of all the particulars of Hebrew verbs.

Hebrew has two infinitives and a participle. The infinitive absolute and infinitive construct: The infinitive absolute functions most frequently as a cognate adverb, and less frequently as a verbal noun or as a substitute for the finite verb. The infinitive construct is a non-inflected verbal that functions much like the English infinitive and gerund, except that it is not used in verb phrases as is the English infinitive. The participle is a verbal adjective that inflects like a noun or adjective. It occupies the adjective slot, and also serves as an element of verb phrases that express the durative aspect. Table 6.1 lists the frequency distribution of the Hebrew non-finite verbals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Absolute Infinitive</td>
<td>868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Construct Infinitive</td>
<td>6,564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participle</td>
<td>9,331</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>16,763</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.1
Distribution of Non-Finite Verbals
6.1 The Infinitive Absolute

The infinitive absolute\(^1\) is a non-inflected verbal that expresses the abstract idea of the verbal action. The infinitive absolute accepts no morphemes such as a pronoun suffix, definite article, and so forth; on rare occasions it is negated by a prepositive ־א.\(^2\) Of course it may always receive ־ג Conjunctive. The infinitive absolute functions most frequently as a cognate adverb, and less frequently as a verbal noun or as a substitute for the finite verb.\(^3\) Table 6.2 lists the frequency distribution of the roles of the infinitive absolute in the Hebrew Bible.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Syntactic Role</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Before cognate finite verb</td>
<td>408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before neg. cognate finite verb</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After cognate finite verb</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before cognate participle</td>
<td>3(^4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After cognate participle.</td>
<td>5(^5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idioms of Recurrence</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alternate Uses</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Of the 868 instances of the infinitive absolute, 577 function as cognate adverb modifiers of finite verbs or participles, and 98 occur in idioms of recurrent action.\(^6\) The remaining 293 instances involve its function as a verbal noun or substitute for a finite verb.

6.1.1 As a Cognate Adverb

The infinitive absolute functions most frequently as a cognate adverb. As such it is immediately associated with a finite verb of the same root and stem, and is used to emphasize the verbal

---

\(^1\) GKC §45, 113. An infinitive absolute occurs 868 times.

\(^2\) Gen. 3:4; Num. 22:37; Psa. 49:8; Isa. 58:7; Jer. 3:1; Jer. 38:15; Amos 9:8.

\(^3\) GKC (§ 113 h) lists a few cases where the infinitive absolute may be used adverbially. Most of these may be explained better as verbal nouns or as substitutes for verbs, but see מ in Josh. 3:17 and 4:3. A few idioms use the infinitive absolute (GKC §113 k).

\(^4\) Judg. 11:25; 20:39; Eccl. 6:11.

\(^5\) Josh. 6:13; 2 Sam. 16:5; Isa. 22:17; Jer. 23:17; 41:6.

\(^6\) Two infinitives in each idiom (§ 24.7.4).
idea in some way. In this role, the infinitive absolute is a part of the verb phrase expressing the value of the emphasis attribute (see § 5.6.7; 17.1).  

He shall not be redeemed; he shall **surely be put to death** (Lev. 27:29)

I said to myself, “He will **surely come out to me,** and stand and call on the name of the LORD his God.” (2 Kgs. 5:11)

but you shall **by no means** eat it. (Lev. 7:24)

They are **continually saying** to those who despise Me, ‘The LORD has said, “You shall have peace.”’ (Jer. 23:17)

For they said, "They are **surely defeated** before us, as **in the first battle.**" (Judg. 20:39)

Evidently the authors regarded a few similar roots as virtual cognates; so **שב** and **ישב** (2 Sam. 15:8; Jer. 42:10); **סף** and **さまざま** (Jer. 8:13; Zep. 1:2).

### 6.1.2 As a Verbal Noun

The infinitive absolute may function as a verbal noun. As a verbal it may govern an object; and as a substantive it may function as the subject of a verb, as its object, as the genitive of another noun, or as an adverbial accusative. On rare occasions, it may be the immediate object of a preposition.

*Examples with objects:*

eating much honey. (Prov. 25:27)

inquiring of God for him. (1 Sam. 22:13)

*Example as a subject:*

7 Before the finite verb, it takes a conjunctive accent 380 times of the 408 instances. Following the finite verb, the verb always has a conjunctive accent, and after a cognate participle, nearly always.
Chapter 6  The Syntactic Attributes of Nonfinite Verbals  164

Eating much honey is not good. (Prov. 25:27)

Example as a predicate:

And the effect of righteousness will be quietness and assurance forever. (Isa. 32:17)

Example as an object:

That He may know to refuse the evil and choose the good. (Isa. 7:15)

Example as a genitive:

by the spirit of burning (Isa. 4:4)

Example as an adverbial accusative:

Then the priests who bore the ark of the covenant of the LORD stood firm on dry ground in the midst of the Jordan. (Josh. 3:17)

By swearing and lying, Killing and stealing and committing adultery, They break all restraint, With bloodshed upon bloodshed. (Hos. 4:2)

Example as the object of a preposition:

till you have destroyed them (2 Kgs. 13:17)

6.1.3 As Substitute for a Finite Verb

The infinitive absolute occasionally functions as a substitute for a finite verb. This usually occurs where the context has defined the required conjugation by a previous verb, or where the semantic sense of the context anticipates the required conjugation.

After one or more preceding finite verbs, the infinitive absolute perpetuates the values of the established verbal attributes (see § 19.1.3.4).

---

8 The red box encloses the associated phrase when it is more than one word.

9 See also Exod. 30:36; Isa. 7:11.

10 See also 2 Kgs. 13:19; 2 Chr. 11:12; 16:8; Neh. 5:18; Job 34:35; Isa. 30:15; Jer. 42:2; Hag. 1:9; Zech. 12:10.
Example after a perfect:

Did I not clearly reveal Myself to the house of your father . . .

Did I not choose him out of all the tribes of Israel (1 Sam. 2:27-28)

This example illustrates the infinitive absolute (בֵּיתוֹ) perpetuating the first person singular perfect aspect. Note also that the Waw Conjunctive perpetuates the rhetorical interrogative.

Example after a perfect consecutive:

Then they will look on Me whom they have pierced;
they will mourn for Him as one mourns for his only son,
and grieve for Him as one grieves for a firstborn (Zech. 12:10)

In this example, the infinitive absolute (טּוֹמֶן) perpetuates the third person plural, and also the future consecutive action of the preceding verbs.

Example after an imperfect:

If you sell anything to your neighbor
or buy from your neighbor’s hand,
you shall not oppress one another. (Lev. 25:14)

In this example, the infinitive absolute (קָנֵה) perpetuates the second person plural subjunctive from the preceding verb נָכַר.

Example after an imperfect consecutive:

And he had him ride in the second chariot . . .

So he set him over all the land of Egypt. (Gen. 41:43)

In this example, the infinitive absolute (תֵּן) perpetuates the third person singular consecutive action in past time from the preceding verb נָדַב.

Example after an imperative:

Bring you sacrifice every morning . . .

Offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving with leaven (Amos 4:4, 5)
Example after a jussive:

Let the king appoint officers in all the provinces of his kingdom, that they may gather all the beautiful young virgins . . . And let beauty preparations be given them. (Est. 2:3)

Example after a participle:

A letter which is written in the king’s name and sealed with the kings signet ring (Est. 8:8)

At times the infinitive absolute functions as a substitute for a finite verb where no preceding verb defines the expected conjugation.\(^{11}\) In such cases, the conjugation is anticipated by the semantics of the context or by the literary form. Under these circumstances, it is found to substitute for an imperative (Exod. 20:8; Deut. 5:12), for a jussive (Lev. 6:7; Num. 6:5), for a cohortative (Ezek. 21:31; 23:30), for an imperfect (2 Kgs. 4:43; 19:29), and for a perfect (Isa. 21:5; Jer. 8:15)

Will you steal, murder, commit adultery, swear falsely, burn incense to Baal, and walk after other gods whom you do not know (Jer. 7:9)

6.1.4 As Idioms of Recurrent Action

Infinitives absolute may be joined with Waw conjunctive to form idiomatic expressions, usually implying recurring action. This construction was popular with Jeremiah, occurring there 19 of the 49 total instances.

\(^{11}\) GKC §113 aa-ff.
Two particular infinitives are the most prominent: חלְך (occurring 13 times with various others)¹² and השכם (occurring 13 times with various others).¹³ There are about 16 other combinations.¹⁴

ויסע אברם חלך ונסע ההבנה:
So Abram journeyed, going on still toward the South. (Gen. 12:9)

ויתב המלשטי השכם והנגרב והתייבב אחרנים ים:
And the Philistine drew near and presented himself forty days. every morning and evening. (1 Sam. 17:16)

בכומ ההוזא א ValueType אفلسطين את כלי השאר דבחזירא אליבא וחול יבולה:
In that day I will perform against Eli all that I have spoken concerning his house, from beginning to end. (1 Sam. 3:12)

חתות ריצא ושבע כמראות המוק:
And the living creatures ran back and forth, in appearance like a flash of lightning. (Ezek. 1:14)

6.1.5 Negation

Of the 868 instances of the infinitive absolute, it is negated only 8 times,¹⁵ always with the prepositive לא.

הלא פרס לרשע להלך
Is it not to share your bread with the hungry (Isa. 58:7)

6.2 The Infinitive Construct

The infinitive construct¹⁶ occurs 6,564 times in the Hebrew Bible, of which 1,483 have pronoun suffixes. It is a non-inflected verbal that functions much like the English infinitive and gerund, except that it is not used in verb phrases as is the English infinitive. The infinitive construct is like a verbal noun in that it expresses the abstract idea of a verb, and may serve in many of the syntactic roles of a verbal noun.

As a verbal, the infinitive construct may have a named subject and object, and even an indirect object. In fact, it may have any related words or phrases that the corresponding finite verb

¹² Gen. 8:3, 5; 12:9; Josh. 6:9, 13; Judg. 14:9; 1 Sam. 6:12; 2 Sam. 3:16; 5:10; 2 Kgs. 2:11; 1 Chr. 11:9; Isa. 3:16; Jer. 50:4.

¹³ 1 Sam. 17:16; 2 Chr. 36:15; Jer. 7:13, 25; 11:7; 25:3, 4; 26:5; 29:19; 32:33; 35:14, 15; 44:4.


¹⁵ Gen. 3:4; Num. 22:37; Psa. 49:8; Isa. 58:7; Jer. 3:1; 38:15; Amos 9:8.

¹⁶ GKC §114, 115; Muraoka § 124.
The infinitive construct expresses no concept of tense, aspect, or mood; nor does it express number, gender, or person. All of these must be inferred from the context. Because infinitives have no voice attribute, the Pual and Hophal stems do not occur; instead, the Piel and Hiphil stems are used.

As a substantive, the infinitive construct, together with any related words, may serve as the subject or object of a verb, or as the genitive of a construct noun. Unlike the infinitive absolute, the infinitive construct may govern a genitive pronoun suffix and may be the object of a preposition. The pronoun suffix may be either the subject or object of the infinitive. In addition, the prepositional infinitive phrase לֵאמָֹּֽר serves as a speech introducing conjunction (see § 9.3).

6.2.1 With a Named Subject

When the subject of the infinitive construct is named, it usually appears immediately after the infinitive in either the nominative or genitive.

Examples of the subjective genitive:

תַּמְלִיךְ הַמֶּהָר אַחֲרֵי שְׁמַעְתָּל לַאֲבָרִים
When Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Gen. 16:16)

בָּאָהְבָה יְהֹוָה אַחֲרֵי שְׁמַעְתָּל לַעֲלָם
Because the LORD has loved Israel forever. (1 Kgs. 10:9)

Examples of subjective suffix:

כָּלָֽיָּֽר As I lifted my voice (Gen. 39:18)

אַחֲרֵי מָלַיִּים אַחֲרֵי שִׂישָּׁה
After he begot Seth (Gen. 5:4)

Examples of the nominative:

לֵאמֶּה לְמָלַיִּים אָלֶֽלֶּבָה;
that the king should take it to heart (2 Sam. 19:20)

---

17 This is true because the uses of the infinitive construct may be accounted for almost entirely as the consequence of transformations on clauses with finite verbs. This is discussed in § 19.2.8.

18 See rare exceptions (Psa. 132:1); (Gen. 40:20; Ezek. 16:4, 5); (Lev. 26:34, 35, 43; 2 Chr. 36:21); (2 Chr. 3:3).

19 The subject is regarded as genitive when it immediately follows an infinitive which is clearly a construct form, or when the subject is a pronoun suffix of the infinitive.
Occasionally the object is placed immediately after the infinitive construct, in which case the subject is nominative by necessity.

When the LORD your God has given you rest from all your enemies all around. (Deut. 25:19)

6.2.2 With a Named Object

The infinitive construct receives a named object in the accusative. Occasionally an object pronoun may be suffixed to the infinitive. Examples of named objects are given above (see 1 Kgs. 10:9; Gen. 5:4; 39:18; 2 Sam. 18:29); also see above for an example of the accusative object pronoun (Josh. 4:11).


Examples of an objective suffix:

When Joab sent the king’s servant (2 Sam. 18:29)

6.2.3 The Infinitive as Subject

The infinitive construct together with its associated constituents, functioning as substantive, may be the subject of a clause.

Is it a small matter that you have taken away my husband? (Gen. 30:15)

Our part shall be to deliver him into the king’s hand. (1 Sam. 23:20)

Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, And to heed than the fat of rams. (1 Sam. 15:22)

---

This is particularly true when the object is an independent accusative pronoun, or a prepositional pronoun.
6.2.4 The Infinitive as Object

The infinitive construct together with its associated constituents, functioning as a substantive, may be the object of a verb.

God has made me laugh. (Gen. 21:6)

I am weary of bearing them. (Isa. 1:14)

I know your going out and your coming in, and your rage against me. (Isa. 37:28)

6.2.5 As Genitive of a Noun

The infinitive construct together with its associated constituents, as a substantive, may function as the genitive of a noun.

A time to cast away stones, and a time to gather stones. (Eccl. 3:5)

A time to weep, and a time to laugh, a time to mourn, and a time to dance. (Eccl. 3:4)

Now it came to pass in the days when the judges ruled. . . (Ruth 1:1)

A song of praise and thanksgiving to God. (Neh. 12:46)

In this last example the infinitive construct קלתלוה is the second member of a compound genitive of the nomen regens שיר, in parallel with a noun.

6.2.6 As Object of a Preposition

The infinitive construct, with its related words, may function as the object of a preposition. Like the English infinitive, the Hebrew infinitive construct with a preposition forms various adverbial subordinate clauses expressing time, purpose, cause, comparison, and so forth. These are best translated into English with a subordinating conjunction and a clause with a finite verb.

Note that in the first line the genitive is expressed by ל whereas in the second it is expressed by the construct forms. The same is true in the next example. This demonstrates the near equivalence of the two syntactic constructions.
6.2.6.1 Expressing time. The prepositions ב and כ with the infinitive construct express the temporal idea “when.” The preposition רון with the infinitive construct expresses the idea “until,” and the preposition רות expresses “after.”

When they were in the field. (Gen. 4:8)

When he came from Padan Aram. (Gen. 33:18)

When they had brought them outside. (Gen. 19:17)

When he saw the nosering and the bracelets on his sister’s hands, and when he heard the words of his sister Rebekah. (Gen. 24:30)

After he begot Seth. (Gen. 5:4)

Until I come to you. (Judg. 6:18)

6.2.6.2 Expressing purpose. The prepositions ל and למש until with the infinitive construct express the purpose idea “that” or “in order that.”

That He might give them into the hand of their enemies. (2 Chr. 25:20)

That you may know the righteousness of the LORD. (Mic. 6:5)

That you may inherit the land in which you are a stranger. (Gen. 28:4)

To see the nakedness of the land you have come. (Gen. 42:9)

6.2.6.3 Expressing cause. The prepositions כ and ל with the infinitive construct express the idea “because.”

Because you have sold yourself to do evil. (1 Kgs. 21:20)

22 Note that the pronoun suffix of the infinitive construct is the subject. The reflexive voice is expressed by the hithpael stem.
Chapter 6  The Syntactic Attributes of Nonfinite Verbals  172

6.2.6.4 Expressing comparison. The preposition כ with the infinitive construct sometimes expresses comparison.

כִּנְפָּוֹל לִפְנֵי בְּנֵי־עַוְּלֶה
As a man falls before wicked men, so you fell. (2 Sam. 3:34)

6.2.7 As Complement of a Verb

The infinitive construct, with its related words, may complement verbs of purpose, desire, command and so forth. The infinitive is the first word of the complementary clause or phrase, and it usually is related to the verb by means of the preposition ל. Like the English infinitive in this construction, the Hebrew infinitive expresses a variety of meanings. 23

גָּתַּמְךָּ, תִּנְּמָן לְחַסֶּכָו
The tree was desirable to make one wise. (Gen. 3:6)

נָפָּל לְאֵת־אֲבָטָה תַּנְשַׁה
Perhaps the woman will not be willing to follow me to this land. (Gen. 24:5)

וַיִּפְקֵד אֲדֻמֵּר וְאָרְפָּאָם לַמִּלְּתֵי אֲבָבִי
And Joseph commanded the physicians to embalm his father. (Gen. 50:2)

עָבָּד לֵבָּם אֲתָם לִבְּהֵם לְכָל־הָעָלָה
Their hearts made them willing to bring material for all kinds of work. (Exod. 35:29)

אֲפִּלְּיָה טאָרְיָה לְכוּנָה לְעִירֵי אֲרוֹם
Whom I commanded to shepherd My people Israel. (2 Sam. 7:7)

אֲפִּלְּיָה טאָרְיָה לְכוּנָה בִּירָשָׁלָא
Whatever he desired to build in Jerusalem. (1 Kgs. 9:19)

23 GKC §114 f-p.
6.2.8 Negation

Of the 6,564 instances of an infinitive construct, it is negated 79 times by the prepositive ל, but once with מ; once it is negated by ב (Psa. 32:9), by מִבְּלִי once (Deut. 9:28), by אֵָּ֤ין twice (Psa. 32:9; 40:6), and by לא once (Num. 35:23).

Examples of לְבָלָהוֹ:

לְבָלָהוֹ לְבָלָהוֹ אֲדָנָנוּ יַהֲקִיָּנים.
That I will not overthrow the city. (Gen. 19:21)

לְבָלָהוֹ לְבָלָהוֹ נָאֲרָת לָגוֹ אֲדָנָנוּ יַהֲקִיָּנים.
Lest he should give an heir to his brother. (Gen. 38:9)

לְבָלָהוֹ לְבָלָהוֹ עָשָׂר מֵאָדָם.
By not keeping His commandments. (Deut. 8:11)

Example of מֶבָלָהוֹ:

מֶבָלָהוֹ מֶבָלָהוֹ לֹא יְהַבִּישׁ אֲדוֹנֵי יִשְׂרָאֵל.
Because the LORD was not able to bring this people. (Num. 14:16)

6.2.9 Verbal Noun Equivalent

A verbal noun functions very much like an infinitive construct, except that it is a noun. It may have a named subject, a named object, and serve the same role as the infinitive.

וַיְהַפֵּךְ לְחַפְּרֹתָה נִיהּ.
And it came to pass in the process of time. (1 Sam. 1:20)

וַיְהַפֵּךְ לְחַפְּרֹתָה נִיהּ אֵלֶּה מִרְאֶה לֵבָת.
When her father and mother died, Mordecai took her as his own daughter (Est. 2:7)

6.2.10 Speech Introducing Conjunction

The prepositional infinitive phrase לָאֲמָר occurs 939 times in the Hebrew Bible serving nearly always as one of the speech introducing conjunctions, and nearly always with a remote

---

24 The word לְחַפְּרֹתָה is the plural construct form of the noun לָחַפְּרֹתָה, BDB, 880.

25 The word מֶבָלָהוֹ is the construct form of the noun מֶבָלָהוֹ, BDB, 560. However, the form is the same as that of the infinitive construct of the verb מָלַח.
disjunctive accent. It occurs as the first word of a verse 9 times, and the last word of a verse 302 times, but never last in the poetical books.

The phrase may function as a normal prepositional phrase not introducing direct speech.

6.3 The Participle

The participle occurs 9,331 times, having the absolute form 7,252 times and the construct form 2,079 times, 940 of which have pronoun suffixes. It is a nominal form of the verb that functions in several syntactic roles in Hebrew. Functioning absolutely, it serves the role of a verbal noun—“one doing V”; functioning verbally, it serves as part of a verb phrase expressing the dura- tive aspect; functioning as an adjective, it is the verbal of a clause dependent on a substantive that is the subject of the participle.

26 A disjunctive accent occurs 871 times, a near disjunctive 49 times, and a conjunctive 19 times. A near disjunctive accent occurs when the the quotation is one word long (Gen. 41:16), or two words long (Gen. 18:15; 26:20; 37:15; etc.). A conjunctive accent occurs when the quotation is only one word long (Exod. 13:14; Ezek. 13:10), or when a prepositional phrase intervenes indicating the person(s) to whom the speech is directed (Gen. 23:5, 14; Lev. 11:1; Isa. 51:16), or sometimes when the speech is lengthy in the same verse (Deut. 12:30; 1 Kgs. 21:2; 2 Kgs. 18:14; 2 Chr. 35:21; Neh. 8:11; Job 24:15; Psa. 71:11; Isa. 44:28; 49:9).

27 1 Chr. 16:18; Psa. 71:11; 105:11; Isa. 49:9; Jer. 25:5; 42:14; Amos 8:5; Zech. 7:3.

28 Note that the speech act in the first clause lacks the speech introducing conjunction, whereas the phrase occurs in the second clause normally, not as a speech introducing conjunction; note also the conjunctive accent. See also 1 Chr. 21:18; 2 Chr. 32:17; Est. 6:4.
The active participle views its subject as engaged in continued and uninterrupted exercise of an activity.\textsuperscript{29} The passive participle, when used as an adjective, views its subject as in a state that resulted from being the recipient of external action; when used as a verb, it views its subject as being the recipient of continued and uninterrupted action. The stative participle is the equivalent of a pure adjective. The participle expresses no concept of tense, mood, or person; the value of these attributes must be inferred from the context.

### 6.3.1 The Participle As a Substantive

Functioning absolutely, without a named subject or object, the participle serves the role of a verbal noun. It views the verbal idea from the point of view of the subject—the doer of the deed. Consequently, many participles have become permanently identified as nouns: רועה—shepherd; מנהל—priest; ילד—child; סוחר—trader.

However, every verb has a participle that may be used in this fashion. When a participle is used as a substantive, it follows the rules of morphology and syntax for a noun, including determination, range, case and negation. The substantival participle may take the definite article;\textsuperscript{30} inflect in the construct;\textsuperscript{31} serve as a nominative, genitive or accusative; and is negated by אל (instead of יא).

**Examples:**

\begin{center}
תֹּ֣שַׁ֔ת לָלֵ֖ד אֶת־אָחִֶ֖יו אֶת־הָָ֑בֶל וֶַָּּֽֽיְִֽֽׁהִי־הֶֹ֙בֶל

Then she bore again, this time his brother Abel.

Now Abel was a keeper of sheep, but Cain was a tiller of the ground. (Gen. 4:2)

וַתֵֵ֥לֶד עָדֶָ֖ה אֶת־יָבָָ֑ל הִ֣וּא הָיֵָּ֔ה אֲבִַּ֕י

And Adah bore Jabal. He was the father of those who dwell in tents and have livestock. (Gen. 4:20)

כֻּלַָּ֕נוּ בְׁנֵֵ֥י אִיש־אֶחֶָ֖ד נָָ֑חְׁנוּ כֵנִִ֣ים אֲנֵַּ֔חְׁנוּ לֹא־הָיֵ֥וּ עֲבָדֶֶ֖יך מְׁרַגְּׁלִָּֽים

We are all one man’s sons; we are honest men; your servants are not spies. (Gen. 42:11)

Those who go down to the pit. (Isa. 38:18)

Among those who eat at your table. (1 Kgs. 2:7)
\end{center}

\textsuperscript{29} GKC §116 a.

\textsuperscript{30} A participle has a definite article 1,868 times in the Hebrew Bible, including 16 with a pronoun suffix.

\textsuperscript{31} A participle occurs in the construct form 1,139 times governing a genitive noun phrase.
Chapter 6
The Syntactic Attributes of Nonfinite Verbals

At times the subject of the participle may be definite but remote in the context, so the participle has the definite article.

To Him who strikes him. (Isa. 9:12)

Where is He who brought them up out of the sea? (Isa. 63:11)

Who forgives all your iniquities,
Who heals all your diseases,
Who redeems your life from destruction,
Who crowns you with lovingkindness and tender mercies,
Who satisfies your mouth with good things. (Psa. 103:3-5)

6.3.2 Participles as Verbal Adjectives

When used as an attributive adjective, the participle follows the noun it modifies, and has concord with it for number, gender, and determination. It may be translated by the corresponding English participle, or by a relative pronoun clause.

32 Or noun phrase.
The noun which the participle modifies is the subject of the verbal idea expressed by the participle. The participle may have an object, indirect object, and other related words, exactly the same as the corresponding finite verb may have.\textsuperscript{33}

\textit{With objects in the accusative.} The participle may govern an accusative object wherever the corresponding finite verb would do so.

\begin{quote}
The LORD your God, \textit{who brought you out of the land of Egypt}. (Deut. 13:6)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
For You are not a God \textit{who takes pleasure in wickedness}. (Psa. 5:5)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
All \textit{that happened to them}. (Gen. 42:29)
\end{quote}

\textit{With objects governed by a preposition.} The participle may govern an object by means of a preposition wherever the corresponding finite verb would do so.

\begin{quote}
Five hundred and fifty, \textit{who ruled over the people} \textit{who did the work}. (1 Kgs. 9:23)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
All the nations \textit{who fight against Ariel}. (Isa. 29:7)
\end{quote}

\textit{With objects in the genitive.} At times the participle may take the construct form and govern an object in the genitive. If the object is a genitive pronoun, it is a suffix.

\begin{quote}
Like the slain \textit{who lie in the grave}. (Psa. 88:6)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
God \textit{who arms me with strength}. (Psa. 18:33)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
All \textit{who go to her}. (Prov. 2:19)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
All \textit{who enter at the gate of his city}. (Gen. 23:10)
\end{quote}

\textsuperscript{33} This is true because the uses of the attributive adjectival participle may be accounted for almost entirely as the consequence of transformations on clauses with the participle as the verb. This is discussed in Chapter 14 (§ 14.3.4).

All who put their trust in You. (Psa. 5:12)

6.3.3 Participles in the Verb Phrase

The participle is used in verb phrases to express the durative aspect. The durative aspect of the verb is expressed by the verb הָיָה + the participle, where the verb הָיָה inflects in concord with the subject of the clause for number, gender and person; and it inflects for aspect, mood, mode, etc., but not for voice. The participle inflects in concord with the subject for number and gender; it also inflects for voice (active or passive). The verb הָיָה has no present (current) tense form, and so is elided in present durative verb phrases (see § 17.3). In this case the participle functions alone as a verbal, and thus does not exhibit the linguistic features of a substantive such as determination, nor does it occupy case positions, that is, it is never governed by a preposition or construct noun, or by the sign of the accusative את.

Now Moses was tending the flock of Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian. (Exod. 3:1) [past durative]

Let their dwelling place be desolate; Let no one be living in their tents. (Psa. 69:25) [future durative]

Just as he crossed over Penuel the sun rose on him, and he was limping because of his hip. (Gen. 32:31) [current tense, durative aspect]

Honor your father and your mother, that your days may be long upon the land which the LORD your God is giving you. (Exod. 20:12) [present durative]

6.3.4 As Adverbial Adjunct

A participle clause may modify another clause adverbially in which case it defines some accompanying circumstance.

But Haman hurried to his house, mourning and with his head covered. (Est. 6:12)

See the lone exception הָיָה (Exod. 9:3).
6.3.5 Negation

The substantive participle is rarely negated. When negation is required, a finite verb is usually preferred.\textsuperscript{35} Thus, instead of a negated attributive participle, a negated relative pronoun clause is used.

When a participle is used as a verb, the clause (not the participle) is negated with \textit{אֵין}.\textsuperscript{36} This is discussed and illustrated in Chapter 5 on the negative attribute of verbs(§ 5.6.8). A participle is negated by \textit{בְּלִי} eleven times.\textsuperscript{37}

\begin{align*}
\text{אֵָּֽין־אֶֹ֭מֶר וְׁאִֵ֣ין דְׁבָרִָ֑ים} & \text{ בְׁ֜לִָ֗י} \\
\text{There is no speech nor language} & \text{Where their voice is not heard. (Psa. 19:4)}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{וּמִבִֹ֣ר לָעִֶ֣רֶב יֻכַָ֑ת} & \text{ בְׁ֜לִֵ֥י} \\
\text{They are broken in pieces from morning till evening;} & \text{They perish forever, with no one regarding. (Job 4:20)}
\end{align*}

6.4 Summary

The Hebrew verbal system has three non-finite types: the infinitive absolute, the infinitive construct, and the participle.

\textit{The Infinitive Absolute}

The infinitive absolute may function:

\textit{As a Cognate Adverb}

\textit{As a Verbal Noun}

\textit{As Substitute for a Finite Verb}

\textit{Negation}

Is rarely negated but when so it is negated by \textit{לֹ֙וֹא}.

\textit{The Infinitive Construct}

The infinitive construct functions as a verbal noun in a noun slot and may be:

---

\textsuperscript{35} BDB lists some rare exceptions with \textit{לֹ֙וֹא} (p. 519). A substantive participle is negated by \textit{לֹ֙וֹא} 36 times.

\textsuperscript{36} A participle is negated by an immediately preceding \textit{גָּזְבַּה} 192 times (with a conjunctive accent 219 times, a near disjunctive 21 times, and a remote disjunctive only twice: 2 Chr. 18:7; Isa. 40:23).

\textsuperscript{37} 2 Sam. 1:21; Job 4:20; Psa. 19:4; Jer. 2:15; 9:10, 11; Lam. 1:4; Ezek. 14:15; 34:5; Hos. 7:8; Zep. 3:6.
Chapter 6
The Syntactic Attributes of Nonfinite Verbals

With a Named Subject
With a Named Object
As the Subject
As the Object
As Genitive of a Noun
As the Object of a Preposition
As the Complement of a Verb

Negation

Is rarely negated but when so it is usually by negatives other than לֹ֙וֹא.

Verbal Noun Equivalent

The Participle

The participle functions as a verbal adjective in an adjective or verb slot and may be:
As a Substantive
Part of a Verb Phrase
As an Adjective
As an Adverbial Modifier

Negation

When a participle is used as an adjective it is never negated, when used as a verb, the clause (not the participle) is negated with לֹ֙וֹא.
CHAPTER 7
Hebrew Quantifiers

This chapter presents the characteristics of Hebrew quantifiers associated with their syntactic relationships in phrases and clauses. The details of phonology and morphology are not considered except as they apply to syntax. The content of this chapter is similar to that presented in other works on Hebrew syntax except where it is necessary to relate the material to “transformational” concepts in preparation for subsequent chapters. The chapter is foundational, not an exhaustive treatment of all the problems of Hebrew quantifiers.

7.1 Quantifiers Defined

Words classified as quantifiers answer the semantic questions “how much?” or “how many?” Ordinal numbers express order, not quantity, and technically are not quantifiers but adjectives. They are discussed in this chapter only because they usually are handled that way in other grammars.

Quantifiers usually are classified as adjectives in the lexicons and grammars. But they differ from adjectives in several significant ways. Quantifiers have mixed grammatical forms, and occupy syntactic slots differing from those of adjectives. Attributive adjectives may only follow the noun they modify,¹ whereas quantifiers generally may either precede or follow. Adjectives seldom occur in the construct form, and then only in very limited and specific structures, whereas quantifiers frequently occur in the construct form preceding the noun they modify. The morphological form of adjectives must agree with the true gender of the nouns they modify, whereas some

¹ This is true except in very limited and specific structures for construct adjectives (see § 3.3.4).
quantifiers follow the opposite rule.\textsuperscript{2} The morphological form of adjectives also must agree with the noun they modify for the number attribute, whereas quantifiers inflect for number in a rather limited way,\textsuperscript{3} and some govern a noun in its singular form.\textsuperscript{4} Finally, quantifiers exhibit a hierarchical rank within the class that does not exist among adjectives in general.

### 7.2 Quantifiers Classified

Quantifiers are classified as (1) general quantifiers, a small set of words that specify general rather than specific quantities, and (2) specific quantifiers, the cardinal numbers. Countable nouns may be modified by general and specific quantifiers: i.e., some books, four books; whereas non-countable nouns may be modified only by general quantifiers: i.e., some water, but not “four waters.” In order to indicate specific quantities of non-countable nouns, a unit of measure must be used: i.e., four quarts of water, five gallons of milk. Obviously, nouns that do not have the semantic attribute of quantity are not modified by quantifiers.

### 7.3 The Syntactic Attributes of Quantifiers

Quantifiers have four syntactic attributes: (1) number, (2) gender, (3) range, (4) determination, and (5) negation.

#### 7.3.1 Number

By their very nature, quantifiers have the semantic attribute of number.\textsuperscript{5} Apart from the cardinal number \( \text{one} \), all others, with few exceptions, govern the noun they quantify in its plural form. Apart from the cardinal numbers \( \text{hundred} \), \( \text{thousand} \), and \( \text{ten thousand} \), quantifiers do not inflect for number, but are used in the singular form. The exceptions are that plural forms of the numbers 3-9 are used to express the corresponding multiple of 10, and the plural form of 10, \( \text{twenty} \), is used to express 20.

\textsuperscript{2} For the cardinal numbers 3-10, the feminine form quantifies masculine nouns, and the masculine form quantifies feminine nouns.

\textsuperscript{3} The plural form may occur for those numbers that may themselves be quantified: \( \text{hundred} \), \( \text{thousand} \), and \( \text{myriad} \).

\textsuperscript{4} Quantifiers that represent multiples of 10 usually govern a noun in its singular form when the noun immediately follows the quantifier.

\textsuperscript{5} Of the 6,232 instances of a number, 3,857 have the singular form; 1,492 have the plural form, and 883 have the dual form.

\textsuperscript{6} These numbers themselves may be quantified, and take the plural form in that case: two hundred, three thousand, four ten-thousands (= 40,000).
7.3.2 Gender

Quantifiers do not naturally have the semantic attribute of gender. That concept is meaningless for numbers. However, quantifiers do inflect for gender, and exhibit gender agreement with the nouns they quantify. The numbers 1, 2, and 11 through 19 inflect for both masculine and feminine and agree with the gender of the noun they quantify.

שְׁנֵֶַּֽ֥יִם—two men (Josh. 2:1)
שְׁתֵַ֧יִם דְׁלָתָ֛וֹת—two doors (Ezek. 41:23)
שְׁלֹשָ—thirteen bulls (Num. 29:14)
שְׁלֵ֥וֹש עֶשְׁרֵ֖ה אמֹות—thirteen cubits (Ezek. 40:11)

The numbers 3 through 10 inflect for gender, but the feminine form is used to quantify masculine nouns, and the masculine form is used to quantify feminine nouns.

שתְֹלָה אֲנָשִֵּ֔ים—three men (Gen. 18:2)
שתְֹלֶש אַמָּֽוֹת—three cubits (Exod. 27:1)

The word לֶאָלִיל, thousand, and the multiples of 10 have masculine forms, but have a common gender attribute—that is, they quantify both masculine and feminine nouns. The same is true for מִילַּם hundred and מֵיקָדְרִי myriad or ten thousand which have feminine forms but a common gender attribute.

7.3.3 Range

The quantifiers inflect for two values of range: (1) absolute and (2) construct. They may take a construct form when they stand before the noun they quantify. Otherwise, they take the absolute form. The construct form seems to imply that the quantified entities are viewed as part of a larger group, whereas the absolute form seems to have no such implication.

שְׁנְיִים קָרְבָ—two cherubs (Exod. 25:18)
שְׁנִי נְעָרֶי—two of his young men (Gen. 22:3)

Construct numbers may govern a pronoun suffix.

---

7 Of the 6,232 instances of a number, 3,013 have the masculine form; 2,208 have the feminine form; and 1,011 are marked both.
8 Of the 6,232 instances of a number, 4,792 have the absolute form, and 1,440 have the construct form.
9 Of the 1,440 instances of construct numbers, 103 have pronoun suffixes.
Set it here before my brethren and your brethren, that they may judge between the two of us! (Gen. 31:37)

The three of you come out to the tabernacle of meeting!" (Num. 12:4)

David also took Ahinoam of Jezreel, and the two of them also became his wives. (1 Sam. 25:43)

7.3.4 Determination

Quantifiers inflect for two values of determination: (1) determinate, and (2) nondeterminate. The determinate value is marked by the prepositive particle ה,10 and the nondeterminate value has no marker. Determination is not a natural characteristic of quantifiers. The quantifier usually has the determination marker when it follows a determinate noun that it quantifies, with a few exceptions.11

A quantifier never has the determination marker when it precedes a determinate noun that it quantifies.

And Joseph said to him, "This is the interpretation of it:
The three branches are three days. (Gen. 40:12)

7.3.5 Negation

Cardinal numbers are negated only seven times, always with לא, always with a maqqeph, a conjunctive accent, or a near disjunctive.12 Once it appears that a cardinal number is negated by לא, but actually the לא is the negative copulative in a predicate nominative clause (Dan. 10:21); the same is true for ordinal numbers twice (Eccl 4:8, 10), otherwise, ordinals are not negated. It appears that in each case the negation applies to the noun (phrase) and not just to the quantifier, even when the noun has been elided.

10 This is most commonly called the definite article. Of the 6,232 instances of a number, 282 have a definite article.

11 See 1 Kgs. 7:20; 20:16; 2 Chr. 4:12; 18:5; 35:9; Ezr. 8:24; Jer. 52:20; Dan. 9:26.

12 Num. 11:19 3x; 2 Kgs. 6:10 2x; Job 14:4; Mal. 2:15.
You shall eat, not one day, nor two days, nor five days, nor ten days, nor twenty days (Num. 11:19)

No one upholds me against these (Dan. 10:21)

7.4 General Quantifiers

The cardinal numbers can quantify only countable nouns. Measurable nouns are quantified by means of a unit of measure. General quantifiers indicate a quantity that is not specific. Both countable and measurable nouns may be quantified by these quantifiers. However, the formal category of general quantifiers was not well developed in Biblical Hebrew. The general quantifiers consist primarily of the words **all/any**, **a few/little**, **many/much**, and **many/much**. The latter two may be modified by an adverb of intensity.

7.4.1 The Universal Quantifier **all/any**

The universal quantifier **all/any** occurs 5,412 times in the Bible, 855 times in the absolute form, 4,343 times in the construct form, and 214 times governing a pronoun suffix. It is always in the masculine singular form. It always immediately precedes the noun (phrase) it quantifies, usually in the construct form. It never follows the noun it quantifies. It is negated eight times—three times by **לֹא**, and five by **אֵין** in which cases the word means —

- **לְכָל שִׁמְךָ**... **לכְּכָל שִׁמְךָ**
  and *every* plant of the field... and *every* herb of the field (Gen. 2:5)

- **לְכָל** שִׁמְךָ מַעַרְכָּא
  and *all* the cattle of Egypt died (Exod. 9:6)

- **לְכָל** פְּרָעָא לָבָא כָּלִים מַעַרְכָּא
  and *he shall take* *all* the fat from it (Lev 4:19)

And you shall love the LORD your God with **all** your heart, and with **all** your soul, and with **all** your might (Deut. 6:5)

---

13 The universal quantifier **לְכָל** is classified as a noun in the lexicons, but it clearly is a quantifier as far as its meaning and usage are concerned. The existential quantifier is the word **אֶחָד** one, a cardinal number which is also used at times as the indefinite article. The word “some” is an indefinite quantifier that apparently has no equivalent in Hebrew, unless it is **אֶחָד** (plural of **אֶחָד**). The words “more” and “less” are comparative adjectives.


15 Num. 11:6; 2 Sam. 12:3; Prov. 13:7; Eccl. 1:9; Mich. 7:2.
Chapter 7

Hebrew Quantifiers

It also may stand alone in the predicate nominative slot after the quantified noun is elided:

vanity of vanities, all is vanity (Eccl. 1:2)

all was cedar; there was no stone to be seen (1 Kgs. 6:18)

It also may stand alone in a noun slot after the quantified noun is elided:

and you shall put all (these things) on Aaron’s hands (Exod. 29:24)

the priest shall burn all (these things) on the altar as a burnt offering (Lev. 1:9)

7.4.2 The word בַּלָּמה (a few/little) occurs 98 times in the Bible, 84 times in the absolute form, and 12 times in the construct form. It may immediately precede the noun it quantifies, sometimes in the construct form. It also may follow the noun it quantifies. It seldom takes the plural form, but when it does it agrees with the plural of the noun it quantifies. It is negated only twice, by לֹא in each case.17

Example of the word preceding the noun it quantifies:

a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands (Prov. 6:10; 24:33)

Examples of the word following the noun it quantifies:

and to give us a little reviving (Ezr. 9:8)

I and a few men with me (Neh. 2:12)

a little folly (Eccl. 10:1)

and I shall be a little sanctuary for them (Ezek. 11:16)

they shall be helped with a little help (Dan. 11:34)

16 The word בַּלָּמה is classified as a noun in the lexicons, but it clearly is a quantifier as far as its meaning and usage are concerned. A few times the word בַּלָּמה (plural of בַּלָּמה) is translated “a few” (Gen. 27:44; 29:20; Dan. 11:20), but it may rather mean “some.”

17 Job 10:20; Isa. 10:7.
**Chapter 7**

**Hebrew Quantifiers**

187

**Examples of the word standing alone in the predicate nominative slot:**

만큼 [ךלמה קוי] for [ךלמה קוי]

few and evil have been the years of my life (Gen. 47:9)

ותוכו פי מהבחקה

and the people in it were few (Neh. 7:4)

וַיָּרָפֹת וּמַעְמָס

let his days be few (Psa. 109:8)

 UINTוֹ יָנוּר וּרְפֹּת וּמַעְמָס

therefore, let your words be few (Eccl. 5:1)

**Example of the word standing alone in a noun slot after the quantified noun has been elided:**

שהָלְךָ דַּבָּר וְמכֶם

she rested in the house a little while (Ruth 2:7)

7.4.3 The Word **ךלמה**

The word **ךלמה** much/many\(^{18}\) occurs 406 times in the Bible. In the singular construct form, it may precede the noun it quantifies, agreeing with its gender. In the absolute form, it may precede the noun it quantifies, agreeing with its number and gender. In the absolute form it may follow the noun it quantifies, agreeing with its number, gender, and determination. It is negated only once, and that by **לֹא** (Job 32:9).

**Examples of the construct form preceding the noun it quantifies:**

רָפֹּתמוֹם

many deeds (2 Sam. 23:20 = 1 Chr. 11:22)

רַפֹּטָה

many blessings (Prov. 28:20)

רַפֹּטָהוֹת:

many curses (Prov. 28:27)

**Examples of the absolute form preceding the noun it quantifies:**

כָּלִים מַעְמָס

all the many people (Psa. 85:51)

כָּלִים מַעְמָס

many wounded (Prov. 7:26)

כָּלִים מַעְמָס

many plans (Prov. 19:21)

---

\(^{18}\) The word **ךלמה** is classified as an adjective in the lexicons, but it clearly is a quantifier as far as its meaning and usage are concerned.
many daughters (Prov. 31:29)

Examples of the absolute form following the noun it quantifies:

in a great (multitudinous) assembly (Psa. 22:26)
in those many days (Exod. 2:23)
this great (multitudinous) people (1 Kgs. 5:21)

In addition to the word quantifying nouns, it sometimes stands alone in the predicate nominative slot after the quantified noun has been elided:

many are they who rise up against me (Psa. 3:1 [2])
many are the afflictions of the righteous (Psa. 34:19 [20])
and very many horses and chariots. (Josh. 11:4)

The word also may stand alone in a noun slot where the quantified noun has been elided:

from the many you shall give many and from the few you shall give few (Num. 35:8)

having done lewd deeds with the many (Jer. 11:15)

7.4.4 The word קָרָبة

The word קָרָבָה many/much\textsuperscript{19} occurs 53 times in the Bible. Like the other quantifiers, it may precede or follow the noun it quantifies, and it may stand alone in a noun slot after the noun it quantifies has been elided. It is negated only once, and that by לֹא (Eccl. 5:19).

Example of the construct form of the word used before the noun it quantifies:

for the people wept very bitterly [lit. much weeping] (Ezr. 10:1)

Examples of the word following the noun it quantifies:

\textsuperscript{19} The word קָרָבָה is classified as a Hiphil infinitive absolute of the verb קָרָבָ in the lexicons, but it clearly is a quantifier as far as its meaning and usage is concerned.
and much rubbish [lit. dust] (Neh. 4:4)

and one sinner destroys much good (Eccl. 9:18)

from a great many rural towns (Deut. 3:5)

and with very many clothes (Josh. 22:8)

very much bronze (2 Sam. 8:8)

The rich man had very many sheep and oxen (2 Sam. 12:2)

and very much understanding (1 Kgs. 4:29 [5:9])

and very many apices (1 Kgs. 10:10, 11)

very many almug logs (1 Kgs. 10:11)

Examples of the word standing alone in a noun slot after the noun it quantifies is elided:

and also many have fallen of the people (2 Sam. 1:4)

you have sown much and brought in little (Hag. 1:6)

for we are left but a few of many (Jer. 42:2)

7.5 Cardinal Numbers

Cardinal numbers are like adjectives in that they modify nouns and are inflected for number, gender, range, and determination, and may take the construct form; but they are unlike adjectives in that they may modify only countable nouns, and may either follow or precede the noun they modify.

There are 17 words classified as numbers in the WTS text, occurring 6,232 times. Table 7.1 lists the numbers by frequency distribution.
Table 7.1
Frequency of Numbers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֶחָד</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>970</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נְשֵׁית</td>
<td>one²⁰</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חָד</td>
<td>one²¹</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שִׁנֵה</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>768</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שְׁלֹש</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אַרְבע</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>454</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חַמֵש</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>506</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שֵׁש</td>
<td>six</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שִׁבָע</td>
<td>seven</td>
<td>488</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שָׁלֹש</td>
<td>eight</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חָשָׁש</td>
<td>nine</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נְשֵׁר</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>491</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נְשָׁר</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִאָה</td>
<td>hundred</td>
<td>579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אַלֶף</td>
<td>thousand</td>
<td>492</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רְבָבָה</td>
<td>ten thousand</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רְבָא</td>
<td>ten thousand</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7.5.1 Cardinals 1-10

Table 7.2 lists the cardinal numbers from one to ten, and Table 7.3 provides the statistics for these numbers. Note that for numbers 3 through 10 the numbers that quantify a masculine noun take the feminine form, and those that quantify a feminine noun take the masculine form. Likewise, apart from מִשָּׁנָה (two) which take the dual form, the other unit numbers take the singular form even though they quantify a plural noun.

²⁰ Used to form the number eleven.
²¹ Ezek. 33:30.
### Table 7.2
**Cardinal Numbers 1-10**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Absolute</th>
<th></th>
<th>Construct</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 7.3
**Frequency of the Cardinal Numbers 1-10**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Absolute</th>
<th></th>
<th>Construct</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>693</td>
<td>183</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>159</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>119</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

22 This form occurs governing only  hundreds (46 times) in the term seven hundred, and  ten (7 times) in the term seventeen. [GKC § 97b n. 3.]

23 This form occurs governing only  hundreds (15 times) in the term seven hundred, and  ten (4 times) in the term seventeen. [GKC § 97b n. 3.]
The inflected forms of 1 and 2 agree with the noun they quantify for gender.

\[\text{one cubit (Ezek. 40:12)}\]
\[\text{two rams (Exod. 29:1)}\]
\[\text{two cities (Josh. 15:60)}\]

**One.** The absolute forms of \( \text{אחת} \) and \( \text{שתים} \) occur in the following syntactic constructions:

1. It is used absolutely, standing alone after an elided noun:

   \[\text{To Eber were born two sons: the name of the one [son] was Peleg.} \]
   \[\text{for in his days the earth was divided (Gen. 10:25)}\]

   \[\text{Then Lamech took for himself two wives:} \]
   \[\text{the name of the one [wife] was Adah,} \]
   \[\text{and the name of the second [wife] was Zillah. (Gen. 4:19)}\]

   \[\text{For the priests and the Levites had purified themselves as one (Ezr. 6:20)}\]

2. It follows, but does not precede, the noun it quantifies, and it agrees with it for number, gender and determination:

   \[\text{one man (Gen. 42:13)}\]

   \[\text{the one woman (1 Kgs. 3:17)}\]

3. The cardinal 1 also functions as the indefinite article,\(^{24}\) although it is used sparingly:

   \[\text{Now there was a man of Ramathaim Zophim (1 Sam. 1:1)}\]

---

\(^{24}\) The word seems to point to a particular noun previously not defined.
But a woman dropped an upper millstone on Abimelech’s head and crushed his skull. (Judg. 9:53)

The construct form precedes the noun it quantifies, and agrees with it for number and gender. It never receives the definite article, but receives the determination attribute of the noun it quantifies. It occurs in the following syntactic constructions:

(1) Twice it is used absolutely, standing before an elided noun:

the one I called Beauty, and the other one I called Bonds (Zech. 11:7)

(2) It is used before “ten” to form the number 11;

and his eleven sons (Gen. 32:22)

eleven cities (Josh. 15:51)

(3) It is used before a noun to express “one of” X;

one of the shrubs (Gen. 21:15)

one of these cities (Deut. 19:5)

(4) It is used before a noun governed by “from” to express “one of” X;

to one of his sons the priests. (Lev. 13:2)

one of his ribs (Gen. 2:21)

(5) It is used twice with to express the distributive sense;

An absolute form is expected in this situation.

The masculine form is used 29 times: Gen. 21:15; 22:2; 26:10; 37:20; 49:16; Deut. 12:14; 15:7 twice; 16:5; 17:2; 18:6; 23:17; Judg. 16:7, 11; 19:13; 1 Sam. 26:15; 2 Sam. 2:18; 6:20; 13:13; 15:2; 17:9; 2 Kgs. 2:16; 18:24; Psa. 82:7; Song 4:9; Isa. 36:9; Ezek. 45:7; 48:8; Dan. 10:13. The feminine form is used 12 times: Deut. 13:13; 19:5, 11; Josh. 10:2; Ruth 2:13; 1 Sam. 2:36; 27:5; 2 Sam. 2:1; 2 Kgs. 4:22; Neh. 4:11; Job 2:10; Jer. 35:2.

The masculine form is used 17 times: Gen. 3:22; Lev. 13:2; Num. 16:15; Deut. 25:5; 28:55; Judg. 17:11; 1 Sam. 9:3; 17:36; 2 Sam. 9:11; 1 Kgs. 19:2; 22:13; 2 Kgs. 6:12; 9:1; 2 Chr. 18:12; Ezek. 8:10; Obad. 1:11. The feminine form is used 19 times: Gen. 2:21; Lev. 4:2; 4:13; 22, 27; 5:4, 5, 13, 17, 22, 26; Deut. 4:42; Josh. 20:4; 2 Sam. 24:12; 1 Chr. 21:10; Job 9:3; Psa. 34:21; Isa. 34:16; Ezek. 16:5.
“one by one” (Isa. 27:12)
“one to another” (Ezek. 33:30);

Two. The number two inflects only in the dual form. Its absolute form occurs in the following syntactic constructions:

(1) It is used absolutely, standing alone after an elided noun:

my wife bore me two sons (Gen. 44:27)
he shall restore two [animals] (Exod. 22:3 [Engl. 4])
and they carried it on a pole by two [men]. (Num. 13:23)

Two are better than one (Eccl. 4:9)

(2) It may follow or precede the noun it quantifies, always agreeing with it in gender. The noun is quantified in its plural form. 28

two perfect rams (Exod. 29:1)
two gold cherubim (Exod. 25:18)
two wave loaves of bread (Lev. 23:17)
two rows (Lev. 24:6)
two cities (Josh. 15:60)

(3) It may be repeated to express the distributive “two by two”:

two by two (Gen. 7:9, 15; 1 Chr. 26:17)

28 A few very common nouns may be quantified in the singular: אֶלֶף soul (Gen. 46:27); עֵץ oxen (Num. 7:17); אָרֶץ man (2 Kgs. 10:14); עֲבוֹדָה day (Neh. 6:15); עָמָד city (Num. 35:6); יָעֹד year (Judg. 3:10); בְּשָׂר bread (1 Sam. 21:4); אֵשֶׁת silver (2 Kgs. 6:25); שֵׁן shekel (Ezek. 45:12); קַרְבָּן tribe (Exod. 28:21); עֵץ board (Exod. 26:20); גֵּרָה shekel (Ezek. 31:13); לֶשׁ kor (1 Kgs. 5:25); בְּשִׂיר bath (1 Kgs. 7:26); and כְּפַר talent (1 Kgs. 9:14).
The construct form must stand before the noun it quantifies, and agree with it in gender and number. It never receives the definite article, but receives the determination attribute of the noun it quantifies.

his two brothers (Gen. 9:22)
two sons (Gen. 10:25)
the two great lights (Gen. 1:16)
two wives (Gen. 4:19)
the two handmaids (Gen. 31:33)

In addition, it occurs in the following syntactic constructions:

(1) The masculine construct form may precede לועה 29 ten, and the feminine construct may precede עיגה ten, to form the number twelve.

according to the twelve tribes (Exod. 28:21)
twelve stones (Josh. 4:8)

(3) It may quantify the number רביעי ten-thousand to express the quantity 20,000:

twenty thousand gold drachmas (Neh. 7:71 [70])

(4) It may govern a pronoun suffix:

And the two of them were both naked (Gen. 2:25)

Now the two of them went until they came to Bethlehem. (Ruth 1:19)

---

29 The words לועה and עיגה are the forms of 10 used only to express “teens.”
30 This word is one of the very common words that quantifies in the singular. See preceding note.
Cardinals 3-10. The numbers three through ten inflect only in their singular form.\textsuperscript{31} Their feminine form quantifies masculine nouns, and their masculine form quantifies feminine nouns.\textsuperscript{32} The absolute forms of these numbers occur in the following syntactic structures:

(1) They are used absolutely, standing alone after an elided noun:

\textbf{פָנָה לְאֹל לְאֹl לְאֹl לְאֹl לְאֹl לְאֹl לְאֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְaֹl לְa
ter, then you shall add three more cities for yourself besides these three cities (Deut. 19:9)

So the three heroes broke through the camp of the Philistines (1 Chr. 11:18)

(2) They may follow or precede the noun they quantify, always agreeing with it in reverse gender. The noun is quantified in its plural form.\textsuperscript{33}

\textbf{מָשָׂה לָדָד לָדָד לָדָד לָדָד לָדָד לָדָד לָדָד לָדָד לָדָד לָדָד לָd l
(1) They precede the noun they quantify:

שְׁלֵשָׁה יָמִים
three days (Gen. 30:36)

אָרֶבעֶה צְבָעִים
the four wheels (1 Kgs. 7:32)

This construction often conveys the sense “three of,” “four of,” etc.

ןְפִּיסִים גֶּרְמָנִים
five of her maidens (1 Sam. 25:42)

שְׁבִּינָה
seven of his sons (1 Sam. 16:10)

(2) Their masculine form precedes לַעֲרֹתֵֶּ֔יהָ ten to form the corresponding “teen.”

שְׁלֵשֶׁה לַעֲרֹתֵֶּ֔יהָ thirteen (Gen. 14:4)

שְׁבֵּשִׁים לַעֲרֹתֵֶּ֔יהָ seventeen (Gen. 37:1)

(3) They may quantify the words for hundred (מֵאוֹת), thousand (מֵעָלֶים), and ten thousand (רָם):

שְׁלֵשָׁה מֵאוֹת
three hundred (Gen. 5:22)

ןְפִּיסִים מֵעָלֶים
five thousand (Josh. 8:12)

אָרֶבעֶה רָם
forty thousand (Neh. 7:66)

שְׁבֵּשִׁים רָם
sixty thousand (Ezr. 2:69)

[lit. six miriads]

(4) They may govern a pronoun suffix:

“Come out, the three of you, to the tabernacle of meeting!”
So the three of them came out. (Num. 12:4)

וְהָלְכוּ הָלַבְּשֵׂנָה לָאָרֶבעֶה
and the four of them had faces and wings. (Ezek. 1:8)

---

35 The word לַעֲרֹתֵֶּ֔יהָ is a special form for ten used only for feminine teens.
7.5.2 Cardinals 11-19

The cardinal numbers eleven through nineteen are formed by linking the construct form of the units number with מושה (masculine), or מושה (feminine)—the words for “-teen.” In addition to the normal construct forms מושה and מושה one, the alternate word for one מושה is also used. Likewise, in addition to the normal construct forms מושה and מושה two, the alternate word for two מושה is also used. The gender of these compound numbers is determined by the gender of the units number, and the rule of gender agreement follows that for the units numbers. Thus eleven and twelve have normal gender agreement with the noun being quantified, and thirteen through nineteen have reverse gender agreement. Table 7.4 is a list of these numbers.

Table 7.4

Frequency of the Cardinal Numbers 11-19

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Count</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
<th>Count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>מושה</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

36 Rare exceptions consist of linking the absolute form of the units with the normal form for ten by means of a conjunction: מושה חמשְׁל vard נְשָׁה fifteen shekels (Ezek. 45:12).
37 Gen. 32:23; 37:9; Deut. 1:2.
38 Josh. 15:51; 1 Kgs. 6:38; 2 Kgs. 9:29; 23:36; 24:18; 2 Chr. 36:5; 2 Chr. 36:11; Jer. 52:1; Ezek. 30:20; 31:1.
39 Num. 7:72; 29:20; Deut. 1:3; 1 Chr. 12:14; 24:12; 25:18; 27:14; Zech. 1:7.
40 Exod. 26:7; 26:8; 36:14; 36:15; 2 Kgs. 25:2; Jer. 1:3; 39:2; 52:5; Ezek. 26:1; 40:49.
41 Exod. 28:21; Num. 7:3; Josh. 3:12; 1 Kgs. 7:25; 1 Chr. 25:19; 27:15; Ezek. 32:1; 47:13.
42 Josh. 4:8; 32:1; 32:17; 33:21.
46 Exod. 26:25; 36:30; Num. 31:40; 31:46; 31:52; 1 Chr. 4:27; 24:4; 24:14; 25:23; 2 Chr. 29:17.
These numbers occur in the following syntactic constructions:

(1) They may be used absolutely, standing alone after an elided noun:

אַלְפִים עַשְׁשָׁעַיִם
eleven stars (Gen. 37:9)
שְׁמוֹרַיִם תַּשְׁלוּמָה
twelve princes (Gen. 17:20)
שְׁמוּרֵי תַּשְׁלָתוּת
teen 
שְׁמוּרֵי תַּשְׁלָתוּת
teen 
שְׁמוּרֵי תַּשְׁלָתוּת
teen 
שְׁמוּרֵי תַּשְׁלָתוּת
fourteen sons (2 Sam. 2:30)

(3) They may follow the plural form of the noun they quantify. This construction occurs often in lists, or in constructions where the noun is closely linked with what precedes it:

קְבֵית תְשֶׁלֶם יָשֵׁר
cities (Josh. 19:6)

קְבֵית תְשֶׁלֶם יָשֵׁר
thirteen young bulls (Num. 29:13)

קְבֵית תְשֶׁלֶם יָשֵׁר
fourteen sons (1 Chr. 25:5)

47 Gen. 7:11; 8:4.
49 2 Sam. 2:30; 1 Chr. 24:16; 25:26.
50 Gen. 11:25; Josh. 19:38; 2 Ki. 25:8; Jer. 52:12.
51 Except for the very common nouns that may quantify in the singular.
sixteen cities (Josh. 15:41)
eighteen able men (1 Chr. 26:9)

(4) They may quantify \( \text{thousand} \) in the singular: \( \text{fourteen thousand} \) sheep (Job 42:12)

sixteen thousand [persons] (Num. 1:40)
eighteen thousand men (Judg. 20:25)

(5) They may quantify the number \( \text{ten-thousand} \):

more than one hundred and twenty thousand persons (Jon. 4:11)
[lit. twelve miriads]

7.5.3 Cardinals 20-29

The plural form \( \text{twenty} \) is used to express the number \( \text{twenty} \). It occurs 315 times in compound numbers from 20-29. Although its form is masculine, the word bears the common gender attribute—that is, it quantifies both masculine and feminine nouns.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{תנור} \quad \text{שנה} & \quad \text{twenty years (Gen. 31:41)} \\
\text{תנור} \quad \text{זא} & \quad \text{twenty male goats (Gen. 32:15, Engl. 14)}
\end{align*}
\]

For the numbers 21 through 29, it is linked with the units word by means of a conjunction. The units word may either precede or follow:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>21 נזיר (Ezr. 2:26)</td>
<td>נזיר (2 Kgs. 24:18)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 נזיר (Num. 3:39)</td>
<td>נזיר (Josh. 19:30)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נזיר (Judg. 7:3)</td>
<td>נזיר (Num. 33:39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 נזיר (Num. 26:62)</td>
<td>נזיר (Num. 33:39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נזיר (Ezr. 2:11)</td>
<td>נזיר (Judg. 10:2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 נזיר (Num. 7:88)</td>
<td>נזיר (2 Sam. 21:20)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

52 The numbers 11-19 do not quantify \( \text{hundred} \). The number fourteen hundred, for example, is expressed as a thousand and four hundred.
Chapter 7  Hebrew Quantifiers

201

(Num. 25:9)

25  (Judg. 20:35)  (Num. 8:24)

(Ezek. 45:1)  (1 Kgs. 22:42)

Masculine  Feminine

26  (Judg. 20:15)53  (1 Kgs. 20:30)  (Est. 1:1)

27  (Exod. 26:2)  (2 Kgs. 10:36)

28  (Gen. 11:24)  (Josh. 15:32)

The gender of numbers 21-29 is determined by the gender of the units word. The gender of the number must agree with the gender of the noun it quantifies, according to the general rule of agreement for the units words. Like the previous numbers, these may be used absolutely, standing alone after an elided noun. They may precede or follow the quantified noun in its plural form.54 And they may quantify the number נק for thousand in its singular form.

7.5.4 Cardinals 30-99

The masculine plural form of the numbers three through nine express their multiple of ten—that is, the plural form of 3 is 30; the plural of 4 is 40, etc. Table 7.5 lists the multiples of ten:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Multiple of Ten</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3 נזלת</td>
<td>30 נזלת</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 שבע</td>
<td>40 שבע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 חמש</td>
<td>50 חמש</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 ששה</td>
<td>60 ששה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 שבע</td>
<td>70 שבע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 שמונה</td>
<td>80 שמונה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 תשע</td>
<td>90 תשע</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although the forms are masculine, the words bear the common gender attribute—that is, without a units word, they quantify both masculine and feminine nouns. When complemented by a units word, it is linked with the multiple of ten by means of a conjunction, and the units word

53 This number occurs only twice, here and 1 Chr. 7:40.

54 Except for the very common nouns listed before that may be quantified in the singular.
may either precede or follow. The gender attribute of the compound number is defined by the
gender of the units word, and the gender of the number must agree with the gender of the quantified
noun according to the standard rule of gender agreement for the units word. Like the previous
numbers, these may be used absolutely, standing alone after an elided noun. They may precede or
follow the quantified noun in its plural form.\textsuperscript{55} And they may quantify the number \textit{thousand}
in its singular form.

\begin{enumerate}
\item fifty loops (Exod. 36:12)
\item their forty sockets (Exod. 36:26)
\item thirty-three years. (1 Kgs. 2:11)
\item thirty days. (Lev. 12:4)
\item forty-four thousand (1 Chr. 5:18)
\item fifty-five years (2 Kgs. 21:1)
\item sixty-six persons (Gen. 46:26)
\item seventy-seven men. (Judg. 8:14)
\item eighty-five men (1 Sam. 22:18)
\item ninety-nine years (Gen. 17:24)
\end{enumerate}

In a few instances, the construct form of a multiple of ten governs a pronoun suffix:

\begin{enumerate}
\item a captain of fifty with his fifty men (2 Kgs. 1:9)\textsuperscript{56}
\end{enumerate}

\textbf{7.5.5 Cardinals 100-999}

The word \textit{hundred} occurs 583 times in the Bible, 174 times in the singular form \textit{a hundred},
333 times in the plural \textit{hundreds}, and 76 times in the dual form \textit{two hundred}. Of these instances, 552 are

\textsuperscript{55} Except for the very common nouns listed before that may be quantified in the singular.

\textsuperscript{56} See also verses 10, 11, 12, 13, 14.
absolute forms, and 31 are the singular construct form לֵבָן. The singular form means one hundred, the dual form means two hundred, and the plural form is used with a units quantifier for multiples 300-900.

**Multiples of 100.** Multiples of 100 are expressed by preceding the word לְבָן with the feminine construct form of a quantifier from 3 to 9. Like the previous numbers, these may be used absolutely, standing alone after an elided noun. They may precede or follow the quantified noun in its plural form. And they may quantify the number לְבָן thousand.

- מֵセンター three hundred foxes (Judg. 15:4)
- מֶצֶנֶר six hundred shekels of iron (1 Sam. 17:7)
- מַכְרִים seven hundred horsemen (2 Sam. 8:4)
- מַקְרִים five hundred rods (Ezek. 42:17)

As in the other cases, the very common nouns often are quantified in the singular form:

- שנה one hundred years (Gen. 17:17)
- שנה two hundred years (Gen. 11:23)
- שנה three hundred cubits (Gen. 6:15)
- שנה four hundred years (Gen. 15:13)
- שנה five hundred years (Gen. 5:32)
- שנה six hundred years (Gen. 7:6)
- שנה seven hundred select men. (Judg. 20:15)
- שנה eight hundred years (Gen. 5:4)
- שנה nine hundred chariots of iron (Judg. 4:3)

---

57 The word לֵבָן never governs a pronoun suffix.

58 Except for the very common nouns listed before that may be quantified in the singular.
In a few instances the construct form נַכָּעָה is used instead of the absolute, usually with one of the very common nouns:

- נַכָּעָה הָעָדָק
  the hundred talents (2 Chr. 25:9)
- שֵׁמוֹנִים נַכָּעָה, לוֹ
  one hundred and eighty days (Est. 1:4)
- שֵׁלֶש עַשְׁנִים נַכָּעָה
  one hundred and twenty-three years (Num. 33:39)
- נַכָּעָה חָמָשָׁה טְלֵנָה
  five hundred talents (2 Chr. 25:8)
- נַכָּעָה שֶׁנָּה טְלֵנָה
  six hundred talents (1 Kgs. 10:14)

Though a sinner does evil a hundred times (Eccl. 8:12),

**With Tens and Units.** The number נַכָּעָה and its multiples may be compounded with any number from 1-99. This is accomplished by connecting the two numbers by means of a conjunction or by simple juxtaposition. The constituent parts of the compound number are usually in ascending or descending order—units, tens, hundreds, or hundreds, tens, units. These compound numbers may occur in the following syntactic constructions:

1. The number may precede the quantified noun governed in the plural:

- ארבע מִשָּׁה שֵׁשִּים שֵׁשֶׁת שֶׁנָּה
  four hundred and sixty-eight valiant men. (Neh. 11:6)
- שלש משישים ושישים ששים
  three hundred and seventy-six extra ones (Num. 33:46)
- שלש מעשרות מעשרות ששים
  one hundred and thirty-three years (Exod. 6:18)
- שלש מעשרות מעשרות חמש
  six hundred and sixty-six talents of gold (1 Kgs. 10:14)

2. The number may also follow the quantified noun, always in the plural. This construction usually occurs in lists, or where the quantified noun has close syntactic relations with what precedes:

- שמונים וארבעה שׁבֵּיָתוּ
  one hundred and twelve of his brethren (1 Chr. 15:10)
- שלש מעשרה מעשרה מעשרה
  three hundred and seventy-two sons of Shephatiah (Ezr. 2:4)

---

59 In this example, the construct form stands alone before an elided noun [times].

60 The “teen” numbers function as a unit, and within the unit the order is independent. See the subsequent example of 1 Chr. 15:10.

61 Except for the list of the very common nouns that may be quantified in the singular.
seven hundred and seventy-five sons of Arah (Ezr. 2:5)
eight hundred and thirty-two persons (Jer. 52:29)

7.5.6 Cardinals 1,000-999,999

The word אָהֶל thousand occurs 494 times in the Bible, 310 times in the singular form אָהֶל, 153 times in the plural אָהֶלים, and 31 times in the dual form אָהֶלִים. Of these instances, 446 are absolute forms, and 48 are construct forms, 34 of which are the singular construct form אָהֶל, and 14 are the plural construct form אָהֶלים. The unquantified singular form means one thousand, and the dual form means two thousand. Multiples of 1,000 are expressed by preceding the word with a quantifying number which may range from 3 to 999. The plural form is used when the word is quantified by numbers from 3 to 10; when the quantifier is greater than ten, the singular form is used.

Although the form is masculine, the gender attribute is common—that is, the word may quantify either masculine or feminine nouns. When the word is quantified, the gender of the resultant compound number is determined by the gender of the quantifier. The gender of such a compound number must agree with the gender of the noun it quantifies.

Like the previous numbers, these may be used absolutely, standing alone after an elided noun. They may precede or follow the quantified noun in its plural form.63

Multiples 3-10. When אָהֶל is quantified by a number from 3 and 10, it is quantified in its plural form אָהֶלים.64

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Verse(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אָהֶל</td>
<td>one thousand chariots</td>
<td>1 Chr. 18:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָהֶל</td>
<td>one thousand captains</td>
<td>1 Chr. 12:35, Eng. 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָהֶלִים</td>
<td>two thousand cubits</td>
<td>Num. 35:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָהֶלִים</td>
<td>two thousand horses</td>
<td>2 Kgs. 18:23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָהֶלִים אָלֵפִים</td>
<td>three thousand men</td>
<td>Josh. 7:3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

62 Five of which govern pronoun suffixes: 1 Sam. 18:7 twice; 21:12 twice; 29:5.
63 Except for the very common nouns listed before that may be quantified in the singular.
64 Occasionally it is quantified in the plural construct form when it immediately precedes the quantified noun: אָהֶל אָלֵפִים three thousand men (Exod. 32:28).
hebrew quantifiers

seven thousand horsemen (1 Chr. 18:4)

ten thousand men (Judg. 1:4)

five thousand shekels of bronze (1 Sam. 17:5)

Multiples 11-999. When מִילָה is quantified by a number in the teens (11 to 999), the quantifier precedes it, מִילָה retains its singular form, and the gender of the compound number is defined by the gender of the quantifier. The gender of the compound number must agree with the gender of the noun it quantifies.

twelve thousand horsemen. (1 Kgs. 5:6, Engl. 4:26)

fourteen thousand sheep (Num. 31:32)

ten thousand men (Judg. 18:7; 18:8; 21:12; 29:5; Psa. 3:7; 91:7; Song 5:10; Ezek. 16:7; Mich. 6:7.

However, the word may just mean “a very large number” without mathematical precision.

six hundred and seventy thousand men (Judg. 7:7)

six hundred and seventy-five thousand sheep (Num. 31:32)

six hundred thousand foot-soldiers (Num. 11:21)

The number 10,000 is expressed 18 times by the word רְבּוֹת (Gen. 24:60; Lev. 26:8; Num. 10:36; Deut. 32:30; 33:2; 33:17; Judg. 20:10; 1 Sam. 18:7; 18:8; 21:12; 29:5; Psa. 3:7; 91:7; Song 5:10; Ezek. 16:7; Mich. 6:7. However, the word may just mean “a very large number” without mathematical precision.
Sometimes יָלָהּ is repeated after each of the hundreds, tens, and units quantifiers:

תְּלֵתַא עַל-יָתֵשָׁהּ אַלֵפָּה עַל-בֵּיתָהּ אַלֵפָּה הָלָּהָּ הָלָּהָּ
three hundred and thirty-seven thousand five hundred sheep (Num. 31:36)

With Hundreds, Tens, and Units. The number יָלָהּ and its multiples may be compounded with any number from 1-999. This is accomplished by connecting the two numbers by means of a conjunction or by simple juxtaposition. The constituent parts of the compound number are usually in ascending or descending order—units, tens, hundreds, thousands, or thousands hundreds, tens, units.66

תשְׁמִישָם אַלֵפָּה עַל-לָּהָּ אַלֵפָּה הָלָּהָּ הָלָּהָּ
six hundred and three thousand five hundred and fifty. (Num. 1:46)

7.5.7 10,000 and Up

The word יָלָהּ represents the number 10,000.67 It occurs 18 times in the Bible. Its construct form occurs before the noun it quantifies, but unlike some of the other quantifiers, it never follows. It may stand alone in a noun slot after the noun it quantifies has been elided.

Examples of the construct form standing before the noun it quantifies:

וַיָּאוֹתְךָ מִרְבּוֹתָ תָּלֵתַא
And He came with ten thousands of saints (Deut. 33:2)

קָאָרְמֶךָ מִרְבּוֹתָ תָּלֵתַא
Do not be afraid of ten thousands people (Psa. 3:6 [7])

וּרְאוּ הָי֦וּם נְפָתָּה אֲלֵפָּה מִרְבּוֹתָ תָּלֵתַא
Will the LORD be pleased with thousands of rams, with ten thousands of rivers of oil? (Mich. 6:7)

שָׁםְךָ הָי֦וּם מִרְבּוֹתָ תָּלֵתַא יָסְרָאֵלָ
Return, O LORD, to the ten-thousands of the thousands of Israel (Num. 10:36)

Examples of the word standing in a noun slot, after the noun it quantifies has been elided:

אֲלֵפָּה יָוֹת הָי֦וּם תָּלֵטַא
Our sister, may you become the mother of thousands of ten-thousands (Gen. 24:60)

וְהָלָּהָּ מִיְּבָּשֵׁהְןָ תָּלֵטַא
and a 100 of you shall put 10,000 to flight (Lev. 26:8)

אֲלֵפָּה יָוֹת הָי֦וּם תָּלֵטַא
How could one chase a thousand, and two put ten thousand to flight (Deut. 32:30)

---

66 The “teen” numbers function as a unit, and within the unit the order is independent. See the subsequent example of 1 Chr. 15:10.

67 The word יָלָהּ is classified as a noun in the lexicons, but its meaning and usage indicate that it is a quantifier.
The word תְּרֵשָׁת ten-thousand occurs 9 times in the Bible, with its alternate spelling תְּרֵשָׁת occurring once. The word itself may be quantified. It may precede or follow the noun it quantifies, and may stand alone in a noun slot, after its quantified noun has been elided.

Example of the word preceding the noun it quantifies:

מִשְׁתַּמֵּשׁ רֶבֶן אֲלֵפָי
more than 120,000 persons (Jon. 4:11)
[Lit. 12 x 10,000 persons]

Examples of the word following the noun it quantifies:

ונִקְוֹלָה בְּבֵית הַקֹּדֶשׁ
They gave for the work of the house of God
five thousand talents and ten thousand darics of gold,

ונִקְוֹלָה בְּבֵית הַקֹּדֶשׁ
eighteen thousand talents of bronze,

ונִקְוֹלָה בְּבֵית הַקֹּדֶשׁ
and one hundred thousand talents of iron. (1 Chr. 29:7)

ונִקְוֹלָה בְּבֵית הַקֹּדֶשׁ
20,000 drachmas of gold, 2,200 minas of silver (Neh. 7:70)
[Lit. gold: 2 x 10,000 drachmas; silver: 2,000 and 200 minas]

ונִקְוֹלָה בְּבֵית הַקֹּדֶשׁ
61,000 drachmas of gold (Ezr. 2:69)
[Lit. gold: 6 x 10,000 and 1,000 drachmas]

Examples of the word standing alone in a predicate nominative slot, after the quantified noun has been elided:

כִּלְיָמִים סָאָדוֹת אֶרֶבֶן אֲלֵפָי סָאָדוֹת שְׁלשֶׁמָאָה שְׁם
All the assembly together was 42,360 (Ezr. 2:64; Neh. 7:66)
[Lit. 4 x 10,000 and 2,000 and 360]

כִּלְיָמִים סָאָדוֹת אֶרֶבֶן אֲלֵפָי
The chariots of God are 20,000 (Psa. 68:17 [18])

Example of the word standing in a noun slot, after the quantified noun has been elided:

וְפַשֵּׁל בְּרָאָתָה לְפָנָיו
and he will cast down ten-thousands, but will not prevail (Dan. 11:12)
7.6 Ordinal Numbers

The ordinal numbers are not part of the set of quantifiers, but function strictly as adjectives. They are discussed in this chapter because of their usual association with cardinal numbers. The ordinal numbers from second to tenth are derived from their corresponding cardinal, whereas the ordinal first is לְאָרוֹן. Like an adjective, an ordinal number follows the noun it modifies, and agrees with it for number, gender, and determination. Table 7.6 lists the ordinals for first through tenth, and provides the frequency count for each.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ordinal</th>
<th>Masculine</th>
<th>Feminine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First</td>
<td>ראשוני</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second</td>
<td>שני</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third</td>
<td>שלישי</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourth</td>
<td>רביעי</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fifth</td>
<td>חמישי</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sixth</td>
<td>שישי</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seventh</td>
<td>سابיעי</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eighth</td>
<td>שמיני</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ninth</td>
<td>תשיעי</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenth</td>
<td>עשירי</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

And you shall sow in the eighth year, and eat old produce until the ninth year; until its produce comes in, you shall eat of the old harvest. (Lev. 25:22)

Beyond tenth, the cardinal numbers functions also as the ordinals. The distinction is that ordinals usually are determinate, whereas cardinals are usually non-determinate, and cardinal may precede as well as follow:

And it came to pass in the six hundredth and first year, in the first month, the first day of the month.

68 The word לְאָרוֹן occasionally is used for the ordinal first.
the waters were dried up from off the earth: (Gen. 8:13)

An ordinal may be used absolutely, standing alone after an elided noun:

And the waters decreased continually until the tenth month.
In the tenth month, on the first day of the month, the tops of the mountains were seen. (Gen. 8:5)

And it came to pass in the six hundredth and first year, in the first month, the first day of the month, the waters were dried up from off the earth (Gen. 8:13)

And the first [child] came out red. He was like a hairy garment all over; so they called his name Esau. (Gen. 25:25)

7.7 Summary

This chapter discusses the definition, classification, attributes, modifiers, and syntactic slots of quantifiers. It also discusses ordinal numbers, although they are not part of the set of quantifiers.

Definition
Quantifiers are words that answer the semantic questions “how much?” or “how many?”

Classification
Quantifiers are classified as (1) general quantifiers, a small set of words that specify general rather than specific quantities, and (2) specific quantifiers, the cardinal numbers.

Attributes
Quantifiers have four syntactic attributes: (1) number, (2) gender, (3) range, (4) and determination. The following table summarizes these attributes and the values they may assume:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Values</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

69 The word יְמִנָּה is always used in the phrase “the first day of the month.” The word day is nearly always elided in the phrase “the Xth day of the month.” Likewise, the word month is often elided in the phrase “the Xth month.”
Number: singular, plural, dual
Gender: masculine, feminine, common
Range: absolute, construct
Determination: determinate, nondeterminate

Modifiers
It seems that quantifiers may be modified only by qualifiers.

Syntactic Slots
Quantifiers may occupy two different slots:

1. They may modify countable nouns, and may stand before or after the noun they quantify.
   \[ N = M + N \text{ or } N = N + M \quad (M = \text{Quantifier}) \]

2. They also may occupy a noun slot, after the quantified noun has been elided.
   \[ N = M + N \]
   \[ M + \aleph \rightarrow N \]

---

70 Applies to the word one only; the other quantifiers usually have the singular form, but they specify a plural attribute for the noun they quantify.

71 The masculine plural form is used with the numbers 3-9 to express a multiple of ten. The words for 100, 1000, and 10,000 take the plural form when they are quantified.

72 The dual form is limited to the numbers two, hundred, thousand, and ten-thousand. Apart from the number two, the dual form of the others means 2 times the number, that is, 200 or 2,000 or 20,000.
CHAPTER 8
Hebrew Prepositions

Prepositions are rather mystifying to anyone learning a second language. The natural tendency is to match each preposition with a corresponding one in the mother tongue and to expect it to mean the same thing in every context. But this would send one into a dizzy spin of confusion. This chapter discusses the definition, function, and some of the unique characteristics of Hebrew prepositions.

8.1 Prepositions Defined

Words classified as prepositions are linking words that answer the semantic question “what kind of relationship?” In linking words or phrases together they define a relationship between them. In that respect, they are similar to conjunctions. The relationship they define, however, is usually adverbial in some sense, but not always so. They have a unique grammatical form that permits them to govern pronoun suffixes, and they occupy unique syntactic slots.

8.2 Derivation of Preposition

Some prepositions are regarded as primary, others are compound in that they consist of two or more prepositions combined to form a new one, and still others are derived from a preposition combined with a noun for the same purpose.

8.2.1 Primary Prepositions

There are 31 different words classified as prepositions in the WTS morphological text, occurring a total of 62,773 times. Table 8.1 lists them according to their frequency of occurrence.
### Table 8.1

**Primary Prepositions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>לְ</td>
<td>to, for</td>
<td>20,021</td>
<td>לְמַעַן</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בְ</td>
<td>in, with</td>
<td>15,549</td>
<td>אֵצֶל</td>
<td>beside</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָן</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>7,554</td>
<td>לָמִי</td>
<td>to them</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עָלָה</td>
<td>above</td>
<td>5,600</td>
<td>נְמַדְּמָא</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֵל</td>
<td>to, toward</td>
<td>5,516</td>
<td>מִזְדַּר</td>
<td>in front of</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְ</td>
<td>like, as</td>
<td>2,896</td>
<td>לְעַמֵּה</td>
<td>close by</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>דָא</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>1,247</td>
<td>נְבָה</td>
<td>in front of</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עָמִי</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>1,048</td>
<td>לָא</td>
<td>O that</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָת</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>887</td>
<td>בֵּלַעְדָי</td>
<td>without</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָהָר</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>633</td>
<td>חֲלָה</td>
<td>except</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>תָחְת</td>
<td>under</td>
<td>502</td>
<td>בִּמְלֹא</td>
<td>with</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בֶּן</td>
<td>between</td>
<td>407</td>
<td>שָׁעַר</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נָבַה</td>
<td>next to</td>
<td>151</td>
<td>לָמִי</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בַּעַד</td>
<td>like, as</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>תָלָה</td>
<td>in return for</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בַּלָּחֵי</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>בְּנָא</td>
<td>by means of</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בַּעַד</td>
<td>away from</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>לְמַעַן</td>
<td>for</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 8.2.2 Compound Prepositions

Some propositions combine together to form new prepositional nuances. Table 8.2 lists 36 double prepositions by meaning and frequency. Likewise, Table 8.3 lists 13 triple prepositions. The meaning of such prepositions is quite idiomatic being dependent on the semantics of the context in which it occurs.
# Table 8.2
## Double Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־אַחַר</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>מִבִּלְׁתִי</td>
<td>because not</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־בֵין</td>
<td>to between</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>מִבֵין</td>
<td>from between</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־מוּל</td>
<td>at the front</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>מִבֵין</td>
<td>from behind</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־מֶנָּה</td>
<td>even from</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>מִמֹּל</td>
<td>from near</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־תַחַת</td>
<td>instead of</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>מִנָּה</td>
<td>across from</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בֵּין</td>
<td>among</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>מִעַל</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בָּלַע אָל</td>
<td>except</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>מְעַמֶּד</td>
<td>from with</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְמִן</td>
<td>like as</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>מְסַמְּרָה</td>
<td>from with</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כְּבַּ</td>
<td>about as</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>מְחַת</td>
<td>from under</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כְּסָמָה</td>
<td>about</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>נֵב ל</td>
<td>opposite to</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כְּעַל</td>
<td>according to</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>נַדַּל</td>
<td>all the way to</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְמִן</td>
<td>in order to</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>נַדְּרְכָה</td>
<td>up to such</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָמֹל</td>
<td>the opposite direction</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>נַדָּל</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֹמַז</td>
<td>from</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>נַדְּרָמ</td>
<td>as far as</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָבֵא נ</td>
<td>on behalf of</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>נַדְּרַנְדָה</td>
<td>as far as in front of</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָבֵא נ</td>
<td>in front of</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>נַדְּרַנְדָה</td>
<td>to opposite</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָמַד</td>
<td>from beside</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>נַדְּרַנְדָה</td>
<td>at the rear</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָמַד</td>
<td>from after</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>נַדְּרַנְדָה</td>
<td>above among</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָמַד</td>
<td>from with</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>נַדְּרַנְדָה</td>
<td>To the front of</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָמַד</td>
<td>besides</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>תַחַת ל</td>
<td>under</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8.3
Triple Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־בֵין ל</td>
<td>to between</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־בֵינֹות ל</td>
<td>to between</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־תַחַת ל</td>
<td>to under</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מַאֲרוּר ל</td>
<td>from behind</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מַבּוֹל ל</td>
<td>from between</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מוּבר ל</td>
<td>from behind</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִנֶגֶד ל</td>
<td>from before</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִנָּגב מ</td>
<td>from before</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֵעַל ל</td>
<td>from above</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִתַחַת ב</td>
<td>below</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִתַחַת ל</td>
<td>from under</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עַד ל מִן</td>
<td>as far as</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עַד־מִתֶחַת ל</td>
<td>to above</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עַל־מִתֶחַת ל</td>
<td>above</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At least two quadruple prepositions are found:

לִמְנֹוגֶד מִן תַחַת לְetat הָאוֹפַנִים מִסְגְּרֵּוֹת

Under the panels were the four wheels (1 Kgs. 7:32)

וערְדְמְשֵת ל

וְרֵדֵפֵם אֶפְלִישְׁתֵּים וּפְלִשְׁתִּים וַיַכְוֹם עַד־מִתַחַת לְּבֵית כָּר׃

And they pursued the Philistines, and struck them down as far below Beth Car. (1 Sam. 7:11)
8.2.3 Combined with a Noun

Some prepositions join with a noun or adverb to idiomatically form a new hybrid preposition. Table 8.4 lists the double ones; Table 8.5 lists the triple ones; and Table 8.6 the quadruple ones.

### Table 8.4
#### Double Hybrid Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־מוּל</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶת־פְׁנֵי</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בְׁחוּצֹת</td>
<td>outside</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֵב</td>
<td>alone</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֵמֶה</td>
<td>below</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֵמֶה</td>
<td>above</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֵפְנֵי</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>1,029</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִבַיִת</td>
<td>inside</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִחוּץ</td>
<td>outside</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֵעֻמָה</td>
<td>close to</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִפְׁנֵי</td>
<td>from before</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 8.6
#### Quadruple Hybrid Prepositions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־מִחוּץ ל</td>
<td>to outside of</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־מִבַיִת ל</td>
<td>to within</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 8.5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־מִבֵית</td>
<td>to within</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־מוּל פְׁנֵי</td>
<td>to the front of</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְמַעְלָה ל</td>
<td>down to</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶל־נוֹכַח פְׁנֵי</td>
<td>directly in front of</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִחוּץ ל</td>
<td>outside of</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלְׁבָּא</td>
<td>from the entrance of</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלְׁבַד</td>
<td>besides</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלְׁמַטָה</td>
<td>from below</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלְׁמֵַ֔עְׁלָה</td>
<td>from above</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלְׁעֻמַת</td>
<td>next to</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלְׁפַנִים</td>
<td>from before</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מִלְׁפַנִים</td>
<td>inner</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8.3 Distribution of Prepositions

Although prepositions have only four primary functions (§8.4), they are found in a variety of positions based on the common parsing of words as recorded the morphological codes in the WTS text. Table 8.7 lists the various parts of speech that are governed by a preposition. Of the 51,436 prepositions without a pronoun suffix, 48,079 are prefixed to the constituent they govern or are linked by means of Maqqeph; 1,515 have a conjunctive accent; 1,369 have a near disjunctive; and only 65 have a remote disjunctive. On the other hand, of the 11,337 that govern a pronoun suffix, only 49 are linked to the following word by Maqqeph; 1,594 are linked by conjunctive accent; 4,257 by a near disjunctive; but 5,435 by a remote disjunctive.
Table 8.7
Distribution of Prepositional Governance

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Speech</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun Suffix</td>
<td>11,337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominative Pronoun</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative Pronoun</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative Pronoun</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative Pronoun</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sign of Accusative</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Nouns</td>
<td>33,222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proper Nouns</td>
<td>6,434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentilic Nouns</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardinal Number</td>
<td>621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ordinal Number</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>810</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles</td>
<td>766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive Absolute</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive Construct</td>
<td>5,978</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Pronoun</td>
<td>718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preposition</td>
<td>1,175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative Particle</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunction</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 They mark an accusative noun phrase (Josh. 11:13; 2 Kgs. 3:22).
2 8,581 have the definite article.
3 287 have the definite article.
4 161 have the definite article.
5 64 have the definite article.
6 21 have a definite article.
7 The word לֹא occurs 47 times, negating a common noun 34 times, another preposition 3 times (2 Chr. 30:18; Job 39:16; Isa. 30:5; 55:2), a finite verb 10 times, and 1 infinitive construct (Num. 35:23). Other negatives are: הָושָׁנָה (95 times), הָעָשָׁנָה (38 times), הָעָשָׁנָה (63 times), הָעָשָׁנָה (13 times), and הָעָשָׁנָה (once).
8 303 have the definite article.
9 264 have the definite article.
10 23 form compound conjunctions discussed in § 9.1; 7 appear before Waw conjunctive, apparently with an elided object (Gen. 21:16; Deut. 28:66; Judg. 9:17; 2 Kgs. 2:15; 4:25; I Chr. 20:4; Neh. 12:38).
Chapter 8  Hebrew Prepositions  219

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Speech</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adverb(^{11})</td>
<td>599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interjection(^{12})</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finite Verb(^{13})</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Word(^{14})</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>62,773</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first eleven categories are cases in which the object of the preposition is a noun or its equivalent. Intuitively one expects a preposition to govern its object in the genitive case; but in some instances, a preposition governs independent nominative or accusative pronouns, and even twice noun phrases marked accusative. In the case of the cardinal and ordinal numbers, the number either quantifies a noun phrase or stands alone functioning as a noun in place of the elided noun phrase it quantifies. In the case of adjectives, they too are functioning as a noun standing alone in place of the elided noun phrase it modifies. In the case of the participles, when governed by a preposition they function as a verbal noun. The same is true in the rare instances where a preposition governs an infinitive absolute. The construct infinitive is a verbal noun whether it stands alone or has a named subject and object.

When prepositions link with relative pronouns they form compound subordinating conjunctions as discussed in § 9.1; the same is true when they link with a conjunction. When prepositions link with other prepositions they form compound prepositions as explained above. The same is true when they link with adverbs. When linked with an interrogative particle they form a compound interrogative adverb. In rare instances in poetry, an interjection is found intervening between prepositions forming a compound. Contrary to expectation, a preposition is found governing a finite verb as though there were and intervening relative pronoun. Finally, a few prepositions with elided object pronouns are found at the end of a verse.

### 8.4 Functions of Prepositions

Prepositions have four functions in Hebrew: (1) they convert nouns or noun phrases into adverb phrases; (2) they join verbs with their complements; (3) they subordinate infinitive clauses

---

\(^{11}\) Two have a definite article.

\(^{12}\) Psa. 73:15; 116:14, 18.

\(^{13}\) Strangely, 3 have the definite article (2 Chr. 1:4; 29:36; Dan. 8:1).

\(^{14}\) Josh. 2:11; 2 Sam. 18:13; 2 Chr. 30:18; Hos. 13:4; Amos. 2:9.
to independent clauses or to other parts of speech, and (4) they may join with רָעַש or ק to form subordinating conjunctions. Apart from (4) which is special, prepositions almost always govern a noun phrase or its equivalent. Prepositions may be negated, nearly always by the prepositive particle א, but occasionally by י, by ב, by ב, by א, or by א.

8.4.1 Forming Adverb Phrases

Adverbs and adverb phrases answer the questions: when? where? why? how? etc., but not who? or what? They answer questions about time, place, manner, means, result, consequence, cause, reason, purpose, degree of comparison, condition, and so forth.

A temporal preposition, governing a noun or noun phrase naming some aspect of time, forms an adverb phrase that answers the question “when?”; a spatial preposition, governing a noun or noun phrase naming some aspect of place, answers the question “where?”; a manner preposition, governing a noun or noun phrase naming a method, answers the question “how?”; a purpose preposition, governing a noun or noun phrase naming a purpose, answers the question “why?”; and so forth. Because prepositions govern nouns or noun phrases, they also may govern pronouns that stand in place of a noun (phrase). The pronouns take the genitive case and are suffixed to the preposition.

Some Hebrew prepositions have only a temporal meaning in the Old Testament:

—before

—before

15 An infinitive clause is a clause which has had its verb changed to the infinitive form rather than the inflected form it would normally take as an independent clause.

16 Prepositions are negated by א 260 times in the Hebrew Bible, nearly always with Maqqeph or a conjunctive accent (222 times), or with a near disjunctive accent (27 times), or a remote disjunctive accent (11 times: Num. 14:28; Deut. 31:17; 1 Sam. 20:15; 29:4; 1 Chr. 19:3; Isa. 10:11; Jer. 42:5; Ezek. 17:16; 20:33; 24:25; 36:7); although in these latter, the negative is probably functioning independently.

17 Prepositions are negated by י 184 times, nearly always with Maqqeph or a conjunctive accent (167 times), or a near disjunctive accent (15 times), or by a remote disjunctive accent twice (Gen. 2:5; Isa. 59:11), but in these latter the negative is functioning independently. In most cases י is functioning as the negated copulate verb in a predicate adverb clause.

18 Exod. 22:19; Num. 11:6; 2 Kgs. 23:10.

19 Job 18:15.

20 Psa. 16:2; 23:7.

21 Isa. 45:6; 46:9; 54:15.

22 Psa. 6:2*2; 38:2; 119:36; Prov. 31:4*2; Isa. 64:8; Jer. 10:24; 15:15.
Some Hebrew prepositions have only a spatial meaning in the Old Testament:

- **ב** (beside)
- **ב** (with; among)
- **ל** (in front of)
- **מ** (on top of; above)
- **ג** (in front of; opposite to)
- **נ** (in front of; before)
- **ש** (around)

Some Hebrew prepositions have both temporal and spatial meanings in the OT, but no other adverbial sense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Space</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>א</strong></td>
<td>after; behind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ב</strong></td>
<td>between</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ל</strong></td>
<td>before; in front of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ע</strong></td>
<td>as far as; up to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some Hebrew prepositions have a temporal meaning and other adverbial meanings in the OT, but no spatial sense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Manner</th>
<th>Comparison</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>כ</strong></td>
<td>about</td>
<td>like; as</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some Hebrew prepositions in the OT have other adverbial meanings not including time and space:

- **ל** (because of)
- **למש** (for the sake of)
- **ב** (on account of)

Some Hebrew prepositions have a spatial meaning and other adverbial meanings in the OT, but no temporal sense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Space</th>
<th>Other Adverbial Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>אל</strong> (to; toward)</td>
<td>because of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>בע</strong> (away)</td>
<td>on behalf of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ממש</strong> (from before)</td>
<td>because of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Some Hebrew prepositions have both temporal and spatial meanings, as well as other adverbial senses in the OT:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Space</th>
<th>Other Adverbial Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ב</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>with; by means of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ל</td>
<td>to</td>
<td>of; for; in order to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מ</td>
<td>from;</td>
<td>on account of;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>out of</td>
<td>because of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>על</td>
<td>upon;</td>
<td>because of;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—</td>
<td>over</td>
<td>on the condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עב</td>
<td>as long as</td>
<td>with beside; in spite of</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above analysis is simplified and does not include the special senses associated with governing verbal complements, nor does it include figurative senses. Besides this, as mentioned above (§ 8.2.2), many prepositions join with others to form compound prepositions with a variety of senses. BDB and HALOT provide extensive articles on all the prepositions; they should be consulted for more details.

### 8.4.2 Governing Verbal Complements

Hebrew verbs govern their complements in the accusative case or by means of a preposition. When a preposition functions in this role, its meaning is dependent on the verb involved; likewise, the meaning of the verb is dependent on the preposition.

Although some English verbs govern their complements by means of prepositions, there is no necessary relationship between how Hebrew verbs govern their complements and how the corresponding English verbs govern theirs. A given Hebrew verb may govern its complement by means of a preposition, while the corresponding English verb governs its complement in the accusative, or vice versa. Even when both the given Hebrew verb and the corresponding English verb govern their complement by means of a preposition, the Hebrew and English prepositions may not correspond in basic meaning. Translators take this into account, substituting the correct English
preposition for the Hebrew one. A comprehensive lexicon records these variations of meaning for both verbs and prepositions, and a careful expositor pays attention to these details.

### 8.4.3 Subordinating Infinitive Clauses

In language, one clause may modify another (independent) clause in order to provide some adverbial information about it. Such a modifying clause is called a dependent or subordinate clause. A dependent clause is subordinated to an independent clause by means of a subordinating conjunction. The conjunction introduces the dependent clause which may either precede or follow the independent clause it modifies.

So the LORD went His way as soon as He had finished speaking with Abraham. (Gen 18:33)

The conjunction מְעָשָׁה (as soon as) introduces the dependent (subordinate) clause that defines the time when the LORD departed.

In Hebrew, an alternate way of subordinating one clause to another is to change the verb in the subordinate clause to its infinitive form, and to introduce the subordinate clause with the preposition that corresponds in meaning to the given subordinating conjunction. Usually the infinitive assumes first position in the clause. English has no corresponding idiom, so the English translation is the same in either case. Using the same example as above, but employing the infinitive alternative, the text would read:

So the LORD went His way as soon as He had finished speaking with Abraham. (Gen 18:33)*

The infinitive form מָצאָה replaced the inflected form מָצאָה and the preposition בַּלְפֶלְפֶלְבֶל replaced the conjunction מְעָשָׁה. In like manner, many Hebrew prepositions may govern an infinitive clause, transforming it into an adverbial subordinate clause.

When you have brought the people out of Egypt (Exod. 3:12) [The subject of the infinitive is the 2ms pronoun suffix attached to it.]

as one falls before wicked men (2 Sam. 3:34)

---

24 This construction occurs 5,990 times in the Hebrew Bible. The infinitive functions as a verbal noun, so one would expect it to be governed by a preposition in this construction. Thus this structure functions as an ordinary prepositional phrase, fulfilling all its roles.
After he has shaved his consecrated hair (Num 6:19)

That the LORD may bring to Abraham what He has spoken to him. (Gen. 18:19)

Because the LORD loves you, and because He would keep His oath (Deut. 7:8)

Because I follow what is good (Psa. 38:21, vs. 20 in Eng.)

In order to walk in His ways and to fear Him (Deut. 8:6)

A verb may govern an infinitive clause as a complement by means of a preposition.

He sought to kill Moses (Ex 2:15)

I do not want to take her (Deut 25:8)

8.5 Forming Conjunctions

Some Hebrew prepositions join with רַעֲשָׁה or כָּבֵס to form subordinating conjunctions. At times these prepositions function as conjunctions even without the companion words.

—in order that; because —therefore
—in order that; because —since
—in order that; because —afterwards
—in order that; because —afterwards
—in order that; because —afterwards
—in order that; because —afterwards
—in order that; because —afterwards
—in order that; because —afterwards
—in order that; because —afterwards
—in order that; because —afterwards
—in order that; because —afterwards

25 See § 9.1 on conjunctions.
8.6 Summary

This chapter discusses Hebrew prepositions. Words classified as prepositions answer the semantic question “what adverbial relationship?” They have a unique grammatical form that permits them to govern pronoun suffixes, and they occupy unique syntactic slots: (1) they form elementary adverb phrases with nouns or pronouns; (2) they join some verbs with their complement, and (3) they subordinate infinitive clauses.

They also function with רֵֽשָׁה or יָּבֹא to form subordinating conjunctions. Prepositions may be preceded by a conjunction, but never by a definite article.26

Syntactic slots

Prepositions may occupy four slots.

(1) Governing a noun phrase it may occupy an elementary adverb slot:

D = P + N

(2) It may link a verb to its complement:

Q = V + P + N

(3) Governing an infinitive clause it may occupy an adverb slot:

D = P + S\textsuperscript{i} \quad (S\textsuperscript{i} = infinitive clause)

(4) It forms a conjunction with רֵֽשָׁה or יָּבֹא:

C\textsuperscript{s} = P + רֵֽשָׁה \quad \text{or}
C\textsuperscript{s} = P + יָּבֹא \quad (C\textsuperscript{s} = subordinating conjunction)

---

26 In this work, the definite article is regarded as a morpheme of nouns and adjectives. Thus no article is expected with a preposition. However, there is one exception in colloquial speech (1 Sam. 9:24) where the preposition does have a definite article. The expression is understood to mean “that which is on it.”
CHAPTER 9
Hebrew Conjunctions

Conjunctions are the words that connect various elements of a language together. They connect the statements of a narrative together to form a logically coherent story. They are the key to tracing the flow of thought through a Biblical passage. The expositor who ignores their significance is like a tourist in a foreign country who has maps of the cities but no map of the interconnecting roads. What a pity to skip from village to village, from city to city, without ever traversing the countryside, without seeing the hills and valleys, the rivers and streams, the mountains and shores, the forests and meadows, without ever experiencing the cultural context. So is the expositor who ignores the road map of exegesis—the conjunctions. Table 9.1 lists the individual conjunctions by frequency. Of the 57,547 instances of these conjunctions, 53,116 are prefixed to the following word or are linked by means of Maqqeph; 2,582 are linked by means of a conjunctive accent; 1,015 by means of a near disjunctive; and only 152 have a remote disjunctive.

9.1 Compound Conjunctions

The individual conjunctions may link with prepositions to form new conjunctions with their own nuance. The following is a list of conjunctions formed in this manner:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>בֵּרָה</th>
<th>before</th>
<th>מְלֹא</th>
<th>before</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>עַדָּא</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>בַּלְמֹא</td>
<td>except</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עַדּ-ךָ</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>בַּהֲדוֹרַן</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ךָ</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>-ךָ</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1 GKC § 104; JM § 104; NIDOTE 4:1036-39.
2 Gen. 24:19; 24:33; Isa. 30:17; Ruth 2:21.
3 Gen. 47:18; Judg. 7:14; Amos 3:3, 4.
4 Gen. 26:13; 41:49; 49:10; 2 Sam. 23:10; 2 Chr. 26:15.
5 Deut. 4:37; Prov. 1:29; Isa. 51:6.
6 Deut. 31:17; Judg. 3:12; Psa. 139:14; Jer. 4:28; Mal. 2:14.
7 Psa. 40:16; 70:4.
Table 9.1
Frequency of Hebrew Conjunctions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th></th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ֹ</td>
<td>and</td>
<td>50,273</td>
<td>ֶ</td>
<td>but indeed</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ָ</td>
<td>for, that</td>
<td>4,483</td>
<td>☼</td>
<td>then</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ָ</td>
<td>if</td>
<td>1,068</td>
<td>☼</td>
<td>if not</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ְ</td>
<td>also</td>
<td>769</td>
<td>☼</td>
<td>but</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ַ</td>
<td>or</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>☼</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ִ</td>
<td>in order that</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>☼</td>
<td>surely</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ַ</td>
<td>also</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>☼</td>
<td>surely</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ֹ</td>
<td>lest</td>
<td>133</td>
<td>☼</td>
<td>therefore</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ִ</td>
<td>before</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>☼</td>
<td>if, though</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ָ</td>
<td>if perhaps</td>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>57,547</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Hebrew word רָּֽאָֽפָּֽיַּֽ is often functions as a subordinating conjunction, introducing a dependent clause or indirect discourse. The following is a list of conjunctions formed when רָּֽאָֽפָּֽיַּֽ is preceded by a preposition (see § 11.6.1).

- רָּֽאָֽפָּֽיַּֽ after רָּֽאָֽפָּֽיַּֽ because
- רָּֽאָֽפָּֽיַּֽ when רָּֽאָֽפָּֽיַּֽ since
- רָּֽאָֽפָּֽיַּֽ until רָּֽאָֽפָּֽ because

---

8 Gen. 22:18; 26:5; Num. 14:24; Deut. 7:12; 8:20; 2 Sam. 12:6, 10; Psa. 40:16; 70:4; Amos 4:1.
9 The word is classified as a conjunction, but it functions as an adverb: Ruth 3:12; 2 Kgs. 19:17; Job 9:2; 12:2; 19:4, 5; 34:12; 36:4; Isa. 37:18.
10 The word is classified as a conjunction, but it functions as an adverb: Gen. 18:13; Num. 22:37; 1 Kgs. 8:27; 2 Chr. 6:18; Psa. 58:2.
11 Job 30:24; Ruth 1:13 (twice).
12 רָּֽאָֽפָּֽיַּֽ is classified as an adverb in lexicons, but it usually functions as a temporal conjunction.
13 Eccl. 6:6; Est. 7:4.
14 Gen. 39:9, 23; Eccl. 7:2.
15 Isa. 43:4.
The Hebrew word כֵּ֧ב functions as a conjunction when preceded by a preposition. The following is a list of conjunctions formed in this fashion:

- therefore
- afterwards
- because

At times a conjunction forms a compound with another part of speech:

- however
- but
- only if
- that, in order that

There are two major classes of conjunctions or connectives: (1) those that coordinate elements of equal rank and function in the flow of thought, such as words, phrases, clauses or clusters of clauses; and (2) those that subordinate one clause or cluster of clauses to another. A clause is subordinate to another when it modifies the other clause in some sense. A subordinate clause usually answers an adverbial question about the clause it modifies, such as when?, where?, how?, why?, etc. A subordinate clause is sometimes referred to as a dependent clause, the clause it modifies as an independent clause.

### 9.2 Coordinating Conjunctions

Words, phrases, or clauses that are of equal rank and function in the flow of thought may be coordinated in one of three ways: (1) equating, (2) contrasting, or (3) opposing. Equating connectives are called conjunctives; contrasting connectives are called disjunctives; and opposing connectives are called adversatives.
Chapter 9  Hebrew Conjunctions  229

Coordinating conjunctions join words, phrases,22 clauses, or clusters of clauses of equal kind, rank, and function. Equal kind means the elements joined by the conjunction are the same part of speech—nouns join with nouns, adjectives with adjectives, adverbs with adverbs, verbs with verbs, and clauses with clauses; most other parts of speech do not experience coordination. Equal rank means the elements joined enjoy the same degree of importance in their immediate context. Equal function means the elements joined occupy the same grammatical role in their immediate context—that is, subject joins with subject, adjectival modifier with adjectival modifier, adverbial modifier with adverbial modifier, principle verb with principle verb, predicate complement with predicate complement, predicate with predicate, and independent clause with independent clause.

Coordinating conjunctions may be distinguished from subordinating conjunctions by the fact that coordinating conjunctions may appear in compound phrases—such as, “Abraham and Isaac,” “Jacob or Esau,” and “Joseph but not Simeon”—whereas subordinating conjunctions do not occur in such phrases. Thus one does not find phrases such as “Abraham when Isaac,” and “Jacob because Esau.” Compound phrases are represented by the following notation:

\[ X \rightarrow X + C^c + X \]

where \( X = \{N, A, D, \text{or} \ V\} \), and \( C^c \) = coordinating conjunction.

9.2.1 Conjunctive Connectors

Conjunctive connectors join words, phrases, or clauses on some kind of equal basis. The following are the principal conjunctives in Hebrew:

(a) \( \uparrow \) (Waw conjunctive)—and—expresses joint participation of words, phrases, or clauses; the elements it joins provide equal contribution to an argument or narrative. Waw conjunctive expresses simple coordination, joining things of the same kind, rank, and function. It may join nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, or phrases of any of these; it also may join predicates, clauses, or clusters of clauses. If it joins phrases or clauses, it is attached to the first word of the second phrase or clause. Its vowel usually is Shewa (\( \uparrow \)), although before some words its vowel may be Hiriq (\( \uparrow \)), Pathach (\( \uparrow \)), or Qamets (\( \uparrow \)); in some cases it appears as Shureq (\( \uparrow \)).

---

22 Compound phrases—words or phrases joined by a coordinating conjunction—are the result a deletion transformation operating on two or more coordinate clauses (i.e., joined by a coordinating conjunction) which say the same thing about equal but different constituents. This operation is discussed in § 19.4.
Coordinate words:

The sons of Japheth were Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras. (Gen. 10:2)

Coordinate phrases:

So the LORD stirred up the spirit of Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and the spirit of Joshua the son of Jehozadak, the high priest, and the spirit of all the remnant of the people. (Hag. 1:14)

Coordinate clauses:

Therefore, the heavens above you withhold the dew and [parallel action]
the earth withholds its fruit. (Hag. 1:10)

Alternate Uses

While Waw conjunctive \( W \) functions primarily as a coordinating conjunction, it also serves as a general purpose substitute for more explicit conjunctions where the relationship of the clauses it joins is clearly understood from the sense of the clauses themselves. This may be thought of as part of the general principle of the *economy of symbols*. The occurrence of this substitution is noted throughout the discussion of conjunctions.

(b) \( W \) (Waw consecutive)—and/then—expresses simple coordination with an accompanying sequence of some sort, such as temporal or logical sequence.  

23 When more than two elements are coordinated, Waw conjunctive often is attached to every element but the first, as in this example, contrary to English which usually uses a comma in place of the conjunction except before the last element. At times Hebrew omits coordinating Waw conjunctive like English does.

24 Muraoka (§117a) rejects the term “Waw consecutive” as not felicitous, but the term “consecutive” does indeed imply sequence, either temporal or logical. He prefers the term “Waw inversive” and the term “inverted form.” Scholars of earlier generations used the terms “Waw conversive” and “converted form.” The forms are indeed inverted in this Hebrew idiom; but that is merely a morphological phenomenon not directly related to the conjunctive sense.
clauses, and attaches to the verb of the second clause; the verb of the second clause must be the first word of the clause. Thus Waw consecutive is found attached only to verbs, and there can be no other intervening prepositive word, such as a negative particle. If it is attached to a verb inflected in the imperfect aspect, it has Pathach for a vowel and it causes the first letter of the verb to have a doubling Daggesh, as in the word יְהֹם. If it is attached to a verb inflected in the perfect aspect, it takes the same vowel as Waw conjunctive—that is, it usually has Shewa for a vowel and does not double the first letter of the verb; thus it is indistinguishable from Waw conjunctive except for context.

Waw consecutive with imperfect:

The people heeded the voice of the LORD...

and [logical sequence]

The people feared the presence of the LORD (Hag. 1:12)

Waw consecutive with imperative:

Go up to the mountains!

and [logical sequence]

Bring wood!

and [logical sequence]

Build the temple! (Hag. 1:8)

Waw consecutive with perfect:

Now within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head

and [logical sequence]

restore you to your place

and [logical sequence]

you will put Pharaoh’s cup in his hand (Gen. 40:13)

carried by the conjunction. The true semantic function of the Waw consecutive is to denote consecution of the clauses it joins.

Waw consecutive fails to meet all the criteria for coordinating conjunctions in that it never occurs in compound phrases, and connects only clauses. On the other hand, it does not seem to subordinate, except that Waw consecutive is used at times to join a subordinate clause to the independent clause it modifies, when the independent clause follows the dependent clause. This is a non-coordinating use of Waw consecutive.

In some cases, Waw consecutive with imperfect shifts the accent forward to the next-to-last syllable of the verb to which it is attached.

In some cases, Waw consecutive with perfect shifts the accent from the next-to-last syllable to the last syllable of the verb to which it is attached, unlike Waw conjunctive.
(c) וְָ֑א—also—joins a word, phrase, or clause having a similar, though added, thought to a word, phrase, or clause of the same rank.

If a man could number the dust of the earth, your descendants also could be numbered. (Gen. 13:16)

(d) וְָ֑א—both...and—emphasize the coordinate relationship of the words, phrases, or clauses so joined.

Both we and also our fathers (Gen. 47:3)

(e) וְָ֑א—also/yea—denotes addition, especially of something greater or new.

They shout for joy, yea they also sing. (Psa. 65:13 [14])

Indeed I have spoken it; I will also bring it to pass. I have purposed it; I will also do it. (Isa. 46:11)

9.2.2 Disjunctive Connectors

Disjunctive connectors join clauses of equal hierarchy but of contrasting meaning; they state that an alternative exists. The following are the principal disjunctives in Hebrew: 28

(a) או—or—joins words, phrases, or clauses expressing mutually exclusive alternatives; joins words, phrases, or clauses expressing alternate possibilities in an uncertain situation; or joins words, phrases, or clauses expressing the same thought in alternate words.

Disjunctive words:

And how could we steal silver or gold from your lord’s house? (Gen. 44:8)

any item of wood or clothing or leather or sackcloth (Lev. 11:32)

Disjunctive phrases:

That I may turn to the right hand or to the left. (Gen. 24:49)

28 Waw conjunctive is frequently used as a disjunctive where the disjunctive sense is clearly evident in the context.
Chapter 9 Hebrew Conjunctions

Disjunctive clauses:

Is it better that you be a priest to the household of one man, or that you be a priest to a tribe and a family in Israel? (Judg. 18:19)

(b) אִם...اور—either...or—join words, phrases, or clauses expressing mutually exclusive alternatives; or join words, phrases, or clauses expressing alternate possibilities in an uncertain situation. They function as a pair. Hebrew has no conjunctions expressing neither...nor; it uses بل...בל instead.

Disjunctive predicates:

Whether it has gored a son or gored a daughter (Exod. 21:31)

Disjunctive clauses:

Neither curse them at all, nor bless them at all! (Num. 23:25)

9.2.3 Adversative Connectors

Adversative connectors join clauses of equal hierarchy but of opposing or contrary meaning. The following are the principal adversatives in Hebrew:

(a) אֶל—but—introduces a clause in opposition to the one preceding it, or expressing a contrary thought or one contrary to expectation.

The men that were with me did not see the vision; but a great terror fell upon them. (Dan. 10:7)

(b) כִּי—but—used to join an antithesis to a negative clause.

This one shall not be your heir, but one who will come from your own body

29 Waw conjunctive is frequently used as an adversative where the adversative sense is clearly evident in the context.

30 כִּי may also be used as a conditional conjunction; see § 9.3.6.
shall be your heir. (Gen. 15:4)

(c) אַלֵּם—but—usually occurs with †! to express some degree of emphasis.

וַיִּקְרָא אֶת־שֵׁם־מַעֲשֶׂה הָעֹֽלָם֙ בֵּית־אָֽלֵֽם

And he called the name of that place Bethel; but the name of that city had been Luz previously. (Gen. 28:19)

(d) אֵּלֵּם—however—used to join an antithesis to a negative clause.

וַיִּהְמַרְּרָה אֵֵָּ֖לֶּם מֵעֶַֽל פְּנִֵ֣י הָאֲדָמָָ֑ה

However, I will not utterly destroy the house of Jacob," Says the LORD. (Amos 9:8)

(e) לְּךָ—except—used to join an antithesis to a negative clause.

לֹא־יִמְׁצִָ֣א הָאָּ֖וָלַּם אֶל։וֹ בִּלְׁתִֵ֥י נָתִַ֣ן בְׁלִבֵָּ֔ם גַָּּ֤ם אֶת־הָעֹלָם֙ נָתִַ֣ן בְׁלִבֵָּ֔ם

“See now, I have two daughters who have not known a man; please, let me bring them out to you, and you may do to them as you wish; except do nothing to these men, since this is the reason they have come under the shadow of my roof.” (Gen. 19:8)

(f) בְּלָתֶּֽי—except—used to join an antithesis to a negative clause.

נָבָה לָאֲדָלִים נַחְּתִים בְּלָתֶּֽי לִלְתָּן לָוֹת׃

He who sacrifices to any god, except to the LORD only, he shall be utterly destroyed (Exod. 22:20)

(g) מֶֽ֥בָּלֵֽי—except that—used to join an antithesis to a negative clause.

גָּֽפֶ֥ת אַף־הָעֹלָם וְנַחְּתִים בִּלְּתֶּֽי מַלַּֽי נַחְּתִים לָאֵֽרֵּ֥ר לָאֲדָלִים אֲלָדוֹתָֽהּ

Also He has put eternity in their hearts, except that no one can find out the work that God does from beginning to end. (Eccl. 3:11)
9.2.4 Comparatives

Comparative conjunctions compare the thought of one word, phrase, or clause with that of another word, phrase, or clause of similar kind. The following are the principal comparative conjunctions in Hebrew:

(a) (ךָךָךָך) —just as...(so)—this pair of conjunctions compares two clauses on an equal basis. The second conjunction may be omitted.

(b) (ךָך) —as...so—this pair of conjunctions compares one word, phrase, or clause with another on a similar but not necessarily equal basis.

(c) (ךֲך) —more than—compares one word, phrase, or clause as superior to another; if the thing compared is a universal statement, the conjunction expresses the superlative degree of comparison.

Clauses may be compared on the basis of any common element or feature, and they may have four different degrees of comparison: (1) equality, (2) similarity, (3) superiority, or (4) the superlative. Typical common elements are participants, predicates, attributes, and adverbial modifiers such as manner, means, cause, reason, purpose, time, place, and so forth. Typical common features are truth, certainty, and figurative representation. The following is a list of various types of comparisons that can be made between clauses:

1. Two subjects compared with respect to a common predicate.
2. Two objects compared with respect to a common subject and verb.
3. Two predicates compared with respect to a common subject.
4. A statement compared with itself under different circumstances.
5. Two subjects and objects compared with respect to a common verb.
6. A statement compared with its complement.
7. A statement compared with another of the same kind.
8. A statement compared with its counter-statement, contradiction, alternative, or adversative.
9. A figure of speech compared with its counterpart.

Frequently comparative clause pairs of types (1) through (4) are condensed to a single clause with a comparative phrase; but the condensing may not be possible in some cases, or may purposely be left undone for the sake of emphasis. The condensing of types (5) through (9) is more difficult and found less often. The following are examples of condensed clause pairs:

Comparison of predicate attribute:

31 The condensing is the result of a deletion transformation as discussed in § 19.4.
Chapter 9

Hebrew Conjunctions

One people shall be stronger than the other. (Gen. 25:23)
[Condensed from “One people shall be strong more than the other people shall be strong.”]

They were swifter than eagles,
They were stronger than lions. (2 Sam. 1:23)
[Condensed from “They were swift more than eagles are swift,”
and “They were strong more than lions are strong.”]

Comparison of predicate complement:

He also loved Rachel more than Leah. (Gen. 29:30)
[Condensed from “He loved Rachel more than he loved Leah.”]

The king loved Esther more than all the other women. (Est. 2:17)

Comparison of predicates:

They reverted and behaved more corruptly than their fathers. (Judg. 2:19)

David behaved more wisely than all the servants of Saul. (1 Sam. 18:30)

Type 1: Two subjects with a common predicate:

“As the new heavens and the new earth
Which I have made shall remain before Me,” says the LORD,
“So shall your descendants and your name remain.” (Isa. 66:22)

When every male among us is circumcised
as [comparison of equality]
they are circumcised. (Gen. 34:22)

Type 4: A statement compared with itself under different circumstances:

Fulfill your work, your daily quota,
as [comparison of equality]
when there was straw. (Exod. 5:13)
[Condensed from “Fulfill your work, your daily quota,
as you fulfilled your daily work quota when there was straw.”]
Chapter 9 Hebrew Conjunctions

**Type 6: A statement is compared with its complement:**

**Commandment-execution:**

Two by two they went into the ark to Noah, male and female, as God had commanded Noah. (Gen. 7:9)

We will go three days journey into the wilderness and sacrifice to the LORD our God as He will command us. (Exod. 8:23)

**Messenger-message:**

I will bring back word to you as the LORD speaks to me. (Num. 22:8)

**Crime-punishment:**

As I have done, so God has repaid me. (Judg. 1:7)

**Type 7: A statement is compared with another of the same kind:**

Just as when a man rises against his neighbor and kills him, even so is this matter. (Deut. 22:26)

**Type 8: A statement is compared with its contradiction.** The significant thought involved in the contradiction must be stated.

Nor will I again destroy every living thing as I have done. (Gen. 8:21)

**Type 9: A figure of speech is compared with its counterpart:**

**Metaphor:**

As his name is, so is he. (1 Sam. 25:25)
**Simile:**

כִּי יְבוּלָה שָׁמוֹן מָאָרִי
ci yivulah shamoh mair
כִּי יְבָאוֹת דְּרֵךְ מְאֹרִי
kii yiv’oat derakh maari
ומָהָשַׁלְתִּי מְפַתָּלְתִי
ehahashali mifatli

As the heavens are higher than the earth,
So are My ways higher than your ways,
And My thoughts than your thoughts. (Isa. 55:9)

כְּלָהָר בְּנֵי הַנַּחַל
ekhali beni ha’nakhal
כִּי אַחֲרֵי בֵית יִשְׂרָאֵל
eki acheri b’iti yisra’el

As the clay is in the potter’s hand,  
so are you in My hand, O house of Israel. (Jer. 18:6)

הַפַּה כְּעֶשֶׁנָּי חָפְלָה אֶלֶּרֶדְרֵה
ehapha kesehni haphla aleredre
כְּעֶשֶׁנָי שָׁפָּה אֶלֶּרֶדְרֵה
ekesehni shapah aleredre
כְּעֶשֶׁנָי שָׁפָּה אֶלֶּרֶדְרֵה
ekesehni shapah aleredre
כְּעֶשֶׁנָי שָׁפָּה אֶלֶּרֶדְרֵה
ekesehni shapah aleredre

Behold as the eyes of servants look to the hand of their masters,  
As the eyes of a maid to the hand of her mistress,  
So our eyes look to the LORD our God. (Psa. 123:2)

### 9.2.5 Juxtaposition

Sometimes Hebrew, like English, does not use a conjunction to connect clauses, instead, they stand in juxtaposition (side-by-side).\(^{32}\) Clauses in juxtaposition may be regarded as having a zero conjunction. Coordinate clauses may stand in juxtaposition whenever the coordinate relationship of the clauses is clearly understood from the sense of the clauses themselves.\(^{33}\) Coordinating conjunctions may join more than two words, phrases, clauses, or clause clusters; if so, and the type of coordination is the same for all, then all the conjunctions but the last may be omitted. This too may be regarded as part of the general principle of the *economy of symbols*, but Hebrew repeats the coordinating conjunctions more often than English does in this circumstance.

---

\(^{32}\) The omission of a conjunction is called *asyndeton*.

\(^{33}\) Juxtaposition may occur with a subordinate clause and the independent clause it modifies when the subordinate clause occurs first.
9.3 Subordinating Conjunctions

Whenever one clause is dependent upon another, a subordinating conjunction\(^{34}\) introduces the dependent clause in order to express the kind of dependency involved. There are at least seven principal dependencies employed in Hebrew: (1) temporal, (2) result-consequence, (3) cause-reason, (4) purpose-result, (5) manner-means, (6) conditional, and (7) comparative. Dependent clauses function adverbially; they answer the standard adverbial questions.

9.3.1 Temporal

Temporal conjunctions specify some time dependency between the two clauses. The following are the most common temporal conjunctions:

- בְּכָלָה — when
- מָשְׂר — since
- מְשַׁר — until
- אַשְׁר — after\(^{35}\)
- אַשְׁרָא — after
- מְשַׁר — after
- מֹכֶּה — before
- מְכֶּה — before
- מְכֶּה — before
- מְכֶּה — then
- מְכֶּה — then\(^{36}\)

\(^{34}\) The Hebrew word בְּכָלָה often functions as a subordinating conjunction, introducing a dependent clause or indirect discourse. It often is governed by a preposition to express various nuances of dependency.

\(^{35}\) מָשְׂר sometimes occurs as a conjunction without בְּכָלָה, Lev. 14:43; Jer. 41:16; Job 42:7; BDB 29-30.

\(^{36}\) מְכֶּה usually is classified as an adverb, but it functions as a conjunction. It occurs 141 times in the Hebrew Bible, and מְכֶּה occurs 3 times (Psa. 124:3-5).
9.3.2 Result-Consequence

Result-consequence conjunctions specify that one clause is the result or consequence of the other which in turn is the cause for the companion clause. These conjunctions appear only between an independent clause and its dependent clause. The following are the more common result-reason conjunctions: (1) Cause-result conjunctions; (2) Cause-consequence conjunctions; and (3) The undesirable result conjunction.

- יַעֲשְׂ—therefore
- לֹא—lest

(1) *Cause-result conjunctions* answer the question “with what result?” The relationship is more one of direct cause and effect than of remote cause and effect. The latter may be regarded more as a consequence than as an effect.

אַשְׁרָּא יְזַדְּמֶה אֱלֹהִים לְעָם, יִשְׂרָאֵל יִשָּׂרֵאֶל בְּמִרְמֵר... 

They said, “Can God prepare a table in the wilderness...? [cause]

Therefore
the LORD heard this and was furious.” [result] (Psa. 78:19-21)

(2) *Cause-consequence conjunctions* answer the question “with what consequence?” The relationship is more one of indirect or remote cause and effect than of direct cause and effect. The latter may be regarded more as a result than as a consequence.

אַשְׁרָּא יְזַדְּמֶה אֱלֹהִים לְעָם, יִשְׂרָאֵל יִשָּׂרֵאֶל יֵשֶׁמֶשׁ יִבְשֵׂשׁ יֵשֶׁמֶשׁ אֲלֵיהֶם: 

You have forsaken Me and served other gods. [cause]

Therefore
I will deliver you no more. [consequence] (Judg. 10:13)

(3) *The undesirable consequence conjunction* expresses the alternative, or result, answering the question “why not?”

לֹא אֲשֶׁר מְנַפֵּשׁ לָא הָעְשֵׂה כֹּל... 

You shall not eat it, nor shall you touch it, [prohibited cause]

lest
you die. [undesirable consequence] (Gen. 3:3)
9.3.3 Reason-Result/Cause-Consequence

Reason-result conjunctions specify that one clause is the reason for another clause which is the result of the companion clause. Cause-consequence conjunctions specify that one clause is the cause of another clause which is the consequence of the companion clause. These conjunctions introduce the dependent clause, although the independent clause may appear before the dependent clause for the sake of prominence. Note that reason-result conjunctions and cause-consequence conjunctions are interrelated; it is not unusual to find them mixed in a statement like “Because . . . therefore . . . .” For example: “Because you did not obey the voice of the LORD nor execute His fierce wrath upon Amalek, therefore the LORD has done this thing to you this day” (1 Sam. 28:18). The following is a list of the more prominent cause-reason conjunctions:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reason-Result/Cause-Consequence</th>
<th>Hebrew</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>—therefore</td>
<td>לָזָה —therefore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—therefore</td>
<td>עָלְ-כּ —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>כָּאָשָׁר —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>נִקְב —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>מַשְׂא —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>גָּאָש —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>גִּנְנ —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>מֵלִבּ —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>כְּפִי —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>עָלְ-דְּבַרְךּ אֲשִֶ֣ר —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>מִבְּלִי —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>עַל-בְּלִי —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>עַל-דְּבַרֹ֙ אֲשִֶ֣ר —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>כְּפִָ֗י אֲשֶָּ֤ר —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>מִבְּלִי —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>עַל-בְּלִי —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>עַל-דְּבַרּ אֲשִֶ֣ר —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>כְּפִֶ֣י אֲשֶֹּר —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>מִבְּלִי —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>עַל-בְּלִי —because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—because</td>
<td>עַל-בְּלִי —because</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) *Reason-result conjunctions* answer the question “why, for what reason?” as distinguished from a cause.

Because you did not obey the voice of the LORD nor execute His fierce wrath upon Amalek, [reason]
therefore the LORD has done this thing to you this day. [result] (1 Sam. 28:18)

---

37 כּ is also used as a conditional conjunction and a speech-introducing conjunction.
38 Deut. 22:24*2; 23:5; 2 Sam. 13:22.
39 Mal. 2:9.
9.3.4 Purpose-Result

Purpose-result conjunctions specify that one clause is the purpose or intended result of the other clause. Purpose conjunctions answer the question “why, for what purpose?” The following are the most common purpose-result conjunctions:

—[purpose] —[purpose]

Please say you are my sister
it may be well with me for your sake. (Gen. 12:13)

You will take these seven ewe lambs from my hand,
9.3.5 Manner-Means

Manner-means conjunctions specify that one clause defines the manner or means whereby the other clause is accomplished. Manner conjunctions answer the question “how, in what manner?” The following is the common manner-means conjunctions:

Thus; so

Each board had two tenons for binding one to another. Thus [in this manner] he made for all the boards of the Tabernacle. (Exod. 36:22)

9.3.6 Conditionals

Conditional conjunctions specify some logical dependency between two clauses, which dependency usually can be expressed by the conjunctions if and then—that is, if Clause-A, then Clause-B. The “if clause” (Clause-A) is called the protasis, and the “then clause” (Clause-B) is called the apodosis. The “if clause” (protasis) declares some condition under which the “then clause” (apodosis) may be regarded as true. Such a pair of clauses is called a “conditional” sentence. Conditional sentences are part of the language of logical reasoning. If

he said thus: “The speckled shall be your wages,”
then
all the flock bore speckled. (Gen. 31:8)

The truth or falsity of the apodosis is dependent on the truth or falsity of the protasis. The condition (protasis) may be true-to-fact or contrary-to-fact. A true-to-fact condition is one that corresponds to reality, referring to what has actually happened or to what could actually happen. Whereas, a contrary-to-fact condition is one that does not correspond to reality, referring to what has not actually happened or to what could not happen. For example, the condition if the moon turns to cheese is a contrary-to-fact condition, because it states a condition that cannot happen. Whereas the condition if a man sins is a true-to-fact condition, because it states a condition that can and has happened.

The truth of the condition (protasis) may have one of several degrees of certainty (probability). The condition may be regarded by the writer or speaker as certainly true (or false); in this

40 GKC § 159; JM § 167.
case the author or speaker implies that the consequence (*apodosis*) is certainly true (or false). The condition may be regarded as only potentially true (or false), depending on extenuating circumstances; in this case the writer or speaker implies that the consequence is potentially true (or false), depending on the circumstances. The condition may be regarded as only hypothetically true (or false), that is, it could possibly be true (or false), but not likely so; in this case the writer or speaker implies that the consequence is regarded as not likely true (or false). The degree of certainty is determined primarily by the aspect and mood of the clauses, not by the conjunctions.

The *protasis* may express the exclusive condition under which the consequence (*apodosis*) can be true. Likewise, the *protasis* may express a non-exclusive condition under which the consequence may be true; in this case, the *apodosis* could be true under other conditions than that expressed by the *protasis*.

The kind of affirmation, that is, whether the condition is regarded as true or false, is indicated by the conjunction used and by the sense of the clauses and their context. The following are the prominent conditional conjunctions:

- **אָ֣י—** if—introduces the simple condition, whether exclusive or non-exclusive, under which the *apodosis* could be true.
- **אָ֣י־אֲוַּר—** only if—introduces the exclusive condition under which the *apodosis* could be true.
- **אַ֣י—** if—introduces a condition under which the *apodosis* is expected to be true; it is usually used in legal codes.
- **אָ֣י־אָ֣י—** unless—introduces the exclusive negative condition, being the equivalent of *if not*. It specifies the exclusive condition that would negate the consequence (*apodosis*).
- **אָ֣י—** except—introduces an excepted condition.
- **אַ֣י—** except if—introduces an excepted condition.
- **אָ֣י—** if—introduces a positive contrary-to-fact condition under which the *apodosis* could be true; but because the condition is contrary-to-fact, the *apodosis* is regarded as false.

---

41 These conjunctions introduce the conditional *protasis*; the *apodosis* may be introduced by Waw conjunctive, by Waw consecutive, by בָּלֶא, or by juxtaposition: בָּלֶא introduces the *apodosis* for בָּלֶא once (2 Sam. 19:6), for בָּלֶא twice (2 Sam. 2:27; Psa. 119:92); and בָּלֶא introduces the *apodosis* for בָּלֶא 3 times (Psa. 124:3-5).

42 Is also used as a cause reason subordinating conjunction and a speech-introducing conjunction.

43 בָּלֶא may also be used as an adversative, context determines the occasion. See there (§ 9.2.3b).
—if, though—introduces a positive contrary-to-fact condition under which the apodosis could be true; but because the condition is contrary-to-fact, the apodosis is regarded as false.

—if not—introduces a negative contrary-to-fact protasis. It specifies the exclusive condition that will negate the independent clause.

Conditional conjunctions declare some logical relationship between the protasis and apodosis. The relationship may be one of cause-effect, reason-result, or means-result; or it may declare that the truth or certainty of the protasis somehow determines the truth or certainty of the apodosis. Used rhetorically, the conditional sentence may be almost the equivalent of a comparative.

There are four types of conditional sentences, not taking into account the degrees of certainty, or the fact that they may be true-to-fact or contrary-to-fact: (a) non-exclusives, (b) exclusives, (c) exceptions, and (d) concessions.

9.3.6.1 For the non-exclusive conditional, the protasis is a condition the truth of which determines the affirmation or denial of the apodosis, but it is not necessarily the exclusive condition. However, used rhetorically, a non-exclusive conditional sentence does not imply the possibility of alternative conditions that could cause the consequence to be true (as would be the case in a purely logical conditional).

\[ \text{If} \]
\[ \text{he said thus: “The speckled shall be your wages,”} \]
\[ \text{then} \]
\[ \text{all the flock bore speckled. (Gen. 31:8)} \]

\[ \text{If} \]
\[ \text{I find in Sodom fifty righteous within the city,} \]
\[ \text{then} \]
\[ \text{I will spare all the place for their sakes. (Gen. 18:26)} \]

The LORD said that fifty righteous would be sufficient for sparing the city, but actually ten was the final number. Any number over ten would have been sufficient.
You may kill my two sons
if
I do not bring him back to you. (Gen. 42:37)

Reuben expressed his confidence that he would bring Benjamin back to Jacob by stating it in the form of a rhetorical contrary-to-expectation conditional sentence. Thus Reuben did not imply that under some other condition Jacob could kill his sons. His rhetorical sentence expressed confidence, not doubt.

“You may kill my two sons
if
I do not bring him back to you. (Gen. 42:37)

The LORD compared the certainty of Israel’s future as a nation with the certainty of the laws of nature (vs. 35). He stated it in the form of a rhetorical contrary-to-fact conditional sentence. His rhetorical conditional sentence expressed certainty, not the possibility that some other condition might cause Israel to cease as a nation.

If
you can break My covenant with the day
and My covenant with the night...
then
My covenant may also be broken with David My servant. (Jer. 33:20-21)

The LORD compared the reliability of His covenant with David with the reliability of the laws of nature (viewed here as a covenant with day and night). He stated it in the form of a rhetorical contrary-to-fact conditional sentence. His rhetorical conditional sentence expressed reliability, not the possibility that some other condition might cause Him to break His covenant with David.

If
I had said I have hope,
And if also
I would have had a husband tonight
And
I would also bear sons,
then
would you wait for them till they were grown?
Would you restrain yourselves from having husbands? (Ruth 1:12-13)

Naomi reasoned with her daughters-in-law concerning the futility of remaining with her if they had any hope of marrying again. The compound protasis states the contrary-to-fact condition upon which the daughters would have hope of marrying one of her future sons. The facts are against it: she was too old have more sons even in the unlikely possibility that she would remarry. The perfect aspect verbs express the certainty of the situation. Juxtaposition links the compound apodosis which is expressed as rhetorical questions the answer to which is clearly “No!”

**9.3.6.2 For the exclusive conditional** the protasis is the only condition whereby the apodosis may be true.

... כִּי אָסָפְתֶּם חַסְדֵּי יְהוָה אֶלְיָהוּ
The LORD will greatly bless you in the land ...

only if you carefully obey the voice of the LORD your God. (Deut. 15:4-5)

לא אָסָפְתֶּם לֵאמָר אָפְקִים יִשְׂרָאֵל לְשֵׁם יְהוָה
לֹא אָסָפְתֶּם לֵאמָר שָׁם יִשְׂרָאֵל
You shall not fail to have a man sit before me on the throne of Israel,

only if your sons take heed to their way... (1 Kgs. 8:25)

The exclusive condition whereby David would have a descendant sitting on the throne of Israel was that his descendants would carefully obey God’s commandments. This does not contradict the covenant with David discussed in Jer. 33:20-21 above, because Jeremiah indicated that Israel’s captives would return and be the recipients of God’s everlasting mercy (vs. 26).

לא אָסָפְתֶּם לֵאמָר אֶלְיָהוּ מֵאָסָפְתֶּם אָפְקִים יִשְׂרָאֵל
לָא אָסָפְתֶּם לֵאמָר אָפְקִים יִשְׂרָאֵל
I will not make the feet of Israel wander anymore
from the land which I gave their fathers—

only if they are careful to do according to all I command them. (2 Kgs. 21:8)

**9.3.6.3 For the excepted conditional** the protasis is the exclusive condition whereby the apodosis may be denied.  

---

44 The conditional nuance of the initial conjunction is passed on to the succeeding clauses of the protasis without necessary repetition.

45 Note that the protasis follows in all these case.
Unless
the LORD builds the house,
they labor in vain who build it.

Unless
the LORD guards the city,
the watchman stays awake in vain. (Psa. 127:1)

Unless
the LORD had been my help,
My soul would soon have settled in silence. (Psa. 94:17)

I will not let You go
unless
You bless me. (Gen. 32:27)

The person . . . shall not eat the holy offerings
unless
he washes his body with water. (Lev. 22:6)

9.3.6.4 For the concessive conditional it is conceded that the apodosis is true in spite of the contrary expectation expressed by the protasis.

Although
my house is not so with God,
yet
He has made with me an everlasting covenant. (2 Sam. 23:5)

That is, the Lord had made a covenant with David in spite of the unworthiness of his house.

Though your sins are like scarlet,
They shall be as snow;
Though they are red like crimson,
They shall be as wool. (Isa. 1:18)

That is, the Lord will cleanse Israel’s sins in spite of their extreme severity.
9.4 Speech Introducing Conjunctions

Finally, there are conjunctions that introduce speech, either direct or indirect. The conjunction לָמֶר (saying) introduces direct speech, and both כָּל (that) and כָּל (that) introduce indirect speech. These conjunctions link the speech into the complement slot of verbs of cognition (say, think, etc.) so as to complete the expectation of the flow of thought. The syntactic structure is

\[ N^s + V + N^o \rightarrow N^s + V + C^d + S \]

Where V is a verb of cognition and C^d is one of the above speech introducing conjunctions.

And God blessed them, saying,

“Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas, and let birds multiply on the earth.” (Gen. 1:22)

This very day the noble ladies of Persia and Media will say that they have heard of the behavior of the queen. (Est. 1:18)

9.5 Practical Value

Conjunctions are the key to how clauses are grouped in logical clusters. Some conjunctions in a discourse join only two or three simple clauses in a primary cluster, whereas other conjunctions join clusters of clauses or clusters of clusters. By analyzing the grouping structure of a discourse as reflected in its conjunctions, an expositor can discover the structure of its natural outline. The procedures for that kind of analysis are in a discipline of linguistics known as discourse analysis. Chapter 20 discusses the syntax of discourse and Chapter 21 discusses discourse analysis. This concludes the discussion of conjunctions.

9.6 Summary

This chapter discusses Hebrew conjunctions. There are three types of conjunctions: (1) coordinating conjunctions, (2) subordinating conjunctions, and (3) speech introducing conjunctions. The following table lists the principle conjunctions of the different types:

**Hebrew Conjunctions**

I. Coordinating Conjunctions
   A. Conjunctive Connectors
      \( \text{ג} \) (Waw conjunctive) — and
   B. Disjunctive Connectors
Chapter 9  Hebrew Conjunctions  250

C. Adversative Connectors

— or

C. Adversative Connectors

— but

— but

D. Juxtaposition: no conjunction

II. Subordinating Conjunctions

A. Temporal

— when

— until

— before

— before

B. Result-Consequence

— therefore

— lest

C. Cause-Reason

— therefore

— therefore

— because

— because

— because

— because

D. Purpose-Result

— that, in order that

— that, in order that

E. Manner-Means

— thus; so

F. Conditionals

— if

— if

— only if

— unless

— if
— if not

G. Comparatives

— just as... (so)
— as... so
— more than

III. Speech Introducing Conjunctions

— saying
— that
— that

Slots

Conjunctions join constituents of equal kind, role, and function, forming a compound constituent of the same kind, role, and function, and occupying the same slot:

\[ X + C + X \]

where \( X = N, A, D, V, Q, \) or \( S \);

\( C \) includes any kind of conjunction except \( Waw \) Consecutive which is limited to clauses only: \( S + W^c + S \).

Syntax Rule

\[ X + C + X = X \]

where \( X = N, A, D, V, Q, \) or \( S \).
CHAPTER 10
Hebrew Pronouns

In order to reduce unnecessary repetition, when an expression is redundant and non-ambiguous, the redundant one\(^1\) may be deleted or a simpler substitute may replace it.\(^2\) The term “substitute” is used here as the name of a syntactical category for words that stand in place of a redundant constituent in discourse. The most common substitutes are pronouns; they may stand in place of a redundant noun or noun phrase. However, other parts of speech have their own substitutes. Thus there also are “pro-adverbs” that substitute for adverbs, and “pro-clauses” that substitute for clauses. Substitution usually takes place when a constituent is redundant, when deletion is inappropriate, and when ambiguity would not result. This chapter lists and discusses pronouns with only secondary reference to the transformations that govern their syntax.

### 10.1 Pronouns Defined

Pronouns belong to that category of substitutes that stand in place of previously defined nouns.\(^3\) Once a noun referent is introduced into a text, subsequent references to the same referent may be made by means of a pronoun when the above syntactic restraints are met. There are three classes of pronouns: personal pronouns (R), demonstrative pronouns (R\(^d\)), and interrogative pronouns (R\(^i\)).\(^4\)

---

1 Here it is understood that redundant constituents have the same referent or meaning.

2 The deletion and substitution transformations are discussed in §19.4 and 19.5 where clauses are linked together into discourse. However, in reality, deletion and substitution may be done whenever redundancy is encountered in the composition process.

3 Throughout this section, the term "noun" also applies to a noun phrase.

4 One might think that a fourth class should be the relative pronoun "who" or its equivalent. However, even though I sometimes refer to "who" as a relative pronoun, it actually functions as a conjunctive particle that links a dependent clause to the part of speech it modifies. This is discussed further in §14.3.3.
10.2 Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns consist of a small set of words that may stand in place of redundant\(^5\) nouns. The particular pronoun used in a given situation is determined by the number, gender, person, and case of the noun in whose place it is to stand. There is a sense in which the set of personal pronouns may be regarded as the inflected forms of a single word\(^6\) that inflects for number, gender, person, case, negation,\(^7\) and that is always determinate. Table 10.1 provides the most common forms of the personal pronouns.

Nominative pronouns always stand as independent words. A genitive pronoun is always attached as a suffix to the word that governs it. An accusative pronoun may stand either as an independent word or be attached as a suffix to the verb that governs it; the choice seems to be determined by style and not by any syntactic rule. The Pronoun Substitution Transformation has the form

\[
N \rightarrow R
\]

where \(N\) = a noun (phrase) and \(R\) = the corresponding pronoun in agreement with \(N\) for number, gender, case, and person (see § 2.3.4).

---

\(^5\) A noun is redundant if it already has been introduced into the text, and has the same referent as the previous instance. Pronoun substitution usually occurs to relieve such redundancy unless the substitution would result in ambiguity. Substitution may even occur for the first instance when the referent is well known and understood in the context—see Psa. 114:2 where the antecedent of "his" must be God and not Israel.

\(^6\) Of course each pronoun now has its own spelling, although one can see traces of a common parent word, at least in the first and second person forms.

\(^7\) Of the 4,964 instances of an independent nominative personal pronoun, 71 are negated with לֹא, 64 of which are in questions; four are negated by אֵין (2 Sam. 17:6; Neh. 4:17*2; Job 33:33). Of the 1,712 instances of independent accusative personal pronouns, four are negated by אֵין (1 Sam. 8:7; 20:9; Isa. 43:22; Jer. 7:19), and four by אֵין (Gen. 40:8; 41:15; Jer. 10:5; Hag. 2:17).
### Table 10.1
**Inflection of Personal Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Genitive</th>
<th>Accusative Independent</th>
<th>Accusative Suffixed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>נַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>נַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>נַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>נַהֲנָהוּ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>סַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>סַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>סַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>סַהֲנָהוּ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>אַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>אַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>אַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>אַהֲנָהוּ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>דַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>דַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>דַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>דַהֲנָהוּ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>אַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>אַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>אַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>אַהֲנָהוּ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>אַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>נַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>נַהֲנָהוּ</td>
<td>נַהֲנָהוּ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

8 The form נַהֲנָהוּ occurs as the Kethib once in Jer. 42:6 where the Qere is נַהֲנָהוּ.
The substitution process is illustrated by the following examples. The first example illustrates the text before substitution takes place—that is, the text is wholly redundant. The redundant words that have been deleted or replaced by a pronoun are marked with a strike-through line. The second example illustrates the same text after deletion and pronoun substitutions have taken place. The latter is the form of the text that actually occurs in the Bible.

So God created man in the image of God; in the image of God, God created man; male and female God created man and woman. (Gen. 1:27)

So God created man in His own image; in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them. (Gen. 1:27)

### 10.2.1 Nominative Pronouns

The statistics for the nominative pronouns are provided in Table 10.2.

---

9 The example is the hypothetical text generated by a text grammar before deletion and substitution transformations take place. In this example, the accentuation is not wholly reliable because the original text was modified to create the example.

10 This redundant 3ms genitive noun נָּבֹא הַלָּדוֹת וֹאֵבְיָת בָּעָה is replaced by the 3rd person, 3ms genitive pronoun נַה.

11 This redundant 3ms accusative noun נָּבֹא הַלָּדוֹת כְּּוֹפֶּה בָּעָה is replaced by the 3rd person, 3ms accusative pronoun כְּּוֹפֶּה.

12 This redundant 3ms nominative noun נָּבֹא הַלָּדוֹת וֹאֵבְיָת בָּעָה is deleted. Its identity is retained in the virtual 3rd person, 3ms nominative pronoun implicit in the 3ms conjugate form of the verb נָּבֹא.

13 This redundant 3ms genitive noun נָּבֹא הַלָּדוֹת וֹאֵבְיָת בָּעָה is retained for stylistic reasons.

14 This compound 3mp accusative noun phrase נֶּבֶג הַלָּדוֹת כָּפֶּה בָּעָה is replaced by the 3mp accusative pronoun כָּפֶּה. Although the word כָּפֶּה has no preceding occurrence in the text, it is anticipated by the preceding fs adjective כָּפֶּה—the author expected his audience to know the obvious connection.

15 This redundant 3ms nominative noun נָּבֹא הַלָּדוֹת וֹאֵבְיָת בָּעָה is deleted. Its identity is retained in the virtual 3ms nominative pronoun implicit in the 3ms conjugate form of the verb נָּבֹא.

16 The statistics of the alternate forms are included with those of the standard forms.
Table 10.2
Nominative Pronoun Frequency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אֲנִַ֣חְׁנוֹ</td>
<td>874</td>
<td>אֲנִַ֣חְׁנוֹ</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲנִַ֣לְכָּהָֹ֣</td>
<td>359</td>
<td>נִַ֣חְׁנָהָֹ</td>
<td>617</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲנִַ֣וְאָֹ</td>
<td>74418</td>
<td>נִַ֣חְׁנָהָֹ</td>
<td>283</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲנִֵ֣תָהָֹ</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>אֲנִֵ֣תָהָֹ</td>
<td>119</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נִַ֣חְׁנָהָֹ</td>
<td></td>
<td>נִַ֣חְׁנָהָֹ</td>
<td>420</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רַהֲ֣מָה אֲנִֵ֣תָהָֹ</td>
<td>94021</td>
<td>נִַ֣חְׁנָהָֹ</td>
<td>19822</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נַחְּמָה אֲנִֵ֣תָהָֹ</td>
<td>339</td>
<td>נַחְּמָה אֲנִֵ֣תָהָֹ</td>
<td>24923</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When the subject of a verb is redundant, the redundant subject is usually deleted because the conjugate form of the verb identifies the number, gender, and person of its subject and thus has a virtual subject pronoun implicit in the conjugate form of the verb. However, pronoun substitution occurs under the following conditions:

(1) In verbless clauses—that is, clauses in which the copulative verb נִַ֣חְׁנָהָֹ or its equivalent has been elided. In such cases no virtual subject pronoun exists, so substitution is necessary.

---

17 Gen. 42:11; Exod. 16:7; 16:8; Num. 32:32; 2 Sam. 17:12; Lam. 3:42.
18 This includes two instances where the text reads נִַ֣חְׁנָהָֹ which, according to the context, it should read נִַ֣חְׁנָהָֹ (Num. 11:15; Ezek. 28:14).
19 Ezek. 34:31.
21 For the third person pronouns, the statistics do not include the instances where the pronoun is used as a demonstrative pronoun or as a substitute for the copulative verb.
22 נַחְּמָה occurs as a genitive governed by a preposition 5 times: 2 Sam. 24:3*2; 2 Kgs. 9:18; 2 Chr. 9:11; Neh. 7:3
23 נֵהֲ֣מָה occurs as a genitive governed by a preposition 6 times: Exod. 30:4; 36:1; Eccl. 12:12; Jer. 10:2; 14:16; Hab. 1:16.
24 נֵהֲ֣מָה occurs as a genitive governed by a preposition 16 times: Gen. 41:19; Lev. 4:2; 5:22; Num. 13:19; 2 Sam. 12:8*2; Job 23:14; Psa. 34:21; Jer. 5:6; 5:17; Ezek. 1:5; 1:23*2; 42:5; 42:9; Zech. 5:9.
25 See Gen. 1:27 above for an example of deletion. Deletion does not occur when it would result in ambiguity, or when the author chooses to retain the subject noun for stylistic purposes or to encode emphasis.
26 Elision usually occurs when the copulative verb would have the tense and aspect current in the context.
In some copulative clauses, the third person pronoun could be regarded as a substitute for the copulative. However, in nearly all cases, the pronoun may be regarded as the subject of a verbless clause, just as it is when one finds first and second person pronouns in such potential constructions. There are a few exceptions:

Then David said, “This is the house of the LORD God, and this is the altar of burnt offering for Israel.” (1 Chr. 22:1)

So King Ahasuerus answered and said to Queen Esther, “Who is he, and where is he, who would dare presume in his heart to do such a thing?” (Est. 7:5)

27 In the second verbless clause, both the verb and the predicate nominative are deleted.
And I set my heart to know wisdom and to know madness and folly. I perceived that this also is grasping for the wind. (Eccl. 1:17)

(2) In clauses where the verb is a participle, particularly when the subject is first or second person.28

And behold, I Myself am bringing floodwaters on the earth (Gen. 6:17)

God is with you in all that you do. (Gen. 21:22)

They also took Lot, Abram’s brother’s son, and his goods, and departed. Now he dwelt in Sodom. (Gen. 14:12)

Then the LORD appeared to him by the terebinth trees of Mamre, as he was sitting in the tent door in the heat of the day. (Gen. 18:1)

Of course, in the case where the subject is redundant in successive clauses having participles as verbs, the redundant subject may be deleted after the first pronoun substitution.

Now while I was speaking, praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and presenting my supplication before the LORD my God for the holy mountain of my God (Dan. 9:20).

(3) In a text where a noun with a different referent intervenes between the current noun and its antecedent, but where ambiguity would not result if substitution took place.29

---

28 The nominative pronoun is needed whenever the personal attribute of the subject must be identified. If the personal attribute is clear, having been previously identified and with no intervening ambiguity having been introduced, then deletion may occur.

29 Ambiguity occurs when the current noun and the intervening noun both have the same number, gender, and person, and both could logically be the subject of the current verb.
Chapter 10

Hebrew Pronouns

(4) In a text where the author intended some type of emphasis or highlighting of the pronoun.

לַא נֶפֶר אֶין ( הַנָּשִׁים אָרָאָבְרִים: lest you should say, “I (!) have made Abram rich” (Gen. 14:23)

Now therefore, come, let us make a covenant, you and I” (Gen. 31:44)

וכָּל עָשַׂה מֵנִיחֵר בְּזֵן הָאָבָא

And I will put enmity
Between you and the woman,
And between your seed and her Seed;
He shall bruise your head,
And you shall bruise His heel.” (Gen. 3:15)

אֹבֵל נָעַה בֵּית הָאֲבָא

Abel even he brought of the firstborn of his flock and of their fat. (Gen. 4:4)

וַיְלַעֲדָה אֶל הָאָבָא וַיְלַעֲדָה לְעָלָה יָשְׁבוּ אֵלָה יָשְׁבוּ לְעָלָה יָשְׁבוּ.

And Adah bore Jabal.

He was the father of those who dwell in tents and have livestock. (Gen. 4:20)

(5) Occasionally one finds a nominative pronoun where an accusative is expected.

וַיְלַעֲדָה לֶאֱלָה אַלְּוָא פָּרָה אֶין ( אֶלְּוָא אַלְּוָא פָּרָה אֶין אָכִּילָה: and said to his father, “Bless me—me also, O my father!” (Gen. 27:34)

The independent nominative pronouns have no strong affinity to any hierarchy of accent. Of the 4,440 instances, 1,811 have a conjunctive accent, 1,622 have a near disjunctive and 1,004 have a remote disjunctive.

---

30 Here, the antecedent of "his" is clearly "God" and not "man" because the alternative is a tautology. The next clause resolves any possible ambiguity.

31 Here the antecedent of "him" is clearly "man" and not "God" because the alternative is logically impossible.
10.2.2 Accusative Pronouns
The frequency distribution of the independent accusative pronouns is provided in Table 10.3, and of the accusative pronouns suffixed to finite verbs in Table 10.4a, and of those suffixed to participles in Table 10.4b. Although the case of pronouns suffixed to infinitives construct is ambiguous, Table 10.4c lists their frequency distribution.

Table 10.3
Frequency of Independent Accusative Pronoun

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>490</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>475</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יָהּ</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10.4a
Frequency of Accusative Pronouns Suffixed to Finite Verbs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1cs</td>
<td>921</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2ms</td>
<td>677</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2fs</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3ms</td>
<td>1,322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3fs</td>
<td>484</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1cp</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2mp</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2fp</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3mp</td>
<td>987</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3fp</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10.4b
Frequency of Accusative Pronouns Suffixed to Participles

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1cs</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2ms</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2fs</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3ms</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3fs</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1cp</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2mp</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2fp</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3mp</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3fp</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unless deletion occurs, or the author retained a redundant noun for stylistic purposes, pronoun substitution occurs for redundant accusative nouns.

So God created man in His own image; in the image of God He created him; male and female He created them. (Gen. 1:27)
God set them in the firmament of the heavens to give light on the earth (Gen. 1:17)

**Table 10.4c**

**Frequency of Accusative Pronouns Suffixed to Infinitives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1cs</td>
<td>223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2ms</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2fs</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3ms</td>
<td>485</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3fs</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Surely You have driven me out this day from the face of the ground; I shall be hidden from Your face; I shall be a fugitive and a vagabond on the earth, and it will happen *that* anyone who finds me will kill me.” (Gen. 4:14)

The above example contains an independent accusative pronoun and two suffixed accusative pronouns—one governed by a participle and one by a finite verb.

Then Joseph said to the people,

“Indeed I have bought *you* and *your* land this day for Pharaoh. Look, *here is* seed for *you*, and you shall sow the land.” (Gen. 47:23)

The independent accusative pronoun is rarely negated, but it is negated with לֹא four times, and with פָּשַׁת twice. The accusative pronouns have an affinity to disjunctive accents: of the 1,712 instances, 163 have a conjunctive accent, 886 have a near disjunctive, and 663 have a remote disjunctive.

---

32 This example contains an independent 2mp accusative pronoun, and two genitive pronouns—one suffixed to the noun פָּשַׁת, and one to the preposition לָהֶם.

33 1 Sam. 8:7; 20:9; Isa. 43:22; Jer. 7:19.

34 Jer. 10:5; Hag. 2:17. In the other apparent instances, the פָּשַׁת is a negative copulative in a predicate nominative clause: Gen. 40:8 and 41:15.
10.2.3 Genitive Pronouns

The statistics for the genitive pronoun suffixes are provided in Table 10.5. Unless deletion occurs, or the author retained a redundant noun for stylistic purposes, pronoun substitution occurs for redundant genitive nouns.

Table 10.5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Adj</th>
<th>Adv</th>
<th>Interrog. 36</th>
<th>Interj. 37</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Prep.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1cs</td>
<td>4,117</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1cp</td>
<td>779</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2ms</td>
<td>4,199</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sf</td>
<td>727</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2mp</td>
<td>1,288</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2fp</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3ms</td>
<td>7,655</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3sf</td>
<td>1,555</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3mp</td>
<td>3,146</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3fp</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following are examples of genitive pronouns suffixed to nouns together with a few examples of them attached to prepositions and negative particles:

And Adam said: “This is now bone of my bones
And flesh of my flesh;
She shall be called Woman.
Because she was taken out of Man.” (Gen. 2:23)

Then God said, “Let Us make man in Our image,
according to Our likeness” (Gen. 1:26)

“For God knows that in the day you eat of it your eyes will be opened,
and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.” (Gen. 3:5)

35 Few occasions exist that tolerate deletion of nouns in the genitive case.

36 The only interrogative that governs a pronoun suffix is וה “where”—Exod. 2:20; 2 Kgs. 19:13; Job 14:10; 20:7; Isa. 19:12; Mic. 7:10; Nah. 3:17.

37 ר once (Eccl. 4:10); יְָ֫ץ once (Prov. 29:18); יְָ֫ץ 6 times (Deut. 33:29; Psa. 128:2; Prov. 14:21; 16:20; Eccl. 10:17; Isa. 32:20); and יְָ֫ץ 251 times.
“I will greatly multiply your sorrow and your conception;
In pain you shall bring forth children;
Your desire shall be for your husband,
And he shall rule over you.” (Gen. 3:16)38

Now therefore, restore the man’s wife; for he is a prophet,
and he will pray for you and you shall live.
But if you do not restore her,
know that you shall surely die, you and all who are yours.” (Gen. 20:7)

So God created great sea creatures
and every living thing that moves,
with which the waters abounded, according to their kind,
and every winged bird according to its kind.
And God saw that it was good. (Gen. 1:21)

So he said, “I heard Your voice in the garden,
and I was afraid because I was naked; and I hid myself.” (Gen. 3:10)

---

38 This example has three pronoun suffixes—one, a 2mp genitive pronoun attached to the infinitive construct בְּכַלְכַּל, a 2mp genitive pronoun attached to the 3mp construct noun בִּי עֵינֵי “eyes,” and a 3ms genitive pronoun attached to the preposition ב. The first is an example of a subjective genitive.

39 A clause whose verb is a participle is negated by the particle הִנִּי and that particle carries the subject pronoun as a suffix.

40 3fp genitive pronoun suffixed to the preposition ב.
Chapter 10

The attribute is understood to be third person unless otherwise indicated.

3ms genitive pronoun suffixed to the construct noun צְבָא "flock."

3fp genitive pronoun suffixed to the construct noun בִּלְחָד "fat."

The attribute is understood to be third person unless otherwise indicated.

The particles יָא and יָא may govern a subject pronoun suffix. When a clause is governed by one of these particles, and the subject is replaced by a pronoun, the pronoun attaches as a suffix to the particle.

Even though you make many prayers, I will not hear. (Isa. 1:15)

Then Jeremiah said, “False! I am not defecting to the Chaldeans.” (Jer. 37:14)

“Yet, for all that, you did not believe the LORD your God” (Deut. 1:32)

“Now if you will deal kindly and truly with my master, tell me.” (Gen. 24:49)

“though it be in Jonathan my son, he shall surely die.” (1 Sam. 14:39)

Personal pronouns are also used to mark the personal attribute of a noun, particularly when that attribute is not previously defined in the text. When so used the pronoun usually precedes the noun it modifies.

Examples where the noun is nominative:

“Speak to all the congregation of the children of Israel, and say to them: ‘You shall be holy, for I the LORD your God am holy.’” (Lev. 19:2)

Go immediately to King David and say to him, “Did not you, my lord, O king, swear to your maidservant, saying, ‘Assuredly your son Solomon shall reign after me, and he shall sit on my throne’? Why then has Adonijah become king?” (1 Kgs. 1:13)
Chapter 10

I, the Preacher, was king over Israel in Jerusalem. (Eccl. 1:12)

“I, wisdom, dwell with prudence,
And find out knowledge and discretion.” (Prov. 8:12)

Examples where the noun is genitive:44

But he himself turned back from the stone images that were at Gilgal, and said, “I have a secret message for you, O king.” (Judg. 3:19)

Woe to you, Moab!
You have perished, O people of Chemosh! (Num. 21:29)

Now men were lying in wait, staying with her in the room. And she said to him, “The Philistines are upon you, Samson!” (Judg. 16:9)

Then the Spirit came upon Amasai, chief of the captains, and he said:

“We are yours, O David;
We are on your side, O son of Jesse!
Peace, peace to you,
And peace to your helpers!
For your God helps you.” (1 Chr. 12:19; Eng. vs. 18)

“Your right hand, O LORD, has become glorious in power;
Your right hand, O LORD, has dashed the enemy in pieces. (Exod. 15:6)

Therefore I will give thanks to You, O LORD, among the Gentiles,
And sing praises to Your name. (2 Sam. 22:50)

And he received the gold from their hand, and he fashioned it with an engraving tool, and made a molded calf. Then they said, “This is your god, O Israel, that brought you out of the land of Egypt!” (Exod. 32:4)

44 Note that the pronoun carries the genitive attribute and is suffixed to the noun that governs the genitive phrase.
Examples where the noun is accusative:

I will love You, O LORD, my strength. (Psa. 18:2; Eng. vs.1)

Let not those who wait for You, O Lord GOD of hosts, be ashamed because of me;
Let not those who seek You, O God of Israel, be confounded because of me. (Psa. 69:7; Eng. 6)45

Within a relative clause, a pronoun may appear to be resumptive. Actually, such pronouns are no different than they would be in any other clause. They stand in place of redundant nouns. Often, when a redundant noun is the subject or object in the relative clause, deletion takes place. Subject and object pronouns are retained primarily for emphasis or highlighting or for retaining grammatical attributes that would be lost by elision. However, in the case of a redundant genitive noun, deletion is rare, and pronoun substitution is required.

And he did not know what he had except for the bread that he ate. (Gen. 39:6)

But the man who is clean and is not on a journey, and ceases to keep the Passover (Num. 9:13)

Thus Noah did; according to all that God commanded him, so he did. (Gen. 6:22)

“Where are the men who came to you tonight?” (Gen. 19:5)

45 Note that the accusative pronoun is suffixed to the verb.
46 The pronoun נָא is retained to preserve the personal attribute of the subject.
47 Again the pronoun נָא is retained to preserve the personal attribute of the subject, but is left untranslated in English.
48 The accusative pronoun נָא could have been elided. Perhaps it emphasizes that Noah obeyed the Lord in contrast to the disobedience of the general population.
49 The genitive pronoun suffixed to the preposition ב is required. Elision is not permitted in such cases.
10.3 Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns are distinguished from personal pronouns in that they lack the person attribute, and they carry an adverbial nuance—near or remote. Likewise, they always stand as independent words, and function either as a predicate demonstrative or an attributive demonstrative. Table 10.6 lists the predicate demonstrative pronouns, and Table 10.7 the attributive demonstratives. The statistics for the demonstratives are provided in Table 10.8.

### Table 10.6
**Predicate Demonstrative Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Near</th>
<th>Remote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. Sing.</td>
<td>זֶה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. Sing.</td>
<td>זָה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Com. Plur.</td>
<td>אִלֶה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masc. Plur.</td>
<td>הִמָּה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. Plur.</td>
<td>הִנָּה</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 10.7
**Attributive Demonstrative Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Near</th>
<th>Remote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Masc. Sing.</td>
<td>הַזֶּה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. Sing.</td>
<td>הַלָּז</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Com. Plur.</td>
<td>אִלֶה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masc. Plur.</td>
<td>הִמָּה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. Plur.</td>
<td>הִנָּה</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

50 Gesenius indicates that a near demonstrative “almost always points out a (new) person or thing present,” whereas a remote demonstrative “refers to a person or thing already mentioned or known.” (GKC § 136a).

51 The traditional term “predicate demonstrative” is probably misleading because such demonstratives replace nouns that are in the nominative case. This is made evident by the use of the third person nominative personal pronoun for the remote predicate demonstrative, and also by the fact that a “predicate demonstrative” functions as the subject of a verb, or as the subject of a copulative clause, but never as the predicate complement of a transitive verb.

52 Normally the attributive demonstrative pronoun has a redundant definite article. However, occasionally the definite article is lacking. See Gen. 19:33; 30:16; 32:23; Exod. 12:30; 1 Sam. 19:10; Psa. 149:9; Mich. 7:12.

53 Ezek. 36:35.
### Table 10.8
Demonstrative Pronoun Frequency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Predicate</th>
<th>Attributive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Near</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masc. Sing.</td>
<td>זֶה</td>
<td>794</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>הַזֶָּֽה</td>
<td>969</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. Sing.</td>
<td>זָאָמ</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>זָאָמ</td>
<td>1156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>זָאָמ</td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Com. Plur.</td>
<td>אִלֶה</td>
<td>471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>אִלֶה</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Remote</strong>60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masc. Sing</td>
<td>אֲרַמַּה</td>
<td>312</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. Sing.</td>
<td>אֲרַמַּה</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masc. Plur.</td>
<td>אַרַּמָּה</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fem. Plur.</td>
<td>אַרַּמָּה</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

55 Judg. 6:20; 1 Sam. 14:1; 17:26; 2 Kgs. 4:25; 23:17; Dan. 8:16; Zech. 2:8.
56 Spelled † twice: Psa. 132:12; Hos. 7:16. Some regard the one in Psa. 132:12 as a relative pronoun, but that is not necessary.
57 Ezek. 36:35.
58 Psa. 132:12; Hos. 7:16.
59 1 Chr. 20:8.
60 Van der Merwe (§36.2) affirms that the remote demonstrative pronouns are not used as a predicate.
61 2 Kgs.18:14; Jer. 3:16; 14:15; 50:4; Joel 4:1; Zech. 8:23; 14:15.
62 1 Sam. 17:28.
10.3.1 Predicate Demonstratives

Unlike a personal pronoun, which nearly always has a previously defined antecedent, a predicate demonstrative pronoun may also anticipate its antecedent.

This is the book of the genealogy of Adam. (Gen. 5:1)

These are the generations of Noah (Gen. 6:9)

And these were the names of the sons of Ishmael, by their names, according to their generations:

The firstborn of Ishmael, Nebajoth;
then Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam . . . (Gen. 25:13)

However, the antecedent of a predicate demonstrative may be previously defined:

All these joined together in the Valley of Siddim (that is, the Salt Sea). (Gen. 14:3)

And he called his name Noah, saying,

“This one will comfort us concerning our work and the toil of our hands, because of the ground which the LORD has cursed.” (Gen. 5:29)

So the LORD God said to the serpent:

“You are cursed more than all cattle,
And more than every beast of the field;
On your belly you shall go,
And you shall eat dust
All the days of your life.” (Gen. 3:14)

And Adam said: “This is now bone of my bones
And flesh of my flesh;
She shall be called Woman,
Because she was taken out of Man.” (Gen. 2:23)

The third person personal pronouns function as the remote demonstratives, and when serving as a “predicate demonstrative” they could be translated as simple pronouns.
Like the independent nominative pronouns, the predicate demonstrative pronouns have no strong affinity to any hierarchy of accent. Of the 1,289 instances, 430 have a conjunctive accent, 520 have a near disjunctive, and 339 have a remote disjunctive.

### 10.3.2 Attributive Demonstratives

On the other hand, the attributive demonstratives do not replace redundant nouns, and so have no antecedents. Thus they are not actually pronouns. They function more like an emphatic definite article. They can modify only determinate nouns to begin with, so one would think they were unnecessary, unless they were needed to add emphasis and the adverbial nuance of “near” or “remote.”
and circumcise the sons of Israel again the second time.” (Josh. 5:2)

In a few instances, an attributive demonstrative precedes the noun it modifies, without a definite article.

That Ezra came up from Babylon; and he was a skilled scribe in the Law of Moses, which the LORD God of Israel had given. (Ezr. 7:6)

The mountains gushed before the LORD, This Sinai, before the LORD God of Israel. (Judg. 5:5)

“Come, make us gods that shall go before us; for as for this man Moses who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has become of him.” (Exod. 32:1)

Then Abner looked behind him and said, “Are you this Asahel?” He answered, “I am.” (2 Sam. 2:20)

In a noun phrase, an attributive demonstrative usually follows an attributive adjective, but precedes an appositive:

Then Moses said, “I will now turn aside and see this great sight.” (Exod. 3:3)

“And the Lord said, ‘Also the tenth day of this seventh month shall be the Day of Atonement.’” (Lev. 23:27)

Yet no one remembered that same poor man. (Eccl. 9:15)

So the men of Israel said, “Have you seen this man who has come up?” (1 Sam. 17:25)

63 See also Psa. 68:8.

64 For a few exceptions, see 2 Chr. 1:10; Jer. 13:10; 33:12; Hag. 2:9; Esth. 9:29.

65 This Qal active participle functions adjectively here.

66 Note the rare instance of י with dagesh forte!
“Is this man Coniah a despised, broken idol?” (Jer. 22:28)

Unlike the predicate demonstrative pronouns, the attributive demonstratives have an affinity for disjunctive accents, particularly for the remotes. Of the 1,749 instances, 49 have a conjunctive accent, 567 have a near disjunctive, and 1,133 have a remote disjunctive. This affinity is expected because the attributive demonstratives occur mainly at the end of phrases.

### 10.4 Interrogative Pronouns

Interrogative pronouns are those used in questions; they stand in place of the unknown element of a question or serve in auxiliary roles. The personal interrogative pronoun is  and the impersonal pronoun is . These pronouns have common person, gender, and number, and nearly always are the first word of a sentence. The pronoun may stand in place of any noun constituent of a sentence; but if the constituent is governed by a preposition or a construct noun, the governing word remains with the pronoun.

**Examples where the interrogative pronoun is the subject:**

 תֵּאָזוּר ﷲ כִּי עֲרֵה טָאָבָה
Who told you that you were naked? (Gen. 3:11)

 אַרְמֵד כִּי לָאֹרַה בֶּשְרוּ לְכַרְאַה
Who is this man walking in the field to meet us? (Gen. 24:64)

 יִשְֹאַר כִּי לָאֹרַה יִשְֹאָר יִשְֹאָר יִשְֹאָר
What is my trespass? What is my sin? (Gen. 31:36)

 יִשְֹאְר הָדָּרוּ לָאֹרַה יִשְֹאְר יִשְֹאְר יִשְֹאְר
What is this dream that you have dreamed? (Gen. 37:10)

**Examples where the interrogative pronoun is the object:**

 אַרְמֵד לָאֹרַה אַרְמֵד לָאֹרַה אַרְמֵד לָאֹרַה
Whom have I cheated? Whom have I oppressed? (1 Sam. 12:3)

 יֵאִים אַרְמֵד אַרְמֵד אַרְמֵד אַרְמֵד
What will You give me? (Gen. 15:2)

**Examples where the interrogative pronoun is the genitive of a construct noun:**

 אַרְמֵד לָאֹרַה אַרְמֵד לָאֹרַה אַרְמֵד לָאֹרַה
Whose daughter are you? Tell me, please! (Gen. 24:23)

---

67 The demonstrative precedes the appositive in this example.

68  is usually attached to the following word by means of Maqeph, and the first letter of the following word received daggesh forte. The word is usually vocalized as  before gutturals.
And whatever He shows me I will tell you. (Num. 23:3)

So what wisdom do they have? (Jer. 8:9)

**Examples where the interrogative pronoun is the object of a preposition:**

To whom do you belong, and where are you going?

What will he sleep in? (Exod. 22:26)

For with what could he reconcile himself to his master, if not with the heads of these men? (1 Sam. 29:4)

In what do you trust, that you remain under siege in Jerusalem? (2 Chr. 32:10)

The interrogative מָּאֶה, when governed by a preposition, often expresses the equivalent of an interrogative adverb when translated into English.

How shall I know that I will inherit it? (Gen. 15:8)

Why have you struck your donkey these three times? (Num. 22:32)

How long until Asshur carries you away captive? (Num. 24:22)

How long have I to live? (2 Sam. 19:35)

Why does the LORD our God do all these things to us? (Jer. 5:19)

These interrogative pronouns are similarly used in indirect questions.

And Abimelech said, “I do not know who has done this thing.” (Gen. 21:26)

We do not know who put our money in our sacks. Gen. (43:22)

Look, my master does not know what is with me in the house. (Gen. 39:8)

The word מָּאֶה also functions as an exclamatory particle.

How awesome is this place! (Gen. 28:17)
Chapter 10  Hebrew Pronouns  

Hebrew

Pronouns

274

Oh, how I love Your law! It is my meditation all the day. (Psa. 119:97)

How precious is Your loving kindness, O God! (Psa. 36:8; vs. 7 Eng.)

And Joshua said, “Oh, how have you troubled us!
The LORD will trouble you this day.” (Josh. 7:25)

The word also is used with the word מִּמְּלֹא, idiomatically to express the emphatic wish Oh, that . . .

Oh, that we had died by the hand of the LORD in the land of Egypt! (Exod. 16:3)

Oh, that the salvation of Israel would come out of Zion! (Psa. 14:7)69

The interrogative pronouns have a strong affinity for conjunctive accents. Of the 940 instances, 456 are linked to the following word by Maqqeph and 344 have a conjunctive accent, 111 have a near disjunctive, and only 29 have a remote disjunctive. This affinity is expected because these pronouns occur mainly at the beginning of a phrase.

10.5 Relative Pronouns

The following words are commonly regarded as relative pronouns in Biblical Hebrew אֲשֶׁר, שֶֽׁׁ, זֶׁה, however, they are better understood as functioning as subordinating conjunctions that link a dependent clause to substantive. See the discussion on relative pronoun phrases in § 14.3.3.

10.6 Summary

Pronouns Defined

Pronouns are “substitute” words that stand in place of redundant nouns (or noun phrases)—their antecedents. They agree with their antecedent in person, gender, and number; they have the case of the noun (phrase) in whose place they stand; they are always determinate; and they bear the same semantic information as their antecedent.

Personal Pronouns
Nominative Pronouns
Accusative Pronouns

69 See also Num. 11:29; Deut. 5:29; 28:67; Jdg. 9:29; 2 Sam. 19:1; Job 6:8; 11:5; 13:5; 14:4, 13; 19:23; 23:3;
29:2; 31:31, 35; Ps. 53:7; 55:7; Song. 8:1; Isa. 27:4; Jer. 8:23; 9:1
Genitive Pronouns
Demonstrative Pronouns
Predicate Demonstratives
Attributive Demonstratives
Interrogative Pronouns

*Slots*

Pronouns stand in the same slots as nouns or their equivalents.

*Syntactic Rule*

\[ N \rightarrow R \quad (R = \text{Pronoun}) \]
CHAPTER 11
The Syntactic Attributes of Hebrew Particles

This chapter presents the attributes of Hebrew particles associated with their syntactic relationships in phrases and clauses. The details of phonology and morphology are not considered except as they apply to syntax. The content of this chapter is similar to that presented in other works of Hebrew syntax except where it is necessary to relate the material to “transformational” concepts in preparation for subsequent chapters. The chapter is foundational, not an exhaustive treatment of all the particulars of Hebrew particles.

11.1 Particles Defined

Thus far eight different parts of speech have been defined: nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, quantifiers, prepositions, conjunctions, and pronouns. The various kinds of words not fitting in those categories are regarded as particles. In the morphological categories of the WTS text, particles include adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, the article, interrogatives, interjections, negatives, relatives, and the direct object marker. In this work, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions are treated as separate parts of speech, so only the remaining categories are discussed in this chapter.

11.2 The Article

The article consists of the prepositive particle ה which is attached to the beginning of its associated word. It marks the word as determinate, that is, the word has the same referent it had previously in the given context; or the word has the commonly understood referent. It occurs 30,416 times, marking a common noun 22,301 times, a proper noun 912 times, and a Gentilic noun 1,269 times.

וַיִּשָּׁא־לִ֣וֹט אֶת־עֵינָָ֗יו וַיַרְּאֹ֙ אֶת־כָל־כִכִַ֣ר הַיַּרְדֵֵ֔ן כֻּלֶָ֖הּ מַשְָׁקֶָ֑ה
And Lot lifted his eyes and saw all the plain of the Jordan, that it was well watered everywhere (Gen. 13:10)

וַיַּכְוַ֕וּ אֶת־כָּל־שְׁדֵֶ֖ה הָעֲמָלֵָ֑יק וְׁגַםֹ֙ אֶת־הִָ֣ אֱמֹרִֵּ֔י הַיֹשֵֶ֖ב בְׁחַָּֽצְׁצֵֹ֥ן תָמָָּֽר׃
And they attacked all the country of the Amalekites, and also the Amorites who dwelt in Hazezon Tamar. (Gen. 14:7)
The article marks an adjective modifying a determinate noun 2,773 times.

ותאכַֽלְנָה הַפָרֵ֔וֹת הָ֖רַקֶֽוֹת וְׁ הָ֖רָעָ֑וֹת אִֵ֣ת שֵׁ֖בַע הַפָרָ֛וֹת הָ֖רִאשְׁנֵֽוֹת בָּֽאֶֽרְוָאֹֽת׃

And the gaunt and ugly cows ate up the first seven, the fat cows. (Gen. 41:20)

The article marks an attributive demonstrative pronoun 1,466 times.

בְׁהוֹצִָּֽיאֲךָּ אֶת־הָעָ֙ם מִמְִצֵרַּ֔יִם תַָּֽעַבְדּוּן אֶת־הִָ֣אֱלֹהִֵּ֔ים עֶַ֖ל הָהֵָ֥ר

When you have brought the people out of Egypt, you shall serve God on this mountain. (Exod. 3:12)

The article marks a determinate participle 1,868 times whether it functions as a substantive or as an attributive modifier.

לִֹ֣א יֵרָצֶה הַמֶַ֖קְרִ֣יב אֹתָ֗וֹ לֵ֧א יֵחָשֵ֛ב לֶוֹ פִגִּ֖וּל יִהְׁיֶָ֑ה וְׁהַנֶָ֛פֶש הָֽאֹכֵ֥לֶת מִמֶֶ֖נוּ עֲוֹנֵָ֥הּ תִשָָּֽא׃

it shall not be accepted; it shall not be imputed to the one offering it; it shall be an abomination to him, and the one eating of it shall bear guilt. (Lev. 7:18)

The article marks a determinate cardinal number 284 times.

עָשֵ֥ה וָוִֶ֖ים לָעַמְּדִָ֑ים מֵאוֹתֹ֙ וַחֲמִשִָ֣ה וְׁשִבְׁעִֵּ֔ים הַ֜אֶלֶף וּשְׁבַָּ֤ע

Then from the one thousand seven hundred and seventy-five shekels he made hooks for the pillars, (Exod. 38:28)

The article marks a determinate ordinal number 467 times.

גַַּ֚ם אֶת־כָּל־הַהִֹ֣לְׁכִֵּ֔ים אַחֲרֵֵ֥י הָעֲדָרִֶ֖ים שְׁלִישִֵּ֔י הַגַַ֛֚ם אֶת־שֵנִָ֗י

So he commanded the second, the third, and all who followed the droves, (Gen. 32:19)

1 Prepositive prepositions usually overlay the ה of the definite article, leaving only the vowel as its remnant.
The article marks the word תָמִיד as determinate 25 times, and once it does so for the word סָבִיב.

These words are parsed as adverbs but are functioning as nouns.²

וּשְׁעִיר חַטֶָ֖את אֶחָ֑ד מִלְׁבַדֹ֙ עֹלִַ֣ת הַתָּמִֵ֔יד וּמִנְׁחָתֶָ֖הּ וְׁנִסְׁכָָּֽהּ׃

And he built the city around it, from the Millo to the surrounding area. (1 Chr. 11:8)

Unexpectedly, functioning as a relative pronoun, the definite article appears before a finite verb 19 times, always a perfect aspect.³ A participle is anticipated in these places.

כִָּֽי־נָטִָ֣ה לְׁבָבָ֗וֹ מֵעִָ֤ם יְׁהוָהֹ֙ אֱלֹהִֵ֣י יִשְׁרָאֵֵ֔ל הַנְִּרֶָ֤א אֵלֶָ֖יו פַעֲמָָֽיִם׃

Because his heart had turned from the LORD God of Israel, who had appeared to him twice (1 Kgs. 11:9)

### 11.3 Interrogatives

Interrogatives introduce questions seeking factual answers such as yes or no, who, what, when, where, why, how, etc. There are seven words categorized as interrogative particles in the WTS morphological codes, occurring 866 times. Table 11.1 lists the words by frequency. These are the adverbial interrogatives that introduce questions inquiring about some adverbial details of the discourse of which they are a part.

Actually other words belong to this group. The word אֲשֶׁר (how?) is parsed as an interjection, occurring 61 times, but actually only 19 instances are interjections, the remaining 42 are definitely interrogatives, introducing a question asking “how?” or “in what manner?” Likewise, the word מַדוּעַ (why?) is parsed as an adverb, occurring 72 times, but it introduces a question asking “why?” or “in what matter?”

In addition, the interrogative pronouns belong in this group: מי (who?), occurring 423 times, and מָה (what?), occurring 752 times. They introduce questions asking the identity of some constituent in its associated clause. Some of the primary interrogatives form compounds with other

---

² Num. 4:7, 4:16; 28:10,15, 23, 24, 31; 29:6, 11, 16, 19, 22, 25, 28, 31, 34, 38; 1 Chr. 11:8; Neh. 10:34*2; Dan. 8:11, 12, 13; 11:31; 12:11.

³ Gen. 18:21; 46:27; Josh. 10:24; Ruth 1:22; 2:6; 4:3; 2 Sam. 22:7; 1 Kgs. 11:9; 1 Chr. 26:28; 29:17; 2 Chr. 1:4; 29:36; Ezr. 8:25; 10:14, 17; Job 2:11; Isa. 51:10; 56:3; Ezek. 26:17; Dan. 8:1.
particles to add different nuances. Table 11.2 lists these additional ones. Some interrogatives may govern a pronoun suffix. 4

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Particle</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>הא</td>
<td>is it true?</td>
<td>747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>איה</td>
<td>where?</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מה</td>
<td>when?</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>איה</td>
<td>where?</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>איפיה</td>
<td>where?</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>קן</td>
<td>how?</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>איכה</td>
<td>how?</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>איכה</td>
<td>how?</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 11.1
Frequency of Interrogative Particles

Then the LORD God called to Adam and said to him, "Where are you?" (Gen. 3:9)

So he said to his daughters, "And where is he? Why did you leave the man? Call him, that he may eat bread." (Exod. 2:20)

Interrogative particles have a strong affinity for conjunctive accents. Of the 1,160 instances, 771 have Maqqeph, 216 have a conjunctive accent, 137 have a near disjunctive, and only 35 have a remote disjunctive. This happens because the object of interrogation nearly always immediately follows the particle. Interrogatives are discussed and illustrated in § 13.5.2 under interrogative transformations.

4 See also 2 Kgs. 19:13; Job 14:10; 20:7; Isa. 19:12; Mich. 7:10; Nah. 3:17.
### Table 11.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Interrogative</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>עַד־מָתַי</td>
<td>how long?</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אַחֲרֵי מָתֶַי</td>
<td>how long?</td>
<td>1⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְׁמָתִַי</td>
<td>when?</td>
<td>1⁶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לָמָה</td>
<td>why?</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָה</td>
<td>how?</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מָה</td>
<td>why?</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עַל־מַה</td>
<td>why?</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כַמָה</td>
<td>how many?</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֵי־זֶה</td>
<td>where?</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֵי־מִזֶה</td>
<td>from where?</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 11.4 Interjections

An interjection is an exclamation inserted into a text without grammatical connection, usually expressing some element of emotion. There are 25 words categorized as interjections in the WTS morphological codes, occurring 1,927 times. Table 11.3 lists the words by frequency of occurrence.

#### 11.4.1 הִנֵה Attracts Attention

הִנֵה is an attention attracting word introducing something new or unexpected, often translated “Behold!” or “Look!” It is frequently at the beginning of a sentence: it occurs as the first word of a verse 152 times; it immediately follows a conjunction 430 times; otherwise it immediately follows a word marked with a remote disjunctive accent 399 times—these contexts usually indicate the beginning of a clause or the equivalent. It is frequently the word that initiates speech, immediately following some form of the verb אָמַר 95 times.

---

⁵ Jer. 13:27.
⁶ Exod. 8:5.
### Table 11.3
Frequency of Interjections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>הִנֵה</td>
<td>behold</td>
<td>1,060</td>
<td>חָמִיס</td>
<td>hush!</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נָא</td>
<td>please</td>
<td>404</td>
<td>אְלֵכָה</td>
<td>How!</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הֵן</td>
<td>behold</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>אָל</td>
<td>alas!</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פָלַל</td>
<td>(pause)</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>אָל</td>
<td>behold</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֶלֶךָ</td>
<td>how!</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>אָלָל</td>
<td>ah that!</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>וְיִרְי</td>
<td>woe!</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>אָלָל</td>
<td>alas!</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָשֶר</td>
<td>blessed</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>אֵוי</td>
<td>woe!</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>וְיִרְי</td>
<td>woe!</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>אָל</td>
<td>alas!</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>חָלָל</td>
<td>far be it</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>אָבִי</td>
<td>oh that</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲרָכָה</td>
<td>how!</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>אָבָי</td>
<td>woe!</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אָסָה</td>
<td>alas!</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>אָבָי</td>
<td>woe!</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נָא</td>
<td>please!</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>אָל</td>
<td>woe!</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הָאָחָה</td>
<td>aha!</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>אָל</td>
<td>how!</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

and they said, "Behold, we are your servants." (Gen. 50:18)

"Behold, I will stand before you there on the rock in Horeb;" (Exod. 17:6)

---

7 Judg. 3:19; Neh. 8:11; Amos 6:10; 8:3; Hab. 2:20; Zeph. 1:7; 2:17.
8 Est. 8:6; Song 5:3.
10 Gen. 47:23; Ezek. 16:43.
11 2 Kgs. 5:3; Psa. 119:5.
12 Job 10:15; Mic. 7:1.
13 Eccl. 4:10; 10:16.
14 Amos 5:16.
15 Job 34:36.
16 Psa. 120:5.
17 Prov. 23:29; the word should be a noun.
18 Ezek. 30:2.
Behold, you are handsome, my beloved! Yes, pleasant! (Song 1:16)

The Hebrew has a moderately strong affinity with its following word. Of the 1,059 instances, 136 have Maqqeph, 672 have a conjunctive accent, 197 have a near disjunctive, and only 54 have a remote disjunctive, 27 of which also have a pronoun suffix.

Is much like הוה above.

11.4.2 נָא Adds Politeness or Formality

נָא introduces an element of politeness or formality to the word it modifies—usually a verb—and is frequently translated “Please.” It is attached to the end of the word it modifies usually by Maqqeph (312 times), in which case it carries the accent otherwise due its preceding companion. Otherwise, it is attached by a conjunctive accent on the preceding word (90 times), by a near disjunctive once (Psa. 80:15) and by a remote disjunctive once (Num. 12:13).

וַיֹֹ֙אמֶר אֵלֵָ֔יו נָֹא תְּהִָ֤י מְׁרִיבָהֹ֙ בֵֵ֥ין רֹעֶָ֑י כִָּֽי־אֲנָשִֵ֥ים אַחִֶ֖ים אֲנָָּֽחְׁנוּ׃

So Abram said to Lot, "Please let there be no strife between you and me, and between my herdsmen and your herdsmen; for we are brethren." (Gen. 13:8)

It is attached to the conditional conjunction אם nine times instead of the associated verb.

וַיִֹ֣אמֶר אֵלֵָ֔יו איך נָֹא מָצֵָ֥אתִי חֵֶ֖ן בְׁעֵינֶָ֑יך

Then he said to Him, "Please if I have found favor in Your sight, then show me a sign that it is You who talk with me. (Judg. 6:17)

It is attached to the adverbial interrogative אַיֵּה in a verbless clause once.
Chapter 11  The Syntactic Attributes of Particles  283

למה יאמרו הימים את נלהם:  
Why should the Gentiles say, "So please where is their God?" (Psa. 115:2)

It is attached to the preposition נגמִּ֥ד twice.

נְַּּּדוּ לְׁשָּּׁה אֱלֹהֵיהֶָֽם:  
I will pay my vows to the LORD In the presence please of all His people, (Psa. 116:14, 18)

11.4.3 Selah Calls for Meditation

Selah is a musical term used only in the psalms and Habakkuk marking a pause, perhaps for the reader to meditate while the music plays. It usually occurs as the last word of a verse (75 times), in which case its accent is Silluq; otherwise, it occurs midway in a verse (4 times), 19 in which case its accent is Athnach or Ole WeYored (§ 22.8).

רַבִּים אומְרִים לְׁנפִּשֵּׁי אֵין יְשֻׁשָּׁתָה לָוֹ בֵּאלֹהִּ֬ים סֶלָּה׃  
Many are they who say of me, "There is no help for him in God." Selah (Psa. 3:2)

11.4.4 אֵי Expresses Intensity

The word אֵי (how?) is parsed as an interjection, occurring 61 times, but only 19 instances are interjections, the remaining are definitely interrogatives, introducing a question asking “how?” “in what manner?” (See § 11.3 above.)

אֵַ֚י נָפְׁלִ֣ו גִבֹּרִֵ֔ים בְׁתֶ֖וֹך הַמִלְׁחָמָָ֑ה יְׁהִוֹנָתֵָּ֔ן עַל־בָמוֹתֶֶ֖יך חָלָָּֽל׃  
"How the mighty have fallen in the midst of the battle! Jonathan was slain in your high places. (2 Sam. 1:25)

אֵַ֚י אֲפִּֽלְשֵׁנָֽיָּ֖ם כְּרָָ֑גַע סֵָ֥פוּ תַָ֜֗מוּ מִן־בִַָֽלָהָּֽוֹת׃  
Oh, how they are brought to desolation, as in a moment! They are utterly consumed with terrors. (Psa. 73:19)

אֵַ֚י (how!) has a moderate affinity with its following word, having a conjunctive accent 8 times and a near disjunctive 11 times.

11.4.5 ויי Expresses Sorrow or Misery

ויי is an exclamation of sorrow or misery, usually translated as “Alas!” or “Woe!” It is nearly always the first word of a sentence, being the first word of a verse 37 times, following a

Waw conjunctive 3 times,\footnote{Jer. 22:18 2x; 34:5.} or following a word with a remote disjunctive accent 9 times. It takes a conjunctive accent 27 times, a near disjunctive 14 times, and a remote disjunctive 10 times, either Rebia or Great Zaqeph.

\begin{quote}
Alas, sinful nation, A people laden with iniquity, A brood of evildoers, Children who are corrupters! (Isa. 1:4)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
Thus says the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel: "Woe to Nebo! For it is plundered, (Jer. 48:1)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
"Alas, alas! Flee from the land of the north," says the LORD." (Zech. 2:6)
\end{quote}

\textbf{11.4.6 Declares Blessedness or Happiness}

\textit{אָשֶׁרִי} is an exclamation expressing the blessedness or happiness of the person(s) to which it refers. Morphologically the word is the masculine plural construct form of a noun like \textit{אִישֶׁר} meaning “blessedness” or “happiness;”\footnote{BDB p. 80; HALOT p. 99.} but it functions only as an exclamatory particle. It usually occurs as the first word of a sentence, being the first word of a verse 27 times, or following Waw conjunctive twice,\footnote{2 Chr. 9:7; Prov. 8:32.} or following an initial \textit{הִנֵּה} once, or following a word with a remote disjunctive accent 11 times. It links with its object of blessedness by Maqqeph only once,\footnote{Psa. 112:1.} by a conjunctive accent 25 times, by a near disjunctive 14 times, and by a remote disjunctive only twice.\footnote{Psa. 146:5; Isa. 32:20.}

\begin{quote}
Blessed is the man to whom the LORD does not impute iniquity, (Psa. 32:2)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
For the LORD is a God of justice; \textit{Blessed are} all those who wait for Him. (Isa. 30:18)
\end{quote}

\begin{quote}
"Behold, how \textit{blessed} is the man whom God corrects! (Job 5:17)
\end{quote}
The object of the blessedness is a noun phrase 27 times as above, a pronoun suffix 6 times, a substantivized adjective phrase once, a substantivized participle once, a relative pronoun clause 3 times, and 6 times it occurs before a verb as though there were a relative pronoun present.

אַשְׁרֶֹ֙יךְ יִשְׁרָאֵ֜ל מִי כָּמָ֗וֹךְ עַַ֚ם נוֹשִַ֣ע בַָּֽ יהוֵָּ֔ה
Happy are you, O Israel! Who is like you, a people saved by the LORD, (Deut. 33:29)

אַשְׁרֵֵ֥י הַָּֽמְׁחַכֶֶ֖ה וְׁיַגִָּ֑יעַ לְׁיָמִַּ֕ם אֶַּ֕לֶף שְׁלֵֹ֥שִׁים וַחֲמִשָָּֽה׃
Blessed is he who waits, and comes to the one thousand three hundred and thirty-five days. (Dan. 12:12)

אַשְׁרֵֵ֥י תְׁמִָּֽימֵי־דָָ֑רֶךְ הַָּֽ֜הֹלְׁכִָ֗ים בְׁתוֹרֵַ֥ת יְׁהוָָּֽה׃
Blessed are the undefiled in the way, Who walk in the law of the LORD! (Psa. 119:1)

11.4.7 וָיֵירָּי Pronounces Woe

“woe! an impassioned expression of grief and despair,” often as though pronouncing woe upon the person(s) to whom it refers. It governs the object of its pronouncement with the preposition ל 19 times; of which the objects are pronoun suffixes 17 times; it governs its object without the benefit of ל twice. Once it stands alone functioning as a noun. It is augmented by the particle נָא 3 times. It stands alone without an object once, and a double woe is pronounced once. It is usually the first word of a sentence: it is the first word of the verse 7 times, the first word after the verb אָמַר 3 times, and the word immediately following a word with a remote disjunctive accent 10 times. It usually has strong affinity with the following word, being linked with Maqqeph 7 times, having a conjunctive accent 13 times, a near disjunctive 3 times, an a remote disjunctive only once.

26 Psa. 119:1.
27 Dan. 12:12.
28 Psa. 137:8; 9; 146:5.
29 Psa. 32:1; 41:2; 65:5; 84:5; 106:3; 119:2.
30 BDB p. 17.
32 Prov. 23:29.
33 Jer. 4:31; 45:3; Lam. 5:16.
34 Num. 24:23 with a remote disjunctive accent.
35 Ezek. 16:23.
And they said, "Woe to us! For such a thing has never happened before. (1 Sam. 4:7)

Then he took up his oracle and said: "Alas! Who shall live when God does this? (Num. 24:23)

She spreads her hands, saying, 'Woe is me now, for my soul is weary Because of murderers!' (Jer. 4:31)

Who has woe? Who has sorrow? Who has contentions? Who has complaints? Who has wounds without cause? Who has redness of eyes? (Prov. 23:29)

11.4.8 חָלִיל Expresses Emphatic Denial

חָלִיל is a strong idiomatic denial that a person has done a stated deed. The word is always augmented with a locative ה for emphasis. The word governs the person of the denial with the preposition ל, where the person of denial is usually a pronoun suffix, mostly first person. Twice the denial stands without a named person, and once there is a double emphatic denial. It always occurs in a direct quotation of speech, usually the first word. It has a strong affinity with the following word, always having a conjunctive accent except once (1 Sam. 14:45) where it has a remote disjunctive accent.

But now the LORD says: 'Far be it from Me; for those who honor Me I will honor, and those who despise Me shall be lightly esteemed (1 Sam. 2:30)

11.4.9 אֵיכָה Expresses intensity

אֵיכָה (how!), like אָ֣י (above), is parsed as an interjection, occurring 17 times, but only about 6 instances are interjections, the remaining are definitely interrogatives, introducing a question asking “how?” “in what manner?” (See § 11.3 above.) It has a conjunctive accent 3 times and a near disjunctive 3 times.

36 1 Sam. 14:45; 20:2.
37 2 Sam. 20:20.
38 Isa. 1:21; Jer. 48:17; Lam. 1:1; 2:1; 4:1, 2.
11.4.10 אֲהָ Expresses Despair

אֲהָ “Alas!”—a strong exclamation of despair. It is usually the first word in a quoted speech, having a conjunctive accent 3 times, a near disjunctive 11 times, and a remote disjunctive only once (2 Kgs. 3:10).

אֲגָּלָר אֲהָ | אֲדֹנִי יְּהוָ֣ה הִנֵּֽה הַנְּבִיאִ֔ים אֹמְרִּֽים לָהֶ֖ם
לָּא־תִרְּאִ֑ו חֵָֽרֶב וְׁרָעֶֽב לָֽא־יִ֙הְיֵ֔ה לָכֶּ֖ם
Then I said, “Alas, Lord GOD! Behold, the prophets say to them, ‘You shall not see the sword, nor shall you have famine.’” (Jer. 14:13)

11.4.11 אנַּא Expresses Intense Entreaty

אןַּא “Please!”—a strong entreaty to a higher authority: to יהוה 9 times, to אדוני (Lord, i.e., God) twice, 39 once addressed to God according to the context, 40 once addressed to Joseph by his brothers. 41 It is used along with the particle נָא in the context 6 times. It is always the first word in quoted speech. It always has a conjunctive accent, except twice it has both a conjunctive and remote disjunctive accent. 42

פִֶשַע אַחֶָּךָ וְׁחַטָאתָם
נֶָ֠א שִָ֣א אִָ֣נֶָּ֡א כָֹּֽה־תֹאמְרִ֣ו לְׁיוֹסֵָ֗ף
Thus you shall say to Joseph:
“I beg you, please forgive the trespass of your brothers and their sin.” (Gen. 50:17)

אָנָ֣א יְֶ֭הוָה הוֹשִִׁ֘יעֵ֥ה
נָָ֑א אָנִָ֣א יְׁ֜הוָָ֗ה הַצְׁלִִׁ֘יחֵָ֥ה נָָּֽא׃
Save please, I pray, O LORD; O LORD, I pray, send now prosperity. (Psa. 118:25)

11.4.12 הֶאָח Expresses Surprise or Disdain

הֶאָח “Aha!”—positively it is a shout of surprised joy; negatively it is a shout of disdain. It is always the first word in a quoted speech. The expression is doubled three times. 43 It usually has a disjunctive accent.

39 Neh. 1:11; Dan. 9:4.
40 Exod. 32:31.
41 Gen. 50:27.
42 Gen. 50:17; Exod. 32:31.
43 Psa. 35:21; 40:16; 70:4.
11.4.13 Ḥêṣ **Commands Silence**

The word ḥêṣ “Hush!” “Be silent!”—The word is parsed as an interjection in the lexicons and in the WTS morphological text, but Davidson analyzed the form as the apocopated imperative form of the verb ḥêṣ, and the form in Neh. 8:11 tends to support that choice. Translators treat the word as though it were an imperative. The word usually has a remote disjunctive accent.

**So the Levites quieted all the people, saying,**

“**Be still, for the day is holy; do not be grieved.**”  (Neh. 8:11)

11.5 **Negatives**

There are seven words that function as negatives, occurring 6,972 times, but are variously classified in the lexicons. Table 11.4 lists the words by frequency of occurrence and classification.

**Table 11.4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency of Negatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לא</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>איה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בלח</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אול</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ב</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בלח</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אפס</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

44 AHCL p. CCIII.
11.5.1 לֹא The Universal Negative

לֹא “not”—it is the only word classified as a negative in the lexicons. It is the universal negative, functioning with nearly every other part of speech. Table 11.5 lists the parts of speech it negates and the frequency of each. Many of these are what is expected; the unexpected are the ones of interest. לֹא is linked with the word it negates by Maqqeph 2,160 times and by a conjunctive accent 2,839 times.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Speech</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Finite Verb</td>
<td>4,401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preposition</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Noun</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participle</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conjunction</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proper Noun</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct Object Marker</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Last Word</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive Absolute</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardinal Number</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Pronoun</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interjection</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive Construct</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentilic Noun</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>5,169</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When followed by a conjunction, the word stands alone as an answer to a question or some similar situation. Of the 34 instances, the word has a remote disjunctive accent 15 times and a near disjunctive accent 11 times. Obviously it stands alone as the last word of a verse.

An infinitive absolute is not expected to be negated; however, when serving as a cognate adverb (see § 5.6.7; 6.1.1; 6.1.5), this may happen. Usually when an emphatic verb phrase is negated, לֹא precedes the finite verb. This occurs 30 times in the Hebrew Bible.
But by negating the cognate infinitive absolute, the emphasis may be negated rather than the verbal idea. This occurs only 6 times.45

The serpent did not deny that the woman would die, but only the certainty of it. An infinitive absolute is negated once by לא when it stands in place of a finite verb.

The interjections are not expected to be negated, but twice it occurs in BHS, where לא appears to negate הננה.

45 Gen. 3:4; Num. 22:37; Psa. 49:8; Jer. 3:1; 38:15; Amos 9:8.

46 1 Sam. 16:7; Ezek. 33:27.
The Negative Existential Particle

is classified as an adverb in the lexicons, but it functions mainly as the negative of the existential particle ויה. Contrary to לא, it does not necessarily negate the word immediately following it, but it may negate the copulative clause that it heads, or negate a verbal clause with the durative aspect which it heads. In that context, it may have a pronoun suffix as the subject of the clause, or in anticipation of the subject. It is linked to the word that follows by Maqqeph 153 times, by a conjunctive accent 521 times, by a near disjunctive 58 times, and by a remote disjunctive 56 times.

may negate current tense copulative clauses (see § 13.1.2).47

47 This doesn’t seem to apply to negative predicate nominative copulative clauses.
The fool has said in his heart, "There is no God." (Psa. 14:1) [negated existential clause]

And Enoch walked with God; and he was not, for God took him. (Gen. 5:24) [negated existence with subject pronoun suffix]

There was not a man among the sons of Israel more handsome than he. (1 Sam. 9:2) [negated predicate adjective copulative clause]

Because I said, “Surely the fear of God is not in this place.” (Gen. 20:11) [negated predicate adverb copulative clause]

And she said, "Your maidservant has nothing in the house but a jar of oil." (2 Kgs. 4:2) [negated possessive copulative clause]

But Sarai was barren; she had no child. (Gen. 11:30) [negated possessive copulative clause, possessor is pronoun suffix]

"There is no Holy One like the LORD, For there is none besides You, Nor is there any rock like our God. (1 Sam. 2:2) [two negated similarity copulative clauses]

אַיִן may negate verbal clauses in the current tense and durative aspect (see § 5.6.5.3); in this case the verb is a participle.

The keeper of the prison never looked into anything that was under Joseph’s authority, because the LORD was with him; (Gen. 39:23) [negated verbal clause with durative aspect and named subject]

Thus says Pharaoh: “I am not giving you straw.” (Exod. 5:10) [negated verbal clause with durative aspect, subject is a pronoun suffix]

אַיִן may express the negative alternative to a stated proposition:

"Is the LORD among us or not?" (Exod. 17:7)
אַיִּן may express a negative response to a yes/no question:

ְׁאִם־אִֹיש יָב֜וֹא וּשְׁאֵלֵָ֗ךְ וְׁאָמַָ֛ר הֲיֵָּֽש־פֵֹ֥ה אִֶ֖יש וְׁאָמֵַ֥רְׁת

If any man comes and inquires of you, and says, “Is there any man here?” you shall say, “No.” (Judg. 4:20)

אַיִּן may simply negate what is anticipated from the context but is elided:

הָעֲנִיִֹ֙ים וְׁהָאֶבְׁיוֹנִ֜ים מְׁבַקְׁשִֵ֥ים מַֹ֙יִםֹ֙ וָאֵַּ֔יִן

The poor and needy seek water, but there is none (Isa. 41:17)

וַיַעֲבֵֹ֥ר בְׁאֶָּֽרֶץ־שָלִֶ֖שָה וְׁלִֹ֣א מָצָָ֑אוּ וַיַעַבְׁר

And he passed through the land of Shalisha, but they did not find them. Then they passed through the land of Shaalim, and nothing! (1 Sam. 9:4)

11.5.3 בִלְׁתִי The Negative of Exception

בִלְׁתִי is classified as an preposition in the lexicons, but it functions as the sole negative for infinitives construct, and a negative of exception for nouns. Of the 112 instances of the word it is preceded by a preposition 96 times that shapes the nuance of the negation to suit the object of negation. It unites with the preposition ל to form the negative לְׁבִלְׁתִֵ֥י (to not) 87 times to negate an infinitive construct. It unites with the preposition מִן to form the negative מִבִלְׁתִַּ֞י (because not) twice. It unites with the preposition עַד to form the negative עַד־בִלְׁתִֵ֥י (until not) 7 times.

It is linked to the word it negates by Maqqeph 6 times, by a conjunctive accent 56 times, by a near disjunctive 44 times, and by a remote disjunctive 6 times.

וְׁהָיַָ֞ה אִם־בָֹ֙א אֶל־אֵָ֤שֶת אָחִיוֹ֙ וְׁשִחִֵ֣ת אֵַּ֔רְׁצָה

So it was, whenever he went in to his brother’s wife, he would emit on the ground, to not give seed to his brother. (Gen. 38:9)

מִבִלְׁתִַּ֞י יְׁכִֹ֣ולֶת יְׁהוָָ֗ה לְׁהָבִיאֹ֙ אֶת־הָעִָ֣ם הַזֵֶּ֔ם אֶל־הָאֶ֖רֶץ אֲשֶר־נִשְׁבִַ֣ע לָהֶָ֑ם

Because of the LORD’s not being able to bring this people to the land which He swore to give them, He slaughtered them in the wilderness. (Num. 14:16)

49 See discussion of Numbers 35:23 above, for the one exception.
50 Num. 14:16; Ezek. 16:28.
51 Num. 21:35; Deut. 3:3; Josh. 8:22; 10:33; 11:8; 2 Kgs. 10:11; Job 14:12.
balances a noun with the meaning "except" or "unless."\(^{52}\)

לֹא חָרָאָֽוּ פֵּ֥י בַלְתִּי אָחֳכִּ֥ם:
You shall not see my face unless your brother is with you." (Gen 43:3)

בַלְתִי unexpectedly has a pronoun suffix.

אֲרוּיְדוּש כְּוָהִי כְּאִֵ֖י בַלְתִּי אִיְַֽי
“There is no Holy One like the LORD, For there is none besides You, Nor is there any rock like our God. (1 Sam. 2:2)

בַלְתִי negates a finite verb 13 times:\(^{53}\)

אֶלֶּֽהוּ פַּלְתָּֽוּ בַלְתִֵ֥י אֲחִינוּ כַּיְהוָ֖ה כִָּי הֵ֔וּא כִָּֽי־לֵֹ֥א טָהָּֽוֹר׃
For he thought, "Something has happened to him; he is unclean, surely he is unclean. (1 Sam. 20:26)

בַלְתִי unites with the conjunction אִֿ֔ם to form the compound adversative conjunction בַלֵּ֥י אִֿ֔ם (but, unless).\(^{54}\)

לֹא נִשְׁאַרֹ֙ לִפְׁנִֵ֣י אֲדֹנִֵּ֔י בַלֵּ֥י אִֿ֔ם—גְּוִיָֽתֵ֖נוּ וְׁאַדְׁמָתֵָּֽוּ׃
There is nothing left in the sight of my lord but our bodies and our lands. (Gen. 47:18)

בַלְתִי strangely is the last word of the verse in Hos. 13:4, with apparently nothing to negate.

But surely the word should be parsed with a first person singular pronoun suffix, similar to the unambiguous instance of a pronoun suffix in 1 Sam. 2:2 above, as the translator do.

---

\(^{52}\) Gen. 43:3, 5; Num. 32:12; Job 14:12; Isa. 14:6; Ezek. 16:28; Dan. 11:18.

\(^{53}\) Exod. 20:20; Num. 21:35; Deut. 3:3; Josh. 8:22; 10:33; 11:8; 2 Sam. 14:14; 2 Kgs. 10:11; Isa. 44:10; Jer. 23:14; 27:18; Ezek. 13:3.

\(^{54}\) Gen. 47:18; Judg. 7:14; Amos 3:3, 4.
10 And you shall know no God but Me; For there is no Savior besides Me. (Hos. 13:4)

11.5.4 אַל The Non-indicative Negative

אַל is the negative of the non-indicative mood, being used primarily with verbs in the non-indicative mood. Of its 729 instances in the Bible, 696 negate non-indicative verbs. But it is found negating other parts of speech in a non-indicative environment. It is linked to the word it negates by Maqqeph 721 times, otherwise by a conjunctive accent.55

וַיֹֹ֙אמֶר אַבְׁרָ֜ם אֶל־לָ֗וֹט אַל־נָ֙א תְׁהִָּ֤י מְׁרִיבָהֹ֙ בֵֵ֥ין רֹעֶָ֑י וּבֵֵ֥ין רֹעֶָ֑יך

o Abram said to Lot, "Please let there not be strife between you and me, and between my herdsmen and your herdsmen; (Gen. 13:8)

אַל may negate a noun phrase in a non-indicative environment.57

וַיֹֹ֙אמֶר אַבְׁרָ֜ם אֶל־לָ֗וֹט אַל־נָ֙א תְׁהִָּ֤י מְׁרִיבָהֹ֙ בֵֵ֥ין רֹעֶָ֑י וּבֵֵ֥ין רֹעֶָ֑יך

"O mountains of Gilboa, Let there be no dew nor rain upon you, Nor fields of offerings. (2 Sam. 1:21)

אַל may negate an emphatic adverbial phrase standing in prominence before the verb.58

וַיֹֹ֙אמֶר אַבְׁרָ֜ם אֶל־לָ֗וֹט אַל־נָ֙א תְׁהִָּ֤י מְׁרִיבָהֹ֙ בֵֵ֥ין רֹעֶָ֑י וּבֵֵ֥ין רֹעֶָ֑יך

O LORD, do not rebuke me in Your anger, Nor chasten me in Your hot displeasure. (Psa. 6:2)

55 For the exceptions, see 1 Sam. 2:24; 2 Kgs. 3:13; Job 24:25.
57 See also 1 Sam. 13:12, 16; Job 24:25; Psa. 83:2; Prov. 8:10; 12:28; 17:12; 27:2; Isa. 62:6; Jer. 47:6; Joel 2:13.
58 See also Psa. 38:2; Prov. 31:4; Jer. 10:24; 15:15.
The psalmist did not ask the Lord not to rebuke and chasten him, but that He not do so in His anger and displeasure.

This even occurs with a non-emphatic adverb phrase in a non-indicative context.

הַטֵּל־לִֶ֭בִי אֶל־עֵדְׁוֹתֶָ֗יך וַיָֹּ֤אמֶר לוֹֹ֙ מִלֶ֣ךְ יִשְׁרָאֵֵ֔ל אַלַּ֣אָל כִָּֽי־קָרָָּ֤א יְׁהוָהֹ֙ לִשְׁלֹֹ֙שֶתֹ֙ הַמְׁלָכִִ֣ים הָאֵֵ֔לֶה לָתֵֵ֥ת אוֹתֶָ֖ם בְׁיַד־מוֹאָָֽב׃

But the king of Israel said to him, "No, for the LORD has called these three kings together to deliver them into the hand of Moab." (2 Kgs. 3:13)

It may also do so with a vocative noun phrase indicating the person(s) to whom the prohibition is addressed:

הֲלָהֵןֹ֙ תֵָּֽעָגֵֵּ֔נָה לְׁבִלְׁתִֶ֖י הֱיִ֣וֹת לְׁאִָ֑יש אִַ֣ל בְׁנֹתַָ֗י

Would you restrain yourselves from having husbands? No, my daughters. (Ruth 1:13)

11.5.5 בַל A Poetic Negative

בַל is classified as an adverb, but it functions as a negative in poetry. Of its 73 instances in the Bible, 65 negate a finite verb. The word links with the word it negates by Maqqeph 72 times, and by a near disjunctive accent once (see Psa. 32:9 below).

The wicked in his proud countenance does not seek God; God is in none of his thoughts. (Psa. 10:4)

Tremble before Him, all the earth. The world also is firmly established, It shall not be moved. (1Chr. 16:30)

בַל negates a noun four times:

קָשָׁעָם מָשְׁל בֵּֽן־בּוֹתֵֽם מֵנָּֽוֹד־רָֹ֗֜אש בַל־תִמָּֽוֹט׃

You make us a byword among the nations, A shaking of the head among the peoples. (Psa. 44:15)

59 See also Judg. 19:23; 1 Sam. 2:24; 2 Sam. 13:12, 25; 2 Kgs. 4:16;
But the text has variant readings here. Many manuscripts and the Bomberg text read בַּלְׁאֻמִָּֽים (among the nations) here; this reading makes sense, whereas the BHS text is obscure. The translators rightly follow the Bomberg text here. The same textual problem occurs also at Psa. 57:10; 108:4, and 149:7.

בַּל negates an adverb phrase twice.60

אָמִַ֣רְׁתְׁ לֶַָּּֽ֭יהוָה אֲדֹנִָ֣י אָָ֑תָה ט֜וֹבָתִָ֗י בַּל־עָֽלֶָֽיך׃

O my soul, you have said to the LORD, "You are my Lord, My goodness is nothing apart from You." (Psa. 16:2)

בַּל even negates an adjective phrase once:

גַּם־אֵֵ֥לֶה לַָּֽחֲכָמִָ֑ים הַָּֽכֵר־פָנִֶ֖ים בְׁמִשְׁפִָ֣ד בַָֽ֜֗ל־טָֽוֹב׃

These things also belong to the wise: It is not good to show partiality in judgment. (Prov. 24:23)

בַּל even negates an infinitive construct in a non-indicative environment:

אַל־תִָּֽהְׁיָ֤ו׀ כְׁסֵ֥וּס כְׁפֶרֶד  אֵָּ֤ין הִָ֫בִֵ֥ין בְׁמֶָּֽתֶג־וָרִֶ֣סֶן עֶדְׁיִ֣וֹ לִבְׁלָ֑וֹם

Do not be like the horse or like the mule, Which have no understanding, Which must be harnessed with bit and bridle, Else they will not come near you. (Psa. 32:9)

11.5.6 בְׁלִי The Deficit Negative

בְׁלִי is classified as an adverb, but it functions in combination with prepositions מ and עַל, to form the compound conjunctions מִבְׁלִַּ֞י and עַל־בְלִי, 61 both meaning “because.” It functions in combination with preposition מ and the relative pronoun אֲשֵֶ֧ר to form the compound conjunction מִבְׁלִַּ֞י אֲשֵֶ֧ר meaning “except that” (see § 9.2.3g). In combination with the preposition ב, כ, and ל, it forms the compound negatives בְׁלִַּ֞י, כִבְׁלִי, and לִבְׁלִַ֞י, 64 and meaning “without.” The word לִבְׁלִַ֞י links to the word it negates by Maqqeph 25 times, by a conjunctive accent 21 times, and 12 times otherwise.

60 See also Prov. 23:7.
61 Exod. 14:11; Deut. 9:28; 28:55; 2 Kgs. 1:3, 6, 16; Job 4:11, 20; 6:6; 18:15; 24:7, 8; 31:19; Eccl. 3:11; Isa. 5:13; Jer. 2:15; 9:9, 10, 11; Lam. 1:4; Ezek. 14:15; 34:5; Hos. 4:6; Zeph. 3:6*2.
62 Gen. 31:20.
63 Eccl. 3:11.
64 Deut. 4:42; 19:4; Josh. 20:3, 5; Job 35:16.
65 Job 36:12.
66 Job 38:41; 41:25; Isa. 5:14.
Therefore Job opens his mouth in vain; He multiplies words without knowledge." (Job 35:16)

They shall perish by the sword, And they shall die without knowledge. (Job 36:12)

On earth there is nothing like him, Which is made without fear. (Job 41:33)

If I have eaten its fruit without money, Or caused its owners to lose their lives; (Job 31:39)

There is no speech nor language Where their voice is not heard. (Psa. 19:3)

Though the sword reaches him, it cannot avail; Nor does spear, dart, or javelin. (Job 41:26)

The word בְּלִי in Isa. 38:17 is parsed as a noun meaning “destruction.”

11.5.7 אֶפֶס The Nothing Negative

אֶפֶס is a noun meaning “an end or extremity.” It frequently refers to “the ends of the earth.” It is used idiomatically in the repeated expression: “I am, and there is no one else besides me.” It combines with the conjunction כִּי to form the compound conjunction אֶפֶס כִּי, meaning “however” (see § 9.2.3d). Otherwise, the word has the general sense of “nothing” and is used idiomatically as a negative.

---

67 See also Isa. 14:6; 32:10; Hos. 8:7.
68 BDB, p.67; HALOT, p. 79.
69 Deut. 33:17; 1 Sam. 2:10; Psa. 2:8; 22:28; 59:14; 67:8; 72:8; 98:3; Prov. 30:4; Isa. 45:22; 52:10; Jer. 16:19; Mich. 5:3; Zech. 9:10. See also Num. 23:13
70 Isa. 47:8, 10; Zep. 2:15.
71 Num. 13:28; Deut. 15:4; Judg. 4:9; 2 Sam. 12:14; Amos 9:8.
Chapter 11

The Syntactic Attributes of Particles

Chapter 11

The Syntactic Attributes of Particles

299

יָמִַ֣י קֶַ֭לוּ מִנִי־אָָ֑רֶג וַ֜יִ
כְׁלָ֗וּ בְׁ
אִֶ֣פֶס
tיקְוָָּֽה׃
"My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle. And are spent without hope. (Job 7:6)

ברבּים הָדַרְתִּמְלָן בּאָֽמֶס לְּאָ֣ם מַחְתַּת
רֹחֵׁנ
In a multitude of people is a king's honor,
But in the lack of people is the downfall of a prince. (Prov. 14:28)

הָבָּקָּשׁ וּלְאָא
הָמָּשׁ אָנֵֶ֖שׁ מַכָּה
יִהְׁיֵ֥וּ כְׁאַָ֛יִן וּכְ
אֶ֖פֶס
אַנְׁשֵֵ֥י מִלְׁחַמְׁתֶָּֽך׃
You shall seek them and not find them-- Those who contended with you.
Those who war against you Shall be as nothing, As nothing. (Issa. 41:12)

וּלְיַשְׁרַיְרָם יָמָּלֶּד בּאָֽמֶס דּי
יָשָּׁר
He shall even rise against the Prince of princes;
But he shall be broken without hand. (Dan. 8:25)

11.6 Relatives

Hebrew has three words that function as relative pronouns: אֲשֶּׁר (5,501 times), ש (137 times), and ו (15 times). While they are classified as relative pronouns, at least אֲשֶּׁר may be thought of as a conjunction linking a dependent clause to a constituent of an independent clause as a modifier (see §14.3.3). In fact, אֲשֶּׁר joins with certain prepositions and other words to form compound subordinating conjunctions that function between clauses (see § 9.1).

 הכול אֲשֶּׁר־יִגָּע בִבְׁשָרֶָ֖הּ יִקְדָָ֑ש
וַאֲשֶֶר יִזֶָ֤ה מִדָמָהֹּ֙ רַע הַבֵּ֔גֶד
Everyone who touches its flesh must be holy.
And when its blood is sprinkled on any garment upon which it is sprinkled,
you shall wash that on which it was sprinkled, in a holy place. (Lev. 6:27)

The first אֲשֶּׁר functions as a conjunction and the second as a relative pronoun.

11.6.1 Forms Conjunctions

אֲשֶּׁר joins with certain prepositions and other words to form compound subordinating con-
junctions that function between clauses. Table 11.6 lists the compound conjunction with אֲשֶּׁר and
their associated meaning. And אֲשֶּׁר functions alone at times as a conjunction.

11.6.2 As a Relative Pronoun

When אֲשֶּׁר functions as a relative pronoun, its clause usually stands immediately after the
last word of the noun phrase it modifies and becomes part of that phrase; in so doing it becomes
embedded into the sentence of which the noun phrase is a part. The word preceding is linked to
by Maqqeph 253 times, by a conjunctive accent 469 times, by a near disjunctive 1,680 times, and by a remote disjunctive 2,252 times. The stronger division is expected because the relative pronoun clause occurs at the end of the phrase it modifies.

### Table 11.6

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Conjunction</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אַחֲרֵי אֲשֶר</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>על אֲשֶר</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>כָּשֶׁר</td>
<td>when</td>
<td>מַפְרֵן אֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>Because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עַד אֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>until</td>
<td>שעֵב אֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>because</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לְַחַת אֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>לְַמַּעַן אֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>in order that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אַחֲרֵי כַּאֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>as soon as</td>
<td>מִבְּלִי אֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>except that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>יַעַן אֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>מֵאֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>since</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֵאֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>because</td>
<td>לַחַת אֲשֶׁר</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מֵאֲשֶׁר</td>
<td>since</td>
<td>עַד אֲשֶׁר</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

And He said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree of which I commanded you that you should not eat?" (Gen. 3:11)

So Hagar bore Abram a son; and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. (Gen. 16:15)

And their camels were without number, as the sand which is by the seashore in multitude. (Judg. 7:12)

"Only the holy things which you have, and your vowed offerings, you shall take and go to the place which the LORD chooses. (Deut. 12:26)

that no outsider, who is not a descendant of Aaron, should come near to offer incense before the LORD. (Num. 16:40)
The phrase being modified may be simply a pronoun or even a pronoun suffix.

כֵָּ֤ן תַעֲשֶהֹ֙ לְׁכָל־הִֶ֣עָרִֵּ֔ים הָרְׁחֹקֵֹ֥ת מִמְׁךֶ֖ מְׁאָֹ֑וד

Thus you shall do to all the cities very far from you, which are not of the cities of these nations. (Deut. 20:15)

כִָּֽי־עֲבָדִַ֣י הֵֵּ֔ם אֲשֶֹ֙ר

For My servants are they, whom I brought out of the land of Egypt; they shall not be sold as slaves. (Lev. 25:42)

כִָּֽי־תִשְׁמֹר  אֶת־כָל־הַמִצְׁוָֹ֙ה הַזֹ֜את לַעֲשֹתָָ֗הּ

And if you keep all these commandments and do them, which I command you today (Deut. 19:9)

When the relative pronoun clause modifies an unspecified entity, it stands in place of the elided entity.

כִָּֽי־הוֹצֵֵ֥ץ אֹתֶָ֖ם מֵאִֶ֣רֶץ מִצְׁרָָ֑יִם

For My servants are they, whom I brought out of the land of Egypt; they shall not be sold as slaves. (Lev. 25:42)

When the relative pronoun clause modifies an unspecified entity, it stands in place of the elided entity.

וַתֹאמֶר  רֹ֙וּת הַמוֹאֲבִיָ֜ה אֶָּֽל־נָעֳּמִָ֗י אֵָּֽלְׁכָה־נָָ֤א הַשָדֶֽה

So Ruth the Moabitess said to Naomi, “Please let me go to the field, and glean heads of grain after him in whose sight I may find favor.” (Ruth 2:2)

וְׁעַתַָ֞ה לִֵ֣ךְ׀ נְׁחִֵ֣ה אֶת־הָעָָ֗ם אֶָ֤ל אֲשֶֹ֙ר

Now therefore, go, lead the people to the place of which I have spoken to you. (Exod. 32:34)

וְׁאַתֹ֙ הֲקָלַּ֣ת בַּשֵֵ֔לֶם אַחַַּ֕ר אֲשֵֶ֥ה אֶמְׁצָא־חֵֶ֖ן בְׁעֵינָָ֑יו

And you shall find favor in whose sight I may find favor. (Ruth 2:2)

וְׁעַתַָ֞ה לִֵ֣ךְ׀ נְׁחִֵ֣ה אֶת־הָעָָ֗ם אֶָ֤ל אֲשֶֹ֙ר

Now therefore, go, lead the people to the place of which I have spoken to you. (Exod. 32:34)

וַיִֹ֣אמֶר אֲלֵהֶָ֗ם הַ֚וּא אֲשֶֹ֙ר

Then he said to them, “This is that which the LORD has said:

'Now also let it be according to your words; he with whom it is found shall be my slave, and you shall be blameless." (Gen. 44:10)
There may be more than one relative pronoun dependent clause modifying the same constituent, forming a compound modifier:

The LORD God of heaven, who took me from my father's house and from the land of my family, and who spoke to me and who swore to me, saying, “To your descendants I give this land,” He will send His angel before you, and you shall take a wife for my son from there. (Gen. 24:7)

This lengthy noun phrase is the subject of the sentence, functioning as *casus pendens*; its role as subject is resumed by the pronoun אָּֽהְוּ.

You shall not make for yourself a carved image, or any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth; (Exod. 20:4)

This lengthy noun phrase is part of a compound predicate complement.

While the relative pronoun clause usually occurs at the end of the phrase it modifies, occasionally it may be postponed by intervening constituents.

And Aaron's sons, the priests, shall bring the blood and sprinkle the blood all around on the altar that is by the door of the tabernacle of meeting. (Lev. 1:5)

O LORD, our Lord, How excellent is Your name in all the earth. Who has set Your glory above the heavens! (Psa. 8:1)
11.7 The Direct Object Marker

The direct object marker אֵת is untranslatable in English, occurring 10,978 times in the Bible. Of these 1,712 have pronoun suffixes and serve as independent accusative pronouns (see §10.2.2). The remaining 9,266 stand alone at the head of a noun phrase or equivalent, marking the phrase as accusative and thus the direct object of a transitive verb; they link to the first word of the phrase by Maqqeph 8,225 times, by a conjunctive accent 355 times, by a near disjunctive 663 times, and by a remote disjunctive 23 times. The disjunctive accents usually anticipate a longer phrase.

Therefore a man shall leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife, and they shall become one flesh. (Gen. 2:24)

So he brought back all the goods, and also brought back his brother Lot and his goods, as well as the women and the people. (Gen. 14:16)

This includes adjectives functioning as a noun:

So David said to him, "How was it you were not afraid to put forth your hand to destroy the LORD'S anointed?" (2 Sam. 1:14)

They have forsaken the LORD, They have provoked to anger The Holy One of Israel, They have turned away backward. (Isa. 1:4)

This also includes participles functioning as nouns:

Then I commanded your judges at that time, (Deut. 1:16)

Nor did Zebulun drive out the inhabitants of Kitron or the inhabitants of Nahalol; (Judg. 1:30)

This also includes interrogative pronouns:
This also includes infinitives construct functioning as a gerund.\(^{72}\)

"But I know your dwelling place, Your going out and your coming in, And your rage against Me." (Isa. 37:28)

Finally it includes negated noun phrases:

Then I will sow her for Myself in the earth, And I will have mercy on her who had not obtained mercy; Then I will say to those who were not My people, “You are My people!” And they shall say, “You are my God!” (Hos. 2:23)

This concludes the study of Hebrew parts of speech. The next chapter discusses the syntactic structure of the kernel clauses of Hebrew discourse.

\(^{72}\) See also 2 Kgs. 19:27; 2 Chr. 31:17.
CHAPTER 12
The Syntax of Hebrew Kernel Clauses

Up to this point, the parts of speech of Hebrew have been thoroughly defined and illustrated. The study now moves to define and illustrate how the parts of speech are arranged to form the kernel clauses of Hebrew discourse.

A clause consists of a subject and a predicate composed of a verb and its complement(s) if any. The syntax of all clauses in Hebrew can be explained on the basis of transformations on the structure of a small set of kernel clauses. By definition a kernel clause is a basic clause the structure of which is defined by phrase structure rules. It is in the active voice, indicative mood, declarative mode, with subject-verb-object word order.¹ A kernel clause has no expressed emphasis or prominence. It has no elided elements and no adjuncts, and employs no pronoun substitution. All Hebrew sentences are either kernel clauses or they are the product of one or more transformations on kernel clauses or sentences. This chapter defines the phrase structure rules of the kernel clauses of Hebrew. There are two basic types of kernel clauses: (1) the copulative clauses, and (2) the verbal clauses. The constituents of a sentence are expected to be semantically related and consistent with reality or at least possibility.

12.1 Copulative Clauses

Copulative clauses are those that employ the copulative verb “BE” (יְהִי) or its equivalent² in its various functions in the language. They are used primarily for definitions, identifications, and descriptions. There are seven kinds of copulative clauses in Hebrew: (1) Existential clauses,

---

¹ Throughout the discussion of kernel clauses, except for the existential ones, the default word order is regarded as subject-verb-object (SVO). This view is supported by Randall Buth (“Word Order in the Verbless Clause,” in Cynthia L. Miller, ed., The Verbless Clause in Biblical Hebrew, Winona Lake, IN: Eisenbrauns, 1999, p. 107); and by Vincent DeCaen, “Verbal and Verbless Clauses within Government-Binding Theory,” in Miller, p.117, fn. 22).

² See discussion of the copulative verb in § 5.4.1.
(2) classification clauses, (3) identity clauses, (4) attribute clauses, (5) predicate adverb clauses, (6) possession clauses, (7) and similarity clauses.

12.1.1 Existential Clauses

Existential clauses declare the existence of one or more members of a class, or they declare new classes. They are also used to declare the existence of characteristics and their associated values.

The syntax of the existential clause is

$$S^e = V^e + N^s$$

The rule is interpreted to read: An existential clause ($S^e$) consists of (=) an existential verb ($V^e$) followed by (+) its subject noun phrase ($N^s$). In an existential clause, $N^s$ is a nondeterminate noun (or noun phrase). In the general case where tense, aspect, or mood must be expressed. $\psi$ is used in the special case where these attributes are already defined for the given context, and the clause does not introduce any new values for them, that is, the clause is in the current tense, aspect, and mood of the immediate context. When $\pi\iota\iota\iota$ is used, there must be concord of number, gender, and person between $V^e$ and $N^s$. The clause is used to declare the existence of $N^s$ previously not defined or not known. In the surface structure of existing examples, $N^s$ usually is a noun phrase. This is true because a declaration of simple existence is rather uninteresting by itself. It may be assumed that most common nouns are part of the knowledge shared by the author with his audience. Thus the existence of such common nouns does not need to be declared. Consequently, a declaration of simple existence may be assumed to underlie the introduction of any

---

3 The symbols of all rules mark the syntactic slot of the designated part of speech, and are in English order, and should be read from left to right. Obviously the order is reversed when applied to the Hebrew clauses. This arrangement has proven less confusing in an English text than to have the symbols in Hebrew order. A symbol, such as N, A, D, or V, represents a part of speech in Hebrew—N = noun, A = Adjective, D = adverb, V = verb. A superscript on a symbol identifies a specific type of that part of speech. A subscript on a symbol identifies a specific instance of the given part of speech in order to distinguish that instance from another instance of the same part of speech in a given rule or formula. Symbols with different subscripts have different referents. Thus $N_i$ and $N_j$ represent two different nouns.

4 Throughout this chapter a symbol for a part of speech may also represent a phrase. A phrase is always the product of one or more transformations on a part of speech with a dependent clause.

5 That is, the noun has acquired modifiers by means of prior transformations on kernel clauses in its deep structure. This is explained in Chapter 13.
nondeterminate common noun otherwise not previously defined. In all the following examples, N^s is a noun phrase.\(^6\)

\[
\text{There is a kinsman nearer than I.} \quad \text{(Ruth 3:12)}
\]

\[
\text{There is a God who judges in the earth.} \quad \text{(Psa. 58:12)}
\]

\[
\text{There was a man from Zarah.} \quad \text{(Judg. 13:2)}\(^7\)
\]

The last example illustrates the use of נַעֲרָה to declare existence in past time.

**12.1.2 Classification Clauses**

Classification clauses, otherwise known as predicate nominatives, define class relationships among nouns, but not identity relationships. They answer the question “To what class of person, place, or thing does the subject belong?” The structure of the clause is

\[
\text{(Rule 2) } S^c = N^s + Q^c
\]

where Q^c = V^c + N^c. The rule is interpreted to read: A copulative classification clause (S^c) consists of (=) its subject noun (N^s) followed by (+) a predicate (Q^c) consisting of the copulative verb (V^c) followed by (+) its predicate complement noun (N^c). N^c is a nondeterminate predicate nominative; and N^s is the subject noun, either determinate or nondeterminate, depending on the degree of determination declared by previous context. V^c is the copulative verb נַעֲרָה in concord with N^s for number, gender, and person; it is usually elided when the tense, aspect, and mood of the clause are

---

\(^6\) In this chapter simplified tree diagrams are used, displaying only the structure of the kernel clauses. Not all parts of speech are identified. Wherever a constituent is a phrase, the phrase is underlined and marked only as the basic constituent of the clause. The analysis of phrases is discussed in subsequent chapters.

\(^7\) Examples with the reference marked by “\(^*\)” have been simplified for the sake of illustration. This notation is used throughout the text.
equivalent with that of the immediate context, unless emphasis is desired. The clause means that the subject $N^s$ belongs to the class of things known as $N^c$.

When the copulative verb means “become” instead of “be,” the predicate nominative is governed by the preposition $\beth$; the structure becomes:

(Rule 2b) \[ S^c = N^s + Q^c \]

where $Q^c = V^c + \beth + N^c$. The rule is interpreted to read: A copulative classification clause ($S^c$) consists of (=$) its subject noun ($N^s$) followed by (+) a predicate ($Q^c$) consisting of a copulative verb ($V^c$) followed by the preposition $\beth$ followed by (+) its predicate complement noun ($N^c$). The grammatical restraints are the same as above. The clause means that the subject $N^s$ became a member of the class of things known as $N^c$.

\[ \text{Man became a living being (Gen. 2:7)*} \]

---


9 This is an example of a syntactic idiom; the language has no word for “become” but expresses the concept idiomatically.
12.1.3 Identity Clauses

Identity clauses are special kinds of predicate nominatives that declare two nouns to be identical, that is, that the two nouns have the same referents. They answer the question “Who?” for persons, and the question “What name, title, appellation, or cognomen?” for persons, places, or things. The structure is:

(Rule 3) \[ S^i = N^s + Q^i \]

where \( Q^i = V^c + N^c \). The rule is interpreted to read: A copulative identity clause (\( S^i \)) consists of (=) its subject noun (\( N^s \)) followed by (+) a predicate (\( Q^i \)) consisting of a copulative verb (\( V^c \)) followed by (+) its predicate complement noun (\( N^c \)). \( N^c \) is the determinate predicate nominative,\(^{10}\) and \( N^s \) the determinate subject. \( V^c \) is the copulative verb וְׁ (or equivalent) in concord with \( N^s \) and \( N^c \) for number, and gender, and with \( N^s \) for person; it is usually elided when the tense, aspect, and mood of the clause are equivalent with that of the immediate context, unless emphasis is desired. Such elision actually takes place as a result of a deletion transformation, so in some of examples that follow, \( V^c \) has already been elided. The clause means that the subject \( N^s \) is also known as \( N^c \).

\[ \text{Your silver has become dross} \quad (\text{Isa. 1:22}) \]

\[ \text{Abraham shall become a great and mighty nation} \quad (\text{Gen. 18:18})^{*} \]

\(^{10}\) For a few other uses of the determinate predicate nominative, see RJW, 33.
12.1.4 Attribute Clauses

Attribute clauses, otherwise known as predicate adjective clauses, define the value of an understood attribute or characteristic of the subject of the clause. They answer the question “What is the value of the subject’s understood characteristic X?” The structure is:

\[(\text{Rule 4}) \quad S^a = N^s + Q^a\]

where \(Q^a = V^c + A\). The rule is interpreted to read: A copulative attribute clause \((S^a)\) consists of (=) its subject noun \((N^s)\) followed by (+) a predicate consisting of a copulative verb \((V^c)\) followed by (+) its predicate complement adjective \((A)\). There is concord of number and gender between all three elements, plus concord of person between \(N^s\) and \(V^c\). The predicate adjective is usually nondeterminate except in the superlative degree of comparison.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{The serpent} & \quad \text{was} \quad \text{subtle} \quad \text{(Gen. 3:1)} \\
\text{Your camp} & \quad \text{shall be} \quad \text{holy} \quad \text{(Deut. 23:15)*} \\
\text{The portion of the children of Judah} & \quad \text{was} \quad \text{too much for them} \quad \text{(Josh. 19:9)*}
\end{align*}
\]

11 Characteristics have values. For example, the characteristic intelligence has the values brilliant, intelligent, subtle, ignorant, stupid, etc. In copulative clauses, the characteristic is understood from the preceding context or common knowledge, otherwise it must be declared before its value is defined.
That man was perfect and upright (Job 1:1)*

Attribute clauses that use adjectives having a corresponding stative verb, can be alternately expressed by means of an equivalent stative verbal clause (defined later § 12.2.1.1).

The serpent was subtle. [Attribute clause] (Gen. 3:1)  

The serpent was subtle. [Stative verbal clause]

And the hands of Moses were heavy [Attribute clause] (Exod. 17:12)*

And the eyes of Israel were dim [Stative verbal clause] (Gen. 48:10)

12.1.5 Predicate Adverb Clauses

Predicate adverb clauses are used to define the spatial or temporal characteristics of subjects that have such characteristics. They answer the question “When?” or “Where?” Not all nouns have spatial or temporal characteristics, but the following are some of the types of nouns that do:

1. Nouns that name material objects or places
2. Nouns that name events
3. Abstract nouns of time or space

The structure of the clause is:

(Rule 5) \( S^d = N^s + Q^d \)

where \( Q^d = V^c + D \). The rule is interpreted to read: An adverbial attribute clause \( (S^d) \) consists of (=) its subject noun \( (N^s) \) followed by (+) a predicate consisting of a copulative verb \( (V^c) \) followed by (+) its predicate adverb complement \( (D) \). There is concord of number, gender, and person between \( N^s \) and \( V^c \). The verb is usually elided when its tense, aspect, and mood are already defined in the immediate context.

Bdellium is there (Gen. 2:12)*
And their faces were backward (Gen. 9:23)*

You are there (Gen. 13:14)*

Moses was in the mountain forty days and forty nights (Exod. 24:18)*

The ark of the LORD was in the country of the Philistines seven months. (1 Sam. 6:1)*

In the last two examples the predicate adverb is a prepositional phrase of place; the clauses are also modified by temporal adverb phrases that are not to be confused with the predicate adverb of the clause itself.

12.1.6 Possessive Copulative Clauses

The Hebrew language has no verb to express “have/possess,” but uses a syntactic idiom to express the concept of possession. The idiom employs the verb הָיָה or its equivalent והי, and thus the syntax of the idiomatic clause must be included among the copulative clauses. The structure of the possessive copulative clause is:

\[
S^p = N^s + Q^p
\]

where \(Q^p = V^c \+ \ell + N^p\). The rule is interpreted to read: A possessive copulative clause \((S^p)\) consists of \((=)\) its subject noun \((N^s)\) followed by \((+)\) a predicate \((Q^p)\) consisting of a copulative verb \((V^c)\) followed by \((+)\) the preposition \((\ell)\) followed by \((+)\) its predicate complement \((N^p)\). The verb \(V^c\) is הָיָה or its equivalent והי; \(N^p\) is the possessor and \(N^s\) is the thing possessed. Literally the clause says “There is an \(N^p\) to \(N^s\),” but this must be translated into English as “\(N^p\) has an \(N^s\).” There is concord of number, gender, and person between \(V^c\) and \(N^s\), the actual subject of the clause. The verb is usually elided when its tense, aspect, and mood are already defined in the immediate context. In the following examples, some subjects are pronouns due to a substitution transformation.
The people had brick for stone (Gen. 11:3)

Levi had no portion. (Deut. 10:9)

When the copulative verb is יש ל, it is placed first in the clause:

I have plenty. (Gen. 33:9)

I have everything. (Gen. 33:11)

Do you have a brother? (Gen. 43:7)

I have hope. (Ruth 1:12)

She had no child. (Gen. 11:30)

12.1.7 Similarity Copulative Clauses

Similarity clauses define the characteristics of a class indirectly by making comparisons with classes having similar though not identical characteristics; they express resemblance in respect to some common attribute, characteristic, appearance, and so forth. The structure of the similarity copulative clause is:

$$S^s = N^s + Q^s$$

where $Q^s = V^c + נ + N^x$. The rule is interpreted to read: A similarity copulative clause ($S^s$) consists of (=) its subject noun ($N^s$) followed by (+) a predicate ($Q^s$) consisting of a copulative verb ($V^c$) followed by (+) the preposition ($נ$) followed by (+) its similarity complement ($N^x$). The verb $V^c$ is יש ל or its equivalent יש ל; $N^s$ is the subject and $N^x$ is that to which the subject is similar. There is

---

12 See BDB, p. 226 under יש ל, II, 2, c.
concord of number, gender, and person between \( V^c \) and \( N^s \), the subject of the clause. The verb is usually elided when its tense, aspect, and mood are already defined in the immediate context.

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
N^s & V^c & N^s \\
\hline
Q^s & S^s
\end{array}
\]

Behold, the man has become like one of Us. (Gen. 3:22)

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
N^s & V^c & N^s \\
\hline
Q^s & S^s
\end{array}
\]

The number of the children of Israel shall be like the sand of the sea. (Hos. 1:10)*

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
N^s & V^c & N^s \\
\hline
Q^s & S^s
\end{array}
\]

The people were like murmurers. (Num. 11:1)*

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c}
N^s & V^c & N^s \\
\hline
Q^s & S^s
\end{array}
\]

Ephraim is like a silly dove. (Hos. 7:11)*

The people shall be as fuel for the fire. (Isa. 9:18)*

12.2 Verbal Clauses

The previous section defined the syntax of the kernel copulative clauses of Hebrew. The second major type of clause is the verbal clause. This section defines the syntax of the kernel verbal clauses of Hebrew. Verbal clauses contain finite verbs as distinguished from copulative verbs. They express a state of being, action, or relationship of one or more substantives. The basic verbal clauses are classified as follows:

A. Intransitive Clauses
   1. Intransitive Stative Clauses
   2. Intransitive Active Clauses

B. Transitive Clauses
   1. Transitive Stative Clauses
   2. Transitive Active Clauses
a. Single Object Transitive Clauses
   (1) Single accusative object clauses
   (2) Single genitive object clauses

b. Double Object Transitive Clauses
   (1) Double accusative clauses
   (2) Accusative-plus-genitive clauses
   (3) Double genitive clauses

Other types of clauses are derived from the above kernel clauses by means of transformations described in later chapters.

12.2.1 Intransitive Clauses

Intransitive clauses express states of being or action with respect to the subject alone; the verbs govern no object. The structure of the basic kernel clause is:

\[ S = N^s + Q \]

where \( Q = V^0 \) and \( N^s \) is the subject and \( V^0 \) is an intransitive verb, either stative or active, but not the copulative. There is concord of number, gender, and person between the subject and the verb.

Throughout the discussion of the syntax of verbal clauses, it is assumed that the elementary word order of kernel clauses is subject-verb-object (SVO). Scholars do not agree on the word order of Hebrew clauses. Some prefer the SVO order, whereas others prefer VSO. Those who prefer the VSO order seem to justify their choice by statistical evidence derived from studies of surface structure—that is, there are more VSO clauses in the Hebrew Old Testament than any other type. However, this can be explained by the abundance of historical narrative in which clauses with \( Waw \) consecutive predominate. It seems evident that clauses with \( Waw \) consecutive have experienced a transformation that grants the verb first position prominence so that the verbal action may be sequentially coordinated with that of preceding verbs. The SVO order predominates in coordinate clauses without \( Waw \) consecutive. Since it is less likely that these clauses have experienced

---

13 For finite verbs, the numerical superscript with symbol \( V \) indicates the number of predicate complements it governs. Thus \( V^0 \) refers to an intransitive verb; \( V^1 \) refers to a transitive verb that governs one predicate complement; and \( V^2 \) refers to doubly transitive verbs.

14 So Joseph H. Greenberg in “Some Universals of Grammar with Particular Reference to the order of Meaningful Elements,” *Report of a Conference on Language Acquisition Held at Dodds Ferry, New York, April 13-15, 1961* (Cambridge, Mass.: MIT Press, 1963). B. K. Waltke and M. O’Connor in *An Introduction to Biblical Hebrew Syntax* (Winona Lake, IN: Eisenbrauns, 1990), seem to prefer the VSO order on the basis of their observation that the governing element generally precedes the governed (p. 53); but intuition favors the idea that the subject governs the verb, and the verb governs the object.
prominence transformations, it is more probable that their word order represents that of the elementary kernel clause.\(^\text{15}\)

**12.2.1.1 Intransitive Stative Clauses.** In intransitive stative clauses, the verb expresses a state of being of the subject that involves no expressed or implied relationship with an object. These clauses have the following characteristics:

1. They are the equivalent of an attribute copulative clause, that is, a predicate adjective clause (see previous discussion of that type of clause § 12.1.4).
2. They frequently are translated into English by BE + Adjective, although English has some stative verbs.
3. The participle of the verb is an adjective.
4. An adverbial modifier of the clause is limited to adverbs of time, space, degree, or intensity—that is, adverbs that may modify adjectives.
5. They do not undergo passive or reflexive transformations.
6. They may undergo comparative transformations.
7. The morphology of the verb usually follows the pattern of the \(i\) or \(u\) class thematic vowel in the perfect conjugation. That is, the perfect is inflected after the pattern \(\text{kispel}\) or \(\text{kispel}\), and the imperfect is inflected after the pattern \(\text{kipel}\).

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{קִפֶל} \text{כּוּרֶה} \text{רַעֲבַר} \\
V^0 \quad N^0 \\
Q \quad | \\
S
\end{array}
\]

The young lions lack, and suffer hunger. (Psa. 34:11) [compound predicate]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{לָאֵין} \text{כּוּרֶה} \\
V^0 \quad N^0 \\
Q \quad | \\
S
\end{array}
\]

And I am old. (Gen. 18:13)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{נִלֵלַרְמֵשׂ} \text{גָּדוֹל} \\
V^0 \quad N^0 \\
Q \quad | \\
S
\end{array}
\]

The young men . . . had grown up with him. (1 Kgs. 12:8)*

---

\(^{15}\) Dorit Ravid, in “Several Aspects of the Problem of the Order of Elements in General Israeli Hebrew,” *Hebrew Computational Linguistics, Bulletin* No. 11 (February 1977), pp. 1-46, rejects Greenberg’s classification of Hebrew as a VSO language. He substantiated Hebrew as a SVO language by transformational tests on native speakers of Hebrew. Although the debate between Greenberg and Ravid concerns Modern Hebrew, the results have considerable relevance for Biblical Hebrew, and the use of transformational tests is significant.
Sometimes stative verbs in Hebrew are used to express the idea of acquiring a state, as in the last two examples above.

12.2.1.2 Intransitive Active Clauses. In intransitive active clauses, the verb expresses an activity that involves the subject alone. No recipient of the action is expressed or implied. Intransitive active clauses have the following characteristics:

(1) They do not undergo passive or reflexive transformations.
(2) They usually are translated into English with the equivalent intransitive active verb.
(3) An adverbial modifier is limited to those that may modify verbs but not adjectives.

Their widows will not weep (Psa. 78:64)

the moon stood still (Josh. 10:13)

And the Angel of the LORD departed out of his sight (Judg. 6:21)

Sometimes a transitive verb is used absolutely or with its object elided because its identity is understood from the context. In an expository analysis, such transitive verbs should not be confused with intransitive ones, but should be treated as what they really are—transitive; the elided object should be restored.

Sometimes it is difficult to distinguish an adverbial prepositional phrase from an object governed by a preposition. The test for distinguishing intransitive active clauses from transitive active clauses with an object governed by means of a preposition is as follows:

(1) Omission of the prepositional phrase will not change the essential meaning of the intransitive active clause, as in the example from 2 Kgs. 13:6 above. Omitting the phrase “in Samaria” does not change the meaning of the intransitive active clause.
not change the meaning of the clause. The phrase answers the question “Where?” and functions as an adverb.

(2) Omission of the prepositional phrase will change the essential meaning of a transitive active clause, or it will leave the clause incomplete; in this case the prepositional phrase is necessary to the clause and serves the function of an object.

12.2.2 Transitive Clauses

In a transitive clause the verb governs one or more objects. Active transitive clauses express an action of the subject upon or with respect to the object(s). Stative transitive clauses express some state or relationship existing between the subject and the object(s). Some transitive verbs govern objects in the accusative case, others govern objects in the genitive case by means of a preposition.

12.2.2.1 Transitive Stative Clauses. Transitive stative clauses express some state or relationship between the subject and the object(s) that is more or less permanent. This contrasts with transitive active clauses that express activities as events that are more or less transitory. Transitive stative verbs usually follow the morphology of the $i$ or $u$ class thematic vowel in the perfect. That is, the perfect is inflected after the pattern קָשָׁל or קָפָל, and the imperfect is inflected after the pattern קָפָל; also the participle is vocalized after the pattern קָפָל rather than the active pattern קָפָל. Otherwise the syntax of these clauses is the same as that of the active clauses. Therefore, no separate description of the syntax of transitive stative clauses is given here.

אַבְׁשָלוֹם שָנֵָּ֤א אֶת־אַמְׁנֵּ֔וֹן
Absalom hated Amnon (2 Sam. 13:22)*

יִשְׁרָאֵָ֗ל אהַָּ֤ב אֶת־יוֹסֵףֹ֙ מִכָל־בָנֵָּ֔ו
Israel loved Joseph more than all his children (Gen. 37:3)

12.2.2.2 Transitive Active Clauses. Transitive active clauses express an action of the subject upon or with respect to the object(s). The activity is usually viewed as an event rather than a state or relationship. Some transitive verbs govern objects in the accusative case, whereas others govern objects in the genitive case by means of a preposition.

12.2.2.2.1 In single object transitive clauses, the verb expresses an action or relationship between the subject and a single object. The object may be (1) in the accusative case, or (2) in the genitive case governed by a preposition.
(1) In transitive clauses with objects in the accusative case, the verb may be either active or stative. The structure of the basic kernel clause is:

\[ S = N^s + Q \]

where \( Q = V^1 + N^o \) and \( N^s \) is the subject, \( N^o \) is the accusative object, and \( V^1 \) is the transitive-1 verb (either active or stative). There is concord of number, gender, and person between \( N^s \) and \( V^1 \). When \( N^o \) is determinate it is usually preceded by the sign of the determinate accusative \( הַמָּלָע \) which is otherwise omitted; it is frequently omitted in poetry, and occasionally in prose even when the object is determinate. The clause has the following characteristics:

(a) It may undergo the passive, reflexive, and causative transformations.
(b) It is translated into English by the corresponding transitive active verb whenever one exists. However, the English verb may govern its object in the accusative case, or in the genitive case by means of a preposition, as the English idiom may require.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
N^o \\
\downarrow \\
Q \\
\uparrow \\
V^1 \\
\downarrow \\
N^s \\
\end{array}
\]

Adam knew Eve his wife (Gen. 4:1)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
N^o \\
\downarrow \\
Q \\
\uparrow \\
V^1 \\
\downarrow \\
N^s \\
\end{array}
\]

And behold, now Jacob has taken away my blessing. (Gen. 27:36)*

\[
\begin{array}{c}
N^o \\
\downarrow \\
Q \\
\uparrow \\
V^1 \\
\downarrow \\
N^s \\
\end{array}
\]

The priests and the Levites received the weight of silver. (Ezr. 8:30)*

\[
\begin{array}{c}
N^o \\
\downarrow \\
Q \\
\uparrow \\
V^1 \\
\downarrow \\
N^s \\
\end{array}
\]

Worms clothe my flesh. (Literal) (Job 7:5)*

The second and third examples illustrate the omission of an expected \( הַמָּלָע \). The fourth example illustrates its omission in poetry.

(2) In transitive clauses with single genitive objects, the verb (active or stative) governs the object in the genitive case by means of a preposition. The structure of the clause is:
\[ S = N^s + Q \]

where \( Q = V^1 + P + N^o \) and \( N^s \) is the subject, \( N^o \) is the object, \( V^1 \) is the transitive-1 verb, and \( P \) is the preposition by means of which \( V^1 \) governs \( N^o \). The specific nuance of the verb is determined by the preposition \( P \) and by the kind of object named by \( N^o \). The clause has the following characteristics:

(a) It may undergo passive, reflexive, and causative transformations.

(b) It is translated into English with the corresponding transitive verb whenever one exists. However, the English verb may govern its object in the accusative case, or in the genitive by means of a preposition, as the English idiom may require. The English preposition (if any) may not seem to correspond to the literal sense of the Hebrew preposition.

The simple believes every word (Prov. 14:15)

Aaron and Hur supported his hands (Exod. 17:12)

Now Adonijah was afraid of Solomon (1 Kgs. 1:50)

Pharaoh was angry with his servants (Gen. 41:10)

The first two examples illustrate the use of accusative objects in the English translation, and the third illustrates the use of an English preposition (“of”) differing from the Hebrew preposition (יָד = “from”) in literal sense.
12.2.2.2 **In double object transitive clauses**, the verb expresses an action or relationship between the subject and two objects each of which may enter into the action or relationship in a different manner. Either object may be (1) in the accusative case, or (2) in the genitive case governed by a preposition. The double object clause has the following characteristics:

(a) It may undergo the passive transformation and the reflexive transformation, but not the causative transformation.

(b) It is translated into English with the equivalent double object verb (when one exists). Often the English verb may govern either object with a preposition in order to express the correct sense. At times English will have no equivalent double object verb, and the translation must be handled in a different manner. This problem is discussed in a later chapter.

(1) In the double accusative clause, the verb governs both objects in the accusative case. The structure of the basic kernel clause is:

\[ S = N^s + Q \]

where \( Q = V^2 + N^{o1} + N^{o2} \) and \( N^s \) is the subject, \( V^2 \) is the double accusative verb, and \( N^{o1} \) and \( N^{o2} \) are the first and second accusative objects respectively.\(^{16}\) When either \( N^{o1} \) or \( N^{o2} \) is determinate it is preceded by \( \text{ta@} \), otherwise it is omitted; it is frequently omitted in poetry, and occasionally in prose even when the object is determinate.

\[
\begin{array}{c|ccc|c}
& N^{o2} & N^{o1} & V^2 & N^s \\
\hline
Q \quad S
\end{array}
\]

His brothers stripped Joseph of his tunic (Gen. 37:23)*

\[
\begin{array}{c|ccc|c}
& N^{o2} & N^{o1} & V^2 & N^s \\
\hline
Q \quad S
\end{array}
\]

The priest shall cause the woman to drink the water. (Num. 5:26)*

\[
\begin{array}{c|ccc|c}
& N^{o2} & N^{o1} & V^2 & N^s \\
\hline
Q \quad S
\end{array}
\]

You shall make two cherubs of gold. (Exod. 25:18)

I taught you statutes and judgments. (Deut. 4:5)

---

\(^{16}\) There are 192 potential double accusative clauses of this basic structure besides those that have been modified by transformations.
In the accusative-plus-genitive clauses, the verb governs one object in the accusative case and the other in the genitive by means of a preposition. The clause has the same characteristics as the double accusative clause. Although some grammarians may call the genitive object an indirect object, nevertheless it is an object; the clause is left incomplete without it. Sometimes the English translation may be rendered with or without a preposition. The structure of the accusative-plus-genitive clause is:

$$S = N^s + Q$$

Where $Q = V^2 + N^{o1} + P + N^{o2}$ and $N^s$ is the subject, $V^2$ is the accusative-plus-genitive verb, $N^{o1}$ is the accusative object, $N^{o2}$ is the genitive object, and $P$ is the preposition by means of which $V^2$ governs $N^{o2}$. When $N^{o1}$ is determinate, it is preceded by $ז$ otherwise it is omitted; it is frequently omitted in poetry, and occasionally in prose even when the object is determinate.

The LORD will repay the coastlands recompence. (Isa. 59:18)*

A man was telling his companion a dream. (Judg. 7:13)*

The Jews defeated all their enemies with the stroke of the sword. (Est. 9:5)*

In the last example (Est. 9:5) the Hebrew verb governs the direct object with the preposition ב, and the other object in the accusative (lit. “The Jews smote in all their enemies a stroke of a sword.”).

___

17 For example: I gave money to your brother; I gave your brother money.
(3) In the double genitive clauses, the verb governs both objects in the genitive by means of prepositions. The clause has the same characteristics as the double accusative clause. Although some grammarians may call the genitive object an indirect object, nevertheless it is an object; the clause is left incomplete without it. Sometimes the English translation may be rendered with or without a preposition. The structure of the genitive-plus-genitive clause is:

$$S = N^s + Q$$

Where $Q = V^2 + P_1 + N^{o1} + P_2 + N^{o2}$ and $N^s$ is the subject, $V^2$ is the double genitive verb, $N^{o1}$ is the first genetive object, $N^{o2}$ is the second genitive object, and $P_1$ is the preposition by means of which $V^2$ governs $N^{o1}$ and $P_2$ is the preposition by means of which $V^2$ governs $N^{o2}$.

$\text{כִָּ֤י אִם־עֲוֹנָֹּֽתֵיכֶםֹ֙ הָיִ֣וּ מַבְׁדִֵּ֔ים}$

$N^{o2} \quad P_2 \quad N^{o1} \quad P_1 \quad V^2 \quad N^s$

$\text{בֵֵ֥ין כֶַּ֕ם לְׁבֵ֖ין אֱלָֹֽהֵיכֶָ֑ם}$

$Q \quad S$

But your iniquities are separating you from your God (Isa. 59:2)$^{18}$

$\text{רָָקִֶ֖יעַ יְׁהִֵ֥י מַבְׁדִֵּ֔יל בֵֵ֥ין מֶַ֖יִם לָ}$$

$N^{o2} \quad P_2 \quad N^{o1} \quad P_1 \quad V^2 \quad N^s$

$Q \quad S$

let the firmament be dividing the waters from the waters. (Gen. 1:6)*

### 12.2.3 Adjuncts

Adjuncts are phrases that may be added to a clause containing supplemental information relating to time, place, manner, etc. They may even contain side remarks. These may all be regarded as the product of a transformation on a dependent subordinate clause (discussed in § 19.4.3).

### 12.3 Transformational Relationships Among Active Clauses

The above definitions of the structure of kernel clauses ignore important transformational interrelationships among the clause types that exist because of the inherent semantic relationships between the various stems of a verbal root. A given verbal root may have a stative stem, an active stem, an intensive stem, and a causative stem. Each of these may have its corresponding passive, middle, and reflexive stems. Some of these stems will be intransitive, and others will be single- or double-object transitive verbs. Generally speaking, it might be anticipated that any clause using

---

$^{18}$ Note that $N^{o1}$ is the restored antecedent of the pronoun suffix attached to $P_1$. And $V^1$ is a verb phrase consisting of $וֹלֵּֽת$ with a participle expressing the past durative.
a derived stem of a verb may be regarded as the result of a transformation on a simpler clause using the base stem of the same verb. Thus, a double object clause might be regarded as having originated from a transformation on a single object clause, and a single object clause might be regarded as having originated from a transformation on an intransitive clause. This supposition is valid, and such transformational relationships can be demonstrated and are discussed in more detail in chapter 13.

Taking the causative transformation as an example, a double-object transitive clause may be derived from a stative intransitive clause as follows:

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>הַכַד מָלֵֶ֖א — The jar is full. (Stative intransitive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>מַיִם מָלֵֶ֖א אֶת־הַכַד — Water fills the jar. (Stative single transitive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>הוּא מִלֵֶ֖א אֶת־הַכַד מַיִם — He filled the jar with water (active double transitive)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this case, the Hebrew verb uses the *qal* stem for both the intransitive and transitive mode. The double-object transitive stem of the verb is the *piel*, and the subject of the first clause became the second object of the transformed clause.

Having noted these relationships, it also must be noted that the Hebrew language has no consistent semantic correspondence between the morphological stems of the verbs, apart from the passive, middle, and reflexive stems. The mapping of the semantic relationships between the *qal*, *piel*, and *hiphil* stems of the various Hebrew verbs requires considerable research, and the results may not be of much practical value. Therefore, this present work defines the structure of the individual clause types without taking the above interrelationships into further consideration. This restriction does not apply to the passive, middle, and reflexive modes, however, because there is considerable consistency with them. They are discussed in the next chapter under modal transformations on clauses (§ 13.5).

### 12.4 Summary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Copulative Clauses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Existential clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Identity clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Predicate adverb clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Possessive copulative clause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Similarity copulative clause \( S^s = N^s + Q^s \) where \( Q^s = V^c + \sum = + N^x \).

**Verbal Clauses**

Intransitive clause \( S = N^s + Q \) where \( Q = V^0 \)

Transitive-1 Clause

(1) with single object in the accusative case
\( S = N^s + Q \) where \( Q = V^1 + N^o \)

(2) with single object in genitive case
\( S = N^s + Q \) where \( Q = V^1 + P + N^o \)

Transitive-2 Clause

(1) with two objects in the accusative case
\( S = N^s + Q \) where \( Q = V^2 + N^{o1} + N^{o2} \)

(2) with one object in the accusative case and the other in the genitive
\( S = N^s + Q \) where \( Q = V^2 + N^{o1} + P + N^{o2} \)

(3) with two objects in the genitive case
\( S = N^s + Q \) where \( Q = V^2 + P_1 + N^{o1} + P_2 + N^{o2} \)
CHAPTER 13
Transformations on Hebrew Clauses

The syntax of the kernel structures of Hebrew clauses is defined in Chapter 12. By definition, kernel clauses are in the active voice, indicative mood, and declarative mode, with a fixed word order. This is regarded as the encoding of the basic information of the clause. Any departure from the kernel structure of a clause is accomplished by a transformation that modifies the default information or adds new information. This new or altered information is of interest and importance to the expositor. This chapter is designed to help the expositor recognize such information and incorporate it into his analysis. Transformations define the structural variations that a clause may assume, and the information encoded in each structural variation.

Transformations also are involved in defining the external relationships that a clause may assume. A clause may be used to modify a part of speech or another clause, or it may be interrelated with other clauses to form meaningful discourse. Transformations that affect only the structure of an individual clause are called clause transformations. Those that relate a clause to a part of speech are called phrase transformations, and those that interrelate clauses into meaningful sequences of discourse are called sequence transformations. This chapter defines the principal clause transformations of Biblical Hebrew. Phrase transformations are discussed in chapters 14 through 17 and sequence transformations in 19.

Clause transformations affect only the structure of an individual clause and do not consider any of its external relationships. Such conditions as compound parts of speech, pronoun substitution, adjuncts, and elision are defined by sequence transformations and do not enter into the discussion at this level. Clause transformations assume that all the constituents of the clause are present but not necessarily in kernel structure. There are five types of clause transformations that alter the kernel structure of Hebrew clauses: (1) negation transformations, (2) voice transformations,
(3) causative transformations, (4) prominence transformations, and (5) mode transformations. Each transformation has two or more options.

13.1 Negation Transformations

The syntax of a kernel clause is defined as a positive declaration. If a clause is to be framed as a negative declaration, a negation transformation must be invoked. Negation must not be regarded as an independent function of each part of speech in a clause. It is true that in this work negation is declared to be a characteristic of each part of speech, but the definition of the negation attribute as positive or negative must be accomplished at the clause level, not at the word level. In meaningful discourse, the negated clause is of primary importance, not the negated part of speech. A negated part of speech is the mechanism for negating a clause. The logic of negation is quite subtle. The choice of negation patterns among the parts of speech in a clause reflects a variety of shades of meaning; it may facilitate an economy or precision of expression; or it may accommodate a desirable nuance of style. The logic of negation in Hebrew requires further research to define many of its subtle nuances. This section defines the transformations required to provide negation for clauses.

A part of speech may be negated in two ways: (1) by defining its negation attribute as negative, thus invoking a prepositive negative particle such as ָ, or (2) by choosing the antonym of the given part of speech. Negative particles are discussed in § 11.5.

from an ungodly nation (Psa. 43:1) [negation by particle]
against an ungodly nation (Isa. 10:6) [negation by antonym]

In the following discussion, either means of negation is assumed to be valid.

13.1.1 The General Negation Transformation

In the general case, a clause is negated by negating one of its principal parts of speech, such as the subject, the verb, the object, the predicate nominative, the predicate adjective, or the predicate adverb. The choice is determined by which one should receive the prominence. The rule is

1 In certain moods, the negated verb takes the prepositive ָ instead of ָ. See chapter 5 under the discussion of mood. The negated form of the existential verb (ָ) is ֶ,.
(1) \[ S(\neg) = N^\circ(\neg) + V + N^o + D \]
\[ S(\neg) = N^s + V(\neg) + N^o + D \]
\[ S(\neg) = N^s + V + N^o(\neg) + D \]
or
\[ S(\neg) = N^s + V + N^o + D(\neg) \]

Also Judah did not keep the commandments of the LORD their God (2 Kgs. 17:19)

(2 Kgs. 17:19) (Negated verb)

And dishonest scales are not good. (Prov. 20:23)

(Prov. 20:23) (Negated predicate adjective with elided verb)

Henceforth your name shall be called not Jacob, but Israel. (Gen. 32:29)*

(Gen. 32:29) (Negated object)

It was not you who sent me here, but God. (Gen. 45:8)

(Gen. 45:8) (Negated subject)

The LORD has not sent me. (Num. 16:29)

(Num. 16:29) (Negated subject)

For they have rejected not you, but Me they have rejected from reigning over them. (1 Sam. 8:7)

(1 Sam. 8:7) (Negated object)

While the earth remains,
Seedtime and harvest,
And cold and heat,
And winter and summer,
And day and night,
Shall not cease. (Gen. 8:22) (Negated verb)

Note that when the subject or object is negated, it receives some prominence and an alternative usually is stated or implied. This is not necessarily the case for the negated verb; this sug-
gests that the clause is negated through the verb in the general case and through the other constituents in the special case.

13.1.2 The Special Negation Transformation

In the special case where the verb is to be negated and it is in the durative aspect and current tense, that is, the verb phrase consists of the participle without the auxiliary verb הָיָה, the syntax of the negated clause is as follows:

\[(1a) \quad S(\text{neg}) = \text{ulti} + S(\text{pos})\]

If the subject of S becomes a pronoun immediately following הָיָה, then it is attached to הָיָה as a suffix. However, if the word order of S is altered by a transformation so that the pronoun does not immediately follow הָיָה, then the pronoun will stand alone in the nominative. In some cases, הָיָה may take an anticipatory pronoun suffix in concord agreement with the named subject for number, gender, and person.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{וַגֶּהֶן} & \quad \text{אָנָּיוֹן} \text{יםָּכָה יַכָּה} \\
& \quad \text{And behold, Joseph was not in the pit. (Gen. 37:29)}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{אֲלַי} & \quad \text{הַבְּּוֹר} \\
& \quad \text{The keeper of the prison did not look into anything that was under his hand. (Gen. 39:23)}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{אָלָי} & \quad \text{הַכָּפָלָכָם} \\
& \quad \text{The LORD is not among you. (Num. 14:42)}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{אֲנַנְּי} & \quad \text{לֵךְ} \quad \text{נָהָר} \\
& \quad \text{I am not giving you straw. (Exod. 5:10)}
\end{align*}
\]

(Sound is a pronoun suffix)

13.1.3 Other Uses of Negation

Other uses of negation occur in Hebrew, such as negated prepositional phrases, negated infinitive phrases, and so forth. Negations like these are made in subsequent transformations, and are not defined at this level.

13.2 Voice Transformations

Kernel clauses are in the active voice by definition. The active voice gives role prominence to the doer of the deed (the agent) by making it the subject of the verb. Voice transformations are

---

2 This also includes the negated copulative clause in the durative aspect and current tense.

3 GKC § 152 i-q discusses the various nuances implied when negating a clause in this manner, and when granting various parts of speech position prominence.
used to change role prominence in some manner. There are three types of voice transformations: (1) the passive transformations, (2) the reflexive transformations, and (3) the middle transformations.

### 13.2.1 Passive Transformations

The passive voice grants role prominence to the recipient of the verbal action by making it the subject of the verb, by changing the verb to its corresponding passive stem, and by placing the doer of the deed in a phrase of agency. Obviously, this transformation can be performed only on transitive clauses. This is expressed formally as

\[
\text{Given: } S(\text{act}) = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + N_2(\text{acc}) + \text{etc.} \\
\text{then: } S(\text{pas}) = N_2(\text{nom}) + V(\text{pas}) + B = N_1(\text{gen}) + \text{etc.}
\]

The object \((N_2)\) of the verb in the kernel clause becomes the subject of the transformed clause in the nominative case; the verb \((V)\) is changed to its corresponding passive stem\(^4\) inflected in concord agreement with its new subject \((N_2)\) for number, gender, and person; and what was the subject \((N_1)\) in the kernel clause becomes the agent governed by the preposition \(B\)\(^5\) in the genitive case. The rest of the clause (if any) remains unchanged.

\[\begin{array}{c}
N_2 & V^{\text{act}} & N_1 \\
\text{S(\text{act})}
\end{array}\]

- The LORD commanded my lord (active) . . .
- \[\begin{array}{c}
N_1 & V^{\text{act}} & N_2 \\
\text{S(pas)}
\end{array}\]
- and my lord was commanded by the LORD (passive) (Num. 36:2)*

---

\(^4\) There is rather consistent correspondence between the active and passive meaning of the Hebrew verbal stems: the *qal* stem finds its passive meaning expressed by the *niphal*, the *piel* by the *pual*, and the *hiphil* by the *hophal*. The *hithpael* occasionally expresses the passive voice for some verbs.

\(^5\) Gesenius (GKC § 121 f) states that the agent is governed by \(\partial\), but his examples mostly employ participles rather than finite verbs. Passive participles have special means for expressing agency that do not apply to the general case involving finite verbs. (See BDB p. 514 under \(\partial\), meaning 5e; also see BDB p. 89 under \(\Xi\), meaning 2c; also see RJW 245, 280.)
(b) The LORD saved Israel (active) (1 Sam. 14:23)*

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Y} & \text{N}_2 & \text{V}_{\text{act}} & \text{N}_1 \\
\text{N}_1 & \text{V}_{\text{act}} & \text{N}_2 & \text{Q}
\end{array}
\]

The LORD saved Israel (active) (1 Sam. 14:23)*

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Y} & \text{N}_2 & \text{V}_{\text{pas}} & \text{N}_1 \\
\text{N}_1 & \text{V}_{\text{pas}} & \text{N}_2 & \text{Q}
\end{array}
\]

Israel shall be saved by the LORD. (passive) (Isa. 45:17)

(c) He who sheds man’s blood (active)

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Y} & \text{N}_2 & \text{V}_{\text{act}} & \text{N}_1 \\
\text{N}_1 & \text{V}_{\text{act}} & \text{N}_2 & \text{Q}
\end{array}
\]

His blood shall be shed by man. (passive) (Gen. 9:6)*

13.2.1.1 In many passive clauses found in the Old Testament, the agent has been elided. Such elision is accounted for by subsequent transformations that reduce redundant information. It is not necessary to account for elision in this present transformation. For the sake of illustration the following examples are given with elided agents.

He was taken from prison and from judgment. (Isa. 53:8)

It shall be recounted of the Lord to the next generation. (Psa. 22:31)

These days should be remembered and kept by every generation, every family, every province, and every city. (Est. 9:28)

13.2.1.2 Double object clauses usually have one object expressing the recipient of the action and a second object expressing an auxiliary relationship. These clauses may undergo the passive transformation defined by rule (2) where \(N_2\) represents the recipient object, not the auxiliary object.

She filled the skin with water. (Gen. 21:19) (active)
Chapter 13  Clause Transformations  332

13.2.1.3 The Impersonal Passive. Hebrew has an impersonal passive idiom in which the verb is in the passive stem, but the recipient remains in the accusative. The verb has an elided indefinite subject. The transformation is as follows:

\[(2a) \quad \text{Given: } S = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + N_2(\text{acc}) + \text{etc.} \]
\[
\text{then: } S(\text{pas}) = V(\text{pas}) + N_2(\text{acc}) + \text{etc.}
\]

There was told to Rebekah the words of Esau.

or

Esau’s words were told to Rebekah. (Gen. 27:42)

13.2.2 The Reflexive Transformation

In the basic transitive verbal clause, the subject (the doer of the deed) acts upon the object (the recipient of the deed), and it is understood that the subject and object are different. The reflexive transformation is used to express the fact that the subject and object are the same, that is, the subject is acting upon himself. There are four types of reflexive transformations: (1) the reflexive stem transformation, (2) the “self” transformation, (3) the reflexive pronoun transformation, and (4) the partial reflexive transformation.

13.2.2.1 The Reflexive Stem Transformation. One of the most common means of expressing the reflexive voice is to use one of the reflexive stems of the verb. If the verb of the kernel clause is in the Qal stem, the reflexive voice is usually expressed by the Niphal stem; and if the kernel verb is in the Piel stem, the reflexive voice is usually expressed by the Hithpael stem. However, the lexicon must be consulted for the correct reflexive stem of any given verb. In this transformation the kernel verb is changed to its corresponding reflexive stem, and the object of the kernel clause is deleted. This is expressed formally as

\[\text{In the notation, the constituents enclosed in brackets [ ] are the ones elided.}\]
(3) Given: $S = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + N_1(\text{acc}) + \text{etc.}$
then: $S(\text{refl}) = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{refl}) [-N_1(\text{acc})] + \text{etc.}$

Or
Given: $S = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + P + N_1(\text{gen}) + \text{etc.}$
then: $S(\text{refl}) = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{refl}) [-P - N_1(\text{gen})] + \text{etc.}$

Given:

יְֶּׁ֭הוָה אִזֵר
The LORD is girded with strength (Psa. 93:1)*
then:

יְֶּׁ֭הוָה עֹז
The LORD has girded Himself with strength (Psa. 93:1)

הַמִֶ֣לֶךְ רְׁחַבְׁעָָ֗ם
King Rehoboam strengthened himself (1 Kgs. 12:18)

ואֶמֶ֥זִּיאֹ֖ת
And Amaziah strengthened himself (2 Chr. 25:11)

13.2.2.2 The Self Transformation. Another common method of expressing the reflexive voice is to substitute one of the Hebrew words for “self” in place of the object of the verb. This method would be necessary in case a given verb had no reflexive stem. In this case the kernel verb remains in its active stem. The most common word for “self” is נָּ֣שָׁ֗ה (lit. soul = self). This is expressed formally as

(3a) Given: $S = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + N_1(\text{acc}) + \text{etc.}$
then: $S(\text{refl}) = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + \text{“SELF”}(\text{acc}) + \text{etc.}$

Or
Given: $S = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + P + N_1(\text{gen}) + \text{etc.}$
then: $S(\text{refl}) = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + P + \text{“SELF”}(\text{gen}) + \text{etc.}$

where “SELF” is in agreement with $N_1$ for number unless it is construed as a collective singular.

---

*The word נָּ֣שָׁ֗ה is used over 50 times in the Old Testament to express the reflexive (BDB, p. 660). The word שֶׁ֥נֶּ֑ם (lit. bone = self) is used at times to mean “self,” but not in the reflexive transformation (BDB, p. 782-83).
Chapter 13  Clause Transformations  334

Given:

משכה ישראל חקקה משכה ישראל מְשָׁכָה יִשְׂרָאֵל המְשָׁכָה יִשְׂרָאֵל
Backsliding Israel has shown backsliding Israel more righteous than treacherous Judah. (Jer. 3:11)*

then:

משכה ישראל חקקה משכה עצירה מדרכה הוהה: Backsliding Israel has shown herself more righteous than treacherous Judah. (Jer. 3:11)*

לְאָרְא אֲרֵי
I do not know myself. (Job 9:21)

וּשְׁמַר נְפָשְׁךָ עָמָּד
Diligently keep yourself. (Deut. 4:9)

אַלְּהַשְׁאַר נְפָשְׁךָם
Do not deceive yourselves. (Jer. 37:9)*

13.2.2.3 The Reflexive Pronoun Transformation. An alternative to the “self” transformation above, Hebrew expresses the reflexive by substituting a personal pronoun in place of the object of the verb. Hebrew has no reflexive pronouns as do English and Greek. The pronoun must agree with the subject in number, gender, and person. This is expressed formally as

(3b)  Given: $S = N_1$(nom) + V(act) + $N_1$(acc) + etc.
then: $S$(refl) = $N_1$(nom) + V(act) + $R_1$(acc) + etc.

Or

Given: $S = N_1$(nom) + V(act) + P + $N_1$(gen) + etc.
then: $S$(refl) = $N_1$(nom) + V(act) + P + $R_1$(gen) + etc.

Given:

בָּנָיִי מַכְלֵיָּה לְבָנָיִי
His sons made his sons vile. (1 Sam. 3:13)*

then:

בָּנָיִי מַכְלֵיָּה לְבָנָיִי
His sons made themselves vile. (1 Sam. 3:13)*

שׁפֶרֶר בֶּן-יִשְׂרָאֵל רָא אָם בָּרִי The officers of the Children of Israel saw themselves in trouble. (Exod. 5:19)

וַתִּצְוָה לָהֶם
Will they fortify themselves? (Neh. 3:34; 4:2 Eng.)

8 See also 1 Kgs. 19:4; Job 18:4; 32:2; Isa. 47:14.

9 The symbol $R$ represents a pronoun.
13.2.2.4 The Partial Reflexive Transformation. At times the subject of the verb may be acting upon himself and upon others. In this case, the reflexive pronoun or word for “self” is included as part of a compound object in the reflexive pronoun transformation above.

The Jews imposed it upon themselves and upon their descendants. (Est. 9:27)*

13.2.3 The Middle Transformation

Sometimes the subject may be acting for his own benefit or on his own behalf. This can be true of both transitive and intransitive clauses. There are four types of middle transformations: (1) the middle stem transformation, (2) the “self” transformation, (3) the reflexive pronoun transformation, and (4) the partial middle transformation.10

13.2.3.1 The Middle Stem Transformation. One of the most common means of expressing the middle voice is to use one of the middle stems of the verb. If the verb of the kernel clause is in the Qal stem, the middle voice is usually expressed by the Niphal stem; and if the kernel verb is in the Piel stem, the middle voice is usually expressed by the Hithpael stem. However, the lexicon must be consulted for the correct middle stem of any given verb. In this transformation the kernel verb is changed to its corresponding middle stem without any change to the rest of the clause. This is expressed formally as

(4) Given: \( S = N_1(nom) + V(act) + \text{etc.} \)
    then: \( S(mid) = N_1(nom) + V(mid) + \text{etc.} \)

Given:

\( נִשְׁאֹל נִשְׁאַֹ֙ל מִמֶָּ֤נִי דָוִדֹ֙ לָרוּץֹ֙ בֵָּֽית־לִֶ֣חֶם עִירֵּ֔וֹ \)

David earnestly asked for himself of me to run over to Bethlehem, his city (1 Sam. 20:6)

then:

\( נִשְׁאַֹל נִשְׁאֹל מִמֶָּ֤נִי דָוִדֹ֙ לָרוּץֹ֙ בֵָּֽית־לִֶ֣חֶם עִירֵּ֔וֹ \)

I requested leave for myself from the king. (Neh. 13:6)

13.2.3.2 The Self Transformation. Another means for expressing the middle voice is to add a prepositional “self” phrase. The preposition expresses the specific nuance of benefit, and the

---

10 For a discussion of the difference between the passive and middle voice, see § 5.6.4.
word “self” expresses the middle idea. The same word for “self” is used here as in the reflexive transformation above. This is expressed formally as

\[(4a) \quad \text{Given: } S = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + \text{etc.} \]
\[ \text{then: } S(\text{mid}) = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + P + \text{SELF} + \text{etc.} \]

As they had decreed for themselves and their descendants. (Est. 9:31)

13.2.3.3 The Reflexive Pronoun Transformation. Another means for expressing the middle voice is to add a prepositional pronoun phrase. The preposition expresses the specific nuance of benefit, and the pronoun expresses the middle idea. The pronoun must be in agreement with the subject for number, gender, and person. This is expressed formally as

\[(4b) \quad \text{Given: } S = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + \text{etc.} \]
\[ \text{then: } S(\text{mid}) = N_1(\text{nom}) + V(\text{act}) + P + R(\text{gen}) + \text{etc.} \]

They made themselves coverings. (Gen. 3:7)

Let them go and gather straw for themselves. (Exod. 5:7)

13.2.3.4 The Partial Middle Transformation. At times the subject of the verb may be acting on behalf of himself and others. In this case, the reflexive pronoun or word for “self” is included as part of a compound prepositional phrase as in the reflexive pronoun transformation above.

As they decree for themselves and their descendants. (Est. 9:31)

13.3 Causative Transformations

In Hebrew, the relationship between intransitive clauses, transitive-1 clauses, and transitive-2 clauses can often be explained as the result of causative transformations. That is, an intransitive clause can be made a transitive-1 clause by introducing a causing agent; and a transitive-1 clause can be made a transitive-2 clause by introducing a second causing agent. If this were universally true in Hebrew, then the syntax of the kernel clauses would be simpler. However, it seems impossible to map these relationships for all Hebrew verbs. Therefore, this section is included for the sake of completeness, but is not incorporated into the syntax of kernel clauses.

13.3.1 Causative Transformation on Intransitive Clauses

An intransitive clause may be transformed into a transitive-1 clause by means of a causative transformation. This is expressed formally as
Chapter 13  
Clause Transformations  

(5)  
Given: \[ S(\text{intr}) = N_1(\text{nom}) + V^0 \]  
then: \[ S(\text{caus}) = N_2(\text{nom}) + V^1(\text{caus}) + N_1(\text{acc}) \]

where \( S(\text{intr}) \) is an intransitive clause defining the action or state of its subject \( N_1 \), and \( S(\text{caus}) \) is the same clause transformed into its causative form with a named causing agent \( N_2 \). What was the subject \( (N_1) \) of the intransitive clause becomes the object of the transformed transitive clause. The verb \( (V) \) of the intransitive clause takes on its causative stem\(^{11}\) in agreement with its new subject, the causing agent \( (N_2) \), for number, gender, and person. Rule (5) does not take into account the fact that the verb may govern its object by means of a preposition, but this should be understood as an actual possibility. The transformation is illustrated by an example.

\[
\text{Two sons of Eli died. (1 Sam. 4:11)} \\
\text{The king of Assyria killed Rezin (2 Kgs. 16:9)*}
\]

### 13.3.2 Causative Transformations on Transitive Clauses

A transitive-1 clause may be transformed into a transitive-2 clause by means of a causative transformation. This is expressed formally as

(5a)  
Given: \[ S(\text{tr-1}) = N_1(\text{nom}) + V^1 + N_2(\text{acc}) \]  
then: \[ S(\text{caus}) = N_3(\text{nom}) + V^2(\text{caus}) + N_1(\text{acc}) + N_2(\text{acc}) \]

where \( S(\text{tr-1}) \) is a transitive-1 clause defining the action or state of its subject \( N_1 \) with respect to its object \( N_2 \), and \( S(\text{caus}) \) is the same clause transformed into its causative form with a named causing agent \( N_3 \). What was the subject \( (N_1) \) of the transitive-1 clause becomes the first object of the transformed transitive-2 clause; and what was the object \( (N_2) \) becomes the second object of the transformed transitive-2 clause. The verb \( (V) \) of the transitive-1 clause takes on its causative stem in agreement with its new subject, the causing agent \( (N_3) \), for number, gender, and person. The transformation is illustrated by an example adapted for use from Gen. 41:42.

---

\(^{11}\) The causative stem is not predictable. The lexicon must be consulted for any given verb. Sometimes the Qal stem is both intransitive and transitive; sometimes the Piel stem is causative of the Qal; and often the Hiphil stem is causative of the Qal or the Piel.
Rule (5a) does not take into account the fact that the verb may govern either object by means of a preposition, but this should be understood as an actual possibility. The transformation is illustrated by an example adapted for use from Gen. 24:67.

\[\text{There the wicked cease from troubling (Job 3:17)}\]

[adverb with first position prominence]

13.4 Position Prominence Transformation

In addition to the various other ways in which Hebrew may grant prominence to a part of speech in a clause, any principal constituent of a clause may be granted “position prominence.” Position prominence is granted by moving a constituent from its normal position in the kernel clause to either first or last position. Since the subject is normally in first kernel position (§ 12.2.1), it would be moved to last position for prominence; but the other constituents usually are moved to first position. Position prominence is expressed formally as

\[(6) \quad \text{Given: } S(X) \quad \text{then: } S(\text{emph } X) = X + S(-X) \quad \text{[first position prominence]} \]

\[\text{or: } S(\text{emph } X) = S(-X) + X \quad \text{[last position prominence]} \]

where \(S(X)\) represents any clause containing constituent \(X\), and where \(X\) may be a noun phrase (N), an predicate adjective phrase (A), an adverb phrase (D), a verb phrase (V), or a predicate (Q). \(S(-X)\) represents all the constituents of the given clause except constituent \(X\).

13.4.1 First Position Prominence

\[\text{There the wicked cease from troubling (Job 3:17)}\]

[adverb with first position prominence]
The first position transformation is also used in conjunction with the Waw Consecutive Transformation employed by the Sequence Grammar described in § 19.1.3. It moves the verb to first position, after which the aspect form of the verb is inverted.

### 13.4.2 Last Position Prominence

- **In my heart I have hidden Your word**. (Psa. 119:11) [Adverb phrase with first position prominence]
- **I have declared my ways**. (Psa. 119:26) [Object with first position prominence]

- **My soul clings to the dust**. (Psa. 119:25) [Subject with last position prominence]
- **And there the weary are at rest**. (Job 3:17) [Subject with last position and adverb with first position prominence]
- **Your words have upheld him who was stumbling**. (Job 4:4) [Subject with last position and adverbial participle with first position prominence]
- **Then a spirit passed before my face**. (Job 4:15) [Verb with last position prominence]

### 13.4.3 Casus Pendens

The *Casus Pendens* transformation is like the first position prominence transformation except that it is limited to noun phrases, and does not delete the emphasized element. Instead, it substitutes a pronoun in place of the emphasized element. This is expressed formally as

(6a) Given: \( S(N_i) \)

then: \( S(\text{cas pen } N_i) = N_i + S(-N_i + R_i) \) [casus pendens]

- **As for Zillah, she also bore Tubal-Cain** (Gen. 4:22) (subject emphasized)
- **As for that night, may darkness seize it**. (Job 3:6)

When the subject phrase is more complex, it may be resumed in the associated sentence by an alternate substitute instead of a pronoun.
The man who commits adultery with another man's wife,
he who commits adultery with his neighbor's wife,
the adulterer and the adulteress shall surely be put to death. (Lev. 20:10)

And the associated sentence may even be linked idiomatically with its subject by means of a conjunction.

But the prophet who presumes to speak a word in My name,
which I have not commanded him to speak,
or who speaks in the name of other gods,
that prophet shall die.’ (Deut. 18:20)

13.5 Mode Transformations

Kernel clauses are defined as declarations. If a clause is to be framed as an exclamation or a question, the appropriate transformation must be invoked.

13.5.1 The Exclamatory Transformation

A clause is made an exclamation by preceding it with an exclamatory particle such as הֲמָה, or אֲכֵה (See § 11.4). Frequently one of the constituents of the clause is also granted first position prominence. This is expressed formally as

\[
S(\text{decl}) \rightarrow S(\text{excl}) = \text{hm} + S(\text{decl})
\]

\[\text{מה אָדָרָר שְֹמָךְּ בִּכְלִילָתְםּ}]^{11}

How excellent is Your name in all the earth! (Psa. 8:1) [Predicate adjective with first position prominence]

---

12 The exclamatory particle is distinguished from the interrogatory pronoun by the fact that the exclamatory clause is complete, whereas an interrogatory pronoun הֲמָה stands in place of an element the clause it precedes, and the clause would be incomplete without it. Exclamatory הֲמָה occurs 33 times and is linked to its following word by Maqquph 30 times and by a conjunctive accent 3 times.

13 BDB, p. 253, meaning 2.b. They indicate that the constituent with first position prominence is usually a predicate adjective or a verb. Actually it is a finite verb 20 times, a participle twice, an adjective 8 times and a common noun 3 times.
13.5.2 Interrogative Transformations

The syntax of a kernel clause is defined as a declaration. If a clause is to be framed as a question an interrogative transformation must be invoked. A clause may be transformed into a number of interrogative forms: (1) the truth of a clause may be questioned; (2) the identity of any participants of a clause may be questioned; and (3) any adverbial question may be asked about the clause. Any question may be used directly to request information; it may be used indirectly to report the invoking of a question; or it may be used rhetorically to imply that the author and the audience both know the answer, or to imply the impossibility of the given clause. The statistics of the interrogative particles are provided in §11.3.

13.5.2.1 The Truthfulness Interrogative Transformation. The truth of a clause is questioned by introducing the clause with the interrogative particle לֹא.

The particle is prepositive and attached to the first word of the clause. The transformation is used for direct questions where the answer is uncertain. It also is used for questions expressing a note of surprise, or for rhetorical questions to which a negative answer is expected. It is used in disjunctive questions where the first alternative is introduced with לֹא and the second is introduced with לא. This is expressed formally as

\[
(8) \quad \text{Given: } S \\
\text{then: } S(\text{true?}) = \text{לֹא} + S
\]

where \( S \) is any clause of any type and complexity.

\[
\text{לֹא אִהֵֽו אָנָּל.}
\]

Am I my brother’s keeper? (Gen. 4:9)

---

14 BDB p. 209.

15 If the alternative is simply the negative of the first clause, then the first clause is followed by לא without repeating the clause. For clauses using לא the negative alternative is expressed by לא as in the example of Exod. 17:7.

16 \( S \) may even be a sequence of coordinate clauses in which case the interrogative particle need not be repeated with each \( S \), but the interrogating nuance is carried over from clause to clause. See 1 Sam. 6:6b; 15:7.
Chapter 13

Clause Transformations

[437] Rhetorical question, negative response expected

Shall I go and call a nurse for you? (Exod. 2:7)

Is the LORD among us or not? (Exod. 17:7)

Are You for us or for our adversaries? (Josh. 5:13)

Will the lords of Keilah deliver me into his hand? (1 Sam. 23:11)

13.5.2.2 The Constituent Identity Interrogative Transformation. The various substantive members of a clause may be questioned by introducing the clause with an interrogative pronoun ר. The questioned substantive, because it is unknown, is omitted from the clause. The personal interrogative pronoun ר is used to question personal substantives, and the impersonal interrogative pronoun המ is used for impersonal substantives. This is expressed formally as

\[ (8a) \quad \text{Given: } S(N) \quad \text{then: } S(N?) \rightarrow R + S(-N) \]

where \( S(N) \) represents a clause containing the substantive \( N \) as a constituent, \( S(N?) \) represents the interrogative form of \( S \) that questions the identify of \( N \), and \( S(-N) \) represents the same clause without substantive \( N \).

Who shall raise Jacob? (Amos 7:2)

What is His name? What shall I say to them? (Exod. 3:13)

If the substantive under question is part of a phrase—that is, it has a modifier, it is governed in the genitive case by a preposition or a construct noun, or it is governed in the accusative case by מ—then the interrogative pronoun is substituted in place of the questioned substantive and the entire phrase is placed first in the clause.

Whose daughter are you? (Gen. 24:23)

Whose ox have I taken or whose donkey have I taken? (1 Sam. 12:3) [A genitive governed by a construct noun]

Whom have I defrauded; whom have I oppressed? (1 Sam. 12:3) [An accusative governed by נון]

Or from whose hand have I taken a bribe? (1 Sam. 12:3) [A genitive in a prepositional phrase]

Who among all your servants is faithful like David? (1 Sam. 22:14) [A nominative with an adverbial modifying phrase]

If the unknown constituent of the clause is the verb, then the question is formed by introducing it with the interrogative pronoun מה and substituting the verb ישלח in the slot of the unknown verb. This is expressed formally as

\[(8b) \text{ Given: } S(V) \text{ then: } S(V?) = R^i + S(-V + ישלח)\]

where \(S(V)\) represents a clause containing a verb \(V\) as a constituent, \(S(V?)\) represents the interrogative form of \(S\) that questions the identity of \(V\), \(R^i\) is the interrogative pronoun מה what? and \(S(-V + ישלח)\) represents the same clause with the verb ישלח substituted for \(V\).

And Moses said to Aaron, “What did this people do to you that you have brought so great a sin upon them?” (Exod. 32:21)

### 13.5.2.3 Adverbial Interrogative Transformations

Adverbial questions inquiring into the time, place, manner, reason, purpose, etc. of a clause are formed by introducing the clause with the appropriate interrogative adverb (ד^i). The more common interrogative adverbs are:

- When?—כפי
- Where?—איפה; or משם
- How?—איך; or איך
- Why?—למה; or מה
This is expressed formally as

(8c) Given: S
then: S(when, where, how, or why?) = D + S

And now when shall I also provide for my own house? (Gen. 30:30)

Where is Sarah your wife? (Gen. 18:9)

Where are Samuel and David? (1 Sam. 19:22)

How could you say “She is my sister”? (Gen. 26:9)

How can I alone bear your problems? (Deut. 1:12)

Why have you come to me? (Gen. 26:27)

Why have you disturbed me? (1 Sam. 28:15)

13.5.2.4 Indirect Interrogative Transformation. The above transformations are used also for indirect questions\(^\text{18}\) imbedded in other clauses. In this case, the indirect question functions almost like a relative pronoun clause, except that the indirect question is introduced by the appropriate interrogative particle, pronoun, or adverb, instead of.

Abimelech said, “I do not know who did this thing.” (Gen. 21:26)

Please tell me where they are feeding their flocks. (Gen. 37:16)

13.6 Analyzing Clause Transformations
If a given clause is not in kernel clause form, then one or more transformations were executed on it in the author’s generative process. Such synthesis transformations encode into a clause additional information over and above that contained in the kernel clause itself. The analysis procedure consists of undoing those transformations until the kernel clause is recovered in its unaltered form. Such “undoing” extracts from a clause the additional information encoded in it by the

\(^{18}\) For indirect questions see BDB p. 552 under הָלָה, and BDB p. 566 under יִמָּכֶר, meaning 1.c.
corresponding synthesis transformations. Once an expositor understands the primary structure of kernel clauses and the transformations such clauses may undergo, it will be relatively simple for him to mentally recognize what transformations have been executed on a clause and extract the associated information. At the clause level, in addition to the basic kernel information a clause conveys, the following additional information may be extracted: (1) the degree and kind of negation, if any; (2) whether the clause is expressed in the active, passive, reflexive, or middle voice; (3) whether or not the clause conveys an element of causation; (4) whether or not a constituent of the clause has been granted position prominence; and (5) whether the clause is a declaration, exclamation, or interrogation. All the above information encoded in a clause contributes to the overall meaning of the clause and to its contributory role in the overall discourse of which it is a part.

Additional transformations may be performed on clauses such as aspect, tense, mood, elision, and substitution, but these are related to how clauses inter-relate in discourse. Such transformations are discussed in Chapter 19.

### 13.7 Summary of Clause Transformations

- **Negation transformations**
  - General Negation
  - Special Negation

- **Voice Transformations**
  - Passive Transformation
  - Reflexive Transformation
    - Reflexive Stem Transformation
    - Self Transformation
    - Reflexive Pronoun Transformation
  - Middle Transformation
    - Middle Stem Transformation
    - Self Transformation
    - Reflexive Pronoun Transformation

- **Position Prominence Transformation**
  - First Position Prominence Transformation
  - Last Position Prominence Transformation

- **Mode Transformations**
  - Exclamation Transformation
  - Interrogative Transformations
Truthfulness Interrogative Transformation
Constituent Identity Interrogative Transformation
Adverbial Interrogative Transformation
Indirect Interrogative Transformation
CHAPTER 14
Syntax of Hebrew Noun Phrases

Thus far, the discussion of Hebrew syntax has assumed that the symbol for a part of speech may also include its corresponding phrase, but nothing has been said about the syntactic structure of such phrases. The next several chapters define and illustrate the syntactic structure of the various Hebrew phrases, beginning with the noun phrase in this chapter.

A phrase consists of a word plus a modifier. The modifier may distinguish or enhance the word it modifies. It also may be used to distinguish the current use of the word from some earlier use in the preceding context or in common knowledge. That is, the earlier use of the word designated something different than the current use; consequently a modifier is necessary to distinguish the current designation from the earlier one. Likewise, a modifier may enhance the word by declaring something new and significant about it. In this case, the designation of the referent is not different from that in the preceding context or in common knowledge, but the current use calls for some enhancement.

A wise king (Prov. 20:26)

very great (Exod. 11:3)

All phrases may be regarded as having originated as the result of a transformation on a part of speech with a dependent clause.¹ This is expressed formally as

\[ X + S(X) \rightarrow X + \text{Modifier} \]

where X may be a noun (N), an adjective (A), an adverb (D), or a verb (V), or a phrase of any of these parts of speech. S(X) represents a factual² sentence containing X as a constituent. The

---

¹ Throughout this chapter, see Chapter 12 for a discussion of the syntax of the appropriate kernel clauses. Admittedly, this universal assumption is expected to encounter a few anomalies.

² Factual in the sense that the sentence is a declaration in the previous context of the story, or is known to be true in common knowledge related the story, or may be inferred from such common knowledge.
expression is interpreted to mean “part of speech X, followed by (+) dependent clause S about X, transforms (→) into a phrase consisting of X with a modifier derived from S.”\(^3\) The modifier is derived from the content of S(X), ranging anywhere from being a significant constituent of S to being the entire sentence.

Example:

\[ X = \text{king} \]
\[ S(X) = \text{the strength of the king is mighty} \]
\[ X + S(X) \rightarrow \text{a mighty king} \]

This assumption defined in the above formal expression is significant for the expositor. It assumes that a phrase is the surface structure encoding of the deep structure dependency of S(X) on X, and that the phrase sufficiently reflects the significant content of S and the type of dependency of S on X. Furthermore, it assumes that the content of S is related to the preceding context (or to the body of common knowledge understood to be part of the context) so that it provides the needed distinction or enhancement of X.\(^4\) The important questions an expositor should ask with regard to every modifier of any kind is: “What does the dependent clause say about X? What effect does it have on the meaning of X in the current context and in the broader context?”

This assumption also provides the grammar and syntax with the necessary restraint of semantic coherence. If the dependent clause S(X) is true about X in the context of discourse, then any resulting phrases derived from S will be semantically coherent with X and its context.

This assumption also defines all modifiers of X as adjacent to and following after X.\(^5\) While the above rule does not indicate so, it may, in a defined order, repeat within practical limits, producing with each iteration a new and more expanded phrase. This rightly implies that Hebrew phrases are without discontinuities.\(^6\)

---

\(^3\) The modifier is the remnant of the dependent clause after the deletion transformation has elided all the redundant and self-evident information from the clause (see § 19.4).

\(^4\) In the following chapters, the explanation of the dependency of S on X is treated as though S is a single clause. In the reality of text grammars, S may be a cluster of clauses or a single clause that summarizes what is stated in the context by a cluster of clauses.

\(^5\) A few exceptions exist where the modifier precedes X which require separate rules discussed where applicable.

\(^6\) While a few alleged discontinuous phrases seem to exist, usually an acceptable continuous parsing of the phrase may be found which is more likely than a rare anomaly.
The above formal expression defines the general syntactic structure of all phrases. This chapter is limited to a discussion of Hebrew noun phrases, that is, to the following form of the general expression:

\[ N + S(N) \rightarrow N + \text{Modifier} \]

The expression is interpreted to mean “Noun N, followed by (+) dependent clause S about N, transforms (\(\rightarrow\)) into a phrase consisting of N with a modifier derived from S.” It is helpful to study the syntax of Hebrew noun phrases according to the various types of clause that the dependent clause S(N) may be.

### 14.1 Noun Phrases Derived from Dependent Copulative Clauses

One significant kind of dependent clause is the copulative clause (§ 12.1). This type of dependent clause accounts for a large variety of noun phrases. The dependent copulative clause accounts for appositives, attributive adjectives, attributive adverbs, and attributive demonstratives.

#### 14.1.1 Dependent Classification Clauses

Classification clauses (§ 12.1.2) are predicate nominative clauses that define class relationships. They have the structure:

\[ S^c = N^s + V^c + N^c \]

Where the verb \(V^c\) is the copulative \(\pi\), the subject \(N^s\) and predicate nominative \(N^c\) agree semantically and in number, gender, and person, and the predicate nominative is non-determinate. A noun with a dependent classification clause is transformed into an appositive noun phrase. The structure of the transformation is

(1) \[ N_1 + \left[ N_1^s + \pi\pi\pi + N_2^c \right] \rightarrow N_1 + N_2 \]

where \(S^c(N_1^s)\) is a classification clause about \(N_1^s\), and where the subject \(N_1^s\) and verb \(\pi\) are deleted from \(S^c(N_1^s)\) as redundant and unnecessary, and the predicate nominative \(N_2^c\) remains alone as the modifier. \(N_1\) and \(N_2\) may be noun phrases, but \(N_1\) should not have lengthy modifiers such as relative pronoun clauses.\(^8\)

---

7 As will become evident in later chapters, the content of the modifier is the residue of the dependent clause after the deletion-substitution transformation has operated on the text. It is assumed, without formally stating so repeatedly, that this transformation operates on the expression \(N + S(N)\) resulting in the surface structure \(N + \text{Modifier}\).

8 In all cases where the dependent clause is a copulative clause, the verb is elided when the tense of the clause is current time, and the verb is not needed to define tense, person, mood, etc.
Chapter 14

The Syntax of Hebrew

Noun Phrases

There are 2,444 noun pairs in the Hebrew Bible that meet the above criteria\(^9\) that are potential\(^{10}\) classification noun phrases. Actually, a string of appositive nouns may occur; Table 14.1 lists the frequency distribution of the number of appositive nouns in a potential classification phrase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Num. Nouns in string</th>
<th>Num. of strings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2,363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[וַיַֹּ֕אמֶר אֲנִָ֛י בִנְׁךֵ֥ בְׁכָֹֽורְׁךֶ֖ עֵשָָּֽו׃\]
And he said, "I am your son, your firstborn, Esau." (Gen. 27:32)

\[וַיַֹ֕אמֶר בֶּן־אִ֛יש גֵֵּ֥ר עֲמָלֵָ֖קִֶ֖י אָנָֹּֽכִי׃\]
And he answered, "I am the son of an alien, an Amalekite." (2 Sam. 1:13)

14.1.2 Dependent Identity Clauses

Identity clauses (§ 12.1.3) are predicate nominative clauses that define identity. They have the structure:

\[S^i = N^s + V^c + N^c\]

Where the verb \(V^c\) is the copulative יָמָּ֣ה, and the subject \(N^s\) and predicate nominative \(N^c\) are both determinate and agree semantically and in number and gender. A noun with a dependent identity clause is transformed into an appositive noun phrase. The structure of the transformation is

---

\(^9\) This does not include verifying semantic concord, which is beyond computer software capability at this time. This same limitation applies to all the statistics regarding noun phrases.

\(^{10}\) Potential because some pairs may not pass the semantic concord requirements.
Chapter 14

The Syntax of Hebrew Noun Phrases

\[ (2) \quad N_1 + \frac{[N_{s1} + \Pi \Pi N_{c2}]}{S'(N_{s1})} \rightarrow N_1 + N_2 \]

where \( S'(N_{s1}) \) is an identity clause about \( N_{s1} \), and where the subject (\( N_{s1} \)) and verb (\( \Pi \Pi \)) are deleted as redundant and unnecessary, and the predicate nominative (\( N_{c2} \)) remains alone as the modifier. \( N_1 \) and \( N_2 \) may be noun phrases, but \( N_1 \) should not have lengthy modifiers such as relative pronoun clauses.

There are 1,955 noun pairs in the Hebrew Bible that meet the above criteria that are potential identity noun phrases. Almost every identity noun phrase can be explained as derived from a phrase transformation on a dependent predicate nominative clause.\(^{11}\) Actually, a string of appositive nouns may occur; Table 14.2 lists the frequency distribution of the number of appositive nouns in a potential identity phrase.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Num. Nouns in string</th>
<th>Num. of strings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1,953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \text{Hagar, the Egyptian, her handmaid, (Gen. 16:3)} \)

[dependent clauses: Hagar is an Egyptian; Hagar is Sarah’s handmaid]

\section*{14.1.3 Dependent Attribute Clauses\(^{12}\)}

Attribute clauses (§ 12.1.4) are predicate adjective clauses. They define the value of an attribute of their subject. They have the structure

\[ N_1 \rightarrow N_1 \]

\( \text{The LORD our God (Deut. 6:4)} \)

[dependent clause: The LORD is our God]

\[ N_2 \rightarrow N_1 \]

\( \text{The land, Canaan (Num. 34:2)} \)

[dependent clause: The land is Canaan]

\( ^{11} \) See GKC § 131 for a complete discussion of apposition in Hebrew. Almost all his examples may be explained by the above. See also VNK §29; WO §12.

\( ^{12} \) Cf. VNK §30.
where the verb (V) is the copulative \( \text{מָצָא} \) and the subject (N) and predicate adjective (A) agree semantically and in number and gender, and the predicate adjective is non-determinate. A noun with a dependent attribute clause is transformed into an attributive adjective noun phrase. The structure of the transformation is

\[
\begin{align*}
S^a & = N^a + V^c + A \\
N_1 + [N_1^a + \text{מָצָא} + A] & \rightarrow N_1 + A \\
\text{where } S^a(N_1) & \text{ is an attribute clause about } N_1, \text{ and where the subject (N) and verb (מָצָא) are deleted as redundant and unnecessary, and the predicate adjective (A) remains alone as the modifier in concord agreement with the noun for number, gender, and determination. In this case } N \text{ must be an unmodified noun or a noun phrase with only attributive adjectives, but with no other intervening modifiers. The attributive adjective answers the question “What is the value of the subject’s understood characteristic?”}
\end{align*}
\]

13 The characteristic is understood from the preceding context or common knowledge, otherwise it must be declared before its value is defined. See previous discussion in § 12.1.4.

14 Note that the adjective exhibits number concord with the quantified noun, that is, the phrase “ten cattle” is plural even though the form of \( \text{יִשְׁכֶּנֶּשׁ} \) is singular.

There are 1,586 noun-adjective pairs in the Hebrew Bible that meet the above criteria that are potential attribute noun phrases. Almost every identity attribute phrase can be explained as
derived from a phrase transformation on a dependent predicate adjective clause. Actually, a string of adjectives may occur; Table 14.3 lists the frequency distribution of the number of adjectives in a potential attribute noun phrase.

Table 14.3
Distribution of Noun-Adjective Strings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Num. Nouns in string</th>
<th>Num. of non-determinate strings</th>
<th>Num. of Determinate strings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1,175</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

But King Solomon loved many foreign women, (1 Kgs. 11:1)

Now there was found in it a poor wise man, (Eccl. 9:15)

14.1.4 Dependent Predicate Adverb Clause

Predicate adverb clauses (§ 12.1.5) define the value of some adverbial characteristic of their subject. They have the structure

\[ S^d = N^a + V^c + D \]

A noun with a dependent predicate adverb clause is transformed into an attributive adverb noun phrase. The structure of the transformation is

\[ N_1 + [N^a_1 + V^c_1 + D] \rightarrow N_1 + D \]

where \( S^d(N^a_1) \) is a predicate adverb clause about, and where where the subject \( N^a_1 \) and verb \( (V^c_1) \) are deleted as redundant and unnecessary \( N^a_1 \), and the predicate adverb \( (D) \) remains alone as the modifier. In this case, \( N \) may be a noun phrase with attributive adjectives and/or adverbs, but not with other intervening modifiers.

---

15 An attributive adverb is an unconventional concept. However, if an adverbial concept can be predicated of a noun, as by a predicate adverb clause, then that same adverb can modify the noun in a noun phrase. The word should be identified as an adverb in both situations because there is deep structural equivalence between the clause and the phrase. Furthermore, an attributive adverb does not occupy the same syntactic position in a noun phrase as an attributive adjective; therefore it should not be confused as an adjective just because it modifies a noun. Semantically and syntactically they differ. The D usually follows any attributive adjective. Thus the natural order is N + A + D. In English the order is A + N + D.
I will give Gog a place there\textsuperscript{16} for burial in Israel (Ezek. 39:11)

\[ \text{[dependent clause: the place was there (i.e., in the valley of those who pass by the sea)]} \]

The prophet today was formerly called the seer. (1 Sam. 9:9)

\[ \text{[dependent clause: the prophet exists today (i.e., contemporary with the narrator)]} \textsuperscript{17} \]

The transformation is not used often with a simple adverb. It is used more often with adverbia
tional prepositional phrases.

What is this sound of sheep in my ear? (1 Sam. 15:14)

\[ \text{[dependent clause: the sound was in Samuel’s ears]} \]

The evil in Your sight I have done.\textsuperscript{18} (Psa. 51:6; vs. 4 Eng.)

\[ \text{[dependent clause: the evil was in God’s sight (i.e., a personal offense)]} \]

There are 71 noun-adverb pairs in the Hebrew Bible that meet the above criteria that are potential attributive adverb noun phrases.

\textsuperscript{16} The word \textit{there} “there” obviously modifies the word \textit{there} because of the \textit{Maqeph} and the construct form. The construct form is due to phonetic reasons brought on by the close connection of the words. This is not an example of a broken construct chain.

\textsuperscript{17} That is, the type of person who today is called a prophet was in former days called \textit{a seer}. The phrase \textit{today} is actually an adverbia
tive accusative.

\textsuperscript{18} David was not confessing that God had seen him sin—that was obvious. He confessed that he had done what God regarded as evil. Thus he acknowledged that his deed was a personal offense to God’s holy character. This is the real essence of true confession.
14.1.5 Dependent Demonstrative Pronoun Clause

A demonstrative pronoun clause is a predicate nominative copulative clause (§ 12.1.2 & 3) that has a demonstrative pronoun (R<sup>d</sup>) as its subject. The structure of the kernel demonstrative pronoun clause is:

\[ S' = R^d + \overline{\text{היה}} + N \]

A noun with a dependent demonstrative pronoun clause is transformed into an attributive demonstrative noun phrase. The structure of the transformation is

\[ N_1 + \left[ R^d + \overline{\text{היה}} + N_1 \right] \rightarrow N_1 + R^d \]

where \( S'(N_1) \) about \( N_1 \), and where the noun (\( N_1 \)) and verb (\( \overline{\text{היה}} \)) of the clause are deleted as redundant and unnecessary, and the demonstrative pronoun (\( R^d \)) alone remains as the modifier and where \( N_1 \) and \( R^d \) both become determinate. \( N_1 \) may be a noun phrase with simple attributive adjectives and adverbs, but not with other intervening modifiers.

\[ \text{In this generation. (Gen. 7:1)} \]
\[ \text{This day. (Gen. 7:13)} \]
\[ \text{This land. (Gen. 12:7)} \]
\[ \text{This great nation. (Deut. 4:6)} \]

\[ \text{[modifies noun phrase]} \]

---

19 The demonstrative pronoun may be understood to be standing in place of an antecedent, that is, the original subject of the copulative clause. The substitution of a pronoun in place of its antecedent is accomplished by substitution transformations discussed in § 19.5.1. This explains why no demonstrative pronoun kernel was defined. However, for the sake of completeness and clarity, the demonstrative pronoun clause is included here. Also it is included because the demonstrative pronoun functions as an attributive modifier.

20 See BDB 260-62. In a few rare cases the demonstrative pronoun without the definite article appears before the noun it modifies; and in a few special cases the demonstrative without the definite article follows the noun it modifies, such as when the noun is made determinate by a pronoun suffix.
This Moses. (Exod. 32:1)  
[rare exception]

From this my oath. (Gen. 24:8)  
[special case]

In those days (Gen. 6:4)

This sound of sheep (1 Sam. 15:14)

There are 900 noun-near demonstrative pronoun pairs and 492 noun-remote demonstrative pairs in the Hebrew Bible.

14.1.6 Dependent Similarity Clause

A comparative copulative clause (§ 12.1.7) declares its subject to be like some noun (phrase) with respect to some or all of its characteristics, named or understood. The syntax of the kernel comparative clause is:

\[ S^s = N^s + V^c + \mathbb{C} + N^x \]

A noun with a dependent comparative clause is transformed into a comparative noun phrase.\(^{21}\) The structure of the transformation is

\[ N_1 + \left[ N_1 + \mathbb{C} + N_2 \right] \rightarrow N_1 + \mathbb{C} + N_2^{S(N_1)} \]

where \( S^s(N_1) \) is similarity clause about \( N_1 \), and where the noun (\( N^s_1 \)) and verb (\( \mathbb{C} \)) of the clause are deleted as redundant and unnecessary, and the comparative pronoun (\( \mathbb{C} \)) and the comparative noun (\( N_2 \)) remain as the modifier.

A spear like a weaver’s beam (1 Chr. 11:23)  
[dependent clause: the spear is like a weaver’s beam]

\(^{21}\) Many other types of comparative phrases exist. These are the result of transformations on comparative dependencies between clauses discussed in later sections. Note that the redundant elements of the dependent clause are elided as in previous rules.
There are 215 potential comparative noun-phrases in the Hebrew Bible.

14.2 Noun Phrases Derived from Dependent Comparative Clauses

A noun can be compared with another noun on the basis of (1) their common characteristics in general; (2) some common characteristic value, that is, a common adjective or adverb; or (3) some common capability. Comparison is expressed in six degrees: (1) the degree of equality; (2) the degree of similarity; (3) the degree of superiority; (4) the superlative degree; (5) the degree of inferiority; and (6) the most inferior degree. The fifth and sixth degrees are variations of the third and fourth, using instead terms of inferiority rather than superiority.

14.2.1 The Equality Degree

The equality degree expresses that one noun is the same as another in some sense. It expresses class membership when one noun is the class name for the other. It expresses identity when one noun is an alternate name for the other. The equality degree is expressed in clause form by the predicate nominative copulative clause (§ 12.1.2), and in phrase form by an appositive. See previous discussion of dependent classification and identity clauses (§ 14.1.1 & 2).
Chapter 14

The Syntax of Hebrew Noun Phrases

14.2.2 The Similarity Degree

The similarity degree declares that one noun is similar to another in some respect. They may be similar with respect to their common characteristics, or with respect to some common characteristic value, that is, with respect to some common adjective or adverb. The similarity degree of common characteristics is expressed in clause form by the comparative copulative clause (§ 12.1.7), and in phrase form by a comparative noun phrase (§ 14.1.6). Similarity with respect to some common adjective or adverb is expressed by comparative adjective or adverb phrases; these are discussed in the chapters on adjective phrases and adverb phrases.

אישה לאלהים

There is not a rock like our God. (1 Sam. 2:2)

An army like the army that you have lost. (1 Kgs. 20:25)

A spear like a weaver’s beam. (1 Chr. 11:23)

A name like the name of the great men. (1 Chr. 17:8)

Wings like the wings of the stork. (Zech. 5:9)
14.2.3 The Superior Degree

The superior degree declares that one noun is superior to another in some respect. They may be superior with respect to their common characteristics, or with respect to some common characteristic value, that is, some common adjective or adverb. The superior degree of common characteristics is expressed in clause form by the copulative predicate adjective (or adverb) clause in which the predicate adjective (or adverb) is one expressing the superior degree of comparison.\(^{22}\) Superiority with respect to some common adjective or adverb is expressed by comparative adjective or adverb phrases; these are discussed in § 15.7.2 on adjective phrases and § 16.2.2 on adverb phrases. The noun phrase with which comparison is made is governed by the preposition מ (from = than). The structure is:

\[ A_1 + מ + N \rightarrow A_2 \]

\[ \text{a multitude greater than the former} \quad (\text{Dan. 11:13}) \]

\[ \text{a nation greater and mightier than they} \quad (\text{Num. 14:12}) \]

\[ \text{nations greater and mightier than you} \quad (\text{Deut. 4:38}) \]

\[ \text{seven nations greater and mightier than you} \quad (\text{Deut. 7:1}) \]

14.2.4 The Superlative Degree

The superlative degree of comparison declares that one noun is the best of all others in the given class or group. The noun may be superior to all others with respect to their common characteristics, or with respect to some common characteristic value, that is, some common adjective or adverb.

When the comparison is made with respect to all common characteristics, the following idiom may be used:

\[ J + N(\text{det,}^{23}\text{ pl}) \]

where J is the construct form of N, and N is determinate and plural.

---

\(^{22}\) Such phrases are the product of deletion transformations. See the discussion of these transformations in § 19.2.7.

\(^{23}\) Some instances of this idiom do not have the definite article.
14.3 Noun Phrases Derived from Dependent Verbal Clauses

The above discussion defines the special cases in which rather simple noun phrases are derived from a noun with a dependent copulative clause. In the general case, the dependent clause may be of any type. This accounts for more complex noun phrases. This section defines the syntax of noun phrases derived from a noun with a dependent verbal clause. There are several broad categories of dependent clauses that produce specific types of noun phrases. The reader is reminded that the content of the dependent clause is related to the preceding context of discourse (or to the body of common knowledge understood to be part of the context) so that it declares the needed distinction or enhancement of the noun it modifies.

14.3.1 Genitive Noun Phrases

A noun with a dependent clause that defines a relationship between it and another noun or noun phrase very often is transformed into a genitive noun phrase—that is, the transformation establishes a genitive relationship between the two nouns that clearly implies the relationship declared in the dependent clause. Dependent clauses that can be transformed into genitive noun
phrases express relationships between the two nouns that can usually be represented by the word “of” in English.\textsuperscript{24}

\textbf{14.3.1.1 The General Genitive Transformation.} In the general case, the general genitive transformation is used, the structure of which is

\begin{equation}
N_1 + [S(N_1, N_2)] \rightarrow N_1 + \bar{\beta} + N_2
\end{equation}

where the dependent clause $S$ is of any type that defines a relationship between $N_1$ and $N_2$ within the above limitations, and where $N_1$ and $N_2$ both may be noun phrases of any complexity.\textsuperscript{25} The preposition expresses the genitive and usually should be translated “of” in English. $N_1$ and $N_2$ transfer over into the phrase unchanged, except that $N_2$ acquires the genitive case. All the other constituents of $S$ are deleted as already known and thus redundant. The general transformation must be used in all cases where the special transformation does not apply, such as (1) when $N_1$ is a phrase or proper name not given to the construct form; (2) when $N_1$ is non-determinate with a determinate $N_2$; (3) when the genitive relationship is negated; or (4) sometimes in poetry.\textsuperscript{26} The following are a few examples of the general genitive phrase. Any genitive relationship that is expressed by the special genitive phrase (discussed in the next section) may also be expressed by the general genitive phrase.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{(a)}\\
  \begin{tikzpicture}
    \node (n1) [text=blue,fill=white] at (0,0) {$N_2 \bar{\beta} N_1$};
    \node (n3) [text=blue,fill=white] at (1,0) {$N_3$};
    \draw [->] (n1) -- (n3);
  \end{tikzpicture}\\
  As men \textit{of} war (Jer. 6:23)\\
  $N_1$ of $N_2$\\
  [dependent clause: the men fight in war]
  \item \textbf{(b)}\\
  \begin{tikzpicture}
    \node (n1) [text=blue,fill=white] at (0,0) {$N_2 \bar{\beta} N_1$};
    \node (n3) [text=blue,fill=white] at (1,0) {$N_3$};
    \node (n4) [text=blue,fill=white] at (2,0) {$N_4$};
    \draw [->] (n1) -- (n3);
    \draw [->] (n1) -- (n4);
  \end{tikzpicture}\\
  A priest \textit{of} the Most High God (Gen. 14:18)\\
  $N_1$ of $N_3$\\
  [dependent clause: the priest mediated between the Most High God and worshippers]
\end{itemize}

\textsuperscript{24} As in the case of dependent copulative clauses, the genitive transformation functions because the expression of the relationship between the two nouns would be redundant and thus undergoes deletion.

\textsuperscript{25} The first noun phrase ($N_1$) should not be so long as to obscure the intent of the preposition $\bar{\beta}$ as the sign of the genitive.

\textsuperscript{26} See BDB, pp. 510-18, especially meaning 5.c for a discussion of this genitive use of $\bar{\beta}$.
14.3.1.2 The Special Genitive Transformation. When \( N_1 \) is an unmodified common noun, the special genitive transformation may be used, the structure of which is

\[
N_1 + [S(N_1, N_2)] \rightarrow J_1 + N_2
\]

where \( N_1 \) is the unmodified common noun, and \( J_1 \) is the construct form of \( N_1 \), and where the dependent clause \( S \) is of any type that defines a relationship between \( N_1 \) and \( N_2 \) within the above limitations. \( N_1 \) and \( N_2 \) transfer over into the phrase unchanged, except that \( N_1 \) acquires its construct form and \( N_2 \) acquires the genitive case. All the other constituents of \( S \) are deleted as already known and thus redundant.

This transformation has the following restraints:

1. The transformation may iterate on a string of dependent clauses that each qualifies for the special genitive relationship. Thus a string of construct nouns may result.
2. Obviously, \( N_1 \) cannot be a phrase in this case.
3. \( N_2 \) may have a definite article, but \( J_1 \) cannot have one.
4. \( J_1 \) may carry a locative suffix.
5. In some cases, \( J_1 \) may carry a pronoun suffix.

In the genitive of subject the genitive (nomen rectum) names the subject of the dependent clause. The construct noun (nomen regens) is a verbal noun derived from the verb of the dependent clause.
Chapter 14 The Syntax of Hebrew Noun Phrases

363

The works of their own hands (Jer. 1:16) [dependent clause: Their own hands made idols]27

Because of the love of the LORD for Israel forever (1 Kgs. 10:9) [dependent clause: The LORD will love Israel forever]28

14.3.1.2.1 In the genitive of object the genitive (nomen rectum) names the object of the verb in the dependent clause. The construct noun (nomen regens) is a verbal noun or a participle derived from the verb of the dependent clause.

Violence against your brother Jacob (Obad. 10) [dependent clause: You did violence against your brother Jacob]29

14.3.1.2.2 In the genitive of possession the genitive (nomen rectum) names the owner or possessor of the construct noun (nomen regens).

The house of the king. (1 Kgs. 9:10) [dependent clause: The king has a house]

The wisdom of Solomon. (1 Kgs. 5:10, Heb.) Dependent clause: Solomon has wisdom.

14.3.1.2.3 In the genitive of material the genitive (nomen rectum) names the material of which the construct noun (nomen regens) is composed or made.

27 The predicate (made idols) was transformed into a construct verbal noun (works) governed by the subjective genitive (their hands).

28 Note that the verb (love) was transformed into a verbal noun governed by the subjective genitive (the LORD); the verbal noun continues to govern an accusative object and an adverb.

29 The verb עשה (did violence) was transformed into a construct verbal noun governing its object in the genitive. Note that English requires the preposition “against” instead of the expected “of.”
14.3.1.2.4 In the **genitive of characteristic** the genitive (*nomen rectum*) names a quality or attribute of the construct noun (*nomen regens*). This genitive is frequently translated into English as an adjective.

```
A mighty man of power. (1 Sam. 9:1)  
[or a powerful mighty man.]  
[dependent clause: The mighty man has power]
```

```
A wife of virtue. (Prov. 31:10)  
[or a virtuous wife]  
[dependent clause: The wife has virtue]
```

```
Balances of justice. (Lev. 19:36)  
[or just balances]  
Dependent clause: The balances weigh according to justice.
```

14.3.1.2.5 In the **genitive of purpose or result** the genitive (*nomen rectum*) names the purpose or result of the construct noun (*nomen regens*).

```
Sheep for slaughter (Psa. 44:23)  
[dependent clause: The sheep were raised and kept for the purpose of slaughter]
```

14.3.1.2.6 In the **genitive of kind** the genitive (*nomen rectum*) names the genus or kind of the construct noun (*nomen regens*).

```
Wood of an acacia tree (Exod. 37:10)  
[or acacia wood]  
[dependent clause: The genus of the wood is acacia]
```

14.3.1.2.7 In the **genitive of source** the genitive (*nomen rectum*) names the source of the construct noun (*nomen regens*).

```
The word of the LORD (Jer. 1:2)  
[dependent clause: The LORD spoke (or inspired) the word]
```

14.3.1.2.8 In the **genitive of name** the genitive (*nomen rectum*) gives the name of the construct noun (*nomen regens*).
14.3.1.2.9 In the **genitive of extent** the genitive (nomen rectum) names the limit or extent of the construct noun (nomen regens).

**מְיָאָסִים**
Water (up to) the ankles. (Ezek. 47:3)
[dependent clause: The water reached to Ezekiel’s ankles]

**מְיָאָסִים**
Water (up to) the waist. (Ezek. 47:4)
[dependent clause: The water reached to Ezekiel’s waist]

14.3.1.2.10 In the **genitive of time** the genitive (nomen rectum) names a point of time for the construct noun (nomen regens).

**כָּהַר**
At the time of evening. (Gen. 24:11)
[dependent clause: The time was evening]

**כָּהַר**
At the time of noon. (Jer. 20:16)
[dependent clause: The time was noon]

14.3.1.2.11 In the **cognate genitive of comparison** the genitive noun (nomen rectum) is the plural of the construct noun (nomen regens). This is an idiom that expresses the superlative degree of comparison with respect to members of the class named by the nouns.

**שִּׁירֵי תְּהֹאֶרְמִים**
The song of songs. (Song 1:1)
[or the best song]
[dependent clause: The song is the best of all songs]

**אֱלֹהֵי הָאַלֶּרְמִים [אֱלֹהֵי תְּהֹאֶרְמִים]**
The God of gods and Lord of lords. (Deut. 10:17)
[dependent clause: God is the superlative of deity and sovereignty]
[This is not to be understood in a polytheistic sense, but in the monotheistic sense of common knowledge.]
Construct nouns are found in strings up to a maximum of four. Table 14.4 provides a frequency distribution of the number of constructs in a string for non-determinate and determinate phrases.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Num. of Constructs</th>
<th>Num. of Non-Determinates</th>
<th>Num. of Determinates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>4,961</td>
<td>4,945</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>689</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4(^{30})</td>
<td>2(^{31})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.3.2 The Quantified Noun Phrase

When the dependent clause expresses the quantity of \(N_1\), the resultant modifier is a quantifier. The transformation takes the form

(8) \(N + [S(N, M)] \rightarrow M + N\)

or

\(N + [S(N, M)] \rightarrow N + M\)

where \(N\) in the noun being quantified and \(M\) is a quantifier.\(^{32}\) \(M\) must agree with \(N\) for number and gender. All the other constituents of \(S\) are deleted as already known and thus redundant. Either

---


\(^{31}\) Lev. 13:59; 1 Chr. 6:33.

\(^{32}\) See Chapter 7 for a discussion of quantifiers and their syntactic structures. As in other transformations, the redundant elements of \(S\) are elided.
option usually may be used; however, if \( N \) is a lengthy phrase then the first option is preferred. In the first option, \( M \) may be either construct or absolute; but in the second, \( M \) must be absolute.

\[
\text{all of the plants of the field... and every plant of the field... and every herb of the field (Gen. 2:5)}
\]

a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands (Prov. 6:10; 24:33)

many deeds (2 Sam. 23:20 = 1 Chr. 11:22)

for the people wept very bitterly [lit. much weeping] (Ezr. 10:1)

three men (Gen. 18:2)

seven women (Isa. 4:1)

two rows (Lev. 24:6)

two cities (Josh. 15:60)

twelve stones (Josh. 4:8)

thirteen young bulls (Num. 29:13)

fourteen thousand sheep (Job 42:12)

four hundred and sixty-eight valiant men. (Neh. 11:6)

one hundred and twelve of his brethren (1 Chr. 15:10)

three hundred and thirty-seven thousand five hundred sheep (Num. 31:36)

All the assembly together was 42,360 (Ezr. 2:64; Neh. 7:66)

[Lit. 4 x 10,000 and 2,000 and 360]

The statistics for quantifiers is found in Chapter 7.
14.3.3 The Relative Pronoun Phrase

When the dependent clause expresses something about the $N_1$ that does not qualify to be transformed into a phrase by one of the preceding transformations, then the dependent clause is retained by the use of one of the forms of the Relative Pronoun Transformation. The structure of the General Relative Pronoun Transformation is expressed formally as

$N_1 + S(N_1) \rightarrow N_1 + \text{relative pronoun} + S(R_1)$

where $N_1$ may be a noun phrase, and $\text{relative pronoun}$ functions as a relative pronoun, and $N_1$ is deleted in $S$, or is replaced in $S$ by a personal pronoun $(R_1)$ or other substitute in agreement with $N_1$ for number, gender, person, and case. The dependent clause $S$ may be a cluster of clauses with any degree of complexity involving coordination, subordination, and various degrees of embedding. The following rules apply to deletion or substitution in $S$:

1. If $N_1$ is nominative or accusative in $S$—that is, it is the subject or direct object of the verb—then it may be deleted if no ambiguity results and no emphasis is specified. But if ambiguity would result, or if emphasis is specified, then substitution is required per rule 4 below.

2. If $N_1$ is in the genitive case—that is, it is governed by a preposition, by a construct noun, or by a construct adjective—then substitution is required. When $N_1$ refers to space, time, or manner, and it is governed by a preposition, the prepositional phrase is usually elided. If $N_1$ refers to a place, the prepositional phrase may be replaced by the substitute $\text{relative pronoun}$.

3. If $N_1$ is more deeply embedded in an element of $S$, then substitution is required to avoid ambiguity.

---

33 The noun preceding $\text{relative pronoun}$ is often in the construct form, being found at least 220 times. It is as though the dependent clause is functioning as a genitive substantive.

34 $\text{relative pronoun}$ is probably a subordinating conjunction, but it often functions as though it were a relative pronoun, but in this construction it is essentially the equivalent of the English relative “who, which, that.” See BDB, 81-84, and GKC § 36, 138, and 155. $N_1$ may be thought of as the antecedent of $\text{relative pronoun}$. In the later books and sometimes in quoted discourse or vernacular portions, the prepositive particle $\text{relative pronoun}$ is used rather than $\text{relative pronoun}$. This seems to be an abbreviated form of $\text{relative pronoun}$. For examples see Judg. 7:12; Song 1:7; Eccl. 1:11; 1 Chr. 27:27. Sometimes in poetry, $\text{relative pronoun}$ is used as a relative pronoun; and at times it is omitted altogether: Prov. 23:22; Exod. 15:13. Likewise, 20 times the definite article functions as a relative pronoun before a finite verb (Gen. 18:21; 46:27; Josh. 10:24; Ruth 1:22; 2:6; 4:3; 1 Kgs. 11:9; 1 Chr. 26:28; 29:17; 2 Chr. 1:4; 29:36; Ezr. 8:25; 10:14, 17; Job 2:11; Isa. 51:10; 56:3; Ezek. 26:17; Dan. 2:4; 8:1).

35 Actually the elision or substitution takes place as the result of deletion or substitution transformations discussed in § 19.4 and § 19.5. However, for the sake of completion and illustration discussion is also given here.
(4) When substitution is required, \( N_1 \) is replaced in \( S \) by a personal pronoun in agreement with \( N_1 \) for number, gender, person, and case, unless ambiguity would result. If ambiguity would result from the substitution of a pronoun, or if the substitution of a pronoun is grammatically impossible, then \( N_1 \) may be replaced by another substitute, such as a simpler synonym, or it may be retained redundantly. A pronoun substitute is called the pronoun of reference. It refers to \( N_1 \), that is, the antecedent of \( \text{ref} \), and it marks the syntactic position of \( N_1 \) in the dependent clause \( S \).

(5) When \( N_1 \) is the principal term in an adverbial phrase of place, then the adverbial phrase may be replaced by a simpler substitute, such as here, there, and so forth. See (2) above.

**14.3.3.1 Rule One.** The following are examples of the first rule where \( N_1 \) is the subject or direct object of the verb in the dependent clause, and is elided. The first example illustrates the dependent relationship before deletion takes place; the second show the final result after deletion. Brackets enclose the redundant constituent that gets deleted.

(a)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{The land which I gave [the land] to Abraham and Isaac. (Gen. 35:12)} \\
\text{N} & \text{S(N)} & \text{R} & \text{N} \\
\end{array}
\]

becomes

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{The land which I gave Abraham and Isaac. (Gen. 35:12)} \\
\text{N} & \text{S(N)} \\
\end{array}
\]

(b)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{The LORD God of heaven who [the LORD God of heaven] took me from my father’s house. (Gen. 24:7)} \\
\text{N} & \text{S(N)} & \text{R} & \text{N} \\
\end{array}
\]

becomes

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{The LORD God of heaven who took me from my father’s house. (Gen. 24:7)} \\
\text{N} & \text{S(N)} \\
\end{array}
\]
The following are examples of the first rule where \( N_1 \) is the subject or direct object of the verb of the dependent clause, and substitution is made with a pronoun (\( R_1 \)) of reference for emphasis or clarity:

(a)  
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{נותר ישור [สัก\( S(N) \)\( ] \text{ מטיל את פרעה} = \text{Any beast that [the beast] divides the foot. (Lev. 11:26)}
\end{array}
\]

(b)  
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{_saved \( S(N) \) \text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19) who [your God] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)}}\end{array}
\]

(c)  
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{I am \text{ whom [me] sold \text{ into Egypt. (Gen. 45:4) who [your God] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19) who [your God] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)}}\end{array}
\]

---

36 The pronoun \( \text{it} \) replaces the subject noun phrase \( \text{he divides the foot. (Lev. 11:26)} \), but the pronoun is omitted in English.

37 The pronoun \( \text{he} \) replaces the subject noun phrase \( \text{your God saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19) who [your God] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)}}\end{array} \), and the pronoun is made reflexive in English.

38 The pronoun \( \text{me} \) replaces the object noun phrase \( \text{sold [me] into Egypt. (Gen. 45:4) who [your God] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19) who [your God] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)\text{ whom [me] saved you. (1 Sam. 10:19)}}\end{array} \), but the pronoun is omitted in English.
14.3.3.2 Rule Two. The following are examples of the second rule where N₁ is governed by a preposition, and substitution is made with a pronoun of reference:

(a) The place which you stand on [the place] (Exod. 3:5)

(b) Your donkey which you have ridden on [your donkey] (Num. 22:30)

(c) The cities which Lot had dwelt in [the cities] (Gen. 19:29)

---

In this verse the pronoun of reference is retained for emphasis, but translators have attempted to translate it as “for it,” “unto it,” “for them,” etc. However, the verb governs the thing done or made in the accusative (as here), and it requires the preposition to express “to” or “for” (BDB, 793). Therefore, the pronoun of reference should not be translated into English. The LXX understood the pronoun of reference in this way and did not translate it; but textual critics have misinterpreted this as an omission in the Hebrew text behind the LXX.

The prepositional pronoun was shifted next to the verb for stylistic reasons.
14.3.3 Rule Three. The following is an example of the third rule where N₁ is more deeply embedded in an element of the dependent clause, and where substitution is required:

The tree which I commanded you saying, “You shall not eat of the tree.” (Gen. 3:17)

Here the embedded element is the clause “You shall not eat of the tree.” It has been made an element of the clause “I commanded you . . .” The dependent clause is “I commanded you saying, ‘You shall not eat of the tree.’”

14.3.3.4 Rule Four. The following are examples of rule 4 where substitution is required and where the substitution of a pronoun is inappropriate:
In this example, the antecedent of the second רָאָשׁ is the entire phrase preceding the dash. When the antecedent is too lengthy (as in this case), then an abbreviated substitute for נִמי is used—in this case, “covenant of mine.”

A tree that you know is not a tree for food. (Deut. 20:20)

let a royal robe be brought which the king has worn, and a horse on which the king has ridden, which has a royal crest placed on its head. (Est. 6:8)

In this example the antecedent “horse” has two relative pronoun clauses joined by Waw conjunctive. It was the horse, not the honored man, which had the royal crest placed on its head.

14.3.3.5 Rule Five. The following are examples of the fifth rule where נִמי is the principal term in an adverbial phrase of place, and where the adverbial phrase may be replaced by a simpler substitute, such as here, there:

The land to which you go (Deut. 11:10)

[ Lit. the land which you are going there]

[נִמי “there” substituted for לֵאמֶר “to the land”]

The whole land of Havilah, in which there is gold (Gen. 2:11)

[ Lit. The whole land of Havilah which gold is there]

[נִמי is substituted for בָּקָל]

The ground from which he was taken (Gen. 3:23)

[ Lit. The ground which he was taken from there]

[נִמי “from there” substituted for בָּקָל]

14.3.3.6 The Indefinite Relative Pronoun Clause. Sometimes נִמי may be indefinite, having the meaning “one,” “someone” or “something,” “whoever” or “whatever.” At times, when expressing this thought, נִמי may be an indefinite word like “a man” or “a woman,” “a word” or “a
thing”; in such cases the rules above apply. However, Hebrew may omit $N_1$ when expressing an indefinite noun with a dependent clause. The structure of the Indefinite Relative Pronoun Transformation is expressed formally as

$$N_1 + S(N_1) \rightarrow S(R_1)$$

where $\text{Noun}$ functions like an English indefinite relative pronoun,\textsuperscript{41} and where the rules governing elision and substitution in the dependent clause are the same as for the general case defined above.

What his younger son had done to him (Gen. 9:24)

He whom you bless... and he whom you curse... (Num. 22:6)

With whomever you find your gods (Gen. 31:32)

What you shall say (Exod. 4:12)

For those who are of your household (Gen. 47:24)

to those who are of Beth Shean and its towns and those who are of the Valley of Jezreel. (Josh. 17:16)

Whoever kills his neighbor unintentionally (Deut. 19:4)

They walked after things that do not profit (Jer. 2:8)

My people have changed their Glory For what does not profit (Jer. 2:11)

The indefinite adverb “wherever” with a dependent clause is expressed idiomatically by the construct form of the word $\text{place} + \text{Noun} + S$. This is an example of one of several constructions in which a construct noun is not followed by a standard $nomen rectum$. The construct

\textsuperscript{41} Sometimes the interrogative pronoun $\text{whom}$ or $\text{who}$ is used like an indefinite relative pronoun. See BDB, 552, and examples in Jer. 7:17; 33:24; Mic. 6:5, 8; Job 34:33.
form is accounted for by phonetic rather than grammatical reasons.\textsuperscript{42} It is almost as though the indefinite relative pronoun clause that follows is functioning as the equivalent of a noun phrase.

Wherever the king’s command and decree arrived (Est. 4:3)

Wherever they offered sweet incense (Ezek. 6:13)\textsuperscript{43}

\textbf{14.3.3.7 Multiple Dependent Relative Pronoun Clauses.} A noun phrase may have a string of dependent relative pronoun clauses.

Let them bring a royal robe which the king has worn, and a horse on which the king has ridden, which has a royal crest placed on its head. (Est. 6:8)

You shall not make for yourself a carved image-- any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth (Deut. 5:8)

They shall spread them before the sun and the moon and all the host of heaven, which they have loved and which they have served and after which they have walked, which they have sought and which they have worshiped.

They shall not be gathered nor buried; they shall be like refuse on the face of the earth. (Jer. 8:2)

\textsuperscript{42} See GKC § 89a.

\textsuperscript{43} See also Gen. 39:20; 40:3; Est 8:17; etc.
14.3.4 The Participle Phrase

When \( N_1 \) is the subject of the dependent clause, and the verb of the clause is in the durative aspect and current tense, then the dependent clause attaches to the noun without a relative pronoun. The redundant subject is elided; the verb receives first position prominence, and it is changed to its cognate adjectival participle in agreement with \( N_1 \) for number, gender, and determination.

The structure of the transformation is

\[
(11) \quad N_1 + S(N_1, V) \rightarrow N_1 + V^a + S(-N_1, -V)
\]

where \( N_1 \) is the subject of \( S \), \( V^a \) is the cognate adjectival participle of \( V \). \( S(-N_1, -V) \) represents the content of \( S \) with \( N_1 \) and \( V \) removed. The resultant noun phrase is usually translated into English like a relative pronoun phrase.

14.3.4.1 The Indefinite Participle Phrase. Whenever \( N_1 \) is indefinite—that is, when it means someone, something, the one, the thing, etc.—then it is completely elided in the transformation.\(^{45}\) The structure of the transformation is

\[
(12) \quad N_1 + S(N_1, V) \rightarrow V^a + S(-N_1, -V)
\]

where \( N_1 \) is the subject of \( S \), \( V^a \) is the cognate adjectival participle of \( V \). \( S(-N_1, -V) \) represents the content of \( S \) with \( N_1 \) and \( V \) removed.

\[
\text{The one which encompasses the whole land of Havilah. (Gen. 2:11)}
\]

\[
[N_1 \text{ is determinate}]
\]

---

\(^{44}\) In some cases, a later deletion transformation may elide \( N_1 \), leaving the participle (and any of its complements) standing alone in a noun slot. This explains why a participle sometimes seems to function as a noun.

\(^{45}\) This also leaves the participle standing alone in a noun slot. This also explains why a participle sometimes seems to function as a noun.
Him who says to his father, “What are you begetting?” (Isa. 45:10)

14.3.4.2 The Construct Participle Phrase. At times in this context, the participle takes its construct form and governs its object in the genitive.

Those who fear God . . . those who hate covetousness (Exod. 18:21)

The men who brought the evil report about the land. (Num. 14:37)

You who ride on white donkeys. (Judg. 5:10)

Zimri, murderer of his master. (2 Kgs. 9:31)

Those who wait on the LORD. (Isa. 40:31)

In a few cases the construct participle is found governing a prepositional phrase or even an accusative with ֵָֽי. ֵָֽי

you who sit in judges’ attire, and who walk along the road. (Judg. 5:10)

Those who rise early in the morning . . . Who continue until night . . . (Isa. 5:11)

Those who dwell in it. (Isa. 24:6)

and the Levites who minister to Me. (Jer. 33:22)

14.3.4.3 The Negated Participle Phrase. On the rare occasion when a participle phrase is negated, the negative ֵָֽי is used.
Those who have no might. (Isa. 40:29)

**14.3.5 Passive Participle Phrase**

If a noun has a dependent clause in which the given noun is also the subject of the clause and the verb of the clause is a passive participle (or the participle of a stative verb), then the dependent clause is transformed into a modifier that seems to function as an adjective. In this case the dependent clause is attached to the noun it modifies without a relative pronoun or other connector; its subject is elided; and the rest of the clause stands intact except that the named agent (if any) is usually governed by ה instead of ב. Such constructions are better understood as a variation of a clause dependent on a noun, but the case is mentioned here for completeness.

In this example, N₆ modifies N₄ by means of P₅ expressing the genitive of material, thus forming noun phrase N₇—“a furnace of earth.” The underlying clause dependent on N₄ is “the furnace was made of earth.” P₃ governs N₇ forming an adverb phrase of place D₈—“in a furnace of earth.” D₈ modifies the passive participle V₉ specifying where the purity of the silver was tested; thus forming the predicate Q of the dependent clause S which specifies the how the purity of the silver was determined. The dependent passive participle clause that functions as an adjective here is: The silver is tried in a furnace of earth. The metallurgist who purified the silver is left unidentified, but it may be inferred that he was an expert.

semble יָּרֶדֶת לְעַל אֲדָמָה

silver tried in a furnace of earth (Psa. 12:7)

In this example, N₆ modifies N₄ by means of P₅ expressing the genitive of material, thus forming noun phrase N₇—“a furnace of earth.” The underlying clause dependent on N₄ is “the furnace was made of earth.” P₃ governs N₇ forming an adverb phrase of place D₈—“in a furnace of earth.” D₈ modifies the passive participle V₉ specifying where the purity of the silver was tested; thus forming the predicate Q of the dependent clause S which specifies the how the purity of the silver was determined. The dependent passive participle clause that functions as an adjective here is: The silver is tried in a furnace of earth. The metallurgist who purified the silver is left unidentified, but it may be inferred that he was an expert.
The passive participle may govern its complement in the genitive by means of the construct passive participle form.

אֶלְוַיַּמְשׁ ֶוגֶרֶךְ מָלַתָּם
a strong people set in battle array (Joel 2:5)

It may also govern its agent in the genitive by the same means.

שִבְּעִין ֹשְׁכְּלֵי ֵרָכוֹתָו ֶשִּׁרְוָם ֵכְּרִים
seven heads, thin and blighted by the east wind (Gen. 41:6)

אֲנָשָׁה ֵאֶחְבֹּת ֵרֵצְי
a woman loved by a lover (Hos. 3:1)

14.4 The Verbal Noun Phrase

When $N_1$ is a verbal noun expressing the abstract idea of the verb in the dependent clause, then the verb in $S$ is elided, and $S$ follows $N_1$ with no connective. In the general case, the verbal noun is expressed by the infinitive construct. This is possible because every verb has an infinitive construct form for each active stem. In the special case, in addition to the construct infinitive, some verbs have a corresponding verbal noun that inflects like a noun. The structure of the general transformation is

$N^v + S(V) \rightarrow V^n + S(-V)$

---

48 See also Gen. 26:29.

49 מִלָּאָם may be regarded as a stative participle here, but the stative participle is indistinguishable from an adjective.
where \( N^v \) is the cognate verbal noun of \( V \), and \( V^n \) is the cognate infinitive construct of \( V \). If either the subject or object of \( V \) is a pronoun, it may be suffixed to \( V^n \). The resultant phrase functions as a substantive in the clause of which it is a part.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Man’s being alone (Gen. 2:18)} & \quad \text{בר אֲלֹהֵי אָדָם לָבֵּד} \\
\text{God’s creating man (Gen. 5:1)} & \quad \text{בָּר אֲלֹהֵי אָדָם} \\
\text{His bequeathing to his sons that which shall be his (Deut. 21:16)} & \quad \text{והָיִית בַּלֹּם לְבָאָם אֶשְׁדוּ וַיִּשְׁלַּחֵם לְרֵעָּֽהוּ} \\
\text{Your being a priest to the household of one man, or your being a priest to a tribe. (Judg. 18:19)} & \quad \text{כֹּלֶּא היהָיִית בָּאָם נֶסֶל} \\
\text{He could not live after his fall. (2 Sam 1:10)} & \quad \text{לֹא היהָיִית בָּאָם נֶסֶל}
\end{align*}
\]

The structure of the special transformation is

\[
(14) \quad N^v + S(V) \rightarrow J^v + S(-V)
\]

where \( N^v \) is an existing cognate verbal noun of \( V \), and \( J^v \) is the construct form of \( N^v \). If either the subject or object of \( V \) is a pronoun, it may be suffixed to \( J^v \).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(a) \quad הָיוֹנְדוּיִים יִשְׁלְחֵֽהּ מַנְוַת אִשֶּֽׁ֥הָֽוָּֽו} \\
& \quad \text{The Jews will send portions to one another (Est. 9:19)*} \\
& \quad \text{becomes} \\
& \quad \text{מסלֵּ֧ה מַנְוַת אִשֶּֽׁ֥וָּֽו} \\
& \quad \text{Sending portions to one another (Est. 9:19)} \\
& \quad \text{[Subject elided]}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(b) \quad אָשֶֽׁ֥פְּסִים אָֽוָּֽוָּֽו} \\
& \quad \text{I will judge them concerning all their wickedness (Jer. 1:16)} \\
& \quad \text{becomes} \\
& \quad \text{מְשַׁפְּסִים אָֽוָּֽוָּֽו} \\
& \quad \text{My judgments against them concerning all their wickedness (Jer. 1:16)}
\end{align*}
\]
14.5 Restraints on the Order of Transformations in Noun Phrases

The transformations defined in this chapter account for most of the noun phrases found in Biblical Hebrew. However, the transformations may not be executed in random order. In general, the grammar of Hebrew syntax permits the special transformations to execute if they will generate modifiers in the following sequence: (M) + (J) + N + (A) + (D) + (R\text{d}) + (N\text{a})

where (M) is an optional quantifier.
(J) = an optional sequence of construct nouns, and where a given J governs the entire phrase that follows it.
N = an unmodified absolute noun.
(A) = an optional sequence of attributive adjectives (or simple adjective phrases), and where a given A modifies the entire noun phrase that precedes it, at least up to and including N.
(D) = an optional sequence of attributive adverbs (or simple adverb phrases), and where a given D modifies the entire noun phrase that precedes it, at least up to and including N.
(R\text{d}) = an optional attributive demonstrative pronoun that modifies the entire noun phrase that precedes it, at least up to and including N.
(N\text{a}) = an optional sequence of appositive noun phrases, and where a given appositive modifies the entire noun phrase that precedes it, at least up to and including N.

---

\(^{50}\) The kind of transformation that may be executed in a given situation depends on the current form of the general statement N + S(N) \rightarrow N + Modifier. That is, the kind of transformation that may currently be executed on N + S depends on the current structure of noun phrase N, and on the clause type of S. These generative details are of little interest to those engaged primarily in exposition of Scripture.

\(^{51}\) See 2 Chr. 1:10; Jer. 13:10; 33:12; and Hag. 2:9 for an alternate order when long adjectival phrases are involved.
four hundred shekels of silver. (Gen. 23:15)

two choice kids of the goats. (Gen. 27:9)

two chains of pure gold like braided cords (Exod. 28:14)

two hundred and fifty leaders of the congregation, representatives of the congregation, men of renown. (Num. 16:2)

All the glory of the daughter of the king inwardly (Psa. 45:14)

all the words of the law, the blessings and the cursings (Josh. 8:34)

If the execution of a special transformation would result in a violation of the above sequences, then the corresponding general transformation must be executed. These transformations generate the following general sequences:

\[N + \left(\text{something}\right) + S\]

where \(N\) is a noun phrase of any reasonable complexity, where \(\text{something}\) is omitted in some situations, and where \(S\) usually is modified in some fashion by higher ordered transformations and may even be a cluster of clauses.

this evil congregation who complain against Me (Num. 14:27)

the choice clothes of her elder son Esau, which were with her in the house (Gen. 27:15)
14.6 Coordinate Noun Phrases

When noun phrases have the same role and function in a sentence they are linked together by coordinating conjunctions\(^{52}\) to form compound noun phrases.

David and Abishai went to the people (1 Sam. 26:7)

On the very same day Noah and Shem, and Ham, and Japheth, Noah's sons, and Noah's wife, and the three wives of his sons with them, entered the ark (Gen. 7:13)

A compound noun phrase may be understood to be the result of deletion transformations on coordinate clauses with common constituents, such as common verbs and common phrases. For examples see Chapter 19.

14.7 Rules for Syntactic Analysis of Noun Phrases

The rules for syntactic analysis of phrases operate in reverse of the synthesis rules defined in the above sections. That is, the expositor recovers the full content of the dependent clause that underlies the phrase being analyzed. This clause is recovered from the literary context in which the phrase occurs, or from what was commonly known about the topic under discussion in the context. Take for example the genitive noun phrase מָלַשׁ הָעָם אבִישֶּׁי | מָלַשׁ (the sons of Israel). In Gen. 42:5 where the phrase occurs, the context is the Joseph story; the dependent clause may be understood to be: “Israel fathered twelve sons.” In Josh. 5:2 where the phrase occurs, the context is the nation of Israel crossing the Jordan River; there, common knowledge understands that the descendants of Israel had multiplied into a great nation, and its citizens were known as the sons of Israel; the dependent clause may be understood to be: “the citizens of the nation of Israel were known as the sons of Israel.”

\(^{52}\) See § 9.2.1. When more than two phrases are coordinated, some intermediate conjunctions may be elided.
In the analysis rules that follow, the rules bypass that part of the analysis involving recovering the content of the dependent clause. However, that step is assumed to be a necessary part of the analysis, even though it is not represented in the formal notation. The constituent(s) on the left side of the arrow ($\rightarrow$) are replaced by the constituent of the right side; or when drawing a tree diagram analysis, the left constituents are connected together and linked to the right constituent. Thus, the rule “$J_1 + N_2 \rightarrow N_3$” would be diagramed as follows:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\text{sons of Israel} \\
J_1 \\
N_2 \\
N_3
\end{array}
$$

Likewise, the expositor would record the recovered clause dependent on the head noun on the phrase.

All rules must observe the restraint of completeness and compatibility; that is, all phrases must have been fully reduced to a single symbol (completeness), and the elements on the left side of a rule must be grammatically and semantically compatible with each other in the literary context in which the phrase occurs. Ordinarily, with few exceptions, the constituents on the left side must be contiguous (immediately next to one another).

The analysis rules follow a hierarchical order. Those in Hierarchy I should be satisfied before those in Hierarchy II, and so forth. When an analysis rule is invoked, the expositor should record the dependent clause that underlies and explains the creation of the given phrase.

### 14.7.1 Restore Elision and Substitution

Every pronoun should be replaced by its antecedent, and every elided element of the dependent clause should be restored. Elements were initially elided because the information to which they refer is redundant and understood. The information can be recovered from preceding context or common knowledge. This restores the dependent clause to its unaltered form. The content of the dependent clause becomes part of the analysis. This greatly simplifies the analysis procedure. The rule for pronoun substitution is:

$$R \rightarrow N$$

---

53 *Semantic compatibility* means that the dependent clause underlying the potential phrase is true in the literary context in which the phrase occurs.
Abel also brought of the firstborn of his flock and of their fat. (Gen. 4:4)

R₃ → N₃ = N₁ = Abel
R₆ → N₆ = N₁ = Abel
R₈ → J₅ + N₆ = Abel’s flock

The rule for restoring deleted constituents is

ϕ → X

where X may be N, A, D, V, etc., and ϕ represents the zero element, that is, a constituent that had been deleted in the generative phase. This rule operates during the analysis procedure whenever it is evident that an expected constituent is missing. In the following example, restoration of both substitution and elision are illustrated:

But He did not respect Cain and his offering. And Cain was very angry, and his countenance fell. (Gen. 4:5)

R₅ → N₅ = N₂ = Cain
R₁₄ → N₅ = N₂ = Cain

The following elided subjects of verbs were restored:

N₁₅ = God
N₁₆ = Anger (literally: anger was kindled for Cain)

### 14.7.2 Appositives

Adjacent nouns (or noun phrases) that qualify as appositives should be linked together as a noun phrase. The underlying dependent clause is a predicate nominative copulative. The rule is

N₁ N₂ → N₃

Where the N’s are either both determinate or both non-determinate, and either may be single noun or a noun phrase.⁵⁴

---

⁵⁴ When N₁ is only one word, usually it will have a conjunctive accent, or occasionally a near disjunctive accent when N₂ is a phrase (see . . . נֵ֔בֵּשׁ בֵּלַ֖ל מַּעַּ֣ הַמִּנְּחָ֑ה Num. 15:4); but ordinarily a disjunctive indicates that the two words are grammatically unrelated (see בֵּ֔שֵּׁבֵּ֖שׁ בֵּ֣֑לַל Gen. 1:11).
Chapter 14

The Syntax of Hebrew

Noun Phrases

386

The dependent clause is the Identity Copulative: Isaiah is the prophet. Both nouns are determinate.

אִשֶּׁה יָזְנָה
N2 N1
N3

Isaiah the prophet (2 Kgs. 19:2)

The dependent clause is the Classification Copulative: the woman is a harlot. Both nouns are non-determinate.

אִשֶּׁה נָגָה
N2 N1
N3

a harlot woman (Lev. 21:7)

14.7.3 Coordination

Two nouns (or noun phrases) joined by Waw conjunctive, that serve the same grammatical role and function, should be linked together as a noun phrase. The rule is:

N1 W N2 → N3

Where N1 and N2 are complete and semantically compatible as coordinate noun phrases.55

N2 W N1
N3

David and Abishai went to the people (1 Sam. 26:7)

N3 = “David and Abishai” (N1 and N2) function coordinately in this construction.

14.7.4 Genitive Relationships

A construct noun immediately preceding an absolute noun (or noun phrase) should be linked to the absolute noun that follows it to form a noun phrase. A string of constructs must be linked in order, beginning with the one immediately before the absolute noun. The rule is:

J1 N2 → N3

Where J1 is the construct form of N1, and N2 is an absolute noun, or an equivalent noun phrase.56

The underlying dependent clause expresses a relationship between N1 and N2. The content of the dependent clause determines the kind of genitive associated with N2.

55 Coordinate phrases such as these are the result of deletion transformations discussed in Chapter 19.

56 Of the 5,389 construct‐absolute pairs, 5,085 of the construct nouns have a conjunctive accent, and 282 have a near disjunctive accent; only 22 have a remote disjunctive accent. When the construct noun (J1) has a disjunctive accent, N2 will be a phrase of two or more words as in the examples above.
Chapter 14

The Syntax of Hebrew Noun Phrases

387

14.7.5 Adjectival Attributes

An attributive adjective immediately following a noun (or noun phrase) it modifies should be linked with the noun to form a noun phrase. The adjective must agree with the noun it modifies in number, gender, and determination, and be in contextual semantic agreement with the noun. The underlying dependent clause is a predicate adjective copulative clause. The rule is:

\[ N_1 \; A \rightarrow N_2 \]

For the LORD is a great God (Psa. 95:3)

\[ A \rightarrow N_2 \]

For the LORD is a great God (Psa. 95:3)

N_2 = a great God; dependent clause = God (N_1) is great (A) in all His attributes [understood].

14.7.6 Demonstratives

An attributive demonstrative pronoun immediately following a noun (or noun phrase) should be linked with the preceding noun (or phrase) to form a noun phrase. The demonstrative pronoun should agree with the noun it follows in number, gender, and determination. The underlying dependent clause is a predicate demonstrative copulative clause. The rule is:

\[ N_1 \; R^d \rightarrow N_2 \]
There is no one greater in this house than I (Gen. 39:9).

14.7.7 Adverbial Attributes

An attributive adverb that immediately follows a noun (or noun phrase) should be linked with the noun (or phrase) to form a noun phrase. The adverb must define the value of an adverbial characteristic of the noun. The underlying dependent clause is a predicate adverb copulative clause. The adverb may be an adverbial prepositional phrase. The rule is:

\[ N_1 D \rightarrow N_2 \]

In the high place in Gibeon (1 Chr. 21:29)

14.7.8 Relative Pronoun Clause Modifier

After it has been fully analyzed, a dependent relative pronoun clause should be linked to its antecedent noun (or noun phrase) to form a noun phrase. The dependent clause may be of any type of clause. The rule is:

\[ N_1 S' \rightarrow N_2 \]

His work that God had created (Gen. 2:3)

\[ R_2 \rightarrow N_2 = \text{God, the restored antecedent} \]
\[ N^o = N_3 (\text{God’s work, the restored elided object of the verb V}) \]
\[ S = \text{God had created [His work]} \]
\[ S' = \text{which God had created [His work]} \]

\[ ^{57} \text{Note that D is an adverbial prepositional phrase in this case.} \]
N₄ = His [God’s] work that God had created; dependent clause = God had created His work.

14.8 Continuity of Constituents in Phrases

The syntactic structure of Hebrew phrases is usually continuous; that is, the constituents of phrases are contiguous without the intrusion of alien elements. However, some discontinuity is observed.

וַיֵּשֶׁב יוֹסֵף בָּמִצְרָ֥יאָמָה הוּ֗א וּבִיָּ֥ה אָבִי
And Joseph dwelt in Egypt, he and his father's household. (Gen. 50:22)
[The subject noun phrase is split]

14.9 Summary of Analysis Rules for Noun Phrases

\[ R \rightarrow N \]
\[ N_{1} N_{2} \rightarrow N_{3} \]
\[ N_{1} W N_{2} \rightarrow N_{3} \]
\[ J_{1} N_{2} \rightarrow N_{3} \]
\[ N_{1} A \rightarrow N_{2} \]
\[ N_{1} R^{d} \rightarrow N_{2} \]
\[ N_{1} D \rightarrow N_{2} \]
\[ N_{1} S^{r} \rightarrow N_{2} \]
CHAPTER 15
Syntax of Hebrew Adjective Phrases

The first section of Chapter 14 defined the general syntactic structure of all phrases as

\[ X + S(X) \rightarrow X + \text{Modifier} \]

The special case for adjective phrases is

\[ A + S(A) \rightarrow A + \text{Modifier} \]

where \( A \) is an adjective, \( S(A) \) is a clause about \( A \) that is dependent on \( A \); and the Modifier is derived from the content of \( S(A) \) and is the remnant of \( S(A) \) after redundancy is reduced by deletion or substitution. Obviously the dependent clause \( S(A) \) is semantically compatible with \( A \) and with the context of the discourse in which \( S \) and \( A \) occur. It is helpful to study the syntax of adjective phrases according to the various types of clauses that may be dependent on an adjective.

15.1 Dependent Attribute Clauses

The names of attributes and characteristics are nouns, whereas their values are adjectives. Some attributes or characteristics themselves have attributes or characteristics. For example color has various attributes such as hue, lightness, saturation, and tint. Thus one may speak of bright red, dark green, brilliant orange, or even reddish white (Lev. 13:19, 24, 42, 43). In such cases an adjective is modified by another adjective (as it were) because it specifies a value of a different attribute of the same characteristic.

In reality an individual adjective specifies the value of a given characteristic, but the characteristic usually is understood and so omitted. Thus the expression “bright red” is usually used rather than “the color bright red” because the characteristic “color” is understood, and so is redundant, and not necessary to the context. An adjective with a dependent attribute clause, that defines another attribute of the same characteristic, is transformed into an appositive adjective phrase. The structure of the transformation is:

\[ A_1 + S(A_1, A_2) \rightarrow A_1 + A_2 \]

\(^1\) Actually the characteristic name is omitted by a deletion transformation when the characteristic is known and non-emphatic.
where S defines the relationship between $A_1$, $A_2$.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{reddish-white (Lev. 13:19)}
\end{array}
\]

In this example the dependent clause states: The tint of the white color is reddish.

### 15.2 Dependent Adverb Clause

Some adjectival characteristics themselves have characteristics the values of which are defined by adverbs. An adjective with a dependent adverb clause is transformed into an adjective with an adverbial modifier. The structure of the transformation is:

\[
(2) \quad A_1 + S(A_1, D) \rightarrow A_1 + D
\]

where S defines the value (D) of some adverbial characteristic of A.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{D}
\end{array}
\]

Then God saw everything that He had made, and indeed it was very good. (Gen. 1:31)

In this example, the dependent clause states: The intensity of the goodness of God’s creation is very intense. This is one way the superior degree of comparison is expressed.

### 15.3 Dependent Quantifier Clause

Some adjectival characteristics themselves have characteristics the values of which are defined by units of measure. An adjective with a dependent quantifier clause is transformed into an adjective with a quantifier phrase. The structure of the transformation is:

\[
(3) \quad A_1 + S(A_1, N) \rightarrow A_1 + N^q
\]

where S defines the value ($N^q$) of some quantity of A.

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{N}^q
\end{array}
\]

"Let them make a gallows, fifty cubits high (Est. 5:14)

In this example, the dependent clause states: The units of measure of the height of the gallows is fifty cubits.
15.4 Dependent Characteristic Clause

An adjective is the name of a value of a characteristic. Some adjectives are the names of values of more than one characteristic. For example, “good” and “bad” are values for the characteristic appearance, taste, morality, etc. If in a given context the identity of the characteristic associated with an adjective is ambiguous, or if the author wants to emphasize the characteristic, then the characteristic must be named in the adjective phrase. This is accomplished by the characteristic transformation:

\[(4) \quad A_1 + S(A_1, N) \rightarrow F_1 + N\]

where \(F_1\) is the construct form of the adjective \((A_1)\), and \(N\) is the name of the characteristic of which \(A\) is a value. \(S\) defines the relationship of characteristic \((N)\) to its value \((A)\) in the broader context.

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
N_4 & F_1 & N_2 & F_1 & A_6 & A_5 \\
\end{array}
\]

great in counsel, and mighty in work (Jer. 32:19)

In this example, two dependent clauses are involved. The first states: The adjective “great” is restricted to God’s counsel in this context. It is equivalent to saying that God’s counsel is great. The second states: The adjective “mighty” is restricted to God’s works in this context. It is equivalent to saying that God’s works are mighty.

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
N_5 & W & N_4 & F_1 & W & N_2 & F_1 & A_6 \\
N_7 & \big| & N_8 & \big| & A_9 \\
\end{array}
\]

longsuffering, and plenteous of both mercy and truth (Exod. 34:6)

This last example illustrates a compound adjective phrase \((A_9)\); the head construct adjective \((F_3)\) of the second phrase \((A_8)\) has a compound modifier \((N_4 \text{ and } N_5)\). The underlying dependent clauses are: the forbearance of God’s anger is long; the measure of God’s mercy is plenteous; and the measure of God’s truth is plenteous.
15.5 The Limitation Transformation

When the dependent clause specifies some limitation to the range of adjective (A), then the limitation must be named in the phrase. This usually occurs when the adjective applies to only some part of the referent that the phrase modifies. In this case the part to which the adjective applies must be named. This is accomplished by the limitations transformation:

\[ A_1 + S(A_1, N) \rightarrow F_1 + N \]

where \( F_1 \) is the construct form of adjective \( A_1 \), and \( N \) is the name of the part to which \( A \) refers.

wise of heart (Prov. 10:8)

In this example, the dependent clause states: The adjective “wise” refers to the heart of the person involved. It is the equivalent of saying the heart of the person is wise, or that he is wise-hearted.

great of wing, long of pinions, full of feathers (Ezek. 17:3)

great of wings and plenteous of feathers (Ezek. 17:7)

The sons are harsh of face and stiff of heart (Ezek. 2:4)

15.6 Dependent Clause in General

An adjective may have a dependent clause that does not define the value of a characteristic, but that modifies the adjective in some other way. Such dependent clauses are attached to the adjective by means of a subordinating conjunction, and no transformation takes place. The structure is:

\[ A_1 + S \rightarrow A_1 + C^o + S \]

---

2 See also Exod. 36:1; Prov. 16:21.
where $C^s$ is a subordinating conjunction that expresses the dependency of $S$ on $A_1$.

Hebrew uses the conjunction $ב$ to express such dependency.³

לארה אלבב ב בירקה
No one is so fierce that he would dare stir him up (Job 41:2, Eng. vs. 10)

### 15.7 Dependent Comparative Clauses

An adjective may have a dependent clause comparing its value with that of something else. Generally three degrees of comparison are expressed: (1) the similar degree, (2) the superior degree, and (3) the superlative degree.⁴ Hebrew has no inflection to express comparative degrees as English does (i.e., high, higher, highest). Although it may be conceivable that the dependent comparative phrase is derived from a clause dependent upon the adjective, it is more likely that comparative adjective phrases are derived from a comparison of clauses⁵ of the form:

$$S_1(A) + \text{Comparative Conjunction} + S_2(A)$$

which is transformed into the form:

$$S_1(A) + \text{Comparative Preposition} + S_2(-A)$$

where further deletion and substitution transformations would reduce uninteresting redundant information to a minimum, and would construct the comparative phrase in its normal surface structure. However, because comparative phrases are usually discussed in the context of adjective phrases, the discussion of them is included here.

#### 15.7.1 The Similarity Degree of Comparison

Clauses are compared at the degree of similarity by the comparative conjunctions $כ$ . . $כ$ . In English order the structure is:

$$כ + S(A)_1 + כ + S(A)_2$$

³This construction is rather rare in Biblical Hebrew. Clear examples are difficult to locate. This type of dependency, when required, is usually expressed by circumlocution.

⁴Two additional degrees actually exist: (4) inferior degree, and (5) most inferior degree. These usually are absorbed into the discussion of the first three degrees, but ought to have separate treatment. See the discussion under the comparison of clauses (§ 19.2.7). English does not seem to have an antonym for "superlative."

⁵Most comparative phrases can be explained as being the result of deletion transformations on a comparison of clauses. See further discussion in Chapter 19 (§ 19.2.7) on the coordination and subordination of clauses.
which is usually translated into English as “Just as $S_1$ so $S_2$.” When $S_1$ and $S_2$ assign a common adjective ($A$) as the value of the same attribute of similar referents, the environment is right for the comparative transformation of similarity. The resultant comparative phrase of similarity would be:

\[ A + S(A, N) \rightarrow A + נ + N \]

where $A$ is the adjective common to $S_1$ and $S_2$, נ is the comparative preposition of similarity that derives from the comparative conjunctions \(ך \ldots \ך\), and $N$ is the referent in $S_2$ with which comparison is made. $N$ may be a phrase.

\[ נ \text{ כפר} \]

\[ N_2 \text{ כ } A_1 \]

*as small as hoar frost* (Exod. 16:14)

In this example, the dependent clause is: The manna was small like hoar frost is small.

\[ נֶוחַ כָּלֶבֶן \]

\[ קְרָדָה כָּתָמָה \]

Fair as the moon,

Clear as the sun,

Awesome as an army with banners (Song 6:10)

\[ כָּתָמָה כְּמֻר \]

*as wise as you* (Gen. 41:39)

\[ זָרוֹלָה כָּלאָלוֹת \]

*as great as our God* (Psa. 77:14)

\[ נוּפֶשֶׁה כְּמוֹ אָםָּלָלוֹת \]

*as dark as darkness itself, as the shadow of death.* (Job 10:22)\(^6\)

15.7.2 *The Superior Degree*\(^7\) of Comparison

Clauses are compared at the degree of superiority by the comparative conjunction \(יָדָה מְרַע\). In English order the structure is:

\[ S_1 + יָדָה מְרַע + S_2 \]

which is usually translated into English as “$S_1$ more than $S_2$.” When $S_1$ and $S_2$ assign a common adjective ($A$) as the value of the same attribute of similar referents, the environment is right for the

---

\(^6\) Cf. Job 11:8, 9.

\(^7\) Commonly referred to as the comparative degree.
comparative transformation of superiority. The structure of the resultant comparative phrase of superiority would be:

\[(8) \quad A + S(A, N) \rightarrow A + \text{superior preposition} + N\]

where A is the adjective common to S₁ and S₂, \(\text{superior preposition}\) is the comparative preposition of superiority that derives from the comparative conjunction \(\text{superior preposition}\), and N is the referent in S₂ with which comparison is made. N may be a phrase.

\[
\text{sweeter than honey} \ldots \text{stronger than a lion.} \quad \text{(Judg. 14:18)}
\]

In this example, two dependent clauses are involved. The first states: What is sweet more than honey is sweet. The second states: What is strong more than a lion is strong.

\[
\text{you are wiser than Daniel} \quad \text{(Ezek. 28:3)}
\]

\[
\text{deeper than the skin} \quad \text{(Lev. 13:3)}
\]

\[
\text{greater than Ai} \quad \text{(Josh. 10:2)}
\]

\[
\text{too small to receive the burnt offering} \quad \text{(1 Kgs. 8:64)}
\]

\[
\text{too great for them to dwell together} \quad \text{(Gen. 36:7)}
\]

15.7.3 The Superlative Degree of Comparison

In Hebrew the superlative degree of comparison is expressed in the same manner as the superior degree, except that the universal quantifier is used with the referent in S₂—that is, the referent in S₂ is the universal of the referent in S₁. This produces the resultant structure:

\[(9) \quad A + S(A, N) \rightarrow A + \text{universal preposition} + N\]

\[
\text{more cunning than any beast of the field} \quad \text{(Gen. 3:1)}
\]

---

8 Actually no such transformation is required, the appropriate phrase naturally results from deletion transformations at the discourse level.

9 Note that here N is a verbal noun (infinitive construct) phrase governing an object. Likewise the next example employs an infinitive.
Chapter 15  The Syntax of Hebrew Adjective Phrases

In this example, the dependent clause states: The serpent was cunning more than any beast of the field was cunning.

In this example, the dependent clause states: The serpent was cunning more than any beast of the field was cunning.

At times the universal quantifier is elided if its sense is understood from the context.

This phrase may be further transformed to the structure:

where N names the class with which comparison is made and the determinate form of the adjective expresses the superlative degree.

The phrase may be further transformed to the structure:

where F is the construct form of the adjective and N names the class with which comparison is made. N may be replaced by a pronoun when pronoun substitution is possible.

On rare occasions an idiom like that used for the superlative comparison of nouns is also used for adjectives. The structure of the idiom is as follows:

where F is the construct form of the adjective A which is determinate and plural.
Chapter 15  
The Syntax of Hebrew Adjective Phrases

15.8 The Substantive Transformation

At times an adjective (phrase) functions in a clause as though it were a noun (phrase). It appears as though the following transformation takes place:

\[ A \rightarrow N \]

And he made the Most Holy Place (2 Chr. 3:8)

15.9 Coordinate Adjective Phrases

When adjective phrases have the same role and function in a sentence they are linked together by coordinating conjunctions\(^\text{10}\) to form compound adjective phrases.

\[ וַיִּקְרָא יְהוָה יְהוֵּא אֵל רַחֶם וׁחַנָּוֻן אֵ֧רֶךְ אַפֶּ֛יִם וׁרַב־חֵ֖סֶד וֶאֱמֶ֧ת \]

And He proclaimed, "The LORD, the LORD God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abounding in goodness and truth (Exod. 34:6)"

\(^{10}\) See § 9.2.1. When more than two phrases are coordinated, some intermediate conjunctions may be elided.
And the woman was of good understanding and beautiful appearance; but the man was harsh and evil in his doings. (1 Sam. 25:3)

A compound adjective phrase may be understood to be the result of deletion transformations on coordinate clauses with common constituents, such as common verbs and common phrases. For examples see § 19.4.2.

15.10 Rules for Syntactic Analysis of Adjective Phrases

The rules for syntactic analysis of phrases operate in reverse of the synthesis rules defined in the above sections. That is, the expositor recovers the full content of the dependent clause that underlies the phrase being analyzed. This information is recovered from the literary context in which the phrase occurs, or from what was commonly known about the topic under discussion in the context. Take for example the genitive noun phrase נֶפֶשׁ לָו (low of stature). In Ezek. 17:6 where the phrase occurs, the context is a spreading vine; the dependent clause may be understood to be: “The height of the vine was low to the ground.”

In the analysis rules that follow, the rules bypass that part of the analysis involving recovering the content of the dependent clause $S(A_1)$. However, that step is assumed to be a necessary part of the analysis, even though it is not represented in the formal notation. The constituent(s) on the left side of the arrow ($\rightarrow$) are replaced by the constituent on the right side; or when drawing a tree diagram analysis, the left constituents are connected together and linked to the right constituent.

Thus, the rule “$F_1 + N_2 \rightarrow A_3$” (where $F_1$ is the construct form of adjective $A_1$) would be diagramed as follows:

\[
\text{נֶפֶשׁ לָו}
\]

\[
\text{N}_2 \quad \text{F}_1 \quad \text{A}_3
\]

of low stature (Ezek. 17:6)

The dependent clause $S(A_1, N_2)$ is not included in the diagram, but its identity and content becomes part of the analysis. It is understood to modify $A_1$, and its content is recorded. All rules must observe the restraint of completeness and compatibility; that is, all phrases must have been fully reduced to a single symbol (completeness), and the elements on the left side of a rule must be grammatically and semantically compatible. Semantic compatibility must be satisfied by determining that the left elements make good sense together in the broader context, that is, the
underlying dependent clause is factually true. Ordinarily, with few exceptions, the constituents on
the left side must be contiguous (next to one another).

(1) $A_1 A_2 \rightarrow A_3$

where $A_2$ expresses an attribute value of $A_1$.

:redish-white (Lev. 13:19)

The dependent clause is: “the tint of the color white ($A_1$) is reddish ($A_2$).”

(2) $A_1 D_2 \rightarrow A_3$

where $D_2$ expresses some adverbial attribute of $A_1$.

:Very good (Gen. 1:31)

The dependent clause is: “the intensity of the goodness ($A_1$) is very ($D_2$) intense.”

(3) $F_1 + N_2 \rightarrow A_3$

where $F_1$ is the construct form of Adjective $A_1$, and $N_2$ is the characteristic of which $A_1$ is a value.

:great in counsel, and mighty in work (Jer. 32:19)

The dependent clause is: “the counsel ($N_2$) of God is great ($A_1$) of wisdom.”
The dependent clause is: “the work ($N_4$) of God is mighty ($A_3$) of expanse.”

(4) $F_1 + N_2 \rightarrow A_3$

where $F_1$ is the construct form of adjective $A_1$, and $N_2$ is the name of the part to which $A_1$ refers.

:wise of heart (Prov. 10:8)

The dependent clause is: “the person’s heart ($N_2$) is wise ($A_1$).”

(5) $A_1 + C^s + S_2 \rightarrow A_3$

where $C^s$ is a subordinating conjunction that expresses the dependency of $S_2$ on $A_1$. 
Chapter 15  The Syntax of Hebrew Adjective Phrases

so fierce that he would dare stir him up. (Job 41:2, Eng. vs. 10)

The dependent clause is: “a person would dare to stir up Leviathan.” The analysis of $S_2$ is not illustrated.

(6) $A_1 + ק + N_2 \rightarrow A_3$

as small as hoar frost (Exod. 16:14)

The dependent clause is: “the smallness ($A_1$) is similar to the smallness of hoar frost ($N_2$).”

The other comparative adjective phrases are analyzed in the same way as the above example except for the prepositions involved.

15.11 Summary of Analysis Rules for Adjective Phrases

$A_1 A_2 \rightarrow A_3$

$A_1 D_2 \rightarrow A_3$

$F_1 N_2 \rightarrow A_3$

$A_1 C^s + S_2 \rightarrow A_3$

$A_1 C^c A_2 \rightarrow A_3$

$A_1 ק N_2 \rightarrow A_3$

$A_1 † N_2 \rightarrow A_3$

$A_1 על N_2 \rightarrow A_3$
CHAPTER 16
The Syntax of Hebrew Adverb Phrases

Unlike Hebrew noun phrases and adjective phrases, which seem to be wholly explained on the basis of transformations on dependent clauses, some adverb phrases seem to originate in the basic prepositional phrase structure rule:

\[ P + N = D \]

where \( P \) is any adverbial preposition and \( N \) is a noun (phrase). However, many adverbial phrases can be explained on the basis of the general transformation:

\[ X + S_j \rightarrow X + \text{Adverbial Modifier} \]

where \( X \) may be either \( N, A, D, V, Q \), or even \( S_i \) and where the dependency of \( S_j \) on \( X \) is expressed by an adverbial conjunction in the form \( X + C^s + S \). Obviously \( C^s \) and \( S \) must be semantically consistent with the adverbial characteristics of \( X \), and harmonious with the broader semantic context in which \( X \) and \( S \) occur.

In the case where the adverbial modifier may be an adverbial prepositional phrase, the following surface structure results:

\[ X + C^s + S_j \rightarrow X + P + N \]

where \( P \) is an adverbial preposition expressing the same dependency as \( C^s \), and \( N \) is derived from the content of \( S_j \). \( N \) may be a simple noun (phrase) consisting of a key word from \( S_j \), or one containing the condensed concept of \( S_j \), or a verbal noun phrase consisting of an infinitive construct with its associated constituents.\(^1\) In any case, the resultant \( P + N \) forms an adverb phrase. The complete transformation is:

\[ X + C^s + S_j \rightarrow X + P + N \]

where \( P \) and \( N \) are derived from \( C^s \) and \( S_j \) respectively.

---

\(^1\) See discussion on verbal noun phrases § 14.4.
Although the adverbial phrases derived from this general transformation may modify several different parts of speech, depending on the identity of X, this chapter discusses the transformation as it applies to adverbs (i.e., X = D). Later chapters discuss the application to verbs, predicates, and clauses.

**16.1 Dependent Adverb Clause**

Some adverbial characteristics themselves have characteristics the values of which are defined by adverbs, that is, an adverb with an adverbial modifier. The structure of this transformation is:

\[(D_1 + S_j(D_1, D_2)) \rightarrow D_1 + D_2\]

where \(D_1\) is the adverb of interest, and \(S_j\) defines the value \((D_2)\) of some adverbial characteristic of \(D_1\).

\[\begin{array}{c}
D_2 \\
D_1 \\
D_3 \\
\end{array}\]

very quickly (Zep. 1:14)

[Dependent clause: The intensity of the quickness was very.]

Frequently the characteristic of intensity is expressed idiomatically by repeating the adverb.

\[\begin{array}{c}
\text{exceedingly (Gen. 17:2)} \\
\text{[lit. very very]} \\
\text{very gradually (Exod. 23:30)} \\
\text{[lit. little by little]} \\
\text{very high (Deut. 28:43)} \\
\text{[lit.: higher, higher]} \\
\text{very low (Deut. 28:43)} \\
\text{[lit.: lower, lower]} \\
\end{array}\]

At times an infinitive absolute is idiomatically used adverbially to modify another adverbial infinitive absolute.

\[\begin{array}{c}
\text{very finely (Deut. 9:21)} \\
\text{[lit., crushing, doing good]} \\
\text{very plainly (Deut. 27:8)} \\
\text{[lit.: making plain, doing good]} \\
\end{array}\]
16.2 Dependent Comparative Clause

An adverb may have a dependent phrase comparing its value with that of something else. The comparison of adverbs is expressed in a similar manner to that of adjectives, and the derivation of comparative adverbial phrases also is explained on the basis of the comparison of clauses (see the discussion of dependent comparative clauses in the chapter of adjective phrases § 15.7). However, because comparative phrases also are usually discussed in the context of adverbial phrases, the discussion of them is included here.

16.2.1 The Similarity Degree of Comparison

Clauses are compared at the degree of similarity by the comparative conjunction קאֵשׁר...כָּשׁר. In English order the structure is:

\[ S_1 + כָּשׁר + S_2 \]

which is usually translated into English as “Just as S₁ so S₂,” or “S₁ like S₂.” When S₁ and S₂ assign a common adverb (D) as the value of the same adverbial attribute of similar referents, the environment is right for the comparative transformation of similarity. The resultant adverbial phrase of similarity would be:

\[ D + כָּשׁ + N \]

where D is the adverb common to S₁ and S₂, כ is the comparative preposition of similarity that derives from קאֵשׁר, and N is the referent in S₂ with which comparison is made. N may be a phrase. The resultant generative rule is:

\[ S(N, D) → D + כ + N \]

where S is a comparative sentence of similarity of the above form.

they shouted at them as at a thief. (Job 30:5)

Deep structure: Just as they shout at a thief, so they shouted at them (the fathers of Jobs three friends).

16.2.2 The Superior Degree² of Comparison

Clauses are compared at the degree of superiority by the comparative conjunction יָזָהר. In English order the structure is:

\[ S_1 + יָזָהר + S_2 \]

² Commonly referred to as the comparative degree.
which usually is translated into English as “$S_1$ more than $S_2$.” When $S_1$ and $S_2$ assign a common
adverb (D) as the value of the same adverbial attribute of similar referents, the environment is right
for the comparative transformation of superiority.\(^3\) The surface structure of the resultant adverbial
comparative phrase of superiority would be:

$$D_1 + \mathcal{m} + D_2$$

where $D$ is the adverb common to $S_1$ and $S_2$, $\mathcal{m}$ is the comparative preposition of superiority that
derives from the comparative conjunction of superiority $\mathcal{m}$, and $N$ is the referent in $S$ with
which comparison is made. $N$ may be a phrase. The resultant generative rule is:

$$D_1 + S(N, D_2) \rightarrow D_1 + \mathcal{m} + N_2$$

where $S$ is a comparative sentence of superiority of the above form.

$$\text{You have shown more kindness at the end than at the beginning} \quad \text{(Ruth 3:10)}$$

Deep structure: You have shown kindness at the end, more than you showed kindness at the beginning.

### 16.2.3 The Superlative Degree of Comparison

The superlative degree of comparison is like the superior degree except that it is expressed
by using the universal qualifier with the noun (phrase) of comparison. The surface structure of the
resultant superlative adverbial phrase is:

$$D + \mathcal{m} + \text{כל} + N$$

where $D$ is the adverb common to $S_1$ and $S_2$, $\mathcal{m}$ is the comparative preposition of superiority that
derives from the comparative conjunction of superiority $\mathcal{m}$, and $N$ is the universal referent
in $S$ with which comparison is made. $N$ may be a phrase. The resultant generative rule is:

$$D + S(N, D) \rightarrow D + \mathcal{m} + \text{כל} + N$$

$$\text{I have given to the house of my God far above all that I have prepared for the holy house} \quad \text{(1 Chr. 29:3)}$$

Deep structure: I have given a quantity of gold and silver for the house of my God upward,
more than I have prepared all the quantity of materials for the holy house upward.

\(^3\) Actually no such transformation is required, the appropriate phrase naturally results from deletion
transformations at the discourse level.

\(^4\) $D$ is the adverbial phrase $\text{l'v} \text{al} \text{המ} \text{לשהנוהי משלเพชנה} \text{לפיים הממַע} \text{לפיים הממַע}$
“above” and $N$ is the noun phrase “that which I have prepared for the holy house.” In this case, the relative pronoun $\text{ADVERTISEMENT}$ has been elided.
16.3 Rules for Syntactic Analysis of Adverb Phrases

The rules for syntactic analysis of phrases operate in reverse of the synthesis rules defined in the above sections. That is, the expositor recovers the full content of the dependent clause that underlies the phrase being analyzed. This information is recovered from the literary context in which the phrase occurs, or from what was commonly known about the topic under discussion in the context. Take for example the adverbial phrase יָשָׁנָה בְּקֵית סִימָלָא (very quickly). In Zep. 1:14 where the phrase occurs, the context is the Great Day of the Lord; the dependent clause may be understood to be: “The Great Day of the Lord is drawing near very quickly.”

In the analysis rules that follow, the rules bypass that part of the analysis involving recovering the content of the dependent clause S. However, that step is assumed to be a necessary part of the analysis, even though it is not represented in the formal notation. The constituent(s) on the left side of the arrow (→) are replaced by the constituent of the right side; or when drawing a tree diagram analysis, the left constituents are connected together and linked to the right constituent. Thus, the rule “D₁ + D₂ → D₃” would be diagramed as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
D_2 \\
D_3 \\
D_1 \\
D_3
\end{array}
\]

The dependent clause Sj(D₁, D₂) is not included in the diagram, but its identity and content becomes part of the analysis. It is understood to modify D₁, and its content is recorded. All rules must observe the restraint of completeness and compatibility; that is, all phrases must have been fully reduced to a single symbol (completeness), and the elements on the left side of a rule must be grammatically and semantically compatible. Semantic compatibility must be satisfied by determining that the left elements make good sense together in the broader context. Ordinarily, with few exceptions, the constituents on the left side must be contiguous (next to one another).

1. D₁ D₂ → D₃

\[
\begin{array}{c}
D_2 \\
D_3 \\
D_1 \\
D_3
\end{array}
\]

very quickly (Zep. 1:14)

The dependent clause: The quickness is intense.

2. D₁ כ N₂ → D₃

\[
\begin{array}{c}
N_2 \\
D_1 \\
D_3
\end{array}
\]

they shouted at them as at a thief. (Job 30:5)
Dependent clause: They shouted **at them** (D₁) like they shouted **at a thief** (N₂)⁵

(3)  \[ D₁ \uparrow N₂ \rightarrow D₃ \]

\[ \text{You have shown kindness} \]
\[ \text{at the end more than at the beginning} \ (\text{Ruth 3:10}) \]
\[ \text{[adverbial accusatives]} \]

Dependent clause: You have shown kindness **at the end** more than **You have shown kindness at the beginning**.

### 16.4 Summary

Adverbial phrases are derived from an adverb with a dependent clause. The phrase is the result of deletion and substitution transformations on the dependent clause.

**Analysis Rules**

(1)  \[ D₁ \; D₂ \rightarrow D₃ \]
(2)  \[ D₁ \; \uparrow N₂ \rightarrow D₃ \]
(3)  \[ D₁ \; \uparrow N₂ \rightarrow D₃ \]

---

⁵ Actually the adverb phrases involving comparison originate through deletion transformations. In this case, the redundant elements “they shouted” was deleted which resulted in the comparative adverbial phrase.
CHAPTER 17
The Syntax of Hebrew Verb Phrases

Ordinarily a verb is thought of as a single word, not as a phrase. While the verb often is a single word, it frequently requires auxiliary words to define some of its characteristics. Thus it is appropriate to refer to the verb as a phrase consisting of the principle verb and any of its necessary auxiliary modifiers. The verb in a kernel clause is initially defined as in the perfect aspect, the active voice, and the indicative mood. Also the other attributes of the verb phrase have default values. The structure of the verb phrase could be defined by phrase structure rules; but it seems better to define them by transformations, because the values sometimes have to be changed under the control of sequence transformations to be discussed in later chapters. This chapter describes the basic transformations that determine the structure of the verb phrase as required by its various characteristic values.

The syntax of the verb phrase and the specification of the morphological data for inflecting the verb and any of its auxiliaries are determined by a sequence of verb phrase transformations. The transformations must be performed in sequence in order to produce the proper structure of the verb phrase.¹

17.1 Semantic Emphasis Transformation

This transformation defines the syntax associated with the semantic emphasis attribute (see § 5.6.7). (Semantic emphasis is to be distinguished from position prominence.) The first option (1) is for the non-emphatic case, requiring no modification; the second option (2) is for the emphasis of certainty or intensity; the third (3) is for the emphasis of continuousness. The symbol \( D^v \) represents the cognate infinitive absolute of the verb \( V \).

\[
\begin{align*}
(1) & \quad V \rightarrow V \\
(2) & \quad V \rightarrow D^v + V
\end{align*}
\]

¹ The voice attribute of the verb (active, middle, passive, or reflexive) determines the verb stem (qal, piel, pual, hiphil, etc.). The mapping of voice with stem is not uniform; the lexicon defines the stem/voice relationship for each verb. No transformation is required for voice.
Chapter 17

Syntax of Hebrew Verb Phrases

(3) \[ V \rightarrow V + D^v \]

(Option 2)

He shall surely be stoned, or surely shot with an arrow. (Exod. 19:13)

(Option 3)

Keep on hearing, but do not understand; Keep on seeing, but do not perceive. (Isa. 6:9)

He keeps acting as a judge (Gen. 19:9)

Therefore he continued to bless you (Josh. 24:10)

He keeps smelting in vain. (Jer. 6:29)

Weep bitterly for him who goes away. (Jer. 22:10)

For further examples, see § 5.6.7 under the discussion of emphasis.

17.2 The Aspect Transformation

This transformation defines the value of the aspect attribute of the verb which determines which basic inflectional form the verb will assume (see § 5.6.5). The first option is for the perfect aspect, requiring no modification because the perfect aspect is the default value; the second option is for the imperfect aspect; and the third is for the durative aspect which will require a further transformation.
Chapter 17  Syntax of Hebrew Verb Phrases

(1) \( V \rightarrow V(\text{perfect}) \)
(2) \( V \rightarrow V(\text{imperfect}) \)
(3) \( V \rightarrow V(\text{durative}) \)

No examples are provided for this very basic operation.

17.3 The Durative Aspect Transformation

This transformation defines the syntax associated with the durative aspect only (see § 5.6.5.3; 6.3.3). In this transformation the verb takes on the active participle form and acquires an auxiliary helping verb. The first option (1) is for the present durative, or for the non-emphatic past or future durative in contexts where tense is already specified. The second option (2) is for the emphatic past durative; and the third (3) is for the emphatic future durative.

(1) \( V(\text{present durative}) \rightarrow V^a \)
(2) \( V(\text{past durative}) \rightarrow V_c^e(\text{perfect}) + V^a \)
(3) \( V(\text{future durative}) \rightarrow V_c^e(\text{imperfect}) + V^a \)

\( V^a \) is the participle of \( V \), being by nature an absolute, non-determinate form. \( V^a \) receives the attribute values of number and gender assigned to \( V \) by previous rules. The verb \( V^c_e \) is the auxiliary copulative מְלַיְיָה. It receives the attribute values of number, gender, and person assigned to \( V \) by previous rules, and it behaves as \( V \) in all subsequent transformations.

(Option 1)

Now Moses was sheparding the flock of Jethro (Exod. 3:1)

(Option 2)

Now Moses was sheparding the flock of Jethro (Exod. 3:1)
Chapter 17
Syntax of Hebrew Verb Phrases

411

 hw`hy+ - ta# tr}v*m=

 And the child was ministering to the LORD (1 Sam. 2:11)

κεκρατήρ θερωχιά

V (past-dur)
The oxen were plowing (Job 1:14)

אַבְנֶר מְחַטֶּה בְּכֵיה שְׁאָול:

Abner was strengthening his hold on the house of Saul. (2 Sam. 3:6)

(Option 3)

וְיִהְיוּ נָדְדִים בָּגְוִיִם:

V (fut-dur)

And they shall be wandering among the nations. (Hos. 9:17)

וְיִהְיוּ רֹעִים בַּמִּדְבָּר אַרְבָּעִים שָׁנָה:

And your sons shall be shepherding in the wilderness forty years. (Num. 14:33)

For further examples, see the discussion of the durative aspect in § 5.6.5.3.

17.4 The Mood Transformation

This transformation defines the morphological variations of the imperfect aspect associated with the various moods in the simple tone (see § 5.6.6).

(1) V(imperfect) → V(normal imperfect)
(2) V(imperfect) → V(long imperfect)
(3) V(imperfect) → V(short imperfect)

The first option (1) is for the indicative and subjunctive moods, for the positive volitive, and for the negative juridical volitive; This option requires no modification of inflectional form, so no examples are provided. The second option (2) is for the positive hortative and precative moods; the third (3) is for the negative non-indicative and non-subjunctive moods, and for the positive persuasive and optative moods.

(Option 2)

Now let us arise and go up to Bethel; and I will make an altar there to God (Gen. 35:3)
We will go down and buy you food. (Gen. 43:4)

Now therefore, please let me go up and bury my father, and I will come back. (Gen. 50:5) (polite)

I will now turn aside and see this great sight. (Exod. 3:3) (polite)

I will set a king over me. (Deut. 17:14)

May the LORD watch between you and me when we are absent one from another. (Gen. 31:49)

And now may the LORD show kindness and truth to you. (2 Sam. 2:6)

And let my lord the king do what is good in his eyes. (1 Chr. 21:23)

Do not answer a fool according to his folly. (Prov. 26:4) (negative)

And do not do him harm (Jer. 39:12) (negative)

For further examples, see the discussion in § 5.6.6 under mood.

17.5 The Transformation of Formality and Politeness

This transformation defines the syntax for the politeness attribute (see § 5.6.6.2). Options (1) and (3) are for the less formal statements, requiring no modification of structure. Options (2) and (4) are for expressing politeness or formality.

(1) V(imperfect) → V(imperfect)
(2) V(imperfect) → V(imperfect) + נָא
(3) V(imperative) → V(imperative)
Chapter 17
Syntax of Hebrew Verb Phrases

(4) \( V(\text{imperative}) \rightarrow V(\text{imperative}) + נָא \)

The transformation applies equally as well to the long, short, or normal imperfect respectively, retaining the long, short, or normal form specified by previous transformations. The long imperfect form occurs with נָא approximately 44 times, always in first-person direct discourse. The short imperfect form occurs with approximately 16 times, nearly always in third-person direct discourse.

(Option 2)

Now therefore, please let me go up and bury my father, and I will come back. (Gen. 50:5)

[long form with politeness]

Now, please, let us go three days' journey into the wilderness, that we may sacrifice to the LORD our God.' (Exod. 3:18)

[long form with politeness]

I will turn aside and see this great sight. (Exod. 3:3)

[long form with formality]

Please let there be an oath between us. (Gen. 26:28)

[short form with politeness]

Now therefore, please let your servant remain instead of the lad. (Gen. 44:33)

[short form with politeness]

And let the lad go up with his brothers. (Gen. 44:33)

[short form with politeness carried over from previous context]

Please let it be dry only on the fleece, but on all the ground let there be dew. (Judg. 6:39)

[short form with politeness]

Please do not act so wickedly! (Judg. 19:23)

[rare second-person short form with politeness]
The long imperative form occurs with בַּגִּיד approximately 26 times, always in second-person direct discourse. The short imperfect form occurs with בִּגְדַּה approximately 16 times, nearly always in third-person direct discourse.

Please tell me Your name. (Gen. 32:29) [long imperative form with politeness]

Please tell me what you have done. (Josh. 7:19) [short imperative form with politeness]

Please come, let me take you to another place. (Num. 23:27) [long imperative form with politeness]

Please go to the flock and bring me from there two choice kids of the goats. (Gen. 27:9) [short imperative form with politeness]

Please bring me the ephod. (1 Sam. 30:7) [long imperative form with politeness]

For further examples, see §5.6.6 under the discussion of mood.

17.6 The Directive Transformation

This transformation defines the syntax for the tone attribute (see §5.6.6.2). The first option (1) is for the simple tone, requiring no modification of inflectional form. The second is for the directive tone; it is used for the volitive, hortative, precative, and persuasive moods only; also it is used only for positive statements. The transformation applies equally as well to the long, short, or normal imperfect respectively, providing the corresponding long, short, or normal imperative form in the second option.

(1) V(imperfect) → V(imperfect)

(2) V(imperfect) → V(imperative)
Chapter 17

Syntax of Hebrew Verb Phrases

415

For further examples, see § 5.6.6.2 under the discussion of the directive tone.

In the indicative mood, verbs are negated by prepositive נל. In non-indicative moods, the verbs are negated by prepositive ול for emphatic negation, and by prepositive ב and for simple negation. The negative is regarded as a morpheme of the verb, therefore no negation transformation is provided here.

17.7 The Dependent Clause Transformation with a Verb

The basic verb phrase is generated by the above six transformations. However, clauses dependent on the verb phrase may add further modifiers. The following transformation accommodates this condition; it is defined as follows:

\[ V + S(N^v, D) \rightarrow V + D \]

where \( S \) is some clause dependent on \( V \) that defines an adverbial characteristic (\( N^v \)) of \( V \) with the value \( D \).

\[ \text{And the waters prevailed and greatly increased on the earth (Gen. 7:18)} \]

\[ \text{And the waters prevailed exceedingly on the earth (Gen. 7:19)} \]

\[ \text{The LORD shall reign forever and ever (Exod. 15:18)} \]

(he verb phrase is compound)

\[ \text{They thoroughly broke in pieces its altars and images (2 Kgs. 11:18)} \]

(he infinitive absolute הביב functions as an adverb)
17.8 Analysis Rules for Verb Phrases

The analysis of Hebrew verb phrases consists of operating the back transformations corresponding to the analysis transformations that generated the phrase. The following are the relevant analysis rules:

(1) \( D^\vee + V \rightarrow V(\text{emphasis of certainty}) \)

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c}
V & D^\vee & V \\
\hline
\text{emphasis of certainty} & \text{Emphasis of certainty} & \text{Emphasis of certainty} \\
\hline
\end{array} \]

Now therefore, if you will indeed obey my voice . . . (Exod. 19:5)

(2) \( V + D^\vee \rightarrow V(\text{emphasis of continuousness}) \)

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c}
D^\vee & V & V \\
\hline
\text{emphasis of continuousness} & \text{Emphasis of continuousness} & \text{Emphasis of continuousness} \\
\hline
\end{array} \]

He keeps acting as a judge (Gen. 19:9)

(3) \( V_1^c + V_2^a \rightarrow V(\text{durative})^2 \)

\[ \begin{array}{c|c|c|c}
V_a & V^c & V \\
\hline
\text{durative} & \text{Durative} & \text{Durative} \\
\hline
\end{array} \]

And the child was ministering to the LORD (1 Sam. 2:11)

(4) \( V + \text{polite or formal} \)

(5) \( V + D \rightarrow V \)

17.9 Summary

**Semantic Emphasis Transformation**

(1) \( V \rightarrow V \)

(2) \( V \rightarrow D^\vee + V \)

(3) \( V \rightarrow V + D^\vee \)

**The Aspect Transformation**

(1) \( V \rightarrow V(\text{perfect}) \)

(2) \( V \rightarrow V(\text{imperfect}) \)

(3) \( V \rightarrow V(\text{durative}) \)

^2 A position transformation may front \( V^c \) and thus separate it from \( V^a \), otherwise the elements of a verb phrase are expected to be contiguous.
Chapter 17  Syntax of Hebrew Verb Phrases

The Durative Aspect Transformation

(1) \( V(\text{present durative}) \rightarrow V^a \)
(2) \( V(\text{past durative}) \rightarrow V^c(\text{perfect}) + V^a \)
(3) \( V(\text{future durative}) \rightarrow V^c(\text{imperfect}) + V^a \)

The Mood Transformation

(1) \( V(\text{imperfect}) \rightarrow V(\text{normal imperfect}) \)
(2) \( V(\text{imperfect}) \rightarrow V(\text{long imperfect}) \)
(3) \( V(\text{imperfect}) \rightarrow V(\text{short imperfect}) \)

The Transformation of Formality and Politeness

(1) \( V(\text{imperfect}) \rightarrow V(\text{imperfect}) \)
(2) \( V(\text{imperfect}) \rightarrow V(\text{imperfect}) + N^2 \)
(3) \( V(\text{imperative}) \rightarrow V(\text{imperative}) \)
(4) \( V(\text{imperative}) \rightarrow V(\text{imperative}) + N^2 \)

The Directive Transformation

(1) \( V(\text{imperfect}) \rightarrow V(\text{imperfect}) \)
(2) \( V(\text{imperfect}) \rightarrow V(\text{imperative}) \)

The Dependent Clause Transformation with a Verb

\( V + S(N^v, D) \rightarrow V + D \)

Analysis Rules for Verb Phrases

(1) \( D^r + V \rightarrow V(\text{emphasis of certainty}) \)
(2) \( V + D^r \rightarrow V(\text{emphasis of continuousness}) \)
(3) \( V^c_1 + V^a_2 \rightarrow V(\text{durative})^3 \)
(4) \( V + N^2 \rightarrow V(\text{polite or formal}) \)
(5) \( V + D \rightarrow V \)

\(^3\) A position transformation may front \( V^c \) and thus separate it from \( V^a \), otherwise the elements of a verb phrase are expected to be contiguous.
CHAPTER 18
Analyzing Hebrew Sentences

Up to this point, attention has been directed to how Hebrew sentences are constructed and how meaningful information is encoded in the structures of Hebrew sentences. That process is the theoretical method the Biblical authors used to compose the sentences. Knowledge of that process is helpful for the expositor. It lays the foundation for understanding the methodology of analyzing Hebrew sentences.

Chapter 12 contains illustrations of the analysis diagrams for Hebrew kernel clauses. This chapter expands that analysis diagraming to include the complexities introduced when one or more of the clause constituents is a phrase. The reader should consult Chapter 12 for a review of the diagrams. Obviously it is not necessary to make an analysis diagram of every sentence of a discourse, but only of those where complexity or potential obscurity may hinder the clear perception of the coherence of the text. This chapter explains the methodology for producing analysis diagrams and the associated thought processes needed for extracting the expository information the diagraming brings to light. What questions should the expositor ask when he makes a diagraming link? Where does he find the answers? How does the discovered information fit into the overall exposition? This chapter leads the expositor through the analysis steps.

The analysis procedure of a sentence assumes that the beginning and end of a sentence have been identified so that only its constituent phrases are under scrutiny. Usually sentences in a text are joined together by conjunctions, so that a sentence begins just after its immediately preceding conjunction and ends just before its immediately following conjunction. Those sentence-linking conjunctions are constituents of discourse and not of the sentence itself (see chapter 19). Of course, compound phrases may have imbedded coordinating conjunctions (§ 14.6), and a complex constituent may have imbedded dependent clauses (§ 14.3.3, 4, 5), but these complications should have already been resolved and incorporated into the analysis of phrases. Unfortunately, some discourse conjunctions may have been elided (§ 19.1.6), leaving a sentence boundary unmarked; but usually remote disjunctive accents mark such boundaries (§ 22.7.2; § 22.8.2). For example, the following verse has five sentences, each linked to what precedes it by a coordinating
conjunction, except the second. The division between the first and second sentence is unmarked except for the remote disjunctive accent Zaqeph (ֵא) on the last word of the first sentence. It is the highest ranking remote disjunctive accent between the coordinating conjunctions before and after. The last word of a sentence is nearly always marked by the highest ranking disjunctive accent in its domain.

וַיֹּאמֶר הַמֶֹ֙לֶךְ לְׁאֶסְׁתֵ֜ר גִַּ֣ם בַיָּ֤וֹם הַשֵנִיֹ֙ בְׁמִשְׁתִֵ֣ה הַיֵַ֔יִן
וְׁתִנִָֽן לָָ֑ךְ
וּמַה־בַקָשָתֵָ֛ךְ עַד־חֲצִֵ֥י הַמַלְׁכֶ֖וּת
וְׁתֵעָָֽֽש׃

And on the second day, at the banquet of wine, the king again said to Esther,
“What is your petition, Queen Esther?
It shall be granted you.
And what is your request, up to half the kingdom?
It shall be done!” (Est. 7:2)

In addition, some sentence boundaries extend beyond the end of a verse. When a sentence is properly isolated, the expositor is left with a collection of independent phrases that constitute a subject and predicate—the flesh and bones of an expressed thought.

As in the analysis of phrases and clauses, the present analysis procedure consists of undoing the transformations performed in the composition of the text. The procedure consists of four steps in hierarchic order:

I. The Restoration of Deletion and Substitution
II. The analysis of all phrases
III. Determine syntactic roles
IV. The analysis of sentences

In the analysis process, Hierarchy I takes priority over the others; and Hierarchy II takes priority over III, etc.

18.1 The Restoration of Deletion and Substitution

Restoration puts back all elided elements and replaces all personal pronouns and other substitutes with their antecedents. The sacred author originally minimized redundancy in the discourse; this step restores redundancy for the sake of exposition. The restoration process involves three operations: (1) restore elided elements, (2) restore the antecedents of pronouns, and (3) restore the antecedents of other substitutes.
18.1.1 Restore Elided Elements

This step restores all elided elements. An element of a clause is often omitted if it is redundant and would be self-evident if omitted. Thus in Hebrew, if two or more succeeding clauses have the same subject, the redundant subject is omitted in the second and succeeding clauses. At times, a self-evident object of a verb may be omitted. When the verb of a clause is the copulative, and in the aspect, tense, and mood of the current segment of the discourse, it is usually omitted. When an adjective stands in a noun slot, it is usually there because the noun it modifies is redundant and self-evident, and thus has been omitted. It is helpful for the expositor to force himself to restore all such elided elements in order to assure himself that he correctly perceives the coherence of the text. The expositor should ask himself the following questions: What has been left out here as self-evident? Do I clearly understand what it is? If not, where do I find it? Such elided information may be found in the preceding context, or in the knowledge common to the author and his readers. The rule for this restoration step is:

\[ \phi \rightarrow (X) \]

where \( \phi \) is the elided element, and \( X = \{N, A, D, V, \text{ or } Q\} \). The parentheses mark the element as restored. When restoring verbs and predicates, it is safe to regard their tense and mood to be that passed down and inherited from the preceding context. The redundancy that justified the elision of the verb or predicate would have included tense and mood, otherwise a newly inflected verb would be required to mark the transition.

18.1.2 Restore Antecedents of Pronouns

When a noun or noun phrase is redundant, but some measure of ambiguity would result if the noun were omitted, then pronoun substitution usually takes place. The redundant noun is omitted and a personal pronoun stands in its place.\(^1\) In the analysis of sentences, the antecedents of personal pronouns should be restored in order to avoid potential ambiguity or misunderstanding. The rule for this operation is:

\[ R \rightarrow N \]

where \( R \) represents a personal pronoun or a predicate demonstrative pronoun (§ 10.3.1) and \( N \) is its antecedent recovered from the preceding context or from the common knowledge shared by the author and his audience; it may be a single word or a phrase of any complexity. The restored noun

---

\(^1\) The pronoun exhibits grammatical concord with the noun it replaces for number, gender, person, and case.
phrase should be marked with the number, gender, person, and case of the pronoun for which it was restored.

18.1.3 Restore Antecedents of Other Substitutes

At times, other kinds of substitutions are made. The circumstances are the same—some element is redundant, but in this case, deletion or pronoun substitution would still result in some degree of ambiguity. So a more specific substitute replaces the redundant element—one more specific than a pronoun, and less redundant than its antecedent. In the analysis of sentences, these substitutes should be replaced with their antecedents. The rule for this operation is:

\[(3) \quad X^s \rightarrow X\]

where \(X^s\) and \(X\) are the same part of speech, \(X^s\) is the substitute, and \(X\) is its antecedent, and \(X = \{N, A, D, V, Q, \text{ or } S\}\).

18.2 Analyze Phrases

The second phase of the analysis procedure is the analysis of phrases. All phrases should be fully analyzed and reduced to a single symbol. The procedure for this analysis is described in § 14.7, § 15.9, § 16.3, and § 17.8. The reader is referred to these chapters for a review of the procedure. Tree diagrams are used to display the syntactic structure of the phrases—and clauses. In this chapter, complete tree diagrams are used for each example, and an exhaustive description of each analysis is given. The use of tree diagrams and detailed descriptions may seem tedious and redundant at times, especially in the simpler structures where the analysis seems self-evident. But such monotony and repetition is tolerated here for pedagogical purposes. The more analytical experience an expositor gains, the less need there is for diagrams; but diagrams are helpful for the more complex sentences. Every node of a tree diagram is the place for an expositor to find information which may otherwise be overlooked.

The analysis should always begin with the most deeply imbedded elements of a phrase. For most phrases this means working with the modifier closest to the head element. Exceptions are prefixed quantifiers\(^2\) and strings of construct nouns.\(^3\) Constituents should not be joined grammatically or syntactically unless their analysis is complete and they agree grammatically and semantically with the near and remote context.

\(^2\) Quantifiers should not be joined to the quantified phrase until the analysis of the phrase has been completed.

\(^3\) Construct nouns may only unite with an adjoining absolute noun phrase.
18.3 Determine Syntactic Roles

The third phase of the analysis procedure is to determine the syntactic role of the constituent phrases of the sentence being analyzed. This means identifying the subject, the complements of the verb, and any adjuncts.

18.3.1 The Subject

If one of the constituent phrases has been restored as the antecedent of a nominative pronoun (§ 10.2.1), it is already marked as the subject; otherwise, the consensus of several linguistic features points to the noun phrase functioning as the subject: (1) grammatical concord with the verb, (2) prominence, (3) precedence, (4) determination, and (5) semantic concord.

1. With only limited exceptions, ordinarily the subject of a sentence has grammatical concord with the verb for number, gender, and person. In the case of a potential exception or a restored verb, these data may be uncertain. Likewise, where two candidate phrases both satisfy this expectation ambiguity exists.

2. In the kernel form of a sentence the default order is subject-verb-object. So unless the verb or some other constituent has been granted first position prominence, the subject is expected to have first position prominence.

3. Ordinarily the subject of a sentence is expected to be old information and the predicate new. That is, the subject has precedence, having been mentioned in prior context. Exception occurs where focus shifts to a new participant or from one participant to another.

4. In harmony with (3) above, the subject is ordinarily expected to be determinate. In the case of a copulative sentence where two candidates for the role of subject are determinate, the sentence expresses identity (§ 12.1.3), and the distinction between subject and predicate complement is exegetically irrelevant.

5. Finally, apart from figurative language, the subject has semantic concord with the verb; that is, the verb names something the subject can do or be in the reality of the text.

18.3.2 The Verbal Complements

If one of the constituent phrases has been restored as the antecedent of an accusative pronoun (§ 10.2.2), or it is governed by the sign of the accusative אֶת, it is already marked as a complement of the verb. Otherwise, the phrase is a complement of the verb if it is not the subject and

---

4 I regard all alleged verbless clauses to be the result of elision; consequently, all elided verbs get restored in step I above.

5 See Chapter 12, footnote 1.
it meets three conditions: (1) the phrase is in concord with the grammatical governance of the verb, (2) the phrase is in concord with the semantic governance of the verb, and (3) the phrase satisfies the expectation of the context.

(1) A phrase is in concord with the grammatical governance of the verb: (a) if it is a noun phrase and the verb governs its complement in the accusative case, or (b) if it is a prepositional phrase and the verb governs its complement in the genitive case by means of the associated preposition.

(2) A phrase is in concord with the semantic governance of the verb if the entity the phrase names is capable of receiving the action, state, or relationship named by the verb and is consistent with the reality of the context.

(3) When the flow of thought is well-formed, the reader or listener anticipates what is coming next in a sentence—there is a logical expectation to be satisfied. Verbal complements normally satisfy such expectations. While the potential predicate thus formed is expected to provide new information, it is not expected to produce a contradiction or a statement that is not meaningful with respect to the context.

18.3.3 The Adjuncts

If one of the constituent phrases is neither subject or complement of the verb it is regarded as an adjunct (§ 12.2.3). Adjuncts are phrases that are added to a clause containing supplemental information relating to time, place, manner, etc. But the sentence is grammatically, syntactically, and semantically complete without the adjunct. If an adjunct were to be omitted, the meaning of the sentence would not be altered.

18.4 Analysis of Sentences

The fourth phase of the analysis procedure is the analysis of sentences. Each sentence should be fully analyzed and reduced to a single symbol (S). The analysis diagraming of clauses is illustrated in Chapters 12 and 13. The reader is referred to those chapters for a review of analysis diagrams.

At the clause level, in addition to the basic kernel information a clause conveys, the following additional information may be extracted: (1) the degree and kind of negation, if any; (2) whether the clause is expressed in the active, passive, reflexive, or middle voice; (3) whether or not the clause conveys an element of causation; (4) whether or not a constituent of the clause has been granted position prominence; and (5) whether the clause is a declaration, exclamation, or interrogation. All the above information is encoded in the syntax of a clause and contributes to the
overall meaning of the clause and to its contributory role in the overall discourse of which it is a part.\(^6\)

The expositor should note the information derived from the syntax of a clause and make note of how it contributes to the overall exposition of the text. The following examples illustrate the expository analysis of sentences, following through the three analysis steps—(1) restore deletions and antecedents, (2) analyze phrases, and (3) analyze clauses—with corresponding explanation.

**18.4.1 Copulative Sentences**

The following examples illustrate the analysis of the various types of copulative sentences.

**18.4.1.1 Classification Copulative Sentence (§ 12.1.2)**

\[ \text{וְׁיִפְׁתִָ֣ח הַגִּלְׁעָדִָ֗י הָיָ֙הֹ֙ גִּבִ֣וֹר חֵַּ֔יִל} \]

Steps 1 & 2:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
N_5 & J_4 & V^c & N_2 \quad N_1 \\
N_0 & Q^c & N_6 & S^c
\end{array}
\]

Step 3:

(a) \(N_6\) is the subject because it is in first position, determinate, and in grammatical concord with the verb, whereas

(b) \(N_7\) is in last position and a non-determinate classification phrase.

(c) \(N_7\) is the predicate complement of the copulative verb \(V^c\), forming the classification copulative predicate \(Q^c\).

---

\( ^6 \) In order to save the reader some time, this paragraph is repeated from a portion of § 13.6.
Step 4:
(a) $N^6_s$ is the subject of the copulative classification predicate $Q^c$, forming a normal copulative classification sentence $S^c$ with no syntactic modifications.
(b) The sentence is the first of three in the verse, being set off by remote disjunctive Zaqeph. The subject phrase $N^6_s$ is set off by remote disjunctive Rebia, and the verb phrase $V^c$ by near disjunctive Pashta.

18.4.1.2 Classification Becoming Copulative Sentence (§ 12.1.2)

Step 1: this sentence had no deletions or substitutions other than the understood adjectival characteristics discussed below.

Step 2:
(a) The infinitive absolute of the copulative verb $V^d$ modifies the copulative verb $V^c$, forming the verb phrase $V$, expressing certainty.
(b) Adjective $A_1$ (great) and $A_2$ (mighty) are joined by Waw conjunctive to form the compound adjective phrase $A_3$ (great and mighty). The adjectives are equal in grammatical function and role: each defines the future value of a different but understood characteristic of noun $N_2$ (nation): great of population and mighty of international power.
(c) Compound adjective phrase $A_3$ modifies noun $N_2$ (a nation), forming the attributive noun phrase $N_3$ (a great and mighty nation).

Step 3:
(a) Noun $N_1$ (Abraham) is the subject because it is in first position, determinate, and in grammatical concord with the verb, whereas
(b) Noun phrase $N_3$ is in last place, non-determinate, and governed by a preposition.
(c) Noun phrase $N_3$ is the predicate complement of verb phrase $V$ as governed by preposition $P$ indicating the sense of “becoming” rather than simply “being.” Together these three form the predicate $Q$. 
Step 4:

(a) The clause is in kernel form. Noun N₃₁ (Abraham) is the subject of predicate Q forming the becoming copulative attributive sentence S. The sentence is the result of the deletion transformation operating on two coordinate attributive sentences about Abraham: “Abraham shall surely become a great nation of population; and Abraham shall surely become a mighty nation of international power.”

(b) The sentence is the first of two in the verse, being set off by remote disjunctive Athnach. The subject phrase N₃₁ is set off from the predicate by remote disjunctive Zaqeph, and the verb phrase V by near disjunctive Tebir.

18.4.1.3 Attributive Copula Sentence (§ 12.1.4)

The portion of the descendants of Judah was too much for them (Josh. 19:9)

Step 1: Pronoun R is replaced by its antecedent N₅ which is the same as N₄ (the sons of Judah).

Step 2:

(a) Proper noun N₃ (Judah) modifies construct noun J₂ (sons = descendants) forming a genitive noun phrase of ancestry N₄ (the descendants of Judah). The clause dependent on J₂ is: Judah had descendants.

(b) Noun phrase N₄ modifies construct noun J₁ (portion) forming a genitive noun phrase of inheritance N₆ (the portion of the descendants of Judah) which is also recognized as the subject of the sentence.

(c) Noun phrase N₅ (descendants of Judah) modifies quantitative adjective A₁ (much) by means of preposition P (מִן) to form the comparative adjective phrase A₂ (more than the descendants of Judah—paraphrased in English as “too much for . . .”).
Step 3:
(a) Noun phrase N₆ is the subject because it is in grammatical concord with the verb, follows the verb which has been granted first position prominence, is determinate, and the only candidate.

(b) Adjective phrase A₂ is the predicate complement of the copulative verb Vᶜ, forming the predicate Q of the sentence; the verb has been granted first position prominence, thus splitting the constituents of the predicate.

Step 4:
(a) The subject noun phrase N⁶ and the predicate Q form the copulative attribute sentence S with its verb granted position prominence.

(b) The sentence is the second of three of the verse, following Athnach and being set off by Zaqeph. The verb phrase Vᶜ is set off by near disjunctive Garshaim, and the subject phrase N⁶ by near disjunctive Pashta.

### 18.4.1.4 Predicate Adverb Copulative Sentence (§ 12.1.5)

וַיְֵיהִי אֲרוֹן־יְָהוָה בִשְׁדֵֵ֥ה פְׁלִשְׁתִֶ֖ים שִבְׁעֵ֧ה חֳּדָשִּֽים׃

Step 1 & 2:

Step 3:

Step 4:

And the ark of the LORD was in the country of the Philistines seven months. (1 Sam. 6:1)

Step 1: this sentence had no deletions or substitutions.

Step 2:

(a) Proper noun N₂ (the Lord) modifies construct noun J₁ (ark), forming a genitive noun phrase of ownership N₆ (the ark of the Lord), which is recognized as the subject of the sentence. The clause dependent on J₁ is: The ark belongs to the Lord.

(b) Noun N₄ (Philistines) modifies construct noun J₃ (field = country), forming a genitive noun phrase of territorial inhabitance N₇ (country of the Philistines). The clause dependent on J₃ is: The Philistines inhabited the country.

(c) Quantifier M (seven) modifies noun N₅ (months), forming an accusative noun phrase functioning as an adverb phrase D₁ (seven months) specifying the temporal duration of sentence S₁.
(d) Preposition P (ב) governs noun phrase N7 forming an adverb phrase of geographic location D2 (in the country of the Philistines).

Step 3:
(a) Noun phrase N6 is the subject because it is in grammatical concord with the verb, follows the verb which has been granted first position prominence, is determinate, and the only candidate.
(b) Prepositional phrase D2 is the predicate complement of the copulative verb Vc, forming the predicate Q the constituents of which are split because the verb has been granted first place prominence due to the Waw consecutive idiom.
(c) Adverb phrase D1 stands alone and must be an adjunct.

Step 4:
(a) Subject noun phrase N6 and the predicate Q form the predicate adverb copulative sentence S1, specifying the location of the ark of the Lord; the verb has been granted first place prominence because of the Waw consecutive idiom.
(b) Temporal adverb phrase D1 is an adjunct modifying sentence S1, forming sentence S2 specifying the duration of the time the ark was located in the country of the Philistines.
(c) The sentence occupies the entire verse, but for some reason its accents are only those of a Silluq segment, the verb and subject phrase being set off by near disjunctive Tebir, and the predicate complement D2 by near disjunctive Tiphcha.

18.4.1.5 Similarity Copulative Sentence (§ 12.1.7)

Yet the number of the descendants of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea. (Hos. 2:1)

Step 1: this sentence had no deletions or substitutions.
Step 2:
(a) Noun N5 (Israel) modifies construct noun J2 (sons = descendants) forming the genitive noun phrase of ancestry N6 (the descendants of Israel). The clause dependent on J2 is: Israel had descendants.
(b) Noun $N_5$ (the sea) modifies construct noun $J_4$ (sand) forming the genitive noun phrase of location $N_7$ (sand of the sea). The clause dependent on $J_4$ is: *A countless number of grains of sand lie on the shore of the sea*. The words in italics are understood from context and common knowledge.\(^7\)

(c) Noun phrase $N_6$ (the descendants of Israel) modifies construct noun $J_1$ (number) forming the genitive noun phrase of quantity $N_8$ (the number of the descendants of Israel). The clause dependent on $J_1$ is: *The descendants of Israel constitute a quantifiable entity that can be represented by a number.*

Step 3:

(a) Noun phrase $N_8$ is the subject because it is in grammatical concord with the verb, follows the verb which has been granted first position prominence, is determinate, and the only candidate.

(b) Noun phrase $N_7$ is the predicate complement of copulative verb $V^c$ by means of comparative preposition $P$ (2), forming copulative comparative predicate $Q$ the constituents of which are split because the verb has been granted first place prominence because of the Waw consecutive idiom.

Step 4:

(a) Subject noun phrase $N_8$ and the predicate $Q$ form the comparative copulative sentence $S$, specifying the innumerable quantity of Israel’s future descendants.

(b) The sentence is only the first part of the verse, being set off by remote disjunctive Zaqeph. The verb phrase $V^c$ is set off by remote disjunctive Great Telisha, and the subject phrase $N_8'$ by near disjunctive Pashta.

### 18.4.2 Verbal Sentences

The following examples are taken from the seventh chapter of Esther, illustrating the analysis of the various types of sentences found there.

(1) **Est. 7:1**—This sentence has a compound subject, a transitive verb with an elided predicate complement; the sentence has an adjunct infinitive adverbial clause of purpose (§ 19.4.3).

\(^7\) Note that in the actual text not included here, $N_7$ also is modified by a compound relative clause that is omitted here for the sake of simplicity.
So the king and Haman went to dine with Queen Esther. (Est. 7:1)

Step 1:
(a) This sentence has no pronouns, but the main verb V1 (he went) is transitive, requiring a complement expressing destiny, which was elided because of redundancy. The elided complement was restored by N6 (to Queen Esther’s house).
(b) The infinitive construct verbal V2 (to dine) has an elided subject N8 which subsequently must be restored for the analysis. It is identical with N5 (the king and Haman).

Step 2:
(a) Noun N1 (the king) and noun N2 (Haman) are joined by coordinating conjunction W, forming compound noun phrase N5 (the king and Haman).
(b) Noun N4 (the queen) modifies noun N3 (Esther), forming the identity noun phrase N6 (Queen Esther). The clause dependent on N3 is: Esther was the queen of Persia.
(c) Preposition P2 (with) governs noun phrase N7 forming adverbial phrase of accompaniment D1 (with Queen Esther).
(d) Adverbial phrase D1 is the predicate adverb complement of the infinitive construct V2 forming infinitive predicate Q1 (to dine with Queen Esther).8

8 D1 modifies the infinitive construct V2 because it specifies with whom the dining would take place. It doesn’t modify S1 because the king and Haman didn’t go with Esther—she was already at her apartment preparing the banquet. They went to her apartment to dine with her.
Step 3:
(a) Noun phrase N^5 is the subject because it follows the verb which has been granted first position prominence, is determinate, and the only candidate.\(^9\)
(b) Restored noun phrase N^6 is the predicate complement of verb V\(_1\), forming predicate Q\(_1\) (they went to Esther’s house). The principle verb V\(_1\) was granted first position prominence because of the Waw consecutive idiom, thus splitting the predicate.

Step 4:
(a) Noun phrase N^5 is the subject of predicate Q\(_1\), forming sentence S\(_1\) (The king and Haman went to Esther’s house).
(b) Restored noun phrase N^6 (the king and Haman) is the subject of the infinitive predicate Q^i\(_2\) (dine with Queen Esther) forming clause S^i\(_2\) which is dependent on the main clause S\(_1\). This infinitive clause functions as a substantive (noun phrase N^9) and is governed by preposition P\(_1\) (in order to) forming an adverb phrase of purpose D\(_2\).
(c) Adverb phrase D\(_2\) is an adjunct modifying sentence S\(_1\), declaring the purpose of the visit to the queen, forming the complete sentence S\(_3\).\(^{10}\)
(d) The sentence occupies the entire verse, but for some reason its accents are only those of a Silluq segment, the independent clause S\(_1\) being set off from its adjunct D\(_2\) by remote disjunctive Zaqeph. The verb V^i\(_2\) of the dependent clause S^i\(_2\) is set off from its predicate complement D\(_1\) by near disjunctive Tiphcha.

(2) Est. 7:2a—This sentence illustrates the introduction of direct speech without the usual speech introducing conjunction (§ 9.4). The analysis is incomplete in that what is said—one predicate complement of the verb—actually is contained in the following four sentences. The sentence has three independent adverbial modifiers. The end of the sentence is not marked except with a remote disjunctive accent (Zaqeph).

---

\(^9\) Note that the singular verb has a compound subject. This happens at times when the verb is in first place and one member of the compound subject is of higher cultural rank than the others.

\(^{10}\) The compound noun phrase N^5 is the result of the deletion transformation operating on the two redundant coordinate sentences: The king went to dine with Queen Esther and Haman went to dine with Queen Esther.
And the king said again unto Esther on the second day at the banquet of wine: (Est. 7:2a)

Step 1: There are no pronouns and no deleted constituents to be restored.

Step 2:
(a) Nouns $N_1$ (the king) and $N_2$ (Esther) and adverb $D_1$ have no modifiers and stand alone as independent constituents.

(b) The verb $V$ has been granted first position prominence because of the Waw consecutive idiom, thus splitting the predicate.

(c) Ordinal quantifier adjective $A$ (second) modifies noun $N_3$ (the day), forming noun phrase $N_6$ (the second day). The clause dependent on $N_3$ is: the day was the second of the sequence of days under discussion.

(d) Noun $N_5$ (wine) modifies construct noun $J_4$ (banquet), forming genitive noun phrase $N_7$ of menu. The clause dependent on $J_4$ is: Wine was served at the banquet.

(e) Noun phrase $N_6$ is governed by preposition $P_2$, forming temporal adverbial phrase $D_2$, specifying the time the words were spoken.

(f) Noun phrase $N_7$ is governed by preposition $P_3$, forming spatial adverbial phrase $D_3$, specifying the place where the words were spoken.

Step 3:
(a) Noun phrase $N_1^0$ is the subject because it has grammatical concord with the verb, it follows the verb which has been granted first position prominence, is determinate, and the only candidate.

(b) Noun $N_2$ (Esther) is the genitive object of verb $V$ ($he$ said) by means of preposition $P$ (to), declaring the recipient of the speech and forming the predicate $Q$ (said to Esther).
Step 4:
(a) Subject noun phrase $N^s_1$ and predicate $Q$ form sentence $S_1$.
(b) Adverb $D_1$ (also) is an adjunct modifying sentence $S_1$, specifying that the event of $S_1$ had happened previously, forming sentence $S_2$.
(c) Adverb phrase $D_2$ is an adjunct modifying sentence $S_2$, specifying when the event of $S_2$ happened, forming sentence $S_3$.
(d) Adverb phrase $D_3$ is an adjunct modifying sentence $S_3$, specifying where the event of $S_3$ happened, forming sentence $S_4$, the complete sentence.
(e) These three adjuncts may be understood as the remnants of dependent clauses as discussed in § 19.4.3.
(f) This is the first of five sentences in the verse, being set off by remote disjunctive Zaqeph. The core clause $S_1$ is set off from its adjuncts by near disjunctive Geresh. The second augment $D_2$ is separated from the third $D_3$ by the near disjunctive Pashta. The accents of this sentence do not reflect the connectedness of the adjuncts to the sentence they modify.

(3) Est. 7:2b—This example illustrates the analysis of interrogative sentences questioning the identity of an unknown constituent (§ 13.5.2.2), in this case the subject. The question is followed by the declaration of a promise regarding the answer to the question. The sentences are part of direct speech introduced by 7:1 above. The beginning of the question is not marked by an expected speech introducing conjunction (§ 9.4), but only by a preceding remote disjunctive accent (Zaqeph).

Step 1:
(a) The interrogative pronoun $R^i$ is replaced by its antecedent noun $N_6$ (an as yet unknown entity).
(b) Pronoun $R_2$ (you) is replaced by its antecedent $N_2$ which will later be identified as the same as noun phrase $N_7$ (Queen Esther).
(c) Pronoun $R_5$ is replaced by its antecedent $N_5$ which will later be identified as the same as noun phrase $N_7$ (Queen Esther).
(d) The elided copulative verb of the sentence $V^e_1$ is restored.

---

11 (1) Interrogative pronouns: הַשַּׁאָל “what?” and פָּֽאֵל “who?”; they should be represented by the symbol $R^i$; these stand in place of unknown nouns in questions, and they follow the analysis rule for pronouns: $R^i \rightarrow N$. 
434

(e) The elided subject of the second sentence $N^9$ is restored; it will later be recognized as the same as the answer to the preceding question for $N^6$.

"What is your petition, Queen Esther? And it shall be granted you. (Est. 7:2b)

Step 2:
(a) Noun $N_4$ (Queen) modifies noun $N_3$ (Esther), forming identity noun phrase $N_7$ (Queen Esther).
(b) Noun phrase $N_7$ (Queen Esther) modifies $N_2$, forming identity noun phrase $N_8$ (Queen Esther). The clause dependent on $N_2$ is: Esther is queen of Persia.
(c) Noun phrase $N_8$ (Queen Esther) modifies construct noun $J_1$ (petition), forming genitive noun phrase $N^{10}$ (the petition of you, Queen Esther), identifying the source of the petition; this phrase is also recognized as the predicate complement of restored copulative verb $V^c_1$.

Step 3:
(a) Restored noun phrase $N_6$ is the subject by definition.
(b) Noun phrase $N^{10}$ (the petition of you Queen Esther) is the predicate complement of restored copulative verb $V^c_1$.
(c) Noun phrase $N^{10}$ and verb $V^c_1$ form predicate $Q_1$.
(d) Noun $N_5$ (Queen Esther) is the genitive complement of passive verb $V_2$ (will be given) by means of preposition $P$ (to), forming predicate $Q_2$. The passive voice indicates that Esther’s request $N^6$ has been granted participant prominence.

---

12 This is an example of the antecedent of a pronoun following it immediately, providing the second person characteristic to the noun phrase.
Step 4:
(a) Noun $N^6$ is the subject of predicate $Q_1$, forming interrogative sentence $S_1$.
(b) Noun $N^9$ is the subject of predicate $Q_2$, forming passive sentence $S_2$—It (your petition) will be granted to you (Queen Esther). The granter of the petition was elided in this sentence and not restored in the analysis; but context implies that it would be the king.
(c) These are the second and third clauses of a five-clause verse. The first $S_1$ is set off by near disjunctive Tiphcha, and the second $S_2$ by remote disjunctive Athnach. The near disjunctive Tebir sets off the vocative noun phrase $N_7$.

(4) Est. 7:2c—This example is much like (3) above. These are the fourth and fifth clauses of a five-clause verse. The first $S_1$ is set off by near disjunctive Tiphcha, and the second $S_2$ ends the verse and is marked with Silluq.

\[\text{וּמַה־בַקָשָתֵָ֛ךְ עַד־חֲצִֵ֥י הַמַלְׁכֶ֖וּת     וְׁתֵעָָּֽש׃}\]

Step 1:
(a) The interrogative pronoun $R^i$ is replaced by its antecedent noun $N^a_1$ (an as yet unknown entity).
(b) Pronoun $R_3$ is replaced by its antecedent $N_3$ (Queen Esther) determined by context.
(c) The first sentence is recognized as copulative interrogative with an elided verb which is restored as $V^c$.
(d) The second sentence has an elided subject which is restored as $N^a_{7}$, which later is recognized to be the same as $N^a_{8}$.
Step 2:
(a) Noun phrase N₃ (Queen Esther) modifies construct noun J₂ (request), forming the genitive noun phrase N₆ (the request of you Queen Esther), expressing the source of the request.
(b) Quantifier M (half) modifies Noun N₄ (the kingdom), forming noun phrase of quantity N₅ (half of the kingdom). The clause dependent on N₄ is: the kingdom was divided into halves.
(c) Preposition P (up to) governs noun phrase N₅, forming adverb phrase D (up to half of the kingdom).
(d) Adverb phrase D is an adjunct modifying noun phrase N₆ (the request of you Queen Esther), limiting the range of the request, resulting in noun phrase N₈.
(e) Passive verb V₂ is intransitive and thus functions alone as predicate Q₂. The passive voice indicates that Esther’s request N₅ has been granted participant prominence.
(f) Noun phrase N₀₈ is the complement of the restored copulative verb Vₓ, forming predicate Q₁.

Step 3:
(a) Restored noun phrase N₈ is the subject by definition.
(b) Noun phrase N₀₈ is the predicate complement of restored copulative verb Vₓ, forming predicate Q₁.

Step 4:
(a) Noun N₈ is the subject of predicate Q₁, forming interrogative sentence S₁.
(b) Noun N₅ is the subject of predicate Q₂, forming passive sentence S₂—It (your request) will be done. The granter of the request was elided in this sentence and not restored in the analysis; but context implies that it would be the king.

(5) Est. 7:3a—This example illustrates a common idiomatic introduction of direct speech. In this case the addressee is known and elided.¹³ These clauses are the first two of a six-clause verse, the two being set off from the remaining clauses by remote disjunctive Zaqeph, and the first S₁ being set off from the second S₂ by near disjunctive Pashta and the intervening conjunction.

¹³ The idiomatic joining of these two verbs in this role is quite common, occurring over 100 times in the Bible.
Then Esther the queen answered and said: (Est. 7:3a)

Step 1:
(a) This example has no pronouns, but the elided object of the first verb \( V_1 \) (she answered) is restored as \( N_o^4 \), which is understood from the context to be “the king.”
(b) The elided subject of the second verb \( V_2 \) (she said) is restored as \( N_s^5 \), which later is understood from the context to be the same as \( N_s^3 \) (Queen Esther).

Step 2:
(a) Noun \( N_2 \) (the Queen) modifies noun \( N_1 \) (Esther), forming identity noun phrase \( N_5 \) (Queen Esther). The clause dependent on \( N_1 \) is: Esther is the Queen of Persia.
(b) Both complements of verb \( V_2 \) (she said) were elided and not restored in the analysis, consequently \( V_2 \) functions alone as predicate \( Q_2 \). The verb functions as an introduction to speech, so in reality its complement is the entire content of the speech being introduced. For practical purposes, the speech is analyzed separately.

Step 3:
(a) Noun phrase \( N_s^5 \) is the subject because it has grammatical concord with the verb, occupies the first place after the verb which is grant first position prominence because of the Waw consecutive idiom, it is determinate and the only alternative.
(b) Restored object noun phrase \( N_o^4 \) (the king) is the complement of verb \( V_1 \), forming predicate \( Q_1 \) (she answered the king), which is split because the verb was granted first position prominence because of the Waw consecutive idiom.

Step 4:
(a) Noun phrase \( N_s^5 \) is the subject of predicate \( Q_1 \), forming sentence \( S_1 \) (Queen Esther answered the king).
(b) Restored noun phrase \( N_s^5 \) is the subject of predicate \( Q_2 \), forming sentence \( S_2 \) (Queen Esther said).

(6) Est. 7:3b—This example, together with the next, illustrates the analysis of a true-to-fact, non-exclusive conditional expression (§ 9.3.6.1) with a compound protasis and compound apodosis. The present two sentences form the compound protasis. These clauses are the third and fourth of
a six-clause verse, the two being set off from the remaining clause by remote disjunctive Athnach, and the first $S_1$ being set off from the second $S_2$ by remote disjunctive Zaqeph and the intervening conjunction.

"If I have found favor in your sight, O king, and if it pleases the king. (Est. 7:3b)

Step 1:
(a) Pronoun $R_3$ (you) is replaced by its antecedent $N_3$ which will later be identified as the same as noun phrase $N_4$ (the king).
(b) The elided subject of verb $V_1$ (find) is restored as $N^s_7$ (I, Queen Esther).
(c) The elided copulative verb of the second sentence is restored as $V^c_2$.

Step 2:
(a) Noun $N_4$ (the king) modifies noun $N_3$, forming identity noun phrase $N_8$ (you, O king).
(b) Preposition $P_2$ (upon) governs noun $N_5$ (the king), forming spatial adverb phrase $D_1$ (upon the king).
(c) Noun phrase $N_8$ modifies construct noun $J_2$, forming genitive phrase of part $N_9$ (the eyes of you, O king); the clause dependent on $J_2$ is: the eyes are part of the king’s anatomy.
(d) Noun phrase $N_9$ (the eyes of you O king) is governed by preposition $P_1$ (in), forming spatial adverb phrase $D_2$ (in your eyes, O king), specifying where favor is expected to be found.

Step 3:
(a) Restored noun phrase $N^s_7$ (I, Queen Esther) is the subject by definition.

---

14 The word אִם is a subordinating conjunction that introduces the protasis of conditional sentences (see § 9.3.6). The second protasis is a predicate adverb clause with the copulative verb $V^c$ omitted.
(b) Noun N°₁ (favor) is the complement of verb V₁ (I have found), forming predicate Q₁. The verb is in first position by default as a result of omitting the subject; it does not necessarily have first position prominence.

(c) Adverb phrase D₁ (upon the king) is the predicate complement of restored copulative verb V°₂, forming predicate Q₂ (is upon the king).

Step 4:
(a) Restored noun phrase N°₇ (Queen Esther) is the subject of predicate Q₁ (I have found favor), forming sentence S₁ (I, Queen Esther, have found favor).

(b) Spatial adverbial phrase D₂ (in your eyes, O king) is an adjunct modifying sentence S₁, forming sentence S₂.

(c) Noun N°₆ (goodness) is the subject of predicate Q₂ (is upon the king), forming sentence S₃, which is an idiomatic expressing meaning: “it pleases the king.”

(d) Both sentence S₂ and S₃ are each governed by conditional conjunction C (~ai—if) and joined by coordinating Waw conjunctive, forming a compound conditional protasis, the verbs of which are in the present tense and subjunctive mood.

(7) Est. 7:3c—These two sentences are joined by coordinating Waw conjunctive forming a compound apodosis of the conditional sentence. The verbs are in the passive voice, so the subject is the recipient of the verbal deed, and the omitted granter of the petitions is “King Ahasuerus.” The verbs are in the future tense and subjunctive mood. The apodosis is joined to the protasis without a conjunction (juxtaposition § 9.2.5) since the relationship is self-evident from the context and needs not to be redundantly expressed. These clauses are the fifth and sixth of a six-clause verse; the first S₁ being set off from the second S₂ by remote disjunctive Zaqeph and the intervening conjunction, and the second ending the verse with Silluq and following conjunction.¹⁵

Step 1:
(a) The antecedents of pronouns R₁, R₃, R₅, R₇, and R₉ are restored as noun phrases N₁, N₃, N₅, N₇, and N₉ respectively, and all are recognized to have the same antecedent (Queen Esther) and to be first person and in the genitive case as suffixes.

(b) The elided predicate of the second sentence was recognized to be the same as the one in the preceding sentence, and so restored as Q₂ (be given to me, Queen Esther).

¹⁵ This verse illustrates the usual practice that multiple instances of Zaqeph in an Athnach or Silluq segment mark off essentially equal grammatical constituents.
let my life be given me at my petition, and my people at my request. (Est. 7:3c)

Step 2:

(a) Noun phrase N₁ is governed by preposition P₁ (to), forming the genitive complement N₁⁰ of passive verb V (be given).
(b) Noun phrase N₃ modifies construct noun J₂ (life), forming genitive of possession noun phrase N₁¹ (the life of me, Queen Esther). The clause dependent on J₂ is: Queen Esther has life.
(c) Noun phrase N₅ modifies construct noun J₄ (petition), forming genitive of source noun phrase N₁₂ (the petition from me, Queen Esther). The clause dependent of J₄ is: Queen Esther was making the petition.
(d) Noun phrase N₇ modifies construct noun J₆ (people), forming genitive of ethnic origin noun phrase N₁₃ (the people of me, Queen Esther). The clause dependent on J₆ is: Queen Esther belongs to the people yet to be revealed in this context.
(e) Noun phrase N₉ modifies construct noun J₈ (request), forming genitive of source noun phrase N₁₄ (the request of me, Queen Esther). The clause dependent on J₈ is: Queen Esther was making the request.
(f) Noun phrase N₁₂ is governed by preposition P₂ (for), forming adverbial phrase of purpose D₂ (for the petition of me, Queen Esther).
(g) Noun phrase N₁₄ is governed by preposition P₃ (for), forming adverbial phrase of purpose D₃ (for the request of me, Queen Esther).
(h) Noun phrase N₁⁰ (to me, Queen Esther) is the complement of verb V (be given), forming predicate Q₁.
Step 3:
(a) Noun phrase $N_{11}^s$ (the life of me, Queen Esther) is the subject of the first sentence because it has grammatical concord with the first verb, is in the first position after the verb, its pronoun suffix marks it as determinate, and it is the only candidate.
(b) Noun phrase $N_{13}^s$ (the people of me, Queen Esther) is the subject of the second sentence for the same reasons as (a) above.

Step 4:
(a) Noun phrase $N_{11}^s$ is the subject of predicate $Q_1$, forming sentence $S_1$ (let the life of me, Queen Esther, be given to me, Queen Esther).
(b) Noun phrase $N_{13}^s$ is the subject of restored predicate $Q_2$, forming sentence $S_3$ (let the people of me, Queen Esther, be given to me, Queen Esther).
(c) Adverb phrase $D_1$ is an adjunct modifying sentence $S_1$, expressing the purpose of the gift—to fulfill her petition, forming sentence $S_2$.
(d) Adverb phrase $D_2$ is an adjunct modifying sentence $S_3$, expressing the purpose of the gift—to fulfill her request, forming sentence $S_4$.

(8) Est. 7:4a—This sentence has a compound subject and three coordinate adjunct dependent infinitive adverbial clauses of purpose. This clause is the first of four in the verse, being set off from the remaining three by remote disjunctive Athnach. The core sentence $S_1$ is set off from its adjuncts by remote disjunctive Zaqeph.

Step 1:
(a) The antecedent of pronoun $R_1$ is restored as noun phrase $N_1$ which context identifies as “Queen Esther.”
(b) The antecedent of pronoun $R_3$ is restored as noun phrase $N_3$ which context also identifies as “Queen Esther.”
(c) The infinitive absolute verbals $V_i^2$, $V_i^3$, and $V_i^4$ have elided subjects and objects. Context identifies the object of the verbals as the same as $N_{11}^s$ (my people and I); so the elided objects are restored as $N_o^4$, $N_o^5$, and $N_o^6$ respectively.
(d) Since the verbals have active forms, the context implies that the destruction, killing, and annihilation will be executed by Haman and his fellow anti-Semites; so the elided subjects are restored as $N_{8}^s$, $N_{9}^s$, and $N_{10}^s$ respectively.

16 Although the verbal stems are active, they have been translated as passives for better style.
For we have been sold, my people and I, to be destroyed, to be killed, and to be annihilated. (Est. 7:4a)

Step 2:
(a) Noun phrase N₃ modifies construct noun J₂ (people), forming genitive of ethnic origin noun phrase N₇ (the people of me, Queen Esther). The clause dependent on J₂ is: Queen Esther belongs to the people yet to be revealed.
(b) Noun phrase N₇ (the people of me, Queen Esther) and N₁ (I, Queen Esther) are joined by coordinating Waw conjunctive, forming compound noun phrase N₉1₁ (I, Queen Esther, and the people of me, Queen Esther).
(c) The verb V (are sold) is passive and intransitive, so it has no object and serves alone as the predicate Q₁. It was granted first position prominence.

Step 3:
(a) Noun phrase N₉₁₁ (I, Queen Esther, and the people of me, Queen Esther) is the subject of the first sentence because it has grammatical concord with verb V₁, is in the first position after the verb which has first position prominence, is determinate and the only candidate.
(b) Restored noun phrase N₀₄ (my people and I) is the object of infinitive construct verbal V₁₂ (destroy), forming predicate Q₂.
(c) Restored noun phrase N₀₅ (my people and I) is the object of infinitive construct verbal V₃ (kill), forming predicate Q₃.
(d) Restored noun phrase N₀₆ (my people and I) is the object of infinitive construct verbal V₄ (annihilate), forming predicate Q₄.

Step 4:
(a) N₁₁ is the subject of predicate Q₁, forming sentence S₁.
(b) $N^8_s$ is the subject of infinitive predicate $Q_2$, forming sentence $S_2$, which functions as a substantive in this context, so is represented as noun phrase $N_{12}$ in the analysis.
(c) $N^9_s$ is the subject of infinitive predicate $Q_3$, forming sentence $S_3$, which functions as a substantive in this context, so is represented as noun phrase $N_{13}$ in the analysis.
(d) $N^{10}_s$ is the subject of infinitive predicate $Q_4$, forming sentence $S_4$, which functions as a substantive in this context, so is represented as noun phrase $N_{14}$ in the analysis.
(e) Preposition $P_1$ (to) governs noun phrase $N_{12}$ (Haman and his fellow anti-Semites to destroy me, Queen Esther and the people of me, Queen Esther), forming adverbial phrase of purpose $D_1$, declaring the purpose of the sale of Esther and her people.
(f) Preposition $P_2$ (to) governs noun phrase $N_{13}$ (Haman and his fellow anti-Semites to kill me, Queen Esther and the people of me, Queen Esther), forming adverbial phrase of purpose $D_2$, declaring the purpose of the sale of Esther and her people.
(g) Preposition $P_3$ (to) governs noun phrase $N_{14}$ (Haman and his fellow anti-Semites to annihilate me, Queen Esther and the people of me, Queen Esther), forming adverbial phrase of purpose $D_3$, declaring the purpose of the sale of Esther and her people.
(h) Adverbial phrases $D_1$, $D_2$, and $D_3$ have the same role and function in the sentence, being joined by coordinating conjunctive Waw consecutive, thus forming compound adverb phrase $D_4$.
(i) Compound adverb phrase $D_4$ is an adjunct modifying sentence $S_1$, declaring the multiple purposes of the sale of Esther and her people, forming the complete sentence $S_5$.
(j) The subordinating conjunction יִקְרָא (for) introduces this sentence as the reason for Esther’s petition and request from the king. The verb is passive, so similar comments about the kernel clause and the omitted subject are in order.

(9) Est. 7:4b—This example illustrates a contrary-to-fact conditional sentence (§ 9.3.6). The protasis is passive, with an elided subject and agent. The apodosis is a one-word sentence with an elided subject, and linked without a conjunction. These clauses are the second and third of four in the verse, being set off from the remaining one by remote disjunctive Zaqeph. The first sentence $S_3$ is set off from the second by near disjunctive Pashta. The second sentence $S_2$ is set off by remote disjunctive Zaqeph.

Step 1:
(a) The subject of verb $V_1$ (we were sold) was elided and is restored as $N^1_s$; context reveals that its referent is “my people and I, Queen Esther.”
(b) The subject of verb $V_2$ (I would keep silent) was elided and is restored as $N^2_s$; context reveals that its referent is “I, Queen Esther.”
Had we been sold as male and female slaves, I would have kept silent. (Est. 7:4b)

Step 2:
(a) N₁ (male slaves) is governed by preposition P₁ (for), forming adverb phrase of purpose D₁, expressing the reason for the potential sale.
(b) N₂ (female slaves) is governed by preposition P₂ (for), forming adverb phrase of purpose D₂, also expressing the reason for the potential sale.
(c) Verb V₁ is passive and intransitive, and so functions alone as predicate Q₁.
(d) Verb V₂ is intransitive, and so functions alone as predicate Q₂.
(e) Adverb phrases D₁ and D₂ have the same role and function, being joined by coordinating Waw conjunctive, forming compound adverbial phrase of purpose D₃ (for male slaves and for female slaves).

Step 3:
(a) Restored noun phrase N¹ (my people and I, Queen Esther) is a subject of verb V₁ by definition.
(b) Restored noun phrase N² (I, Queen Esther) is a subject of verb V₂ by definition.

Step 4:
(a) Restored noun phrase N¹ is the subject of predicate Q₁, forming sentence S₁ (my people and I, Queen Esther, had been sold).
(b) Restored noun phrase N² is the subject of predicate Q₂, forming sentence S₂ (I, Queen Esther, would have kept silent).
(c) Compound adverb phrase D₃ is an adjunct modifying sentence S₁, forming sentence S₃, expressing the purpose of the sale. It was granted first position prominence for rhetorical emphasis.
(d) The word לִאֵּר is a subordinating conjunction that introduces S₃, the protasis of a contrary-to-fact conditional sentence. The apodosis S₂ stands in juxtaposition (§ 9.2.5) without a linking conjunction.
(10) *Est. 7:4c*—This sentence has a transitive verb governing its complement by means of a preposition (§ 12.2.2.2 (2)). The verb is negated and in the present tense, durative aspect. The verb is unusual, so translators render this verse idiomatically. This sentence is the last of four in the verse and thus ending with Silluq.

For the enemy is not comparable with the king's loss. (*Est. 7:4c*)

Step 1: This example has no pronouns and no elided elements.

Step 2:

(a) Noun N₃ (the king) modifies construct noun J₂ (loss), forming genitive noun phrase of affect N₄ (the king’s loss). The clause dependent on J₂ is: The king would experience unequivocal loss.

(b) The participle Vᵃ (be comparable) and the auxiliary verb Vᶜ רֶכֵּ֖ה (+ הָיָ֑ה) function as the verb phrase V₁ (is not comparable). The verb phrase is in the present tense, durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3). The elements of the phrase are split because רכֵּה is nearly always granted idiomatic first position prominence.

Step 3:

(a) Noun phrase N₈₁ is the subject because it has grammatical concord with verb V₁, is in the first position after יַנְ אָֽה which has first position prominence, is determinate and the only candidate.

(b) Noun phrase N₄ (the king’s loss) is the genitive complement of verb V₁ by means of preposition P (with), forming predicate Q (is not comparable with the king’s loss).

Step 4:

(a) Noun N₈₁ (the enemy) is the subject of predicate Q, forming sentence S.

(b) The subordinating conjunction of reason C יִכְי, links this sentence to the preceding one to explain the reason why Esther would have kept silent.

(e) The subject N₉₁ is set off from the rest of the sentence by near disjunctive Tebir, and the verb Vᵃ by the near disjunctive Tiphcha.
(11) Est. 7:5a—This pair of sentences also introduces direct speech, but this combination is not used often, not being the more usual manner.

So King Ahasuerus answered and said to Queen Esther (Est. 7:5a)

Step 1: This example has no pronouns, but the subject of verb $V_2$ was elided and was restored with noun $N^6_7$ (King Ahasuerus).

Step 2:
(a) Noun $N_2$ (Ahasuerus) modifies noun $N_1$ (the king), forming identity noun phrase $N^5_5$ (King Ahasuerus). The clause dependent on $N_1$ is: Ahasuerus was the king of Persia.
(b) Noun $N_4$ (the Queen) modifies noun $N_3$ (Esther), forming identity noun phrase $N_6$ (Queen Esther). The clause dependent on $N_3$ is: Esther was the queen of Persia.
(c) Verb $V_1$ (he spoke) is intransitive here and so functions alone as predicate $Q_1$.

Step 3:
(a) Noun phrase $N^5_5$ (King Ahasuerus) is the subject because it has grammatical concord with verb $V_1$, is in the first position after the verb which has first position prominence because of the Waw consecutive idiom, is determinate and the only candidate.
(b) Noun phrase $N_6$ (Queen Esther) is the genitive complement of verb $V_2$ (he said) by means of preposition $P$ (to), forming predicate $Q_2$ (he said to Queen Esther).

Step 4:
(a) Noun phrase $N^5_5$ is the subject of predicate $Q_1$, forming sentence $S_1$ (King Ahasuerus spoke). The verb was granted first position prominence because of the Waw consecutive idiom.
(b) Restored noun phrase $N^5_7$ is the subject of predicate $Q_2$, forming sentence $S_2$ (King Ahasuerus said to Queen Esther).
(c) The two sentences are linked together by Waw consecutive, functionally together idiomatically to introduce direct speech.
(d) These sentences are the first two of four in the verse, being set off from the remaining three by remote disjunctive Athnach. The first sentence $S_1$ is set off from the second by remote disjunctive Zaqeph.

(12) Est. 7:5b—This sentence is an identity copulative clause (§ 12.1.3) transformed into a question (§ 13.5.2.2). This sentence is the third of four in the verse, being set off from the last by near disjunctive Pashta.

Step 1:
(a) The antecedent of interrogative pronoun $R^i$ (who?) is the yet undisclosed villain; it is restored by noun phrase $N^o$, which is recognized as the subject of an identity copulative clause transformed into a question.
(b) The antecedent of the predicate demonstrative pronoun $R^d$ (this) is the same as noun phrase $N^o$; it is restored as $N^o$, which is recognized as the predicate nominative of the clause.
(c) The pronoun הָא functions in this context as a substitute for the copulative verb ($§10.2.1$); so it is restored as $V^c$.

Step 2: This sentence has no phrases to analyze.

Step 3:
(a) $N^o$ is the subject of an identity copulative clause transformed into a question.
(b) Noun phrase $N^o$ is the predicate nominative complement of verb $V^c$, forming predicate Q (is this one).

Step 4: Noun phrase $N^i$ is the subject of predicate Q, forming the kernel clause S that underlies the question. Otherwise the clause is in its kernel form.

(13) Est. 7:5c—This sentence is a predicate adverb copulative kernel clause (§ 12.1.5) which was transformed into a question asking the identity of the adverbial constituent (§ 13.5.2.3). The subject has a dependent relative pronoun clause, which in turn has a dependent infinitive construct clause. This sentence is the last of four in the verse, being set off by Silluq.
And where is he, who would fill his heart to do such a thing? (Est. 7:5c)

Step 1:

(a) The words הָיְזָא form a compound interrogative adverb (D_i)\textsuperscript{17} (§ 4.3.1) which replaced the predicate adverb D_2 in the underlying predicate adverb copulative kernel clause from which this question was transformed. The interrogative transformation had moved the adverb phrase to first position prominence.

(b) The antecedent of pronoun R_1 is restored as noun phrase N_1—the as yet undisclosed villain of the previous sentence.

(c) Relative pronoun R_r signals the fact that noun phrase N_1 has a modifying dependent clause.

(d) The antecedent of accusative pronoun R_2 (it) is restored as noun phrase N_2, the referent of which is yet to be determined; it is the object of verb V_1 (he filled).

(e) The antecedent of pronoun R_4 is restored as noun phrase N_4; context indicates that its referent is also the same as noun phrase N_1 (the as yet undisclosed villain).

(f) The elided copulative verb of the sentence is restored as V^c.

\textsuperscript{17} This compound interrogative adverb occurs 17 times: 1 Sam. 9:18; 1 Kgs. 13:12; 22:24; 2 Kgs. 3:8; 2 Chr. 18:23; Est. 7:5; Job 28:12; 28:20; 38:19\textsuperscript{*2}; 38:24; Eccl. 2:3; 11:6; Isa. 50:1; 66:1\textsuperscript{*2}; Jer. 6:16.
(g) Later in the analysis two elided subjects are restored as N^s_6 and N^s_9 the referents of which the context identifies as the same as that of noun phrase N_1.

Step 2:

(a) Noun phrase N_4 modifies construct noun J_3 (heart), forming genitive noun phrase of possession N_5 (his, the villain’s heart). The clause dependent on J_3 is: the villain has a heart.

(b) Noun phrase N_5 modifies noun phrase N_2, forming identity noun phrase N^o_7, which is recognized as the object of verb V_1. The clause dependent on N_2 also is: the villain has a heart. This is an instance of the antecedent of a pronoun immediately following it.

Step 3:

(a) Restored noun phrase N^o_9 is a subject by definition.

(b) Restored noun phrase N^s_6 is a subject by definition.

(c) Noun phrase N^o_7 is the complement of verb V_1, forming predicate Q_1.

(d) Adverb D_1 (thus) is the complement of infinitive construct V^{i_2}_2 (to do), forming predicate Q^{i_2}_1 (to do thus). Actually D_1 is an adverbial substitute standing in place of, the deed of selling Esther’s people to be destroyed, killed, and annihilated (7:4).

(e) Adverb phrase D_2 is the predicate adverb complement of restored copulative verb V^c, forming predicate Q_3. It refers to the unknown location of the yet unknown villain. It is the location about which the question inquires.

Step 4:

(a) Restored noun phrase N^s_9 is the subject of predicate Q_1, forming sentence S_1 (the yet unknown villain filled his heart).

(b) Restored noun phrase N^s_6 is the subject of infinitive predicate Q^{i_2}_2, forming infinitive clause S^{i_2}_2 (the yet unknown villain did so = sold Esther and her people to be destroyed, killed, and annihilated).

(c) Infinitive clause S^{i_2}_2 functions as a substantive which is represented here as N_8.

(d) Purpose preposition P (for) governs N_8, forming adverbial phrase of purpose D_3 (for the yet unknown villain to do so = sell Esther . . . ).

(e) Adverb phrase D_3 is an adjunct modifying sentence S_1, specifying the purpose for the deed, and forming sentence S_3 (The yet unknown villain filled his heart to do so = sell Esther . . . ).

(f) Relative pronoun R^r functions as though it were a subordinating conjunction transforming sentence S_3 into sentence S^{r_3}_3 dependent on noun phrase N_1, forming noun
phrase N_{10} (he, the yet unknown villain, who filled his heart to do so = sell Esther . . .).

(g) Noun phrase N_{10} is the subject of predicate Q_3, forming sentence S_4, the kernel clause from which the question was transformed.

(h) The core clause אֵָּֽי־זִֶ֣ה הֵּ֔וּא is set off from its dependent relative clause S_r by remote disjunctive Zaqeph.

(14) Est. 7:6a—The first of these sentences (with an elided addressee) introduces direct speech, and the second sentence is the speech consisting of a copulative identity clause (§ 12.1.3) with an elided verb. These are the first two sentences of three in the verse. The first is set off by the remote disjunctive accent Zaqeph, and the second by the remote disjunctive Athnach.

And Esther said, “The adversary and enemy is this wicked Haman!” (Est. 7:6a)

Step 1:

(a) This example has no personal pronouns.

(b) The elided predicate complement of verb V_1 (she said) is restored as noun phrase N_{10} (to the king) as determined by the context.

(c) The elided copulative verb of the second sentence is restored as V^c_2.

Step 2:

(a) Noun N_3 (adversary) modifies noun N_2 (man), forming classification noun phrase N_6 (an adversary man). The clause dependent on N_2 is: the man is an adversary of the king and queen.

(b) Adjective A (wicked) modifies proper noun N_5 (Haman), forming attributive noun phrase N_7 (wicked Haman). The clause dependent on N_5 is: the moral character of Haman is wicked.

(c) Noun N_4 (enemy) and noun phrase N_6 (an adversary man) are joined by coordinating conjunction Waw conjunctive, having equal role and function in this context,
forming compound noun phrase $N^s_8$, (an adversary man and enemy) which is recognized to be the subject of the second sentence.\(^\text{18}\)

(d) Demonstrative pronoun $R^d$ (this) modifies noun phrase $N_7$ (wicked Haman), forming demonstrative noun phrase $N_9$ (this wicked Haman). The clause dependent on noun phrase $N_7$ is: the person of near interest and presence is wicked Haman.

Step 3:

(a) Noun phrase $N^s_1$ is the subject because it has grammatical concord with the verb, is in the first position after the verb which has been granted first position prominence because if the Waw consecutive idiom, is determinate and the only alternative.

(b) The restored noun phrase $N^v_{10}$ is the predicate complement of verb $V_1$, forming predicate $Q_1$ (she said to the king).

(c) Noun phrase $N_9$ (this wicked Haman) is the predicate complement of restored copulative verb $V^c_2$, forming predicate $Q_2$ (is this wicked Haman).

Step 4:

(a) Noun phrase $N^s_1$ is the subject of predicate $Q_1$, forming sentence $S_1$ (Esther said to the king).

(b) Noun phrase $N^s_8$ is the subject of predicate $Q_2$, forming sentence $S_2$ (an adversary man and enemy is this wicked Haman).

**Est. 7:7a**—This example includes two sentences, the second of which has an elided subject and verb. These two sentences are the first of four in the verse, being set off from the rest of the verse by remote disjunctive accent Athnach. The first sentence is set off from the second by remote disjunctive Zaqeph.

Step 1:

(a) Clearly the verb and subject of the second sentence have been elided as self-evident; they are restored as $V_5$ (he went) and $N^v_{12}$ (the king).

(b) The antecedent of pronoun $R_3$ was restored as $N_3$ (the king) which is the same as $N^s_1$.

\(^{18}\) It is possible to understand $N_1$ W $N_4$ as a compound modifier of $N_2$ instead of the above analysis. There would little, if any, difference in meaning.
Then the king arose in his wrath from the banquet of wine and went into the palace garden; (Est. 7:7a)

Step 2:

(a) Noun phrase \(N_3\) (his = the king’s) modifies construct noun \(J_2\) (wrath), forming genitive noun phrase of source \(N_9\) (his, the king’s wrath). The clause dependent on \(J_2\) is: The king experienced wrath because of what he was told.

(b) Noun phrase \(N_6\) (wine) modifies construct noun \(J_5\) (banquet), forming genitive noun phrase of repast \(N_{10}\) (banquet of wine). The clause dependent on \(J_5\) is: the repast to be served at the banquet was wine. Of course, this must be understood idiomatically, because Esther surely prepared a sumptuous meal for the king and Haman (5:8).

(c) Noun phrase \(N_8\) (palace) modifies construct noun \(J_7\) (garden), forming genitive noun phrase of place \(N_{11}\) (the palace garden). The clause dependent on \(J_2\) is: The garden was located in the palace area adjacent to the door entering the queen’s dining room.

(d) Preposition \(P_1\) (in) and noun phrase \(N_9\) (his, the king’s rage) form manner adverbial phrase \(D_1\), expressing the manner in which the king arose.

(e) Preposition \(P_2\) (from) and noun phrase \(N_9\) (the banquet of wine) form departure adverbial phrase \(D_2\), expressing the place from which the king arose to depart.

Step 3:

(a) Noun phrase \(N^*_1\) is the subject because it has grammatical concord with Verb \(V_1\), is in first position, is determinate and the only alternative.

(b) Restored noun phrase \(N^*_{12}\) is a subject by definition.

(c) Verb \(V_1\) (he arose) is intransitive and so stands alone as predicate \(Q_1\).

(d) Restored verb \(V_2\) (he went) is transitive, governing its complement by means of preposition \(P_3\) (to) forming predicate \(Q_2\) (he went to the palace garden).

Step 4:

(a) Noun phrase \(N^*_1\) is the subject of predicate \(Q_1\), forming sentence \(S_1\).

(b) Restored noun phrase \(N^*_{12}\) is the subject of predicate \(Q_4\), forming sentence \(S_4\).

(c) Adverb phrase \(D_1\) is an adjunct modifying sentence \(S_1\), forming sentence \(S_2\) expressing the manner in which the king arose.
(d) Adverb phrase $D_2$ is an adjunct modifying sentence $S_2$, forming sentence $S_3$ expressing
the place from which the king arose.

**Est. 7:7b**—This example contains a dependent infinitive construct clause (§ 19.2.8) functioning
as an adjunct modifying an intransitive sentence. This sentence is the third of four in the verse,
being set off from the last one by remote disjunctive Zaqeph.

\[
\text{but Haman stood to plead for his life from Queen Esther} \quad \text{(Est. 7:7b)}
\]

**Step 1:**

(a) The elided subject of infinitive construct $V_2^i$ was restored as $N_8^s$ which is the same as
$N_1^s$ (Haman).

(b) The antecedent of pronoun $R_3$ was restored as noun phrase $N_3$ which also is the same
as $N_1^s$.

**Step 2:**

(a) Noun phrase $N_3$ (his = Haman’s) modifies construct noun $J_2$ (life) forming genitive of
possession noun phrase $N_7$ (his, Haman’s life). The clause dependent on $J_2$ is:
Haman has a life.

(b) Noun phrase $N_5$ (the queen) modifies noun $N_4$ (Esther) forming identity noun phrase
$N_6$ (Queen Esther). The clause dependent on $J_2$ is: Esther was the queen of Persia.

(c) Preposition $P_3$ (from) and noun phrase $N_6$ (queen Esther) form adverb phrase of source
$D_1$, expressing the source from which the plea was sought.

**Step 3:**

(a) Noun phrase $N_1^s$ (Haman) is the subject because it has grammatical concord with verb
$V_1$, is in the first position, is determinate and the only alternative.

(b) Verb $V_1$ (he stood) is intransitive and so functions alone as predicate $Q_1$.

(c) Construct infinitive $V_2^i$ (plead) is transitive, governing its complement $N_7$ (his,
Haman’s, life) by means of preposition $P_2$ (for) forming predicate $Q_2^i$ (he pleaded
for his, Haman’s, life).
Step 4:
(a) Noun phrase $N_1^s$ (Haman) is the subject of predicate $Q_1$ (he stood) forming sentence $S_1$ (Haman stood).
(b) Restored noun phrase $N_8^s$ (Haman) is the subject of construct infinitive predicate $Q_2$ (he pleaded for his, Haman’s, life), forming dependent infinitive sentence $S_2$ (Haman pleaded for his, Haman’s, life).
(c) Adverb phrase $D_1$ (from Queen Esther) is an adjunct modifying sentence $S_2$, specifying the source from which Haman pleaded for his life, forming sentence $S_3$ (Haman pleaded for his life from Queen Esther).
(d) Dependent infinitive construct sentence $S_3^i$ functions as a substantive in this context and so is represented by $N_9$ as though it were a noun phrase governed by a preposition of purpose $P_1$ (to) forming adverb phrase $D_2$ expressing the purpose of the independent sentence $S_1$.
(e) Adverb phrase $D_2$ is an adjunct modifying sentence $S_1$, expressing its purpose and forming sentence $S_4$.

(17) Est. 7:7c—This example contains a verb of perception governing a sentence (§ 5.4.7). This sentence is the last of four in the verse, being closed by accent Silluq. The principle verb $V_1$ is set off from its complement by remote disjunctive Zaqeph.

For he saw that evil was determined against him from the king. (Est. 7:7c)

Step 1:
(a) The elided subject of verb $V_1$ (he saw) was restored as $N_4^s$ (Haman) as self-evident from the context.
(b) The antecedent of pronoun $R_1$ (him) is restored as $N_1$ (him = Haman), being the same as $N_4^s$ (Haman).

Step 2:
(a) Pronoun $P_2$ (from) governs noun $N_3$ (the king) forming adverb phrase $D_1$ expressing source of the evil. The clause dependent on $N_2$ is: The evil will come from the king.
(b) Adverb phrase D₁ (from the king) modifies noun phrase N₂ (the evil) forming attributive adverb noun phrase N⁹₅ (§ 14.1.4).

Step 3:

(a) The restored noun phrase N⁸₄ is the subject by definition.
(b) Verb V₂ (was determined) governs its complement N₁ (him = Haman) by means of preposition P₁ (against) forming predicate Q₂ (was determined against Haman).
(c) Noun phrase N⁵ (the evil from the king) is a subject because it has grammatical concord with verb V₂ (was determined), is in first position after the verb and its prepositional pronoun, is determinate and the only alternative.

Step 4:

(a) Noun phrase N⁸₅ is the subject of predicate Q₂ forming sentence S₂. The predicate was granted first position prominence.
(b) Sentence S₂ is the complement of verb of perception V₁ (he saw) being linked by conjunction C₂ (that), forming predicate Q₁.
(c) Restored noun phrase N⁸₄ is the subject of predicate Q₁, forming sentence S₁.

(18) Est. 7:8a—This example contains a verb of motion that governs two complements by means of prepositions (§ 5.4.5.3). From here on, the sentences are given analysis diagrams without explanatory comment.

When the king returned from the palace garden to the place of the banquet of wine, (Est. 7:8a)

(19) Est. 7:8b—This example contains a participle functioning as the verb in the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3), and a relative pronoun clause modifying a noun (§ 14.7.8).
And Haman was falling across the couch on which Esther was. (Est. 7:8b)

(20) Est. 7:8c—This example illustrates direct speech without the usual speech introducing conjunction (§ 9.4), and also an incomplete sentence. The elided portion of the sentence reaches back to 7:5c “He filled his heart to do so.” That thought is carried over to here without repetition and linked to the infinitive clause of this verse by the conjunction גַם “also.”

Then the king said, “Will he also assault the queen while I am in the house?” (Est. 7:8c)

(21) Est. 7:8d—This example illustrates a predicate complement with first position prominence.

The word left the king’s mouth, and they covered Haman’s face. (Est. 7:8d)

(22) Est. 7:9a—This example illustrates launching direct speech without the usual speech introducing conjunction (§ 9.4).19

19 Preposition P1 מִן functions in place of a construct form of the number, suggesting that more than one eunuch was in the banquet room. P2 לִפְנֵי indicates that Harbonah was in the service of the king (cf. 1:10); see the preposition also in 4:5.
(23) **Est. 7:9b**—This example illustrates a relative pronoun clause imbedded in another relative pronoun clause modifying nouns (§ 9.4). Also illustrated is the use of an adverbial adjunct and an adjectival adjunct (§ 19.4.3). The second use of the conjunction גַּם (cf. 7:8) introduces the third offence leading to Haman’s execution.

(24) **Est. 7:9c**—This example again illustrates launching direct speech without the usual speech introducing conjunction (§ 9.4).
(25) Est. 7:10—This example again illustrates a relative pronoun clause modifying a noun in the predicate of a doubly transitive verb (§ 12.2.2.2.2).

So they hanged Haman on the gallows that he had prepared for Mordecai.

Then the king’s wrath subsided. (Est. 7:10)

(26) Gen. 48:5a—This example illustrates a dependent participle clause modifying a noun in the lengthy subject of a possessive copulative clause (§ 12.1.6).

“And now your two sons, who were born to you in the land of Egypt before I came to you in Egypt, are mine; (Gen. 48:5a)

(27) Gen. 48:5b—This example illustrates a compound comparative noun phrase (§ 14.1.6) as the subject of a possessive copulative clause (§ 12.1.6).

Ephraim and Manasseh, as Reuben and Simeon, they shall be mine.” (Gen. 48:5b)

18.5 Discourse Analysis

The fourth phase of the analysis procedure is the analysis of the entire discourse. This type of analysis involves the way in which the clauses of the discourse are linked together by conjunctions into sentences, paragraphs, episodes, chapters, etc. Here the flow of thought is analyzed, and
the various nuances of the text are studied. Chapter 19 discusses sequence transformations, those transformations that link clauses together into coherent discourse. Chapters 20 and 21 discuss the procedures of discourse analysis. This completes the discussion of analyzing sentences.

18.6 Summary

The Restoration of Deletion and Substitution

Restore Elided Elements

(1) \( \phi \rightarrow (X) \)

Restore Antecedents of Pronouns

(2) \( R \rightarrow N \)

Restore Antecedents of Other Substitutes

(3) \( X^s \rightarrow X \)

Analyze Phrases

Determine Syntactic Roles

Analyze of Sentences

Copulative Sentences

Verbal Sentences

Discourse Analysis
CHAPTER 19
Sequence Transformations

The syntax of the kernel sentences of Hebrew is defined in Chapter 12; that syntax employs a simple phrase-structure grammar. Chapter 13 defines the transformations that may rearrange the structure of the kernel sentences of Hebrew as they appear in the surface of the text; these consist of simple sentence transformations. The generation of phrases, however, requires transformations that go beyond the boundaries of a sentence, because phrases are best accounted for on the basis of a part of speech with a dependent sentence. Chapters 14 through 17 define the transformations that generate phrases; these transformations are in the domain of the text grammar, not merely the sentence grammar.

The text grammar requires another set of transformations that arrange sentences into meaningful sequences, and that operate on those sequences to produce the final surface structure of a discourse. These transformations may be generally referred to as sequence transformations, because they operate on sequences of sentences. Sequence transformations arrange the sentences of a discourse in proper sequential order and provide the appropriate connectives. The sequential order of the sentences in a discourse is governed partially by the semantics of the discourse and the literary conventions of Hebrew, and partially by the stylistic preferences of the author. In this stage of composition the author decides the order in which the participants and props are introduced, the settings of time and place are established, and the events, episodes, and arguments are arranged.

Semantically, the sequences are governed by such characteristics as plot, theme, time flow, place, and the conventions of thought flow. Thought flow moves from what is known to what is being made known; from what was, to what is, to what will be; from the general to the specific; from prerequisite conditions to consequences; from logical premises to conclusion. This stage of composition is where the person, voice, aspect, tense, mood, mode, emphasis, and negation of the sentences are determined; it is the stage where semantic concord, consistency, and coherence is established.
Literary conventions govern the sequences related to form, genre, and pericope. The author’s style governs some of the choices available to him in the process of composition. The sequence transformations provide a mechanical explanation of what an author does intuitively when he arranges the sequences of his text.

The sequence transformations arrange the sentences into clusters of sentences. They arrange the clusters into larger clusters that form paragraphs. They arrange the paragraphs into pericopes, and pericopes into chapters, and chapters into a complete discourse. Sequence transformations fall into five major categories: (1) the coordination transformation, (2) the subordination transformation, (3) the sentence emphasis transformation, (4) the deletion transformation, and (5) the substitution transformation. This chapter focuses on linking sentences into specific types of sequences. Chapter 20 goes into further detail regarding sequences of multiple sentences.

The coordination transformation joins two or more independent sentences by means of an appropriate coordinating conjunction. The subordination transformation joins an independent sentence with its dependent sentence. The sentence emphasis transformation brings related sentences together in a cluster group, and grants position prominence to one of them. The deletion transformation optimizes the text by deleting redundant or self evident information. The substitution transformation further optimizes the text by providing appropriate economical substitutes for redundant information that cannot be deleted; it takes care of determination in the process.

19.1 The Coordination Transformation

The interrelationship of sentences is indicated primarily by conjunctions. As discussed in Chapter 9, there are two major classes of conjunctions or connectives: (1) those that coordinate sentences of equal rank and function in the flow of thought (§ 9.2); and (2) those that subordinate one sentence to another (§ 9.3). A sentence is subordinate to another when it modifies the other sentence in some sense. A subordinate sentence usually answers an adverbial question about the sentence it modifies, such as, when?, where?, how?, why?, etc. A subordinate sentence is sometimes referred to as a dependent sentence, the sentence it modifies as an independent sentence. While the conjunctions have what may be regarded as a “common” meaning, the contextual semantics may alter the nuance of a conjunction.

Coordinate sentences are independent sentences that have equal rank and make equal contribution to the local argument of the text. The coordination transformation connects a sequence

---

1 What is said about clauses may also be said about clusters of clauses.
of coordinate sentences (or clusters of sentences) by means of the appropriate coordinating con-
junctions, and identifies the sequence as a cluster.\(^2\) The coordination transformation takes the gen-
eral form:

\[
(1) \quad [S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + C^c + S_j
\]

where \(C^c\) is the appropriate coordinating conjunction, as determined by the type of coordination
the author desires. The transformation iterates until all coordinate sentences are appropriately
linked together.

Independent sentences may be coordinated in one of seven ways: (1) simple coordination
without restriction on relative time; (2) simple coordination with parallel or simultaneous action;
(3) simple coordination with sequential action; (4) disjunctive coordination; (5) adversative co-
ordination; (6) comparative coordination; and (7) simple juxtaposition.

19.1.1 Timeless Coordination

Simple coordination without restriction on relative time\(^3\) is indicated by joining the sen-
tences with \(W\)aw conjunctive (\(\gamma\)). The sentences remain in their initial word order.\(^4\) With this ar-
rangement, the sentences, not the verbal actions, are coordinated. Nothing is implied about their
relative time. The transformation takes the specific form:

\[
(1a) \quad [S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + C^c + S_j
\]

where \(C^c = \gamma\) (\(and\)—\(W\)aw conjunctive) or \(\text{also}\); and \(S_j\) retains its initial word order, usually
SVO. The notation addresses only a pair of sentences, but it may include a sequence of more than
two, as long as they share the same type of coordination. Often the conjunction is repeated before
every sentence except the first; but at times, the conjunctions are elided except for the last one.

\(^2\) The sequence should include all the clauses that are in a contiguous order and have a common type of
coordination. Usually they have a common theme, time frame of reference, aspect, and setting.

\(^3\) The clauses may have different time references (tenses), but such differences are not indicated or implied
by the conjunctions. In fact, this transformation is the one to use when the time references are different.

\(^4\) The clauses may be in their kernel clause order, SVO, or they may have undergone some intermediate
transformations that have altered that order. Whatever word order the clauses had immediately prior to this transfor-
mation is retained throughout the transformation.
Chapter 19
Sequence Transformations

19.1.2 Simultaneous Coordination

Simple coordination with parallel or simultaneous action is expressed by joining the sentences with Waw conjunctive. The first sentence retains its initial word order; and the second sentence is transformed to its VSO order, that is, the verb has been granted first position prominence. With this arrangement, the verbal actions are coordinated so that parallel or simultaneous action is implied. The transformation takes the following specific form:

\[
(1b) \quad [S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + W + [S_j(V-emph)]
\]

where \( C^c = W \) (Waw conjunctive),\(^7\) and the verb of \( S_j \) is granted first position prominence. The notation addresses only a pair of sentences, but it may include a sequence of more than two, as long as they share the same type of coordination. The subsequent sentences experience the same VSO transformation. Obviously the sentences should be in the same aspect, and often they are in the same mood.

\[
\text{אַשֶּׁר בְּמַעֲמָלָה שָׁמַיִם מִלְכָּלָה}
\]
Even to your old age, I am He,
And even to gray hairs, I will carry you!
I have made, and I will bear;
Even I will carry, and will deliver you.\(^5\) (Isa. 46:4)

\[
\text{נֵבִאְרוֹ אֵין אָבָל}
\]
If heaven above can be measured,
And the foundations of the earth searched out beneath\(^8\) (Jer. 31:37)

---

\(^5\) In the first clause, the adverbial phrase is granted first position prominence; whereas the second retains its SVO order. The clauses themselves are coordinated, not just their verbal action.

\(^6\) The first two clauses have had their adverb phrases granted first position prominence. Note the different time references, and that the clauses have SVO order. Some constituents have been elided.

\(^7\) Waw conjunctive usually expresses simple coordination, however, it is used in other contexts to be discussed later.
He gives power to the weak,
And to those who have no might He increases strength.
Even the youths shall faint and be weary,
And the young men shall utterly fall. 9 (Isa. 40:29-30)

Now therefore, please let me go up and bury my father,
and I will return. 10 (Gen. 50:5)

19.1.3 Sequential Coordination

Simple coordination with sequential action is expressed with Waw consecutive, the second sentence is transformed into its VSO order, and its verb is transformed to its corresponding “consecutive” aspect. 12 With this arrangement, the verbal actions are coordinated as sequential in some respect. 13 The transformation takes on the following specific form:

\[(S_i, S_j) \rightarrow S_i + W^c + [S_j(V\text{-consec})]\]

where \(C^c = W^c\) (Waw consecutive). 14 The notation addresses only a pair of sentences, but it may include a sequence of more than two, as long as they share the same type of coordination. The subsequent sentences experience the same consecutive transformation. Obviously the sentences initially should be in the same aspect, and often they are in the same mood.

---

8 Two clauses in the protasis of a conditional sentence are required to be simultaneously true for the condition to be met.

9 The first two and the last two clauses are joined with simple Waw conjunctive with deletion of the common subject in the last. The two pairs of clauses are joined as simultaneous or parallel action.

10 The actions are viewed as parallel, not simultaneous, here.

11 The sequence may be temporal, logical, causal, and so forth. See Watts pp. 86-90; 97-100; RJW 178-79.

12 The transformation is known as the consecutive transformation. In addition to moving the verb to first position prominence, it converts a perfect aspect verb form into its apocopated imperfect form, and an imperfect aspect form into its long perfect form. This means that the morphemes that encode mood are lost, and mood must be determined from the context. However, Waw consecutive may be regarded to transmit mood from the preceding clause. The Waw consecutive is vocalized in accordance with the verbal form it attaches to: Shewa with long perfect forms, and Pathach plus Daggesh Forte with apocopated imperfect forms.

13 The sequence is usually temporal, but may be consequential or logical.

14 Waw consecutive usually expresses simple sequential coordination, however, it is used in other contexts to be discussed later.
19.1.3.1 Consecutive action in past time:

And the waters prevailed exceedingly on the earth, and all the high hills under the whole heaven were covered. (Gen. 7:19)

And Abraham ran to the herd, took a tender and good calf, gave it to a young man, and he hastened to prepare it. (Gen. 18:7)

I have obeyed the voice of the LORD, and gone on the mission on which the LORD sent me, and brought back Agag king of Amalek. (1 Sam. 15:20)

The people heeded the voice of the LORD... and the people feared the presence of the LORD (Hag. 1:12)

19.1.3.2 Consecutive action in future time:

Now within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and restore you to your place and you will put Pharaoh’s cup in his hand (Gen. 40:13)

Now therefore, if you will indeed obey My voice and keep My covenant, then you shall be a special treasure to me above all people. (Exod. 19:5)
Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God, the LORD is one!
You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart,
with all your soul, and with all your might.
And these words which I command you today shall be in your heart;
you shall teach them diligently to your children,
and shall talk of them when you sit in your house,
when you walk by the way,
when you lie down,
and when you rise up.
You shall bind them as a sign on your hand,
and they shall be as frontlets between your eyes.
You shall write them on the doorposts of your house
and on your gates. (Deut. 6:4-9)

Go, and tell this people:
Keep on hearing, but do not understand;
Keep on seeing, but do not perceive. (Isa. 6:9)

You shall go to my country and to my kindred,
and take a wife for my son Isaac. (Gen. 24:4)

19.1.3.3 Consecutive imperatives:

Go up to the mountains!
and Bring wood!
and Build the temple! (Hag. 1:8)
Watts argued that these sentences are to be regarded as correlative action rather than consecutive. The correlative idea does seem to be present in Exod. 19:5, and Deut. 6:4, 6; but the consecutive idea is quite clear in Isa. 6:9 and Gen. 24:4. However, there is logical sequence evident in all, thus the consecutive idea must be maintained.

Some grammarians have gone to great detail to catalogue many varieties of Waw-consecutive sentences. However, it is only important at this point to observe that most types of sentences may be interrelated in this fashion, and that the common idea thus expressed is simple coordination with consecutive action. The distinctions they observe are due to the type of sentences and the semantic nuances involved, not due to anything inherent in the Waw consecutive itself.

19.1.3.4 The infinitive absolute may be used to continue a sequence of finite verbs, even with the nuance of consecution. But in this case, simple Waw conjunctive is used.

19.1.4 Disjunctive Coordination

Simple coordination with disjunctive action is expressed by the disjunctive conjunction (or). The sentences retain their initial word order. In this case the transformation takes on the specific form:

\[(1d) \quad [S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + C^c + S_j \quad \text{or} \quad C^c + S_i + C^c + S_j\]

where \(C^c\) is (or). The first option is used when the sentences express mutually exclusive alternatives, alternate possibilities in an uncertain situation, or the sentences express the same thought in alternate words. The second option is used when the sentences express mutually exclusive alternatives; or alternate possibilities in an uncertain situation: whether . . . or. The conjunctions function as a pair. Hebrew has no conjunctions expressing neither . . . nor; it uses instead.

Option one, mutually exclusive alternatives:

15 Watts, 97.
16 GKC § 113z, gg.
17 The infinitive absolute often substitutes for a finite verb in Esther.
Chapter 19

Sequence Transformations

Is it better that you be a priest to the household of one man, or that you be a priest to a tribe and a family in Israel? (Judg. 18:19)

Who has made man's mouth? Or who makes the mute, the deaf, the seeing, or the blind? Have not I, the LORD? (Exod. 4:11)

They shall be on Aaron and his sons when they come into the tabernacle of meeting, or when they come near the altar to minister in the holy place (Exod. 28:43)

When they go into the tabernacle of meeting . . . or when they come near the altar to minister . . . (Exod. 30:20)

If a person sins in the hearing of an oath . . . Or if a person touches any unclean thing . . . Or if he touches human uncleanness . . . (Lev. 5:1-4)

Option two, alternate possibilities:

Whether it has gored a son, or it has gored a daughter, according to this judgment it shall be done to him. (Exod. 21:31)

Neither curse them at all, nor bless them at all! (Num. 23:25)

---

18 In both this example and the next, the two disjunctive clauses have been transformed into their infinitive form.
19.1.5 Adversative Coordination

Simple coordination with adversative action is expressed by one of the adversative conjunctions. The sentences are of equal hierarchy but opposing or contrary meaning. In this case the transformation takes on the specific form:

\[(S_i, S_j) \rightarrow S_i + C^c + S_j\]

where \(C^c\) is (but) when \(S_j\) is a sentence in opposition to \(S_i\), or it expresses a contrary thought or one contrary to expectation.

\[
\text{The men that were with me did not see the vision; but a great terror fell upon them. (Dan. 10:7)}
\]

\[
\text{Therefore the wrath of the LORD is upon you. Nevertheless good things are found in you . . .(2 Chr. 19:2-3)}
\]

\[
\text{Then Solomon, and all the congregation with him, went to the high place that was at Gibeon; for the tabernacle of meeting with God was there, which Moses the servant of the LORD had made in the wilderness. But David had brought up the ark of God from Kirjath Jearim to the place David had prepared for it, for he had pitched a tent for it in Jerusalem. (2 Chr. 1:3-4)}
\]

\[
\text{He also repaired the altar of the LORD, sacrificed peace offerings and thank offerings on it, and commanded Judah to serve the LORD God of Israel. Nevertheless the people still sacrificed on the high places, but only to the LORD. (2 Chr. 33:16-17)}
\]

Sometimes \(C^c\) is (but) when more emphasis is required.
And he also shall be great;
but truly his younger brother shall be greater than he.
(Gen. 48:19)

Now if I had stretched out My hand
and struck you and your people with pestilence,
then you would have been cut off from the earth.
But indeed for this purpose I have raised you up,
that I may show my power in you,
and that My name may be declared in all the earth. (Exod. 9:15-16)

You have blessed the works of his hands,
and his possessions have increased in the land.
But now, stretch out Your hand
and touch all that he has,
and he will surely curse You to Your face. (Job 1:10-11)

\( C^c \) is אָם ַכּ (but) when \( S_j \) is in antithesis to a negated \( S_i \).

This one shall not be your heir,
but one who will come from your own body shall be your heir.
(Gen. 15:4)

19.1.6 Comparative Coordination

Simple coordination with comparative action is expressed by comparative conjunctions (§ 9.2.4). Comparative conjunctions compare the thought of one word, phrase, or sentence with that of another word, phrase, or sentence. In this case the transformation takes on the specific form:

\[
(1f) \quad [S^d, S^i] \rightarrow S^i + C^c + S^d \\
\text{or} \quad C^b + S^i + C^c + S^d \\
\]

The following are the principal comparative conjunctions in Hebrew:

(a) כְָּשָׁר—just as...(so)—this pair of conjunctions compares two sentences on an equal basis. The second conjunction may be omitted.
(b) \(\text{\&...as...so}\)—this pair of conjunctions compares one word, phrase, or sentence with another on a similar but not necessarily equal basis.

(c) \(\text{more than}\)—compares one word, phrase, or sentence as superior to another; if the thing compared is a universal statement, the conjunction expresses the superlative degree of comparison.

Sentences may be compared on the basis of any common element or feature, and they may have six degrees of comparison: (1) the superlative degree, (2) the superior degree, (3) the similar degree, (4) the same degree, (5) the inferior degree, and (6) the most inferior degree.

Typical common elements that are compared are participants, predicates, attributes, and adverbial modifiers such as manner, means, cause, reason, purpose, time, place, and so forth. Typical common features that are compared are truth, certainty, and figurative representation. The following is a list of various types of comparisons that can be made between sentences:

1. Two subjects compared with respect to a common predicate.
2. Two objects compared with respect to a common subject and verb.
3. A statement compared with itself under different circumstances.
4. Two subjects and objects compared with respect to a common verb.
5. A statement compared with another of the same kind.
6. A statement compared with its counter-statement, contradiction, alternative, or adversative.
7. A figure of speech compared with its counterpart.

Frequently comparative sentence pairs of types (1) through (3) are condensed to a single sentence with a comparative phrase; but the condensing may not be possible in some cases, or may purposely be left undone for the sake of emphasis. The condensing of types (4) through (7) is more difficult and found less often. The following are examples of condensed sentence pairs:

**Type 1: Comparison of two subjects with a common predicate:**

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{בְּהֵמָלָה} \text{ הלְמָלָה} \\
\text{כֹּל-נְפָר} \text{ כֹּל-נְפָר} \\
\text{כָּשֵׁר} \text{ כָּשֵׁר} \\
\text{כֶּלּוֹם}: \\
\text{Every male among us is circumcised} \\
\text{as [comparison of equality]} \\
\text{they are circumcised. (Gen. 34:22)}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{יִשְׂרָאֵל} \text{ רְשַׁעְתֵּי} \text{ מַעְמַכְּךָנִים} \\
\text{They reverted and behaved more corruptly than their fathers. (Judg. 2:19)} \\
\text{[Condensed from “They reverted and behaved corruptly more than their fathers reverted and behaved corruptly.”]}
\end{align*}
\]
As the new heavens and the new earth Which I have made shall remain before Me,” says the LORD, “So shall your descendants and your name remain.” (Isa. 66:22)

David behaved more wisely than all the servants of Saul. (1 Sam. 18:30)
[Condensed from “David behaved wisely more than all the servants of Saul behaved wisely.”]

one people shall be stronger than the other. (Gen. 25:23)
[Condensed from “One people shall be strong more than the other people shall be strong.”]

The king loved Esther more than all the other women. (Est. 2:17)
[Condensed from “The king loved Esther more than the king loved all the other women.”]

He also loved Rachel more than Leah. (Gen. 29:30)
[Condensed from “He loved Rachel more than he loved Leah.”]

The king loved Esther more than all the other women. (Est. 2:17)
[Condensed from “The king loved Esther more than the king loved all the other women.”]

He also loved Rachel more than Leah. (Gen. 29:30)
[Condensed from “He loved Rachel more than he loved Leah.”]

Fulfill your work, your daily quota, as [comparison of equality] when there was straw. (Exod. 5:13)
[Condensed from “Fulfill your work, your daily quota, as you fulfilled your daily work quota when there was straw.”]

Two by two they went into the ark to Noah, male and female, as God had commanded Noah. (Gen. 7:9)
We will go three days journey into the wilderness and sacrifice to the LORD our God as He will command us. (Exod. 8:23)

**Messenger-message:**

I will bring back word to you as the LORD speaks to me. (Num. 22:8)

**Crime-punishment:**

As I have done, so God has repaid me. (Judg. 1:7)

**Type 5: A statement is compared with another of the same kind.**

Just as when a man rises against his neighbor and kills him, even so is this matter. (Deut. 22:26)

**Type 6: A statement is compared with its contradiction.** The significant thought involved in the contradiction must be stated.

Nor will I again destroy every living thing as I have done. (Gen. 8:21)

**Type 7: A figure of speech is compared with its counterpart.**

As his name is, so is he. (1 Sam. 25:25)

As the clay is in the potter’s hand, so are you in My hand, O house of Israel. (Jer. 18:6)
Chapter 19  Sequence Transformations  474

19.1.7 Juxtaposition

Sometimes Hebrew, like English, does not use a conjunction to connect sentences, instead, they stand in juxtaposition (side-by-side).\(^{19}\) Sentences in juxtaposition may be regarded as having a zero conjunction, that is, \(C^c = \phi\). Coordinate sentences may stand in juxtaposition whenever the coordinate relationship of the sentences is clearly understood from the sense of the sentences themselves. This is true whether the coordination is conjunctive, disjunctive, or adversative. In this case, the transformation takes the specific form:

\[
(1g) \quad [S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + \phi + S_j
\]

\textit{Juxtaposition of phrases and sentences:}

\begin{align*}
\text{הרי גור תאם} & \quad \text{Usen geder Taww} \\
\text{עד ארעיימ} & \quad \text{Binn samudarim} \\
\text{עבז אפרתיה} & \quad \text{Anay echadish kayalai} \\
\text{נזור איווה} & \quad \text{Nazor Ayora}
\end{align*}

Alas, sinful nation,
A people laden with iniquity,
A brood of evil doers,
Children who are corrupters!
They have forsaken the LORD,
They have provoked to anger
The Holy One of Israel,
They have turned away backwards. (Isa. 1:4)

---

\(^{19}\) The omission of a conjunction is called \textit{asyndeton}. The omission may be regarded as the result of a deletion transformation (§ 19.4).
Coordinating conjunctions may join more than two sentences, or sentence clusters; if so, and the type of coordination is the same for all, then all the conjunctions but the last may be omitted. Hebrew repeats the coordinating conjunctions more often than English does in this circumstance.

19.2 The Subordination Transformation

The subordination of sentences originates from the relationship $S^i|S^d$ which is interpreted as “sentence $S^i$ such that sentence $S^d$ is true.” $S^i$ is an independent sentence, and $S^d$ is a dependent sentence that defines some adverbial restraint on $S^i$. The subordinate transformation joins an independent sentence (or cluster) to its dependent subordinate sentence (or cluster) by means of appropriate subordinating conjunction(s), and identifies the sequence as a cluster. The subordinate transformation has the following form:

$$(2) \quad [S^d, S^i] \rightarrow S^i + C^s + S^d$$

or

$$C^b + S^i + C^s + S^d_a$$

where $S^d$ is the dependent sentence (sometimes called the apodosis) and $S^i$ the independent sentence (sometimes called the protasis), $C^s$ is the appropriate subordinating conjunction.\(^{20}\) The first option is used when $S^i$ has first position prominence and only one conjunction is required for expressing the subordinate relationship. The second is used when $S^d$ has first position and the conjunctions function in pairs. The student should consult Chapter 9 for a description of subordinating conjunctions. As in the case of coordinate sentences, $C^s$ may be justaposition ($\phi$) when the semantic sense of the context implies subordination.

Whenever one sentence is dependent upon another, a subordinating conjunction introduces the dependent sentence in order to express the kind of dependency involved. There are at least seven principal dependencies employed in Hebrew: (1) temporal, (2) result-consequence, (3) reason-result/cause-consequence, (4) purpose-result, (5) manner-means, (6) conditional, and (7) subordinate infinitive sentence. Dependent sentences function adverbially; they answer the standard adverbial questions.

19.2.1 Temporal

Temporal conjunctions (§ 9.3.1) specify some time dependency between the two sentences. The following are the most common temporal conjunctions:

\(^{20}\) The conjunctions $C^s_a$ and $C^s_b$ operate as pairs, $C^s_a$ introduces the dependent clause and $C^s_b$ introduces the independent clause. Sometimes $C^s_b$ is first.
19.2.2 Result-Consequence

Result-consequence conjunctions (§ 9.3.2) specify that one sentence is the result or consequence of the other which in turn is the cause for the companion sentence. These conjunctions appear only between an independent sentence and its dependent sentence. The following are the more common result-reason conjunctions:

—therefore

—lest

(1) Cause-result conjunctions answer the question “with what result?” The relationship is more one of direct cause and effect than of remote cause and effect. The latter may be regarded more as a consequence than as an effect.

They said, “Can God prepare a table in the wilderness...?” [cause]

Therefore

the LORD heard this and was furious. [result]

(1 Sam. 8:6)

(2) Cause-consequence conjunctions answer the question “with what consequence?” The relationship is more one of indirect or remote cause and effect than of direct cause and effect. The latter may be regarded more as a result than as a consequence.

You have forsaken Me and served other gods. [cause]

Therefore

I will deliver you no more. [consequence]

(Judg. 10:13)

(3) The conjunction LEST expresses the undesirable result, alternative, or consequence, answering the question “why not?”

But the thing displeased Samuel when they said, “Give us a king to judge us.”

(1 Sam. 8:6)
You shall not eat it, nor shall you touch it, [prohibited cause] lest you die. [undesirable consequence] (Gen. 3:3)

19.2.3 Reason-Result/Cause-Consequence

Reason-result conjunctions (§ 9.3.3) specify that one clause is the reason for another clause which is the result of the companion clause. Cause-consequence conjunctions specify that one clause is the cause of another clause which is the consequence of the companion clause. These conjunctions introduce the dependent clause, although the independent clause may appear before the dependent clause for the sake of prominence. Note that reason-result conjunctions and cause-consequence conjunctions are interrelated; it is not unusual to find them mixed in a statement like “Because . . . therefore . . .” For example: “Because you did not obey the voice of the LORD nor execute His fierce wrath upon Amalek, therefore the LORD has done this thing to you this day” (1 Sam. 28:18). The following is a list of the more prominent cause-reason conjunctions:

- therefore
- because
- because

(1) Reason-result conjunctions answer the question “why, for what reason?” as distinguished from a cause.

Achish gave him Ziklag that day. [reason]

Therefore Ziklag has belonged to the kings of Judah to this day. [result] (1 Sam. 27:6)

The LORD has given you the Sabbath; [reason]

therefore He gives you on the sixth day bread for two days. [result] (Exod. 16:29)

he called that place Beersheba. [result]

because the two of them swore an oath there. [reason] (Gen. 21:31)
Chapter 19  Sequence Transformations  478

Because you did not obey the voice of the LORD
nor execute His fierce wrath upon Amalek, [reason]

therefore
the LORD has done this thing to you this day. [result]
(1 Sam. 28:18)

(2) Result-cause conjunctions answer the question “how, by what cause?” as distinguished from grounds or a logical reason.

הרי ישים כלל
מקין אשאר ורד טעלי ויהוה באש
Mount Sinai was completely in smoke, [result]
because
the LORD descended upon it in fire. [cause]  (Exod. 19:18)

19.2.4 Purpose-Result

Purpose-result conjunctions (§ 9.3.4) specify that one sentence is the purpose or intended result of the other sentence. Purpose conjunctions answer the question “why, for what purpose?”

The following are the most common purpose-result conjunctions:

למען—that, in order that
 которая שעה א救护 את
למען ירשה לצבורך
that [purpose]
Please say you are my sister,

that [purpose]
it may be well with me for your sake. [result] (Gen. 12:13)

אתה שבת כתשה חק מחיר
בעבר רחי והו ל mAמה
You will take these seven ewe lambs from my hand,

that [purpose]
they may be my witness... (Gen. 21:30)

19.2.5 Manner-Means

Manner-means conjunctions (§ 9.3.5) specify that one sentence defines the manner or means whereby the other sentence is accomplished. Manner conjunctions answer the question “how, in what manner?” The following is the common manner-means conjunction:

ך—thus; so
19.2.6 Conditional Conjunctions

Conditional conjunctions (§ 9.3.6) specify some logical dependency between two sentences, which dependency usually can be expressed by the conjunctions if and then—that is, if Sentence-A, then Sentence-B. The “if sentence” (Sentence-A) is called the protasis, and the “then sentence” (Sentence-B) is called the apodosis. The “if sentence” (protasis) declares some condition under which the “then sentence” (apodosis) may be regarded as true. Such a pair of sentences is called a “conditional” sentence.\(^{21}\) Conditional sentences are part of the language of logical reasoning. The verbal aspect is governed by the expectation of the semantics of the local context.

If he said thus: “The speckled shall be your wages,”

then

al the flock bore speckled. (Gen. 31:8)

The truth or falsity of the apodosis is dependent on the truth or falsity of the protasis. The condition (protasis) may be true-to-fact or contrary-to-fact. A true-to-fact condition is one that corresponds to reality, referring to what has actually happened or to what could actually happen. Whereas, a contrary-to-fact condition is one that does not correspond to reality, referring to what has not actually happened or to what could not happen. For example, the condition if the moon turns to cheese is a contrary-to-fact condition, because it states a condition that cannot happen. Whereas the condition if a man sins is a true-to-fact condition, because it states a condition that can and has happened.

The truth of the condition (protasis) may have one of several degrees of certainty (probability). The condition may be regarded by the writer or speaker as certainly true (or false); in this case the author or speaker implies that the consequence (apodosis) is certainly true (or false). The condition may be regarded as only potentially true (or false), depending on extenuating circumstances; in this case the writer or speaker implies that the consequence is potentially true (or false), depending on the circumstances. The condition may be regarded as only hypothetically true (or false), that is, it could possibly be true (or false), but not likely so; in this case the writer or speaker

\(^{21}\) GKC § 159.
implies that the consequence is regarded as not likely true (or false). The degree of certainty is determined primarily by the aspect and mood of the sentences, not exclusively by the conjunctions.

The protasis may express the exclusive condition under which the consequence (apodosis) can be true. Likewise, the protasis may express a non-exclusive condition under which the consequence may be true; in this case, the apodosis could be true under other conditions than that expressed by the protasis.

The kind of affirmation, that is, whether the condition is regarded as true or false, is indicated by the conjunction used and by the sense of the sentences and their context. The following are the prominent conditional conjunctions:

- רבד—if—introduces the simple condition, whether exclusive or non-exclusive, under which the apodosis could be true.
- הניח—only if—introduces the exclusive condition under which the apodosis could be true.
- יניא—unless—introduces the exclusive negative condition, being the equivalent of if not. It specifies the exclusive condition that would negate the consequence (apodosis).
- יב—if—introduces a positive contrary-to-fact condition under which the apodosis could be true; but because the condition is contrary-to-fact, the apodosis is regarded as false.
- בר ula—if not—introduces a negative contrary-to-fact protasis. It specifies the exclusive condition that will negate the independent sentence.

Conditional conjunctions declare some logical relationship between the protasis and apodosis. The relationship may be one of cause-effect, reason-result, or means-result; or it may declare that the truth or certainty of the protasis somehow determines the truth or certainty of the apodosis. Used rhetorically, the conditional sentence may be almost the equivalent of a comparative.

There are four types of conditional sentences, not taking into account the degrees of certainty, or the fact that they may be true-to-fact or contrary-to-fact: (a) non-exclusives, (b) exclusives, (c) exceptions, and (d) concessions.

---

22 These conjunctions introduce the conditional protasis; the apodosis may be introduced by Waw conjunctive, by Waw consecutive, by לארש, or by juxtaposition.
(1) For the non-exclusive conditional, the protasis is a condition the truth of which determines the affirmation or denial of the apodosis, but it is not necessarily the exclusive condition. However, used rhetorically, a non-exclusive conditional sentence does not imply the possibility of alternative conditions that could cause the consequence to be true (as would be the case in a purely logical conditional).

If he said thus: “The speckled shall be your wages,”
then all the flock bore speckled. (Gen. 31:8)

If I find in Sodom fifty righteous within the city,
then I will spare all the place for their sakes. (Gen. 18:26)

The LORD said that fifty righteous would be sufficient for sparing the city, but actually ten was the final number. Any number over ten would have been sufficient.

You may kill my two sons if I do not bring him back to you. (Gen. 42:37)

Reuben expressed his confidence that he would bring Benjamin back to Jacob by stating it in the form of a rhetorical contrary-to-expectation conditional sentence. Thus Reuben did not imply that under some other condition Jacob could kill his sons. His rhetorical sentence expressed confidence, not doubt.

“If these ordinances depart from before Me,” says the LORD,
then the seed of Israel shall also cease from being a nation before Me forever.” (Jer. 31:36)

The LORD compared the certainty of Israel’s future as a nation with the certainty of the laws of nature (vs. 35). He stated it in the form of a rhetorical contrary-to-fact conditional sentence. His rhetorical conditional sentence expressed certainty, not the possibility that some other condition might cause Israel to cease as a nation.
The LORD compared the reliability of His covenant with David with the reliability of the laws of nature (viewed here as a covenant with day and night). He stated it in the form of a rhetorical contrary-to-fact conditional sentence. His rhetorical conditional sentence expressed reliability, not the possibility that some other condition might cause Him to break His covenant with David.

(2) For the exclusive conditional the protasis is the only condition whereby the apodosis may be true.

If you can break My covenant with the day and My covenant with the night... then My covenant may also be broken with David My servant... (Jer. 33:20-21)

The LORD will greatly bless you in the land... only if you carefully obey the voice of the LORD your God. (Deut. 15:4-5)

You shall not fail to have a man sit before me on the throne of Israel, only if your sons take heed to their way... (1 Kgs. 8:25)

The exclusive condition whereby David would have a descendant sitting on the throne of Israel was that his descendants would carefully obey God’s commandments. This does not contradict the covenant with David discussed in Jer. 33:20-21 above, because Jeremiah indicated that Israel’s captives would return and be the recipients of God’s everlasting mercy (vs. 26).

I will not make the feet of Israel wander anymore from the land which I gave their fathers— only if they are careful to do according to all I command them. (2 Kgs. 21:8)

(3) For the excepted conditional the protasis is the exclusive condition whereby the apodosis may be denied.

I will not let You go unless You bless me. (Gen. 32:27)
The person...shall not eat the holy offerings unless he washes his body with water. (Lev. 22:6)

Unless the LORD had been my help, My soul would soon have settled in silence. (Psa. 94:17)

Unless the LORD builds the house, they labor in vain who build it. (Psa. 127:1)

(4) For the concessive conditional the protasis is a condition expected to be contrary to the truth of the apodosis, but declared to be otherwise.

Although my house is not so with God, yet He has made with me an everlasting covenant. (2 Sam. 23:5)

19.2.7 Subordinate Infinitive Sentence

Finally, Hebrew permits a subordinate sentence to be transformed into an adverbial prepositional sentence. In such cases, the subordinate sentence undergoes an infinitive transformation and the conjunction is changed into its corresponding preposition. This is expressed formally as:

$ [S^d, S^i] \rightarrow S^i + P^s + [S^d(V\text{-inf})]$

where $S^d$ is the dependent sentence, and $S^i$ is the independent sentence; $C^s$ is a subordinating conjunction, and $P^s$ is its corresponding preposition. The transformation fronts the verb of $S^d$ and transforms it into its infinitive construct form. The following examples illustrate the dependent sentences before (1) and after (2) the transformation.

---

23 The deletion-substitution transformation removes unnecessary redundancy and makes the required substitutions.
In the first example, the dependent sentence has the finite verb "bore" in its normal slot, and the sentences are linked by the conjunction "when." In the transformed form, the conjunction is replaced by its corresponding preposition ב, and the verb is placed first in its infinitive construct form לָבָר. Note that English must translate the passage as though it were not transformed, because English has no corresponding idiom. Some further examples follow.

**Original:**

1. Abram was eighty-six years old.
2. When Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Gen. 16:16)

**Transformed:**

1. Abram was eighty-six years old.
2. When Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Gen. 16:16)
I was forty years old when Moses the servant of the LORD sent me from Kadesh Barnea to spy out the land (Josh. 14:7)

This adverbial dependency is often accomplished at the early phases of the development of the text, before the more advanced text level is reached. See Chapter 6 in the section on the infinitive construct (§ 6.2), and also Chapter 14 on the verbal noun phrase (§ 14.4).

19.3 The Sentence Emphasis Transformation

The sentence emphasis transformation takes place in that phase of composition where the author arranges the order of the sentences of the overall discourse; he grants positional prominence to the appropriate sentences and clusters of sentences. The transformation iterates through the set of sentences composed for a given discourse and arranges them in sequence according to their interrelationship, logical order, and prominence.

\[(S_i, S_j) \rightarrow [S_j, S_i]\]

where S represents a sentence or cluster of sentences. This transformation grants \(S_j\) position prominence over \(S_i\), and marks \(S_j\) as prominent with respect to \(S_i\). The selection of which option should operate is based on the semantic, temporal, logical, literary, or stylistic demands of the situation.

The sentences should be arranged according to common episodes or genre. Within each episode group the sentences are arranged according to common theme or topic, and according to temporal or logical order. Dependent sentences are placed adjacent to the independent sentences they modify, according to the required need of position prominence. The episodes are arranged according to common theme or topic, and according to temporal or logical order, and in conformity to pertinent literary form. In this way the initial sequential structure of the text is arranged to provide it with basic coherence.

The transformation iterates over the current list of sentences or clusters until there is no occasion for transposition to take place. The resultant sequence is as correct as can be determined at the current state of the composition. After the other sequence transformations are complete, a new iteration of this transformation will adjust the sequences to a new level of correctness. When no further sequence transformations can be performed, the final sequence of the sentences and clusters is determined.
19.4 The Deletion Transformation

When a text contains redundant information, the law of the economy of information usually requires the minimization of such redundancy. This is often accomplished by deleting the redundant information, or at least by providing a less redundant substitution. The deletion transformation accomplishes the first task; the substitution transformation accomplishes the second. The deletion transformation accounts for compound constituents, adjuncts, and determination.

Deletion usually takes place unless such deletion would result in ambiguity, or the redundant constituent is marked for some type of emphasis or highlighting. The deletion transformed is expressed in formal terms as:

\[(5) \ S(X) \rightarrow S(-X)\]

where \(S\) is a sentence with redundant constituent \(X\), and where \(X = \{N, A, D, or V\}\) and may be a phrase. The transformation deletes constituent \(X\) in the sentence, but leaves the non-redundant constituents of the sentence in place. A constituent is redundant when it reoccurs in the discourse with the same referent. The transformation deletes such redundant constituents after its first instance under the following conditions: (1) no constituent of the same kind (but with a different referent) intervenes between the current instance and the preceding instance(s) of the constituent; (2) the constituent is not marked for some form of emphasis or highlighting. Those are the conditions in which deletion would result in some form of ambiguity, or the loss of information.

The transformation as a whole explains the surface structure of nearly all phrases, including compound phrases. So for example, the general form of all phrases is

\[X + S(X) \rightarrow X + \text{Modifier}\]

that is, constituent \(X\) with a dependent sentence \(S\) about \(X\); where \(X = \{N, A, D, V\}\). When such a phrase is transformed by the deletion transformation, the surface structure of the phrase is produced, apart from some possible subsequent substitutions. The modifier of \(X = S(-X)\); that is, \(X\) is deleted from \(S\) together with any other redundant constituents. This remnant of \(S(X)\) is the surface modifier of \(X\). The reader is referred to chapters 14 through 17 for a discussion and examples of the structures of phrases. There, the function of the deletion transformation is not indicated in the

---

24 Redundant in the sense that the information is old, having been stated in the previous context of the story, or is common knowledge related to the story, or may be rightly inferred from such sources.

25 A given sentence may have more than one redundant constituent, in which case the transformation deletes each redundant constituent on the basis of the conditions that apply to each redundant constituent individually.
formal expressions, but is understood to have taken place; it is the linguistic operation that produces the surface modifier.

In all the illustrations in this section, two forms of a sentence are presented: (1) the first is the sentence before deletion has taken place, with the redundant information enclosed in brackets “[]”; (2) the second is the sentence after the deletion.

### 19.4.1 Simple Deletion

Often the redundant information is deleted without any necessary accompanying action.

Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron, and [Pharaoh] said . . .

Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron, and said . . . (Exod. 8:4, English vs. 8)

### 19.4.2 Compound Phrases

This transformation also creates and explains nearly all compound phrases in Hebrew. Compound phrases are created when the deletion transformation operates on two contiguous sentences, linked by a coordinating conjunction, and having one or more redundant constituents that serve the same role in both sentences. The following examples illustrate how this happens. First, a sentence is presented before

**Example where X is the elements of a common predicate:** the result is a compound subject.

Moses [did all these wonders] and Aaron did all these wonders

Moses and Aaron did all these wonders (Exod. 11:10)*

**Example where X is the common subject and verb:** the result is a compound predicate complement—in this case a compound prepositional phrase.

Then the LORD spoke to Moses and [the LORD spoke to] Aaron

Then the LORD spoke to Moses and Aaron (Exod. 6:13)

---

26 When the transformation produces a compound subject, the verb is made plural, and the gender and person are made to exhibit concord with the new subject.

27 Note that prepositions are often retained redundantly in Hebrew, much more so than in English.
Chapter 19

Sequence Transformations

Example where X includes the common adverb, subject, and verb in sequential sentences: the result is a compound predicate complement.

In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.

Example where all elements are redundant except for attributive adjectives: the result is a compound adjective phrase.

This great nation is a wise and understanding people.

19.4.3 Adjuncts

Deletion of redundant information in sequential sentences can result in an adjunct modifier of one or more of the sentences.

And behold we were binding sheaves; in the midst of the field.

In this example, the adjunct is an adverbial prepositional phrase of place.

In the days of Saul they made war with the Hagrites

In this example, the adjunct is an adverbial prepositional phrase of time, granted first place prominence.

But Haman hurried to his house; mourning, and with his head covered.

In this example, the adjunct is a compound phrase of accompanying circumstances.
In this example, the adjunct is an adverbia l phrase of reason. The content of the dependent sentence is derived form the preceding context.

19.4.4 Determination

When the above conditions prevent the deletion of a redundant noun (phrase), then the transformation retains the redundant noun (phrase) and marks it as determinate—that is, it attaches the prepositive definite article to the head noun, and, if it is a phrase, to any of its modifying substantives (nouns or adjectives). This is expressed formally as:

\[
S(N^r) \rightarrow S(N^r(\text{determinate}))
\]

This latter option explains nearly all instances of the definite article in Hebrew discourse.

So he lifted his eyes and looked, and behold, three men were standing by him (Gen. 18:2)

Then the men rose from there and looked toward Sodom, a

Of the 3,618 common nouns that occur in the Hebrew Bible, with 105,688 instances, 2,118 never have a definite article. It is true that those nouns that occur very infrequently may never have been in a context where they could have become determinate. But one would intuitively suppose that those occurring relatively frequent are likely to be determinate by nature. To test that hypothesis, Table 19.1 lists the frequency distribution of common nouns that never have a definite article, and Table 19.2 lists such nouns that occur more than 100 times. It is evident that those words have no obvious reason to be regarded as naturally determinate, so the conclusion is that such words had no occasion to be determinate in the literature of the Hebrew Bible.

---

28 Of course, proper nouns do not need the definite article; they are determinate by nature.
Table 19.1
Frequency of Nouns Never with a Definite Article

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Num. of Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 to 10</td>
<td>1,913</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 50</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 200</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>2,118</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, 1,499 common nouns have instances both with the definite article and instances without, as expected; but 283 always have the definite article. Regarding this latter group, they occur rather infrequently and appear to be technical terms. Table 19.3 lists the frequency distribution of these nouns, and Table 19.4 lists the words that occur more than four times.

Table 19.2
Most Frequent Nouns Never with Definite Article

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אחות</td>
<td>sister</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נכרש</td>
<td>common-land</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פְּרִי</td>
<td>fruit</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בַד</td>
<td>part</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שפָה</td>
<td>lip</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אוזן</td>
<td>ear</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נואס</td>
<td>utterance</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אח</td>
<td>brother</td>
<td>622</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 19.3
Frequency of Nouns Always with Definite Article

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Num. of words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 19.4
Words Occurring More Than Four Times

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>אַלְׁיָה</td>
<td>fat tail of sheep</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>סֹהַר</td>
<td>prison</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>עֲזָרָה</td>
<td>temple court</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>רֹאֶה</td>
<td>seer</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Of the 2,617 proper nouns that occur in the Hebrew Bible, with 33,146 instances, 2,471 never have a definite article, as expected. However, 75 proper noun always have a definite article, and 71 sometimes have the definite article and sometimes not. Table 19.5 lists the frequency distribution of the proper nouns always with a definite article; they occur quite infrequently. Table 19.6 lists those occurring more than 3 times.

Table 19.5
Frequency of Proper Nouns Always with Definite Article

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Num. of Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 3</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 19.6
Most Frequent Proper Nouns Always with Definite Article

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>רָפָה</td>
<td>Rapha</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>אֲגָגִי</td>
<td>Agagite</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>שִׁטִים</td>
<td>Shittim</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>גָּדִי</td>
<td>Gadite</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מַכְפֵלָה</td>
<td>Machpelah</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>פִסְגָה</td>
<td>Pisgah</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Regarding the 71 proper nouns that sometimes have a definite article, Table 19.7 lists the frequency distribution of these proper nouns, some of which occur quite frequently. Table 19.8 lists occurring more than 50 times. Of the 233 Gentilic nouns, with 1,825 instances, 40 never have a definite article, 41 sometimes have a definite article and sometimes not, as expected; and 152 always have a definite article.

### Table 19.7
Frequency of Proper Nouns Sometimes with Definite Article

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Num. of Words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 to 10</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 50</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 to 100</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 200</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 19.5 The Substitution Transformation

When a text contains redundant information for which deletion would result in ambiguity or loss of information, then the redundancy may still be reduced by providing a less redundant substitute. The most common substitutes are the pronouns. However, languages provide various other substitutes as well. This was discussed in Chapter 10 on pronouns. The substitution transformation provides this function for Hebrew. It is expressed formally as:

\[(6) \ S(X^r) \rightarrow S(X^s)\]

where \(X^r\) is the redundant constituent(s) in a sentence \(S\), and \(X^s\) is the appropriate substitute(s) for \(X^r\), that is, \(X^s\) replaces \(X^r\) in \(S\).

#### 19.5.1 Pronoun Substitution

Pronoun substitution may take place when a noun or noun phrase is repeated in a text, if the referent of the noun or phrase is the same as that of the previous occurrence, and if deletion would not cause ambiguity or incompleteness. It should not take place if an intervening occurrence of the noun or phrase has a different referent. The pronoun substitution transformation functions in the following context:

\[\ldots + N_1 + \ldots + N_1 + \ldots \rightarrow \ldots + N_1 + \ldots + R_1 + \ldots\]

---

29 Gen. 30:11.
where \( R_1 \) is a pronoun that agrees with \( N_1 \) in number, gender, and person, and that has the case of \( N_1 \) at the place of substitution. Substitution does not take place in those places where \( N_1 \) is marked “emphatic.” The following example illustrates pronoun substitution. The first passage has the redundant constituents in place, but the ones that experience substitution are enclosed with braces “{ }” and the ones that experience deletion are enclosed with brackets “[ ].” The passage then is repeated as it appears in the text with deletion and substitution completed.

*Example where \( X \) is the common subject:* the result is a compound predicate.

\[
\text{כָּל כָּלָשָׁר (גְּנָסִירָה)} \quad \text{מָחָת נְשָׁתָה שֶׁרֶבֶּה הֵמָּה}
\]

\[
	ext{כָּל הָאָשָׁר (גְּנָסִירָה)} \quad \text{נָחָת זֶרֶבֶּה שֶׁל}
\]

\[
	ext{סְלַעְיָה שֶׁרֶבֶּה זֶרֶבֶּה הֵמָּה}
\]

\[
	ext{כָּל הָאָשָׁר (גְּנָסִירָה)} \quad \text{עַד שֶׁלָּה הֵמָּה}
\]

\[
\rightarrow \quad \text{כָּל אַשָּׁר (גְּנָסִירָה)} \quad \text{מָחָת נְשָׁתָה}
\]

Thus the young woman went to the king, and whatever [the young woman] desired was given to [the young woman] to go with [the young woman] from the women’s quarters to the king’s palace.

In the evening [the young woman] went, and in the morning [the young woman] returned to the second house of the women, to the custody of Shaashgaz, the king’s eunuch who kept the concubines. [The young woman] would not go in to the king again unless the king delighted in [the young woman] and [the young woman] was called by name. →

Thus the young woman went to the king, and whatever she\(^{30} \) desired was given to go with her from the women’s quarters to the king’s palace.

\(^{30}\) Note, the blue pronouns were restorations of elided nouns in Hebrew.
In the evening *she* went,  
and in the morning *she* returned to the second house of the women,  
to the custody of Shaashgaz, the king’s eunuch who kept the concubines.  
*She* would not go in to the king again  
unless the king delighted in *her* and *she* was called by name. (Est. 2:13-14)

In this example, the phrase “young woman” is redundant. At times it is deleted in Hebrew, and at times a pronoun is substituted in its place. Note that when the phrase is the subject of the sentence, the pronoun is in its nominative form; and when it is the object of a preposition, it is in its genitive form, that is, it is suffixed to the preposition.

Note also that the words *king* and *women* are redundant but are not deleted or replaced by pronouns. In the case of the word *king*, pronoun substitution could have taken place; but the phrase *his palace* would be somewhat more ambiguous than the phrase *the king’s palace*. In the second instance of the redundant word *king*, the word is probably retained for clarity or emphasis. In the case of the word *women*, the word is part of a technical expression “house of the women” which refers to a harem, and so should not undergo substitution. Also the word refers to different women, and so has a different referent.

When the substitute pronoun is a genitive, the object of a preposition, it is attached to the preposition as a suffix; and when the prepositional pronoun phrase is a complement of a verb, it is usually moved immediately after its associate verb with a linking conjunctive accent on the verb.\(^{31}\)

When the genitive pronoun is governed by a construct noun, it is attached to the noun as a suffix.\(^{31}\)

When the pronoun is accusative, governed by the direct object marker (־ן) it is attached to the marker as a suffix, forming an accusative pronoun;\(^ {32}\) in which case the pronoun is usually moved immediately after its associated verb with a linking conjunctive accent.\(^ {33}\) On the other hand, for emphasis, the accusative pronoun is sometimes placed before its corresponding verb with a linking conjunctive accent.\(^ {34}\) When the accusative pronoun stands in place of an unmarked direct object of a verb it is attached to the verb as a suffix.\(^ {35}\)

---

\(^{31}\) This occurs 6,761 times with a conjunctive accent and 707 times with a near disjunctive accent; of the 37 times a prepositional pronoun follows a verb with a remote disjunctive accent it is not grammatically related to the verb or it is a part of a compound prepositional phrase (see Chapter 22).

\(^{32}\) This occurs 1,712 times.

\(^{33}\) This occurs 1,352 times with a conjunctive accent and 115 times with a near disjunctive accent (see Chapter 22); exceptions occur when the subject is granted position emphasis.

\(^{34}\) This occurs 55 times with a conjunctive accent and 29 times with a near disjunctive accent.

\(^{35}\) This occurs 7,214 times: 4,791 times to a finite verb, 940 times to a participle, and 1,483 times to an infinitive construct; although, some suffixes on an infinitive may be its subject.
When the substitute pronoun is the nominative subject of a verb, it usually is elided with its identity retained only in the inflection of the verb.\(^{36}\) The pronoun is retained only where emphasis is marked. In such cases, the pronoun occurs in its default slot immediately before the verb\(^{37}\) unless the verb has been granted first position prominence, in which case the pronoun usually follows immediately after the verb.\(^{38}\)

When the pronoun would follow \(יֵשׁ\), it is always attached as a suffix.\(^{39}\) The same is true when it follows the negative particle \(יאֶֹ֙נְּה\),\(^{40}\)

\[יֵשׁ \text{ נֵגְזוּל בְּבִית הָהָה מַמְנוּ} \]

There is no one greater in this house than I (Gen. 39:9)

with one exception:

\[יאֶֹ֙נְּה \text{ פֶּשֶּׂטִים בְּנָרֶּנְוּ} \]

None of us removed our clothing (Neh. 4:17)

The same is true when it follows the interjection \(הִנֵּה\),\(^{41}\)

\[הִנֵּה \text{ הָרֶָ֖ה וְׁיֹלִַ֣דְׁתְׁ בֵָ֑ן וְׁקָרָָּ֤את שְׁמוֹֹ֙ יִשְׁמָעֵֵּ֔אל} \]

"Behold, you are with child, and you shall bear a son. You shall call his name Ishmael, (Gen. 16:11)

with three exceptions:

\[הֵנֵּֽי אֲנִ֜י מֵבִָּ֤יא עֲלֵיכֶֹ֙ם חֵֶּ֔רֶב וְׁאִבַדְׁתִ֥י בָמָּֽוֹתֵיכֶָּֽם׃ \]

Indeed I, even I, will bring a sword against you, and I will destroy your high places. (Ezek. 6:3)

The same is true when it follows the interjection \(עֹד\).\(^{42}\)

---

\(^{36}\) Of the 56,809 instances of a finite verb, only 4,939 have a corresponding subject pronoun, approximately 500 of which are demonstratives, and a good number of them function as a substitute for the copulative.

\(^{37}\) This occurs 1,614 times; 865 times before a finite verb, 709 times before a participle, and 40 times before an imperative.

\(^{38}\) This occurs 256 times; 113 times after a finite verb, 121 times after a participle, and 22 times after an imperative.

\(^{39}\) Gen. 24:42; 24:49; 43:4; Deut. 13:4; 29:14; Judg. 6:36; 1 Sam. 14:39; 23:23; Est. 3:8.

\(^{40}\) This occurs 101 times with one exception (Neh. 4:17) where negation applies to the pronoun instead of the participle.

\(^{41}\) This occurs 151 times, with 3 exceptions (Ezek. 6:3; 34:11, 20) where the pronoun is emphatic.

\(^{42}\) This occurs 39 times. With four exceptions (2 Sam. 14:32; Isa. 65:24; Dan. 9:20, 21)
19.5.2 General Substitution

In situations where pronoun substitution is not appropriate, other substitutions may take place. The general substitution transformation has the following form:

\[ \ldots + X_1 + \ldots + X_1 + \ldots \rightarrow \ldots + X_1 + \ldots + X^s + \ldots \]

where \( X = \{N, A, D, V\} \), \( X_1 \) represents redundant occurrences of the same word or phrase, and \( X^s \) represents a suitable substitute for \( X_1 \). The substitute may be a shortened form of \( X \), or a synonym of \( X \), or some other accepted substitute. Wherever substitution takes place, the substitute must exhibit grammatical concord with the word or phrase it replaces.\(^{43}\) Substitution does not take place when the given instance of \( X \) is marked “emphatic.”

**Examples where** \( X = N \):

*Substitute a noun for a noun phrase:*

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{“The sons of Eshrat and Arashathar sit on thrones; the princes, the lords, the princes of the nations;}
\text{and the kings of the land.”} \\
\text{לֹא אֵין שְׁבִיתֵי אֱשָׁר אֲבָרְשָׁר | בְּכָלָּיָּא לֹהַ | לָּוָּא אֲלַלְקָיָּא}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\text{“The sons of Eshrat and Arashathar sit on thrones; the princes, the lords, the princes of the nations;}
\text{and the kings of the land.”} \\
\text{לֹא אֵין שְׁבִיתֵי אֱשָׁר אֲבָרְשָׁר | בְּכָלָּיָּא לֹהַ | לָּוָּא אֲלַלְקָיָּא}
\]

\[
\text{“The sons of Eshrat and Arashathar sit on thrones; the princes, the lords, the princes of the nations;}
\text{and the kings of the land.”} \\
\text{לֹא אֵין שְׁבִיתֵי אֱשָׁר אֲבָרְשָׁר | בְּכָלָּיָּא לֹהַ | לָּוָּא אֲלַלְקָיָּא}
\]

\[
\text{“The sons of Eshrat and Arashathar sit on thrones; the princes, the lords, the princes of the nations;}
\text{and the kings of the land.”} \\
\text{לֹא אֵין שְׁבִיתֵי אֱשָׁר אֲבָרְשָׁר | בְּכָלָּיָּא לֹהַ | לָּוָּא אֲלַלְקָיָּא}
\]

---

\(^{43}\) This includes number, gender, person, case, and determination for nouns; number, gender, and determination for adjectives; spatial or temporal perspective for adverbs; and all the verbal attributes for verbs and predicates.
Now when the turn came for Esther the daughter of Abihail the uncle of Mordecai, who had taken her as his daughter, to go in to the king, [Esther the daughter of Abihail the uncle of Mordecai, who had taken her as his daughter] requested nothing but what Hegai the king’s eunuch, the custodian of the women, advised. And {Esther the daughter of Abihail the uncle of Mordecai, who had taken her as his daughter} obtained favor in the sight of all who saw her.

In this example, the noun phrase “Esther the daughter of Abihail the uncle of Mordecai, who had taken her as his daughter” is deleted once, and is replaced by its condensed form “Esther” in the second instance. The shorter substitute usually consists of the significant principal words of the longer phrase.

Examples where \( X_i = N \) and \( X^S = A \):

An adjective substitutes for the noun phrase of which it is a part:

\[ \text{כראיה גת ונעך} \rightarrow \text{כראיה} \]

Call out now; Is there anyone who will answer you?
And to which of the holy \{ angels \} will you turn? →

Call out now; Is there anyone who will answer you?
And to which of the holy ones will you turn? (Job 5:1)

\[ \text{עשיה ידוולת} \rightarrow \text{עשיה ידוולת} \]

He does great \{ deeds \}, and unsearchable, Marvelous \{ deeds \} without number. →

He does great things, and unsearchable, Marvelous things without number. (Job 5:9)

In these examples, the Hebrew text permits an adjective to stand as a substitute in cases like this; but English requires a noun of some sort to be supplied. The word “one” or “thing” is often used, but a better choice frequently could be made in light of the context.

Examples where \( X = D \):

An adverb substitutes for an adverb phrase:
Now I gathered them by the river that flows to Ahava, and we camped \( \text{by the river that flows to Ahava} \) three days. And I looked among the people and the priests, and found none of the sons of Levi \( \text{by the river that flows to Ahava} \). →

Now I gathered them by the river that flows to Ahava, and we camped \( \text{there} \) three days. And I looked among the people and the priests, and found none of the sons of Levi \( \text{there} \). (Ezr. 8:15)

In this example, the adverb \( \text{there} \) substitutes for two different adverb phrases. The adverb agrees with the remote perspective of the place of reference with respect to the narrator.

For indeed I was stolen away from the land of the Hebrews; and also I have done nothing \( \text{in the land of Egypt} \) that they should put me into the dungeon. →

For indeed I was stolen away from the land of the Hebrews; and also I have done nothing \( \text{here} \) that they should put me into the dungeon. (Gen. 40:15)

In this example the adverb \( \text{here} \) substitutes for the adverb phrase \( \text{in the land of Egypt} \). The adverb agrees with the near perspective of the place reference with respect to the speaker (Joseph).

This completes the description of the text level transformations. These transformations put the text in its final form—the form that is found in the actual document the author produced. The order in which transformations are performed is critical for a mechanical approach to the generation of discourse. However, a human author has the overall picture of his composition in mind as he creates his work. Many of the tasks defined by transformations are done automatically and
intuitively in the mind of the author as he produces his literature. Still, an understanding of how transformations work, and what their function is in language, provides an author or an expositor with helpful insight for his task.

19.6 Summary

Coordination Transformations

(1) \([S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + C^c + S_j\)

Timeless Coordination

(1a) \([S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + C^c + S_j\)

Simultaneous Coordination

(1b) \([S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + W + [S_j(V\text{-emph})]\)

Sequential Coordination

(1c) \([S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + W^c + [S_j(V\text{-consec})]\)

Disjunctive Coordination

(1d) \([S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + C^c + S_j\)

or \(C^c + S_i + C^c + S_j\)

Adversative Coordination

(1e) \([S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + C^c + S_j\)

Comparative Coordination

(1f) \([S^d, S^i] \rightarrow S^i + C^s + S^d\)

or \(C^s_b + S^i + C^s + S^d_a\)

Juxtaposition

(1g) \([S_i, S_j] \rightarrow S_i + \phi + S_j\)

The Subordination Transformations

(2) \([S^d, S^i] \rightarrow S^i + C^s + S^d\)

or \(C^s_b + S^i + C^s + S^d_a\)

Temporal

Result-Consequence

Reason-Result/Cause-Consequence

Purpose-Result

Manner-Means

Conditionals

Subordinate Infinitive Sentence
(2a) \([S^d, S^i] \to S^i + P^v + [S^d(V\text{-inf})]\)

**The Sentence Emphasis Transformation**

(4) \([S_i, S_j] \to [S_j, S_i]\)

**The Deletion Transformation**

(5) \(S(X^r) \to S(-X^r)\)

**The Substitution Transformation**

(6) \(S(X^r) \to S(X^s)\)

Pronoun Substitution

General Substitution
CHAPTER 20
The Syntax of Hebrew Discourse

The surface structure of Hebrew discourse is mapped as a sequence of sentences linked together by conjunctions. But the order of the sentences and the type of conjunctive links are determined by the principles of semantic affinities as they relate to the subject matter of the context and what is said about it. These principles bring meaning and coherence to a text and are the subject matter of Chapter 21.

This chapter discusses the different types of sentences as they occur in various categories of discourse in the Hebrew Bible.¹ The term discourse here refers to a complete literary unit such as a story or pericope. A discourse consists of a sequence of one or more paragraphs each of which serves a particular role in the overall structure of the literary unit under discussion, depending on the type and function of the given discourse. A discourse may be primarily (1) historical narrative, declaring what happened; (2) description of details, declaring the way things were or are; (3) descriptive lists, (4) procedural, declaring how to do something; (5) instructional, declaring how things are expected to be; (6) juridical, declaring how things must be; (7) predictive prose, declaring how things will be; (8) expository prose, explaining the meaning or intent of something, (9) expository poetry, and (10) predictive poetry. In this chapter, these ten categories are referred as literary types.

Although a discourse may be primarily of one particular literary type, it usually has segments of other types dispersed throughout its structure. For example, the narration of a historical account usually has an initial descriptive segment that sets the time frame of reference, introduces the participants, and otherwise sets the stage; interspersed throughout the narrative may be segments that provide background information of various literary types; and at the end there is usually a segment that provides closure. Thus a discourse usually is composed of segments of various literary types.

With respect to literary structure, the term *narrative* refers to a complete story that is relatively independent of what precedes or follows in the broader context. The term *event* refers to the largest constituent part of a narrative, and the term *episode* to refers to the largest constituent part of an event. Thus a narrative consists of one or more events consisting of one or more episodes.

### 20.1 The Syntactic Structure of Hebrew Discourse

On the surface of the page, by necessity, the structure of a written text appears as a one-dimensional string of sentences linked together by conjunctions\(^2\) such as

\[
S_1 + C^c + S_2 + C^c + S_3 + C^c + S_4 + C^c + S_5 + C^c + S_6 + C^c + S_7 + C^c + S_8 + \ldots S_n
\]

But that diagram is misleading because some of the sentences will likely be independent and some dependent. So a better diagram would be a two-dimensional one such as

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
S_1 & + & C^c & + & S_3 & + & C^c & + & S_5 & + & C^c & + & S_7 & + & C^c & + & S_9 & + & \ldots & S_n \\
\end{array}
\]

where the horizontal dimension displays the independent sentences\(^3\) linked by coordinating conjunctions (C\(^c\)) and the vertical dimension displays the dependent sentences linked to their associated independent sentences by the appropriate subordinating conjunction (C\(^s\)). In this diagram the top horizontal row represents the backbone (or story line) of the discourse and the vertical represents the ribs (or supporting information).

Obviously, not every independent sentence will have a dependent one. But on the other hand, a subordinating conjunction may link to a cluster of sentences rather than to just one. So an even better diagram would be

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
S_1 & + & C^c & + & S_3 & + & C^c & + & S_6 & + & C^c & + & S_7 & + & C^c & + & S_10 & + & \ldots & S_n \\
S_2 & & S_4 & & C^c & + & S_5 & & S_8 & & C^c & + & S_9 & & | & & | & & | & & | & & | \\
\end{array}
\]

\(^2\) In this discussion, it is understood that elided conjunctions, *asyndeton*, have been restored.

\(^3\) Independent sentences contribute to the main flow of thought in a narrative whereas dependent sentences provide auxiliary information of some sort, being attached to an independent sentence by means of a conjunction.
where sentences $S_4$ and $S_5$ form a coordinate cluster that is dependent on $S_3$, and $S_8$ and $S_9$ form a coordinate cluster that is dependent on $S_7$.

But the picture is even more complicated, because an independent sentence in a dependent cluster may itself have a dependent sentence as in the following diagram:

$$
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
S_1 & + & C^c & + & S_3 & + & C^c & + & S_6 & + & C^c & + & S_7 & + & C^c & + & \ldots & S_n \\
| & & C^s & & | & & C^s & & | & & C^s & & | & & C^s & & | & & \\
S_2 & & S_4 & + & C^c & + & S_5 & & | & & S_8 & + & C^c & + & S_9 & & | & & S_{10} & \\
\end{array}
$$

So it is possible for a discourse to have multiple depths of dependency. This is a detail that an expositor must take into consideration.

Unfortunately, a horizontal diagram is not conducive for mapping the hierarchic levels of sentence dependency for Hebrew discourse. A vertical map works much better. Let each sentence appear on a separate line with the conjunctions on separate lines between them. Let the extreme right margin mark the hierarchy level of the story line, and let successive indentations mark the succeeding levels of dependency as in the following illustration:

(1) Then ...........................................וַ

(12) and .......................................................... וַ֖הָלֵּךְ לְפָנֵֵ֤י פַרְעֹ֨ה
(13) cast it before Pharaoh, ........................................ וַ֖לְּיִתְנֵּ֣י
(14) [and] .......................................................... [וְ]
(15) let it become a serpent.” ................................ יְהִֵ֥י לְׁתַנִָּֽין׃

(Exod. 7:8-9)

This passage is the first cluster of sentences of the pericope of Moses’ miraculous rod (Exod. 7:8-13). The pericope is initiated by Waw consecutive † (1). It contains a quotation (lines 4-15), introduced by speech introducing conjunction לֵאמָֹּֽר (3), consisting of a compound conditional expression. The protasis (lines 5-7) is introduced by conditional conjunction כִי (4), and the apodosis (lines 9-15) is introduced by Waw conjunctive † (8). The apodosis also contains a quotation (lines 11-15) which is juxtaposed without a conjunction. 4

The quotation in the apodosis consists of three coordinate commands (lines 11-15). The following lines complete the pericope.

(16) So.......................................................... וַ֖יָּֽבוֹא מֹשֶָּ֤ה וְׁאַהֲרֹןֹ֙ אֶל־פַרְעֵֹ֔ה
(17) Moses and Aaron went in to Pharaoh, .......................................................... וַ֖לְּיִתְנֵּ֣י
(18) and .......................................................... וַ֖יַּשְׁלֵּ֣א הַאֲהֵּרֹ֕ן אֶת־מַטֵּ֣הוּ לִפְׁנֵֵ֥י פַרְעָֹ֛ה וְׁלִפְׁנֵֵ֥י עֲבָדֶָ֖יו
(19) they did so, .......................................................... כֵאֲשֶֶ֖ר
(20) just as .......................................................... יִַעַשְׁוּ כֵֵ֔ן
(21) the LORD commanded. .......................................................... כַאֲשֶֶ֖ר
(22) And .......................................................... וַ֖ךְ יַשְׁלֵּ֣א אֲהַ֣רְו אֶת־מַטֵּ֣הוּ לִפְׁנֵֵ֥י פַרְעָֹ֛ה וְׁלִפְׁנֵֵ֥י עֲבָדֶָ֖יו
(23) Aaron cast down his rod before Pharaoh and before his servants,
(24) and .......................................................... וַ֖יְּהִֵ֥י לְׁתַנִָּֽין׃
(25) it became a serpent .......................................................... יִַהֲלֹּם וְׁאַהֲרֹן אֶת־מַטֵּ֣הוּ לִפְׁנֵֵ֥י פַרְעֹ֨ה
(26) 11But .......................................................... יַָּֽעֲשֹ֙ו גַּם־הֵ֜ם חַרְׁטֻמֵֵ֥י מִצְרַָ֛יִם בְׁלַהֲטֵיהֶֶ֖ם כֵָּֽן׃
(27) Pharaoh also called the wise men and the sorcerers; .................................................. יַָּֽעֲשֹ֙ו גַּם־הֵ֜ם חַרְׁטֻמֵֵ֥י מִצְרַָ֛יִם בְׁלַהֲטֵיהֶֶ֖ם כֵָּֽן׃
(28) so .......................................................... יַָּֽעֲשֹ֙ו גַּם־הֵ֜ם חַרְׁטֻמֵֵ֥י מִצְרַָ֛יִם בְׁלַהֲטֵיהֶֶ֖ם כֵָּֽן׃
(29) the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner ............................................ וַ֖יַּשְׁלֵּ֣א אֲהַ֣רְו אֶת־מַטֵּ֣הוּ לִפְׁנֵֵ֥י פַרְעֹ֨ה וְׁלִפְׁנֵֵ֥י עֲבָדֶָ֖יו
(30) 12 For .......................................................... יַָּֽעֲשֹ֙ו גַּם־הֵ֜ם חַרְׁטֻמֵֵ֥י מִצְרַָ֛יִם בְׁלַהֲטֵיהֶֶ֖ם כֵָּֽן׃

4 The elided but understood conjunctions (10) and (14) are restored in brackets.
(31) every man threw down his rod, .................................................................

(32) and ................................................................. 1

(33) they became serpents. ................................................................................ 1

(34) But .................................................................

(35) Aaron's rod swallowed up their rods..............................................................

(36) And ........................................................................................................... 13

(37) Pharaoh's heart grew hard, .........................................................................

(38) and ........................................................................................................... 1

(39) he did not heed them, ................................................................................

(40) just as .........................................................................................................

(41) the LORD had said. .....................................................................................

(Exod. 7:10-13)

This passage is the rest of the pericope of Moses’ miraculous rod. The story line is resumed by Waw consecutive † (16) from its initiation at line 1, and carried on by successive Waw consecutives (lines 18, 22, 24, 26, 28, 30, 32, 34, 36, 385), except for two interruptions (20, 40) for dependent sentences (21, 41). This passage has two levels of dependency.

20.2 Distribution of Verbal Forms

The distribution of the various verb forms throughout the Biblical text provides some broad indicators of their use in different literary types. Table 20.1 provides the distribution of all verbals in the Hebrew Bible. Of interest is the fact that verbal density6 is significantly higher in the books of poetry than it is in the prose books. This is probably explained by the short, terse verses in the books of poetry, as indicated by the average number of verbals per verse and the average number of words per verse. Table 20.2 provides the distribution of verbals based on aspectual type.

5 A negated verb does not convert to the imperfect form in the Waw-consecutive environment, and the Waw is not vocalized with pathach followed by doubling.

6 Verbal density is the ratio of total verbals to the total number of words.
Chapter 20

The Syntax of Sentences in Discourse

Table 20.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distribution of Verbals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prose section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poetry section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entire OT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pentateuch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical Books(^7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophetical Books(^8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Writings(^9)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

While the entire Hebrew Bible has an average of 3.0 verbals per verse, the books of poetry have an average of less than two verbals per verse. On the other hand, the Writings (Kethubim) have the lowest verbal density.

Of interest is the fact that in the prose books the verbs with \textit{Waw} consecutive are 41.9 percent\(^{10}\) of the total finite verbs, whereas in the books of poetry those with \textit{Waw} consecutive are only 8.6 percent.\(^{11}\) Table 20.2 continues with the distribution of verbals in the individual books.

---

\(^7\) Joshua through Kings, but not Ruth.

\(^8\) Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Hosea through Malachi.

\(^9\) Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ruth, Song of Solomon, Ecclesiastes, Lamentations, Esther, Daniel, Ezra, Nehemiah, Chronicles.

\(^{10}\) The finite verbs include the perfect, imperfect, and imperative forms, together with those with \textit{Waw} consecutive. In the prose books, the total number of finite verbs is 48,902 and the number of those with \textit{Waw} consecutive is 20,489.

\(^{11}\) In the books of poetry, the total number of finite verbs is 7,890, and the number of those with \textit{Waw} consecutive is 682.
### Table 20.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prose</strong></td>
<td>12,966</td>
<td>12,079</td>
<td>3,368</td>
<td>6,171</td>
<td>822</td>
<td>7,068</td>
<td>937</td>
<td>14,494</td>
<td>5,995</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Poetry</strong></td>
<td>2,118</td>
<td>4,136</td>
<td>954</td>
<td>507</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>1,599</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>539</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pentateuch</strong></td>
<td>2,586</td>
<td>4,105</td>
<td>786</td>
<td>1,752</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>1,507</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>4,191</td>
<td>2,547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Historical</strong></td>
<td>3,402</td>
<td>1,952</td>
<td>941</td>
<td>1,646</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>1,451</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>6,398</td>
<td>853</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prophetical</strong></td>
<td>4,240</td>
<td>4,612</td>
<td>1,239</td>
<td>1,528</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>2,605</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>1,578</td>
<td>2,334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Writings</strong></td>
<td>4,856</td>
<td>5,546</td>
<td>1,356</td>
<td>1,752</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>2,605</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>2,866</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Entire OT</strong></td>
<td>15,084</td>
<td>16,215</td>
<td>4,322</td>
<td>6,678</td>
<td>873</td>
<td>8,667</td>
<td>1,045</td>
<td>15,033</td>
<td>6,138</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 20.2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Genesis</strong></td>
<td>898</td>
<td>685</td>
<td>299</td>
<td>437</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>334</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>2,107</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Exodus</strong></td>
<td>517</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>197</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>309</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>889</td>
<td>565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Leviticus</strong></td>
<td>196</td>
<td>895</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Numbers</strong></td>
<td>430</td>
<td>682</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>316</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>752</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deuteronomy</strong></td>
<td>545</td>
<td>1,023</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>453</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>392</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>254</td>
<td>631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pentateuch</strong></td>
<td>2,586</td>
<td>4,105</td>
<td>786</td>
<td>1,752</td>
<td>242</td>
<td>1,507</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>4,191</td>
<td>2,547</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 12

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Joshua</strong></td>
<td>445</td>
<td>198</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>214</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>597</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Judges</strong></td>
<td>459</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>226</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>1,142</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Samuel</strong></td>
<td>639</td>
<td>463</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>331</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1,327</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Samuel</strong></td>
<td>516</td>
<td>375</td>
<td>136</td>
<td>281</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>1,065</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>1 Kings</strong></td>
<td>669</td>
<td>360</td>
<td>166</td>
<td>328</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>1,047</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2 Kings</strong></td>
<td>674</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>184</td>
<td>266</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>254</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>1,220</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Historical</strong></td>
<td>3,402</td>
<td>1,952</td>
<td>941</td>
<td>1,646</td>
<td>181</td>
<td>1,451</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>6,398</td>
<td>853</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

12 The number in the “Perfect” column includes 1,555 instances where the verb is sentence-initial after a conjunction, and 751 instances where the negated verb is initial after a conjunction. The number in the “Imperfect” column includes 2,536 instances where the verb is sentence-initial after a conjunction, and 1,132 instances where the negated verb is initial after a conjunction. This amounts to 5,974 instances out of 31,299, or 19.1 percent. Some of these sentence-initial verbs are initial because the subject of the sentence has been elided, and others because the verb was granted rhetorical prominence. This evidence supports the assumption of this work that the natural, unmodified order of Hebrew sentences is subject-verb-object. The evidence from the sentence-initial Waw consecutive verbs must be excluded from the argument because they are sentence-initial by necessity, being rule driven.

13 The data for perfect with Waw consecutive come from the WTS Morf-3.5 file. In the Morf-4.4 file, the codes for perfect with Waw consecutive have been removed. Evidently, the editors have concluded that identifying perfect with Waw consecutive is too subjective and have left that decision to the users. For the purposes of this statistical study, the decisions of the Morf-3.5 editors are accepted as sufficiently reliable. The numbers in the “Perfect” column have been modified to accommodate the numbers in “Perfect WC” column.
Chapter 20  
The Syntax of Sentences in Discourse  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Jeremiah</th>
<th>1,444</th>
<th>1,139</th>
<th>404</th>
<th>501</th>
<th>137</th>
<th>759</th>
<th>57</th>
<th>486</th>
<th>541</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>931</td>
<td>877</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>471</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>516</td>
<td>801</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joel</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obadiah</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jonah</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>84</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micah</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>146</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nahum</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haggai</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>116</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophetical</td>
<td>4,242</td>
<td>4,612</td>
<td>1,239</td>
<td>1,528</td>
<td>315</td>
<td>2,605</td>
<td>244</td>
<td>1,578</td>
<td>2,334</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 20.2 (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>1,409</td>
<td>2,088</td>
<td>706</td>
<td>288</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>886</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>332</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>550</td>
<td>1,242</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>195</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>209</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>538</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruth</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>189</td>
<td>222</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>118</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamentations</td>
<td>262</td>
<td>83</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther</td>
<td>158</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>445</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>329</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezra</td>
<td>164</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>99</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>89</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nehemiah</td>
<td>240</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>186</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>267</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 Chronicles</td>
<td>395</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>178</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>470</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Chronicles</td>
<td>658</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>428</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>324</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>985</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writings</td>
<td>4,856</td>
<td>5,546</td>
<td>1,356</td>
<td>1,752</td>
<td>135</td>
<td>3,104</td>
<td>302</td>
<td>2,866</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 20.3 and Graph 20.1 display the distribution of finite verbs\(^{14}\) by verse for the entire Hebrew Bible, and Table 20.4 and Graph 20.2 display the distribution of finite verbs by verse for the books of poetry.

---

\(^{14}\) Finite verbs consist of perfects, imperfects, and imperatives here.
Table 20.3
Distribution of the Number of Finite Verbs per Verse
For the Entire Hebrew Bible

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Finite Verbs per Verse</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>&gt;9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Verses</td>
<td>2,777</td>
<td>4,240</td>
<td>6,250</td>
<td>4,428</td>
<td>2,825</td>
<td>1,450</td>
<td>759</td>
<td>305</td>
<td>124</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 20.4
Distribution of the Number of Finite Verbs per Verse
For the Books of Poetry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Finite Verbs per Verse</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>&gt;9</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of Verses</td>
<td>613</td>
<td>1095</td>
<td>1815</td>
<td>659</td>
<td>239</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 20.5 expands on the details of the verses in the entire Hebrew Bible with no finite verbs. About 64% of the verses contain no verbals of any kind, and 36% contain only infinitives or participles or both.

Graph 20.1
For Entire Hebrew Bible

---


16 Gen. 24:14; Exod. 32:1; Judg. 7:4; 9:48; Ruth 4:4; 1 Sam. 31:4; 2 Sam. 12:18, 20; 13:5; 1 Kgs. 2:42; 11:38; 20:39; 2 Kgs. 1:6; 7:4; 7:8; 2 Chr. 25:16; 28:15; Job 1:5; Jer. 4:5; 50:2; 51:34; Dan. 5:19.

17 Psa. 17:3; 35:15; 50:21; 93:1; 102:3; Prov. 6:3; 30:4, 9.

18 Psa. 71:20 (includes 2 Qeres); Prov. 23:35.
Table 20.5
For the Entire Hebrew Bible

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No Verbals</td>
<td>1,773</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitives Only</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles Only</td>
<td>683</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both Infinitives and Participles</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 20.6 expands on the details of the verses with no finite verbs in the books of poetry. About 21 percent of the verses contain no verbals of any kind, and 79 percent contain only infinitives or participles or both.

Table 20.6
For the Books of Poetry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Count</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>No Verbals</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitives Only</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles Only</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Both Infinitives and Participles</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 20.3 Types of Sentence Structure

Hebrew scholars generally agree that a given literary type is characterized by sentences of a particular syntactic structure, such structure being primarily dependent on the verb and its position within the sentence. These syntactic structures do not uniquely characterize a literary type,
but literary types tend to have more sentences of one syntactic structure than they do of the others.\footnote{While sentence syntactic structures tend to characterize literary types, conjunctions determine the syntactic structure of a discourse; see Chapter 21 for a discussion of the syntactic structure of discourse.}

For example, historical narrative tends to have an abundance of sentences with \textit{Waw} consecutive with imperfect—type (17) below. In this work, sentences are categorized hierarchically first according to the two basic types of sentences: (1) copulative sentences or (2) verbal sentences as defined in Chapter 12. Second, they are categorized according to the three aspect forms of the verbs (§ 5.6.5): (1) perfect, (2) imperfect, or durative (§ 5.6.5.3). Third, they are categorized according to position of the verb in the sentence: (1) initial, or (2) non-initial.\footnote{According to the assumptions discussed in § 12.2.1, the default order of sentence constituents is subject-verb-object (SVO). Thus, when the verb of a sentence is initial, it must have been granted first position prominence, or its subject has been elided.}

Accordingly, the sentence types are as follows:

\begin{itemize}
  \item[(1)] $\text{Cp}_0$—hyh = copulative, perfect, initial
  \item[(2)] $\text{Cp}_1$—X hyh = copulative, perfect, non-initial\footnote{In this sentence structure and the others, the \textit{X} stands for one or more non-verbal words or phrases. When enclosed in parentheses, \textit{X} is optional. \textit{X} does not include negatives and infinitives absolute, which are regarded as part of the verb phrase.}
  \item[(3)] $\text{Cp}_w$—w\textit{hyh} = copulative, perfect, \textit{Waw} consecutive
  \item[(4)] $\text{Ci}_0$—yhyh = copulative, imperfect, initial
  \item[(5)] $\text{Ci}_1$—X yhyh = copulative, imperfect, non-initial
  \item[(6)] $\text{Ci}_w$—wayyhyh = copulative, imperfect, \textit{Waw} consecutive
  \item[(7)] $\text{Cy}_0$—\textit{יֵש} = copulative, durative, initial (§ 4.3.7; 11.5.2)
  \item[(8)] $\text{Cy}_1$—X \textit{יֵש} = copulative, durative, non-initial
  \item[(9)] $\text{Cn}_0$—\textit{אֵין} = negative copulative, durative, initial (§ 11.5.2)
  \item[(10)] $\text{Cn}_1$—X \textit{אֵין} = negative copulative, durative, non-initial
  \item[(11)] $\text{Ve}$—X = verbless sentence
  \item[(12)] $\text{Vp}_0$—qt\textit{l} (X) = verbal, perfect, initial
  \item[(13)] $\text{Vp}_1$—X qt\textit{l} = verbal, perfect, non-initial
  \item[(14)] $\text{Vp}_w$—w\textit{qt\textit{l}} = verbal, perfect, \textit{Waw} consecutive
  \item[(15)] $\text{Vi}_0$—yqt\textit{l} (X) = verbal, imperfect, initial
  \item[(16)] $\text{Vi}_1$—X yqt\textit{l} = verbal, imperfect, non-initial
  \item[(17)] $\text{Vi}_w$—wayyqt\textit{l} = verbal, imperfect, \textit{Waw} consecutive
  \item[(18)] $\text{Vdp}_0$—hyh (X) qotel = verbal, durative, initial
\end{itemize}
Table 20.7 lists the frequency of each of these sentence types. In the statistics provided in this work, the beginning of a sentence is understood to be marked by a conjunction (excluding Waw consecutive except as specified above), a relative pronoun, an interjection, an interrogative particle, or the speech introducing conjunction בּוּ. When the starting point of a sentence is unmarked, it is assumed to be immediately following the highest ranking disjunctive accent between the verb of the unmarked sentence and the verb of the preceding sentence.22

Sentence types (1) through (10) are of the copulative type involving the verb יֵשָׁ or its substitutes יֵשָׁ and אֵין. Types (12) through (17) are verbal sentences involving verbs other than the copula. Types (18) through (31) are verbal sentences involving the durative aspect. Type (11) may be regarded as a verbless sentence in which the verb (of whatever type) has been elided and is expected to be understood by implication.

22 Obviously, if the first word of a verse is not a conjunction or one of the above markers, it is regarded as the start of a sentence.
Table 20.7
Frequency of Sentence Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>228</td>
<td>Cp1</td>
<td>404</td>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci0</td>
<td>260</td>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>519</td>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>1,015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cy0</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Cy1</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>386</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>132</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>7,993</td>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>6,238</td>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>4,898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>10,440</td>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>7,720</td>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>13,960</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vdp0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Vdp1</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>Vdpw</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vdi0</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Vdi1</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Vdiw</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vdy0</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>Vdy1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Ve23</td>
<td>22,054</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vdn0</td>
<td>156</td>
<td>Vdn1</td>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>1,550</td>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>1,314</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vdqc0</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>Vdqc1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count =</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>Total =</td>
<td>80,244</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

20.3.1 Sentence Type Cp0—hyh

Hyh—this sentence type has the perfect form of the copulative verb in the first position, either because the subject has been elided or the verb has been granted first position prominence. This type of a copulative sentence occurs relatively rarely in any of the literary types, functioning in the background to provide secondary information. It declares existence, class relationships, identity, and characteristics. It usually indicates relative past or present tense, but the contextual time frame of reference may be past, present, or future, depending on the time frame that has been established in the context. In the following examples and elsewhere the green color marks sentence division.

לָא־כִּימְנַשְׁא אֲחֵזָה אֲנָחָּם לְשֹׁבֶּת יִחְּדָּו בִּכְלָל לָשֵׁבֶּת יִחְּדָּו.
Now the land was not able to support them, that they might dwell together, for their possessions were so great that they could not dwell together. (Gen. 13:6)
Now within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and restore you to your place, and you will put Pharaoh's cup in his hand according to the former manner, when you were his butler. (Gen. 40:13)

"Turn back, my daughters, go--for I am too old to have a husband. If I should say I have hope, if I should have a husband tonight and should also bear sons, (Ruth 1:12)

Now a messenger came to David, saying, "The hearts of the men of Israel are with Absalom." (2 Sam. 15:13)

20.3.2 Sentence Type Cp1—X hyh

X hyh—this sentence type has the perfect form of the copulative verb in the non-initial position. This type of a copulative sentence occurs relatively rarely in any of the literary types, functioning in the background to provide secondary information. It declares existence, class relationships, identity, and characteristics. It usually indicates relative past or present tense, but the contextual time frame of reference may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context. The copulative (יִהְיֶה) is usually elided when the time frame of reference is already established.

(i) Past Time:

And the earth was formless and empty,
and darkness was on the surface of the deep. (Gen. 1:2)

And Adam called his wife's name Eve,
because she was the mother of all living. (Gen. 3:20)

(ii) Present Time:

And now, my daughter, do not fear.
All that you say I will do for you;
For all the gate of my people know

24 JM § 111i.

25 In the vertical displays that follow, indentation indicates the depth of subordination; the deeper the indentation, the deeper the level of subordination.

26 The verb יִהְיֶה is nearly always elided in present (current) tense contexts, so these sentences are actually of type (11) verbless.
That you are a virtuous woman (Ruth 3:11)

And it happened as he drew near to enter Egypt, that he said to Sarai his wife, “Please take note: I know that you are a good-looking woman.” (Gen. 12:11)

And Abram said to Lot:

“Please don’t let strife be between me and you, and between my herdsman and your herdsman, for we are brothers.” (Gen.13:8)

(iii) Future Time:

Thus says the LORD:

By this you shall know that I am the LORD.” (Exod. 7:17)

And bring your youngest brother to me, And I will know that you are not spies, but you are honest. (Gen. 42:34)

It will be that the Egyptians will see you, and they will say, “This is his wife.” Then they will kill me and keep you alive. (Gen. 12:12)

20.3.3 Sentence Type Cpw—wُحُيٌ

wُحُيٌ—this sentence type has the perfect form of the copulative verb in the first position with Waw consecutive. It occurs in all ten literary types, but relatively infrequently. It is used to set the time frame of reference for a sequence of impending events in the future. The time frame may be established by an adverbial complement of the copulative itself [i], or by a dependent sentence governed by a subordinating conjunction [ii], or by an infinitive construct sentence usually introduced by a preposition [iii].

(i) By an adverbial complement:

Now it shall come to pass in the latter days

That the mountain of the LORD's house shall be established

Option (iii) is really a transformation of (ii).

This example is taken from poetic prophecy, not prose; but it illustrates the principles under discussion.
on the top of the mountains,
And it shall be exalted above the hills;
And all nations shall flow to it.
Many people shall come
and they shall say,
“Come,
and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD,
To the house of the God of Jacob;
He will teach us His ways,
And we shall walk in His paths.”
For out of Zion shall go forth the law,
And the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.
He shall judge between the nations,
And He shall rebuke many people;
And they shall beat their swords into plowshares,
And their spears into pruning hooks;
Nation shall not lift up sword against nation,
Neither shall they learn war anymore. (Isa. 2:2-4)

(ii) By a dependent sentence:
And it shall be,
that just as the LORD rejoiced over you
to do you good and to multiply you,
so the LORD will rejoice over you
to destroy you and to bring you to nothing;
and you shall be plucked from off the land
which you go to possess.
Then the LORD will scatter you among all peoples,
from one end of the earth to the other,
and you shall serve other gods there,
that neither you nor your fathers have known—
wood and stone.
And among those nations you shall find no rest,

29 This future discourse begins with a simple imperfect sentence (with participle) instead of the expected Waw consecutive with perfect.
30 The quotation employs simple Waw conjunctive, marking parallel thoughts without implication of sequence.
31 The subordinate sentence provides auxiliary information about the reason people will make pilgrimages to Jerusalem.
32 The last two sentences provide closure without implication of sequence.
nor shall the sole of your foot have a resting place; but there the LORD will give you a trembling heart, failing eyes, and anguish of soul. 
Your life shall hang in doubt before you; you shall fear day and night, and have no assurance of life. 
In the morning you shall say, “Oh, that it were evening!” And at evening you shall say, “Oh, that it were morning!” because of the fear which terrifies your heart, and because of the sight which your eyes see. And the LORD will take you back to Egypt in ships, by the way of which I said to you, “You shall never see it again.” And there you shall be offered for sale to your enemies as male and female slaves, but no one will buy you. 

(Deut. 28:63-68)

(iii) By an infinitive construct sentence: And it shall be, when I bring a cloud over the earth, that the rainbow shall be seen in the cloud; and I will remember My covenant which is between Me and you and every living creature of all flesh; and the waters shall never again become a flood to destroy all flesh.33 And the rainbow shall be in the cloud, and I will look on it to remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature of all flesh that is on the earth. 

(Gen. 9:14-16)

20.3.4 Sentence Type Ci0—yhyh

yhyh—this sentence type has the imperfect form of the copulative verb in the first position, either because the subject has been elided or the verb has been granted first position prominence. It occurs in all ten literary types, but relatively infrequently, probably because the verb has been elided. It declares existence, class relationships, identity, and characteristics. This structure usually

---

33 This sentence functions as a perfect with Waw consecutive; negative sentences do not undergo the Waw consecutive transformation.
indicates relative future or present tense, but the contextual time frame of reference may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Past Time

After this event Jeroboam did not turn from his evil way, but again he made priests from every class of people for the high places: whoever wished, he consecrated him, and he became one of the priests of the high places. (1 Kgs. 13:33)

(ii) Present Time

And God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM." And He said, "Thus you shall say to the children of Israel, 'I AM has sent me to you.'" (Exod. 3:14)

(iii) Future Time

"Here is Rebekah before you; take her and go, and let her be your master's son's wife, as the LORD has spoken." (Gen. 24:51)

The priest shall take holy water in an earthen vessel, and take some of the dust that is on the floor of the tabernacle and put it into the water. (Num. 5:17)

20.3.5 Sentence Type Ci1—X yhyh

X yhyh—this sentence type has the copulative verb in the non-initial position. It occurs in nine of the ten literary types but relatively infrequently, not being found in expository prose. In procedural, instructional, and juridical literature it occurs about three percent of the time, more or less, otherwise, less than one percent. It declares existence, class relationships, identity, and characteristics. This structure usually indicates relative future or present tense, but the contextual time frame of reference may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Past Time:

So it was always:

the cloud covered it by day,
and the appearance of fire by night. (Num. 9:16)

(ii) Present Time:

And the seven thin and ugly cows which came up after them are seven years, and the seven empty heads blighted by the east wind are seven years of famine. (Gen. 41:27)

(iii) Future Time:

When you till the ground, it shall no longer yield its strength to you. A fugitive and a vagabond you shall be on the earth.

(20.3.6 Sentence Type Ciw—wayyih)

wayyih—this sentence type has the imperfect form of the copulative verb in the first position with Waw consecutive. It occurs in eight of the ten literary types but relatively infrequently, not being found in instructional literature or expository prose. This structure is used to set the time frame of reference for a sequence of historical events in the past. The time frame may be established by an adverbial complement of the copulative itself (i), or by a dependent sentence governed by a subordinating conjunction (ii), or by an infinitive construct sentence usually introduced by a preposition (iii).35

(i) by an adverbial complement:

And it came to pass, at the end of forty days, that Noah opened the window of the ark which he had made. Then he sent out a raven, and it kept going to and fro until the waters had dried up from the earth. Then he sent out from himself a dove, in order to see if the waters had receded from the face of the ground.

(34) The third-person plural pronoun הָעָדְדִּים functions as a substitute for בָּאָרְכָּם here.

(35) Option (iii) is really a transformation of (ii).

(36) This sentence has undergone the infinitive construct transformation to imbed it as an adverbial modifier into the sentence it modifies.

(37) This sentence has undergone the infinitive construct transformation and the interrogative transformation; it functions as the complement of the verb for seeing.
But the dove found no resting place
for the sole of her foot,
and she returned into the ark to him,
for the waters were on the face of the whole earth.
Then he put out his hand
and took her,
and drew her into the ark to himself.
And he waited yet another seven days,
and again he sent the dove out from the ark.
Then the dove came to him in the evening,
and behold, a freshly plucked olive leaf was in her mouth;
then Noah knew
that the waters had receded from the earth.
(Gen. 8:6-11)

(ii) Dependent sentence governed by a subordinating conjunction:
So it was,
when the camels had finished drinking,
that the man took a golden half-shekel nose ring,
and two bracelets for her wrists
weighing ten shekels of gold,
and he said,
“Whose daughter are you?
Tell me, please,
is there room in your father's house
for us to lodge?”
So she said to him,
“I am the daughter of Bethuel, Milcah's son,
whom she bore to Nahor.”
Moreover she said to him, (i)
“We have both straw and feed enough,
and room to lodge.”
Then the man bowed down his head
and worshiped the LORD
(Gen. 24:22-26)

(iii) An infinitive construct sentence:
And it came to pass,
when Laban heard the report
about Jacob his sister's son,
that he ran to meet him,
and embraced him
and kissed him,
and brought him to his house.
Then he told Laban all these things. And Laban said to him,
“Surely you are my bone and my flesh.” And he stayed with him for a month.

(20.3.7 Sentence Type Cy0—יֵש)

This sentence type has the copulative verb substitute יֵש (§ 4.3.7) in the first position, either because the subject has been elided or the verb has been granted first position prominence. This sentence type occurs in five of the literary types: historical, descriptive lists, predictive prose, expository poetry, and predictive poetry. It usually declares existence, and usually indicates relative past or present tense, but the contextual time frame of reference may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Past Time

For there were those who said, "We, our sons, and our daughters are many; therefore let us get grain, that we may eat and live." (Neh. 5:2)

(ii) Present Time

"It is in my power to do you harm, but the God of your father spoke to me last night, saying, 'Be careful that you speak to Jacob neither good nor bad.' (Gen. 31:29)

(iii) Future Time

lest there may be among you man or woman or family or tribe, whose heart turns away today from the LORD our God, to go and serve the gods of these nations, and lest there may be among you a root bearing bitterness or wormwood; (Deut. 29:18)

20.3.8 Sentence Type Cy1—X יֵש

X יֵש—this sentence type has the copulative verb substitute יֵש (§ 4.3.7) in the non-initial position. It occurs only in three of the ten literary types: historical, expository poetry, and prophetic poetry. It usually declares existence in some sense, in which the contextual time frame of reference may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.
(i) Past Time

וַיְהַלְּכֵּ֢ךְ חֲנֶֽוֹךְ אֶת־הָָּֽאֱלֹהִָ֑ים וְׁאֵינֶַּ֕נוּ כִָּֽי־לָָקֵַ֥ח אֹתֶ֖וֹ אֱלֹהִָּֽים׃
And Enoch walked with God; and he was not, for God took him. (Gen. 5:24)

(ii) Present Time

ונהַרְהַבִּיםְּ תִּכְשַׁדוֹתְּ יִשְׂרָאֵ֥ל הָֽלָּֽכִיםְּ
וְגַם־תֶּבֶן גַּם־מִסְפוֹא יִֵ֣שׁ לַחֲמֵֵּ֔ינוּ וְׁגַם לִֶ֣חֶם וָיֶַּּֽ֤יִן יֶשׁ־לִי וְׁלַָּֽאֲמָתֵֶּ֔ךְ וְׁלַנֶַ֖עַר עִם־עֲבָדֶָ֑יךָ אֵֵ֥ין מַחְׁסֶ֖וֹר כָּל־דָבָָּֽר׃
"although we have both straw and fodder for our donkeys, and have bread and wine for myself, for your female servant, and for the young man who is with your servant; there is no lack of anything." (Judg. 19:19)

(iii) Future Time

כִִ֣י יְׁהוָָ֗ה עֵינַָ֞יו מְׁשֹטְׁטָּ֤וֹת בְׁכָל־הָאָֹ֙רֶץ לְֶׁ֠הִתְׁחַזֵָ֥ק עִם־לְׁבָבֵָ֥ם שָלֵָ֛ם אֵלֶָ֖יו נִסְׁכִַ֣לְׁתָ עַל־זָֹ֑את כִִ֣י מֵעֵַּ֔ת יֵֵ֥שׁ עִמְׁךֶ֖ מִלְׁחָמָּֽוֹת׃
"For the eyes of the LORD run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to show Himself strong on behalf of those whose heart is loyal to Him. In this you have done foolishly; therefore from now on you shall have wars." (2 Chr. 16:9)

20.3.9 Sentence Type Cnθ

—this sentence type has the negated copulative verb substitute in the first position, either because the subject has been elided or the verb has been granted first position prominence. It occurs relatively infrequently in nine of the ten literary types, not being found in instructional literature. It denies existence in some sense; the contextual time frame of reference may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Past Time

וַיִּתְּהַלֵֵ֥ךְ חֲנֶ֖וֹךְ אֶת־הָָֽאֱלֹהִָ֑ים וְׁאֵינֶַּ֕נוּ כִָּֽי־לָָקֵַ֥ח אֹתֶ֖וֹ אֱלֹהִָּֽים׃
And Enoch walked with God; and he was not, for God took him. (Gen. 5:24)

(ii) Present Time

וְׁגַם־תֶָּ֤בֶן גַּם־מִסְפוֹא יִֵ֣שׁ לַחֲמֵֵּ֔ינוּ וְׁגַם לִֶ֣חֶם וָיֶַּּֽ֤יִן יֶשׁ־לִי וְׁלַָּֽאֲמָתֵֶּ֔ךְ וְׁלַנֶַ֖עַר עִם־עֲבָדֶָ֑יךָ אֵֵ֥ין מַחְׁסֶ֖וֹר כָּל־דָבָָּֽר׃
"although we have both straw and fodder for our donkeys, and have bread and wine for myself, for your female servant, and for the young man who is with your servant; there is no lack of anything." (Judg. 19:19)

(iii) Future Time

כִִ֣י יְׁהוָָ֗ה עֵינַָ֞יו מְׁשֹטְׁטָּ֤וֹת בְׁכָל־הָאָֹ֙רֶץ לְֶׁ֠הִתְׁחַזֵָ֥ק עִם־לְׁבָבֵָ֥ם שָלֵָ֛ם אֵלֶָ֖יו נִסְׁכִַ֣לְׁתָ עַל־זָֹ֑את כִִ֣י מֵעֵַּ֔ת יֵֵ֥שׁ עִמְׁךֶ֖ מִלְׁחָמָּֽוֹת׃
"For the eyes of the LORD run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to show Himself strong on behalf of those whose heart is loyal to Him. In this you have done foolishly; therefore from now on you shall have wars." (2 Chr. 16:9)

20.3.9 Sentence Type Cnθ

—this sentence type has the negated copulative verb substitute in the first position, either because the subject has been elided or the verb has been granted first position prominence. It occurs relatively infrequently in nine of the ten literary types, not being found in instructional literature. It denies existence in some sense; the contextual time frame of reference may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Past Time

וַיִּתְּהַלֵֵ֥ךְ חֲנֶ֖וֹךְ אֶת־הָָֽאֱלֹהִָ֑ים וְׁאֵינֶַּ֕נוּ כִָּֽי־לָָקֵַ֥ח אֹתֶ֖וֹ אֱלֹהִָּֽים׃
And Enoch walked with God; and he was not, for God took him. (Gen. 5:24)

(ii) Present Time

וְׁגַם־תֶָּ֤בֶן גַּם־מִסְפוֹא יִֵ֣שׁ לַחֲמֵֵּ֔ינוּ וְׁגַם לִֶ֣חֶם וָיֶַּּֽ֤יִן יֶשׁ־לִי וְׁלַָּֽאֲמָתֵֶּ֔ךְ וְׁלַנֶַ֖עַר עִם־עֲבָדֶָ֑יךָ אֵֵ֥ין מַחְׁסֶ֖וֹר כָּל־דָבָָּֽר׃
"although we have both straw and fodder for our donkeys, and have bread and wine for myself, for your female servant, and for the young man who is with your servant; there is no lack of anything." (Judg. 19:19)

(iii) Future Time

כִִ֣י יְׁהוָָ֗ה עֵינַָ֞יו מְׁשֹטְׁטָּ֤וֹת בְׁכָל־הָאָֹ֙רֶץ לְֶׁ֠הִתְׁחַזֵָ֥ק עִם־לְׁבָבֵָ֥ם שָלֵָ֛ם אֵלֶָ֖יו נִסְׁכִַ֣לְстой על־זָֹ֑את כִִ֣י מֵעֵַּ֔ת יֵֵ֥שׁ עִמְׁךֶ֖ מִלְׁחָמָּֽוֹת׃
"For the eyes of the LORD run to and fro throughout the whole earth, to show Himself strong on behalf of those whose heart is loyal to Him. In this you have done foolishly; therefore from now on you shall have wars." (2 Chr. 16:9)
Chapter 20
The Syntax of Sentences in Discourse

(ii) Present Time

There is no one greater in this house than I, nor has he kept back anything from me but you, because you are his wife. How then can I do this great wickedness, and sin against God? (Gen. 39:9)

(iii) Future Time

If you afflict my daughters, or if you take other wives besides my daughters, although no man is with us— see, God is witness between you and me! (Gen 31:50)

20.3.10 Sentence Type Cn1—X

X—an—this sentence type has the negated copulative verb substitute in the non-initial position. It occurs relatively infrequently in nine of the ten literary types, not being found in expository prose. It denies existence in some sense; the contextual time frame of reference may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Past Time

before any plant of the field was in the earth and before any herb of the field had grown. For the LORD God had not caused it to rain on the earth, and there was no man to till the ground; (Gen. 2:5)

(ii) Present Time

Now the firstborn said to the younger, "Our father is old, and there is no man on the earth to come in to us as is the custom of all the earth. (Gen. 19:31)

(iii) Future Time

"But we said, 'We cannot go down; if our youngest brother is with us, then we will go down; for we may not see the man's face if our youngest brother is not with us.' (Gen. 44:26)
20.3.11 Sentence Type Ve—X

X—this sentence type is that of the so-called verbless sentence. It may be assumed that the verb of the sentence was elided because it was redundant or understood from the semantic context. It occurs in all ten literary types about 20 to 30 percent of the time with little significance, but for the detailed descriptive type (56%) and the descriptive list type (69.9%) the proportion is significant and characteristic of those types.

The earth was without form, and void; and darkness was on the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the face of the waters. (Gen. 1:2)

Then God saw everything that He had made, and indeed it was very good. So the evening and the morning were the sixth day. (Gen. 1:31)

This is the history of the heavens and the earth when they were created, in the day that the LORD God made the earth and the heavens, (Gen. 2:4)

And he will turn The hearts of the fathers to the children, And the hearts of the children to their fathers, Lest I come and strike the earth with a curse." (Mal. 4:6)

Woe to the worthless shepherd, Who leaves the flock! A sword shall be against his arm And against his right eye; His arm shall completely wither, And his right eye shall be totally blinded.” (Zech. 11:17)

20.3.12 Sentence Type Vp0—qtl (X)

qtl (X)—this sentence type has the perfect form of the verb in the first position, either because the subject has been elided or the verb has been granted first position prominence. It occurs

38 The statistical percentage for this sentence type is higher than that of reality (see f. n. 20 under § 20.3, p. 523). But their relative value is still significant in the case of some literary types.
in all ten literary types about ten percent of the time, more or less, with little significance, providing supplementary information. But for the expository prose type its proportion (20%) may be regarded as significant and characteristic of that type. It usually indicates relative past tense, but the contextual time frame of reference may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Past Time

Now the land was not able to support them, that they might dwell together, for their possessions were so great that they could not dwell together. (Gen. 13:6)

(ii) Present Time

And it came to pass, when he was close to entering Egypt, that he said to Sarai his wife, "Indeed I know that you are a woman of beautiful countenance. (Gen. 12:11)

(iii) Future Time

Then He said to Abram: "Know certainly that your descendants will be strangers in a land that is not theirs, and will serve them, and they will afflict them four hundred years. (Gen. 15:13)
20.3.13 Sentence Type Vp1—X qtl

X qtl—this sentence type has the perfect form of the verb in the non-initial position. It occurs in all ten literary types but relatively infrequently: maximum (11%) in predictive poetry, and minimum (1.4%) in instructional literature. It is distinguishingly characteristic of no literary type, but provides subsidiary information in which the verbal action, state, or relationship is viewed as completed in some sense. The time may be past [i], present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Past Time:

In the image of God He created him; male and female He created them. (Gen. 1:27)

And Irad fathered Mehujael, and Mehujael fathered Methusael, and Methusael fathered Lamech. (Gen. 4:18)

And your father has deceived me and changed my wages ten times. (Gen. 31:7)

(ii) Present Time:

Now you are commanded: do this . . . (Gen. 45:19)

Look, my master does not know what is with me in the house. (Gen. 39:8)

And now, behold it is dry, and it is moldy. (Josh. 9:12)

(iii) Future Time:

You shall keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread, for on this very day I will have brought your armies out of the land of Egypt. Therefore, you shall observe this day throughout your generations as an everlasting ordinance. (Exod. 12:17)

And you, if you warn the righteous that the righteous not sin, And he does not sin, he shall surely live, for he was warned, And you will have delivered your soul (Ezek. 3:21)
(iv) Introducing historical discourse:

He created them male and female,
and He blessed them
and He called them Mankind
in the day they were created.
And Adam lived one hundred and thirty years,
and He begot a son in his own likeness, after his image,
and He called his name Seth.
The days of Adam, after he begot Seth,
were eight hundred years;
and he had sons and daughters. (Gen. 5:2-4)

20.3.14 Sentence Type Vpw—Wqtl

Wqtl—this sentence type has the verb in the first position with Waw consecutive. It occurs in all ten literary types, but is distinguishingly characteristic of only the procedural type (23.6%), the instructional type (27%), the juridical type (18%), and the predictive prose type (10%), being a secondary characteristic in those literary types. It is used to declare the next in a sequence of impending events, so the time frame is mostly future [i], but it may also express aspectually perfect events in the present [ii], or past [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Future Time:

And now, lest he put out his hand,
and he take also from the tree of life,
and he eat,
and he live forever. (Gen. 3:22)

Then God said:

“But Sarah your wife will bear you a son,
and you shall call his name Isaac.
And I will establish My covenant with him.” (Gen. 17:19)

Behold, I am gathering two sticks,
that I may go,
and I may prepare it for me and my son,
and we may eat it,
and we may die. (1 Kgs. 17:12)

(ii) Present Time:

Behold, the LORD empties the earth,
and He demolishes it. And He warps its surface, and scatters its inhabitants. (Isa. 24:1)

(iii) Past Time:
And in Moses’ going before the LORD to speak with Him, he would remove the veil until time for him to come out, then he would go out and he would speak to the sons of Israel that which he was commanded. Then the sons of Israel would see the face of Moses, that the skin of Moses’ face shone, And Moses would put the veil back over his face until time for his going to speak with Him. (Exod. 34:34-35)

Now Jonathan and Ahimaaz were staying in En Rogel, And the maid servant would come, And she would tell them, And they would go, And they would tell King David. (2 Sam. 17:17)

20.3.15 Sentence Type Vi0—yqtl (X)

Yqtl (X)—this sentence type has the imperfect form of the verb in the first position, either because the subject has been elided or the verb has been granted first position prominence. It occurs in all ten literary types, but significantly so only in the juridical type (17%), the expository poetry type (23%), and the predictive poetry (17%). In all the literary types, it has approximately the same percentage of distribution as that of type Vi1, suggesting that no significant difference exists between their characteristic role in literary types. The verbal action, state, or relationship is viewed as incomplete in some sense, whether hypothetical, potential, impending, repetitive, or habitual. Most non-indicative statements are expressed in this structure, including imperatives. The time may be timeless [i], past [ii], present [iii], or future [iv], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Timeless:

לִשְׁפָךְ־דָָּם׃
For their feet run to evil, And they make haste to shed blood. (Prov. 1:16)
But they lie in wait for their own blood. They lurk secretly for their own lives. (Prov. 1:18)

A faithful witness does not lie, But a false witness utters lies. (Prov. 14:5)

A true witness delivers souls, But a deceitful witness speaks lies. (Prov. 14:25)

So they set him a place by himself, and them by themselves, and the Egyptians who ate with him by themselves; because the Egyptians could not eat food with the Hebrews, for that is an abomination to the Egyptians. (Gen. 43:32)

But whenever Moses went in before the LORD to speak with Him, he would take off the veil until he came out; and he would come out and speak to the children of Israel whatever he had been commanded. (Exod. 34:34)

And she said to her father, "Let it not displease my lord for I cannot rise before you, for the manner of women is with me." And he searched but did not find the household idols. (Gen. 31:35)

When Jacob saw that there was grain in Egypt, Jacob said to his sons, "Why do you look at one another?" (Gen. 42:1)

Note that the Waw Consecutive with perfect continues the habitual imperfect aspect of יִצַּו, twice in this verse.
(iv) Future Time:

Then God said, "Let the waters under the heavens be gathered together into one place, and let the dry land appear"; and it was so. (Gen. 1:9)

And the LORD God said, "It is not good that man should be alone; I will make him a helper comparable to him." (Gen. 2:18)

"but of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God has said, 'You shall not eat it, nor shall you touch it, lest you die.'" (Gen. 3:3)

Then the serpent said to the woman, "You will not surely die. (Gen. 3:4)

Then Moses answered and said, "But if they will not believe me or listen to my voice; for they may say, 'The LORD has not appeared to you.'" (Exod. 4:1)

20.3.16 Sentence Type Vi1—X yqtl

X yqtl—this sentence type has the imperfect form of the verb in the non-initial position. It occurs in all ten literary types but significantly so only in the procedural type (13.5%), the juridical type (13.2%), the expository poetry type (19%), and the predictive poetry type (15.5%). In all the literary types, it has approximately the same percentage of distribution as that of type Vi0, suggesting that no significant difference exists between their characteristic role in literary types. Like sentence type Vi0, the verbal action, state, or relationship is viewed as incomplete in some sense, whether hypothetical, potential, impending, repetitive, or habitual. Most non-indicative statements are expressed in this structure, including imperatives. The time may be timeless [i], past [ii], present [iii], or future [iv], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Timeless

A wise son makes a father glad. (Prov. 15:20)

He makes me to lie down in green pastures; He leads me beside the still waters. (Psa. 23:2)
Evil men do not understand justice. But those who seek the LORD understand all. (Prov. 28:5)

(ii) Past Time

And Solomon gave Hiram twenty thousand kors of wheat as food for his household, and twenty kors of pressed oil. Thus Solomon gave to Hiram year by year. (1 Kgs. 5:25, vs. 11 Eng.)

So it was, when the days of feasting had run their course, that Job would send and sanctify them, and he would rise early in the morning and offer burnt offerings according to the number of them all. For Job said, "It may be that my sons have sinned and cursed God in their hearts." Thus Job did regularly. (Job 1:5)

And all the king's servants who were within the king's gate bowed and paid homage to Haman, for so the king had commanded concerning him. But Mordecai would not bow or pay homage. (Est. 3:2) (habitual past)

(iii) Present Time

Then Elkanah her husband said to her, "Hannah, why do you weep? Why do you not eat? And why is your heart grieved? Am I not better to you than ten sons?" (1 Sam. 1:8)

Now a certain man found him, and there he was, wandering in the field. And the man asked him, saying, "What are you seeking?" (Gen. 37:15)
(iv) Future Time

"You shall consecrate them, that they may be most holy; whatever touches them must be holy. (Exod. 30:29)

And the LORD said, "Indeed the people are one and they all have one language, and this is what they begin to do; now anything that they propose to do will not be withheld from them. (Gen. 11:6)

20.3.17 Sentence Type Wv—Wyyqtl

Wyyqtl—this sentence type has the imperfect form of the verb in the first position with Waw consecutive. It occurs in all ten literary types, but only significantly so in the historical type (31%), the detail descriptive type (19.5%), and the descriptive list type (10.5%). It is used to declare the next event in a sequence of aspectually perfect events and thus forms the story line of historical narrative. The time frame is mostly past [i], but this type of sentence may also express aspectually perfect events in the present [ii], or future [iii], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Past Time:

And Adam knew Eve his wife, and she conceived, and she bore Cain. And she said:

"I have acquired a man with the LORD." And she added to bear his brother Abel.

( Gen. 4:1-2)

And Abraham ran to the herd, and he took a tender and good calf, and he gave it to the young man, and he hastened to prepare it. Then he took butter and milk and the calf

---

40 The subject has been elided in this sentence. Quotations, whether direct or indirect, are actually the complement of a verb of speaking, thinking, wishing, desiring, etc. They may be a short utterance, or a long discourse. Quotations have their own literary structure depending on what is said. Technically, they may be regarded as imbedded in the sentence that introduces them, or, for practical reasons, they may be treated as a side track to the flow of thought.
Chapter 20

The Syntax of Sentences in Discourse

And thus he would do year after year, whenever he took her up to the house of the LORD.  
Thus also she would provoke her

that he had prepared, and he placed it before them. (Gen. 18:7-8)

Before I finished talking to my heart, behold, Rebekah was coming out, and her pitcher was on her shoulder.
And she went down to the well, and she drew some water.
Then I said to her: “Please give me a drink.”
So she made haste, and she let down her pitcher from off her shoulder, and she said:
“Drink, and I will water the camels also.”
So I took a drink, and she watered the camels also.

And it happened while they were in the field that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and he killed him.
Then the LORD said to Cain: “Where is Abel your brother?”
And he said: “I don’t know. Am I my brother’s keeper?”

And thus he would do year after year, whenever he took her up to the house of the LORD.
Thus also she would provoke her

41 This relative pronoun sentence is imbedded in the previous sentence as a modifier of the predicate complement. Relative pronoun sentences do not count as separate sentences because they are imbedded.
42 This participle sentence (X + qotel) provides the initial event of the sequence.
43 This copulative sentence provides background and does not interrupt the sequence of events.
44 This aspectually perfect sentence provides closure to the sequence.
45 The sentence has been transformed into a question.
46 This dependent sentence provides background information.
And she would cry
And she would not eat
Then Elkanah her husband would say to her, Hannah:
“Why do you keep weeping?
And why don’t you ever eat?
And why is your heart grieved?
Am I not better to you than ten sons?” (1 Sam. 1:7)

And it happened at the end of forty days,
that Noah opened the window of the ark
that he had made.
And he sent out the raven.
And it went out, going out and coming back,
until the waters dried up from the earth. (Gen. 8:6)

(ii) Present Time:47

The LORD kills and He makes alive.
He brings down to the grave,
and He raises up (1 Sam. 2:6)

He makes nations great,
and He destroys them;
He enlarges nations,
and He guides them. (Job 12:23)

The voice of the LORD breaks the cedars,
then the LORD shatters the cedars of Lebanon. (Psa. 29:5)

(iii) Future Time:48

For unto us a Child is born,
Unto us a Son is given;
And the government will be upon His shoulder.
And His name will be called Wonderful, Counselor,
Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace. (Isa. 9:5)

You children of Zion be glad then,
And rejoice in the LORD your God;
For He has given you the former rain faithfully,
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And why is your heart grieved?
And He will cause the rain to come down for you—
The former rain, And the latter rain in the first month. (Joel 2:23)

20.3.18 Sentence Type Vdp0—hyh (X) qotel

Hyh (X) qotel—this sentence type has the copulative verb in first position serving as an auxiliary to a following verbal participle expressing the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3). This is a rare sentence type occurring in the Hebrew Bible only eight times, probably because the auxiliary has usually been elided, being redundant or anticipated by the current state of the semantic context. The temporal context is past time.

And she was riding on the donkey, and she was going down under cover of the hill; and there were David and his men, coming down toward her, and she met them. (1 Sam. 25:20)

[The auxiliary for the subsequent participles was elided as redundant]

20.3.19 Sentence Type Vdp1—X hyh (X) qotel

X hyh (X) qotel—this sentence type has the copulative verb in the non-initial position serving as an auxiliary to a following verbal participle expressing the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3). This too is a rare sentence type occurring in the Hebrew Bible only 36 times, probably because the auxiliary has usually been elided, being redundant or anticipated by the current state of the semantic context. The temporal context is past time.

Then King Rehoboam consulted the elders who were standing before his father Solomon while he still lived, and he said, "How do you advise me to answer these people?" (1 Kgs. 12:6)

All her people sigh, They seek bread; They have given their valuables for food to restore life. "See, O LORD, and consider, For I am being scorned." (Lam. 1:11)
And the keeper of the prison committed to Joseph's hand all the prisoners who were in the prison; whatever they did there, it was his doing. (Gen. 39:22)

Now Moses was tending the flock of Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian. And he led the flock to the back of the desert, and came to Horeb, the mountain of God. (Exod. 3:1)

"In time past you were seeking for David to be king over you. (2 Sam. 3:17)

"And the cherubim shall be stretching out their wings above, covering the mercy seat with their wings, and they shall face one another; the faces of the cherubim shall be toward the mercy seat. (Exod. 25:20)

"And you shall be groping at noonday, as a blind man gropes in darkness; you shall not prosper in your ways; you shall be only oppressed and plundered continually, and no one shall save you. (Deut. 28:29)
20.3.21 Sentence Type Vdi0—yhyh (X) qotel

Yhyh (X) qotel—this sentence type has the copulative verb in the first position serving as an auxiliary to a following verbal participle expressing the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3). This is a rare sentence type occurring in the Hebrew Bible only 17 times, probably because the auxiliary has usually been elided, being redundant or anticipated by the current state of the semantic context. The temporal context is future time.

Let the name of the LORD be continually blessed from now and forever (Psa. 113:2)

If any of you shall be driven out to the farthest parts under heaven, from there the LORD your God will gather you, and from there He will bring you. (Deut. 30:4)

20.3.22 Sentence Type Vdi1—X yhyh (X) qotel

X yhyh (X) qotel—this sentence type has the copulative verb in the non-initial position serving as an auxiliary to a following verbal participle expressing the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3). This is a rare sentence type occurring in the Hebrew Bible only two times, probably because the auxiliary has usually been elided, being redundant or anticipated by the current state of the semantic context. The temporal context is future time.

Let their dwelling place be desolate; Let no one be dwelling in their tents. (Psa. 69:25)

And the elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, "The LORD will be listening between us, if we do not do according to your words." (Judg. 11:10)
20.3.23 Sentence Type Vdiw—\textit{wayyhyh (X) qotel}

\textit{Wayyhyh (X) qotel}—this sentence type has the copulative verb in the first position with Waw consecutive, serving as an auxiliary to a following verbal participle expressing the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3). This also is a rare sentence type occurring in the Hebrew Bible only 58 times, probably because the auxiliary has usually been elided, being redundant or anticipated by the current state of the semantic context. The temporal context is future time.

\[
\text{וַיְדָעַ} \; \text{כָּלָ} \; \text{אַחֲרֵי־שָׁלוֹשָׁ֑ה תָּהֳרַ} \; \text{וַתְּלַ} \; \text{אַחֲרֵי־תֹּ} \; \text{וַיְדָעַ} \; \text{כָּלָ} \; \text{אַחֲרֵי־שָׁלוֹשָׁ֑ה}
\]

And Cain knew his wife, and she conceived and bore Enoch. (Gen. 4:17)

20.3.24 Sentence Type Vdy0—\textit{yiq\textsuperscript{ach} (X) qotel}

\textit{Yiq\textsuperscript{ach} (X) qotel}—this sentence type has the copulative verb substitute \textit{yiq\textsuperscript{ach}} (§ 4.3.7) in the first position—evidently by necessity—serving as an auxiliary to a following verbal participle expressing the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3). This is a rare sentence type occurring in the Hebrew Bible only 17 times. The temporal context is present time.

\[
\text{וָאָבֵא} \; \text{הַיֶּוֹם} \; \text{אֶל־הָֽעָיִן} \; \text{וָאֹמַר} \; \text{יְהוָה֙ אֱלֹהֵיֹ֙ אֲדֹנִִ֣י אֲבָרָָ֖הָם אִם} \; \text{יֶשְׁךְ} \; \text{נָאֹ֙} \; \text{מַצְלִִ֣יחַ דַּרְׁכִֵּ֔י אֲשֵ֥ר אָנֹכִֶ֖י הֹלֵֵ֥ךְ עָלֶָּֽיהָ׃}
\]

"And this day I came to the well and said, 'O LORD God of my master Abraham, please if You are prospering the way in which I go, (Gen. 24:42)
"If you are sending our brother with us, we will go down and buy you food. (Gen. 43:4)

So Gideon said to God, "If You are saving Israel by my hand as You have said-- (Judg. 6:36)

"Since many things are increasing vanity, How is man the better? (Eccl. 6:11)

20.3.25 Sentence Type VdyI—X יש (X) qotel

X יש (X) qotel—although theoretically possible, this sentence type does not occur.

20.3.26 Sentence Type Vdn0—אין (X) qotel

אין (X) qotel—this sentence type has the negative copulative verb substitute אין in the first position. It serves as an auxiliary to a following verbal participle expressing the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3, 11.5.2, 13.1.2). This is a rare sentence type occurring in the Hebrew Bible only 156 times. The temporal context is present time.

Now Esther was not revealing her family and her people, just as Mordecai had charged her, for Esther obeyed the command of Mordecai as when she was brought up by him. (Est. 2:20)

"Now therefore, restore the man's wife; for he is a prophet, and he will pray for you and you shall live. But if you are not restoring her, know that you shall surely die, you and all who are yours." (Gen. 20:7)

And the taskmasters of the people and their officers went out and spoke to the people, saying,

"Thus says Pharaoh: `I am not giving you straw. (Exod. 5:10)

"Go, get yourselves straw where you can find it; yet none of your work is being reduced.'" (Exod. 5:11)

So they waited till they were embarrassed, and still he was not opening the doors of the upper room. Therefore they took the key and opened them. And there was their master, fallen dead on the floor. (Judg. 3:25)
20.3.27 Sentence Type Vdn1—X פס (X) qotel

X פס (X) qotel—this sentence type has the negative copulative verb substitute פס in the non-initial position, serving as an auxiliary to a following verbal participle expressing the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3, 11.5.2, 13.1.2). This is a rare sentence type occurring in the Hebrew Bible only 26 times. The temporal context is current time.

ויאמר חמה לפלג אשתו איש.

This sentence type has the negative copulative verb substitute פס in the non-initial position, serving as an auxiliary to a following verbal participle expressing the durative aspect (§ 5.6.5.3, 11.5.2, 13.1.2). This is a rare sentence type occurring in the Hebrew Bible only 26 times. The temporal context is current time.

ויאמר חמה לפלג אשתו איש.

Then Haman said to King Ahasuerus,

"There is a certain people scattered and dispersed among the people in all the provinces of your kingdom; their laws are differing from all other people's, and they are not keeping the king's laws. Therefore it is not fitting for the king to let them remain. (Est. 3:8)

ויתמר יהוה אליהם מחקה מכלםリスト

"And the LORD spoke to you out of the midst of the fire. You were hearing the sound of the words, but you were not seeing a form; you only heard a voice. (Deut. 4:12)

ויאמר המלך יוהויהל אליהם שמחה להכתב

So King Jehoash called Jehoiada the priest and the other priests, and said to them, "Why are you not repairing the damages of the temple? Now therefore, do not take more money from your constituency, but deliver it for repairing the damages of the temple." (2 Kgs. 12:8)

ויתמר יהוה אליהם בריתם בצלмыш יפה

And the Angel of the LORD appeared to him in a flame of fire from the midst of a bush. So he looked, and behold, the bush was burning with fire, but the bush was not being consumed. (Exod. 3:2)

20.3.28 Sentence Type Vde0—qotel

Qotel—this sentence type has a verbal participle in first position because the subject was elided or the verb was granted first position prominence. It expresses the durative aspect. It may
be assumed that the associated copulative auxiliary verb has been elided because of redundancy. This sentence type occurs in all ten literary types although never as a significant characteristic of any. It provides supplementary information about some ongoing background events. The time may be timeless [i], past [ii], present [iii], or future [iv], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Timeless

"He administers justice for the fatherless and the widow, and loves the stranger, giving him food and clothing. (Deut. 10:18)

(ii) Past Time

And God said to Noah, “The end of all flesh has come before Me, for the earth is filled with violence through them; and behold, I am destroying them with the earth. (Gen. 6:13)

(iii) Present Time

"For God knows that in the day you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil." (Gen. 3:5)

(iv) Future Time

"Behold, tomorrow about this time I am causing very heavy hail to rain down, such as has not been in Egypt since its founding until now. (Exod. 9:18)

(iv) Introducing a sequence of predictive future events:

And He said to me, “Behold, I will make you fruitful and I will multiply you, and I will make of you a multitude of people, and I will give this land to your descendants after you as an everlasting possession.” (Gen. 48:4)
20.3.29 Sentence Type Vde1—X qotel

X qotel—this sentence type has a verbal participle in the non-initial position expressing the durative aspect. It may be assumed that the associated copulative auxiliary verb has been elided because of redundancy. This sentence type occurs in all ten literary type although never as a significant characteristic of any. It provides supplementary information about some ongoing background events. The time may be timeless [i], past [ii], present [iii], or future [iv], depending on the time frame that has been established in the context.

(i) Timeless:

Behold, I am standing by the well of water,
and the daughters of the men of the city are coming out to draw water. (Gen. 24:13)

(ii) Past Time:

And the earth was formless and empty, and darkness was on the surface of the deep;
and the Spirit of God was hovering over the surface of the waters. (Gen. 1:2)

Then the LORD appeared to him by the terebinth trees of Mamre,
and he was sitting in the door of the tent about the heat of the day. (Gen. 18:1)

And Rebekah was listening while Isaac spoke to his son Esau. (Gen. 27:5)

(iii) Present Time:

Then he said to them, “Is he well?” And they said, “He is well, and look, his daughter Rachel is coming with the sheep.” (Gen. 29:6)

And it was told to Tamar, saying, “Look, your father-in-law is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep.” (Gen. 38:13)

For the LORD your God is bringing you to a good land. (Deut. 8:7)

(iv) Future Time:

And Mephibosheth shall eat [lit. be eating] at my table
like one of the king’s sons (2 Sam. 9:11)
After that you shall come to the hill of God where the Philistine garrison is. And it will happen, when you have come there to the city, that you will meet a group of prophets coming down from the high place with a stringed instrument, a tambourine, a flute, and a harp before them; and they will be prophesying. (1 Sam. 10:5)

Thus says the LORD: “By this you shall know that I am the LORD: Behold, I will strike [lit. am striking] with the staff that is in My hand the water that is in the Nile.” (Exod. 7:17)

20.3.30 Sentence Type Vdqc0—qotel (X) Cop

Qotel (X) Cop—this sentence type is like type Vdp0 except that the participle has been granted first position prominence; the copulative auxiliary follows later in the sentence. It occurs in eight of the ten literary types, not being found in the descriptive list type and the expository prose type—although never as a significant characteristic of any. It provides supplementary information about some ongoing background events.

Our feet have been standing Within your gates, O Jerusalem! (Psa. 122:2)

"Remember! Do not forget how you provoked the LORD your God to wrath in the wilderness. From the day that you departed from the land of Egypt until you came to this place, you have been rebelling against the LORD. (Deut. 9:7)

But David said to Saul. "Your servant was keeping his father's sheep, and when a lion or a bear came and took a lamb out of the flock, (1 Sam. 17:34)
20.3.31 Sentence Type Vdqc1—X qotel (X) Cop

X qotel (X) Cop—this sentence type is like type Vdqc0 except that some other constituent has been granted first position prominence; the copulative auxiliary follows later in the sentence. It occurs in only five of the ten literary types, never as a significant characteristic of any. It provides supplementary information about some ongoing background events.

"Also at Taberah and Massah and Kibroth Hattaavah you were provoking the LORD to wrath. (Deut. 9:22)

They were like well-fed lusty stallions; Every one was neighing after his neighbor's wife. (Jer. 5:8)

And the LORD said to me, "This gate shall be shut; it shall not be opened, and no man shall enter by it, because the LORD God of Israel has entered by it; therefore it shall be shut. (Ezek. 44:2)

For Gaza shall be forsaken, And Ashkelon desolate; They shall drive out Ashdod at noonday, And Ekron shall be uprooted. (Zeph. 2:4)

20.4 Types of Literary Structure

As previously stated, a discourse may be primarily (1) historical, declaring what happened; (2) descriptive details, declaring the way things were or are; (3) descriptive lists, (4) procedural, declaring how to do something; (5) instructional, declaring how things are expected to be; (6) juridical, declaring how things must be; (7) predictive prose, declaring how things will be; (8) expository prose, explaining the meaning or intent of something, (9) expository poetry, and (10) predictive poetry. The text of the Hebrew Bible was divided into segments corresponding to the above ten literary types. The content of these segments is recorded in Appendix Two. The frequency distribution of the 31 different sentence types was derived for each of the ten literary types, and those sentence types that are characteristic of each literary type were identified.

20.4.1 The Historical Narrative Type

Historical narrative presents the events and episodes of the past in an orderly fashion, usually in sequential order according to time. Table 20.8 lists the frequency distribution of the various sentence types found in the historical narrative sections of the Hebrew Bible. As expected, the Wayyqtl sentences (type Viw) dominate the distribution, occurring 31.5% of the time. This is
followed by verbless sentences (type Ve) occurring 24.3% of the time, then followed by sentences with perfect form of the verb (types Vp0 and Vp1) occurring 17.4% of the time. These four sentence types account for 73.2% of the text, and along with a high speech sentence density (8.1%), a moderate imperative density (5.2%) and a moderate juxtaposition density (8.2%), may be regarded as constituting the distinguishing characteristic of historical narrative. Interestingly, sentences with the imperfect aspect (types Vi0, Vi1, and Vpw) occur 18.5% of the time, leaving only 8.3% for the remaining sentence types.

Total number of words = 196,335
Total number of speech words = 2,923
Total number of imperatives = 1,874
Total number of verses = 8,595
Total number of juxtaposition = 2,948
Average words per verse = 22.84
Average sentences per verse = 4.17
Average words per sentence = 5.49
Speech sentence density\textsuperscript{49} = 8.1%
Imperative density\textsuperscript{50} = 5.2%
Juxtaposition density\textsuperscript{51} = 8.15%

\textsuperscript{49} A speech sentence is one that contains the finite verb \textit{אָמַר} or \textit{דִבֶר}. The density is the ratio of speech sentences to total sentences expressed in percentage. It is a rough measure of how much direct speech a literature type contains.

\textsuperscript{50} The imperative density is the ratio of imperative sentences to total sentences expressed in percentage. In this context, the verb of an imperative sentence is in its imperative form. In the statistics of this chapter, imperative sentences are included among the sentences having the imperfect aspect.

\textsuperscript{51} The juxtaposition density is the ratio of asyndeton sentences to total sentences expressed in percentage.
In regard to the literary structure of a historical narrative, the narrative is initiated by an event declared by a perfect aspect verbal sentence (type Vp0 or Vp1) set in past time by semantic markers (as in Gen. 16:1), or by a perfect aspect copulative sentence (type Cp0 or Cp1 as in Gen. 15:1). Or it is initiated by a Wayyhyh sentence (type Ciw), usually with past time semantic markers (cf. § 20.3.6). Where the time frame of the broader context is clearly past tense, the narrative may begin with an initial Wayyqtl sentence (type Viw) as in the following example. The story line is then carried on by Wayyqtl sentences (type Viw), placing each new event in its proper sequential order. Each Wayyqtl sentence may be followed by any related background episodes or details. The narrative ends with a closing event or other statement of closure.

In the examples of this section, the various sentence types are highlighted by the following colors; those without color have special notation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>11,272</td>
<td>31.478</td>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>97</td>
<td>0.271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>8,718</td>
<td>24.346</td>
<td>Vdn0</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>0.148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>3,717</td>
<td>10.380</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>0.142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>3,718</td>
<td>10.388</td>
<td>Vdiw</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0.117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>2,498</td>
<td>6.976</td>
<td>Cy0</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>0.117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>1,729</td>
<td>4.828</td>
<td>Vdp1</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>0.073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>1,197</td>
<td>3.343</td>
<td>Vdn1</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.039</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>741</td>
<td>2.069</td>
<td>Cy1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0.031</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>663</td>
<td>1.851</td>
<td>Vdq0</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>396</td>
<td>1.106</td>
<td>Vdi1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.025</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cp1</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>0.614</td>
<td>Vdi0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>207</td>
<td>0.578</td>
<td>Vdy0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>0.383</td>
<td>Vdp0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>0.318</td>
<td>Vdpw</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci0</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>0.285</td>
<td>Vdq1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the examples of this section, the various sentence types are highlighted by the following colors; those without color have special notation:
wayyiqtol Waw consecutive with imperfect (Viw)
Verbless sentence (Ve)
qtol perfect form of verb (Vp0 or Vp1)
yiqtol imperfect form of verb (Vi0 or Vi1)
weqtol Waw consecutive with perfect (Vpw)
qotel durative aspect (Vde0 or Vde1)

(1) Then Jacob lifted his feet ................................................................. וַיִֶשֱָ֖א יַעֲקֶֹ֖בוּ רַגְׁלָָ֑יו
(2) and he went to the land of the people of the East. .................................. נַגְּלוּ לְאֶּרְׁצָה בְׁנֵי־קֶָּֽם
(3) ַ֖וַּיֵֶ֖לֶךְ אֵַ֥רְׁצָה בְׁנֵָֽדיֶּ֖ם
(4) and behold there was a well in the field:................................................. וַּהֲבָֽה בָּאְרָ֣בֶּם בֵּשָּ֑דֶּם
(5) and behold, there were three flocks of sheep lying by it:......................... וַּהֲבָֽה־שֵָ֖לֶֽשֶׁה שְׁלֹשָ֤ה עֶדְרֵי־צֹאןֹ֙ רֹבְׁצִִ֣ים עָלֵֶּ֔יהָ
(6) for out of that well they watered the flocks. ............................................. כִַ֚י מִן־הַבְׁאִֵ֣ר הַהִֵּ֔וא יַשְׁקֶ֖וּ הָעֲדָרִָ֑ים
(7) And a large stone was on the well's mouth............................................ והָּּֽאֵ֥בֶן גְּׁדֹלֶָ֖ה עַל־פִֵ֥י הַבְׁאֵֶ֖ר
(8) ַ֖וַּיֵֶ֖לֶךְ אֵַ֥רְׁצָה בְׁנֵָֽדיֶּ֖ם
(9) and they would roll the stone from the well's mouth,.............................. וְׁגָלֲלָּ֤וּ אֶת־הָאֶֹ֙בֶן מֵעַֹ֙לֶ֔פי הַבְׁאֵֵּ֔ר
(10) and they would water the sheep............................................................. וְׁהָאֵֶ֥בֶן גְּדֹלֶָ֖ה עַל־פִֵ֥י הַבְׁאֵֶ֖ר
(11) and put the stone back in its place on the well's mouth............................. וְׁהָאֵֶ֥בֶן גְּדֹלֶָ֖ה עַל־פִֵ֥י הַבְׁאֵֶ֖ר
(12) ַ֖וַּיֵֶ֖לֶךְ אֵַ֥רְׁצָה בְׁנֵָֽדיֶּ֖ם
(13) "My brethren, where are you from?" ...................................................... אַחֶַ֖י מֵאִַ֣יִן אַתֶָ֑ם
(14) And they said,...................................................................................... וַּיִֹ֣אמְׁר לָהֶֶ֖ם
(15) "We are from Haran." ............................................................................. וּמֵחָרֶָ֖ן אֲנָָּֽחְךָ֑ים
(16) ַ֖וַּיֵֶ֖לֶךְ אֵַ֥רְׁצָה בְׁנֵָֽדיֶּ֖ם
(17) "Do you know Laban the son of Nahor?" .............................................. הַיְׁדַעְׁתֶֶ֖ם אֶת־לָבִָ֣ן בֶֽן־נָחָ֑וֹר
(18) And they said,...................................................................................... וַּיֹֻאמְר לָהֶֶ֖ם
(19) "We know him." ..................................................................................... מֵחָרֶָ֖ן אֲנָָּֽחְךָ֑ים
(20) ַ֖וַּיֵֶ֖לֶךְ אֵַ֥רְׁצָה בְׁנֵָֽדיֶּ֖ם
(21) "Is he well?" ......................................................................................... וָֹ֑הֲשָלִּ֣וּ ל לִמְׁקֹמָ֖ה
(22) And they said,...................................................................................... וַּיֹֻאמְר לָהֶֶ֖ם
(23) "He is well.

(24) And look, his daughter Rachel is coming with the sheep." 

(25) Then he said, .................................................................

(26) "Look, it is still high day; ..............................................................

(27) it is not time for the cattle to be gathered together. .........................................

(28) Water the sheep. ............................................................................

(29) and go feed them." ........................................................................

(30) But they said, ..............................................................................

(31) "We cannot .................................................................

(32) until all the flocks are gathered together, ................................................

(33) and they have rolled the stone from the well's mouth; ................................

(34) then we may water the sheep." ..................................................

(35) Now while he was still speaking with them, ...........................................

(36) Rachel came with her father's sheep, ..............................................

(37) for she was a shepherdess. ..............................................................

(38) And it came to pass, ........................................................................

(39) when Jacob saw Rachel, the daughter of Laban his mother's brother, and the sheep of Laban his mother's brother, ........................................

(40) that Jacob went near ........................................................................

(41) and he rolled the stone from the well's mouth, ........................................

(42) and he watered the flock of Laban his mother's brother. ..........................

(43) Then Jacob kissed Rachel, ................................................................

(44) and he lifted up his voice .................................................................

(45) and he wept. ..................................................................................

(46) And Jacob told Rachel ......................................................................

(47) that he was her father's relative ................................................................

(48) and that he was Rebekah's son. ......................................................

(49) So she ran ...................................................................................
(50) and she told her father.................................................................
(וַתִּגְדֵּ֥ד לְׁאָבִָּֽיהָ)
.................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
(51) 13 Then it came to pass, when Laban heard the report about Jacob his sister's son, ...........................................
(וַיְׁהִי כִּשְׁמֹֹ֙עַ לָבָ֜ן אֶת־שִֵ֣מַע׀ יַעֲקִֹ֣ב בֶּן־אֲחֹתָ֗ו)
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
(52) that he ran to meet him, .................................................................
(וַיְׁרָץ לִקְרָאת)
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
(53) and he embraced him .................................................................
(וַיְׁחַבֶּק־ל)
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
(54) and he kissed him .................................................................
(וַיְׁנַשֶּׁק־ל)
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
(55) and he brought him to his house .................................................................
(וַיְׁבִיאֵֶ֖הוּ אֶל־בֵּית)
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
(56) So he told Laban all these things .................................................................
(וַיְׁסַפִֵ֣ר לְׁלָבֵָּ֔ן אֵֵ֥ת כָּל־הַדְׁבָרִֶ֖ים הָאֵָּֽלֶה)
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
(57) 14 And Laban said to him .................................................................
(וַיָֹ֤אמֶר לוֹ לָבֵָּ֙ן)
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
(58) "Surely you are my bone and my flesh." .................................................................
(אַָ֛ךְ עַצְׁמִֵ֥י וּבְׁשָרִֶ֖י אָתָה)
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
(59) And he stayed with him for a month .................................................................
(וַיְׁסַפִֵ֣ר לְׁלָבֵָּ֔ן אֵֵ֥ת כָּל־הַדְׁבָרִֶ֖ים הָאֵָּֽלֶה)
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................
........................................................................

20.4.2 Description of Details

Descriptive literature provides informative details about how things were done or what things were like, such as the building of the tabernacle or the temple, of furniture or utensils, and of animals and images. Table 20.9 provides the frequency distribution of the various sentence types in this type of literature in the Hebrew Bible. Verbless sentences (Ve) account for 56.1%, and Waw consecutive with imperfect (type Viw) accounts for another 19.3%. These two sentence types, along with a very low speech word density (0.15%), may be regarded as characteristic of this literature type. Perfect aspect sentences (Vp0 and Vp1) accounting for another 10.1%, leaving only 14.5% for all the other types. In regard to the literary structure of detailed descriptions, the structure is much like that of historical narrative.

Total number of words = 9,396
Total number of verses = 446
Total number of imperatives = 4
Total number of speech words = 2
Total number of juxtaposition = 39
Average words per verse = 21.07
Average words per sentence = 6.96
Average sentences per verse = 3.02
Speech word density = 0.15%
Imperative density = 0.30%
Juxtaposition density = 2.91%

Table 20.9
Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Description of Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>758</td>
<td>56.148</td>
<td>Cp1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.741</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>261</td>
<td>19.333</td>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0.519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>5.407</td>
<td>Ci0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>4.741</td>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>3.037</td>
<td>Vdiw</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>2.741</td>
<td>Vdq0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>2.593</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>1.704</td>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>1.111</td>
<td>Vdi0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.074</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.741</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count = 19</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total = 1,350</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Then Bezalel made the ark of acacia wood; 
(2) two and a half cubits was its length; 
(3) a cubit and a half was its width; 
(4) and a cubit and a half was its height. 
(5) He overlaid it with pure gold inside and outside, 
(6) and he made a molding of gold all around it. 
(7) And he cast for it four rings of gold to be set in its four corners: 
(8) two rings were on one side, 
(9) and two rings were on the other side of it. 
(10) He made poles of acacia wood, 
(11) and he overlaid them with gold. 
(12) And he put the poles into the rings at the sides of the ark.
20.4.3 Descriptive Lists

Descriptive list literature provides informative lists of persons, places, things, or institutions that belong to a class or category, such as genealogies, travel itineraries, king lists, lists of administrators, war heroes, etc. Table 20.10 provides the frequency distribution of the various sentence types in this type of literature in the Hebrew Bible. Verbless sentences (Ve) account for 69.8%, and Waw consecutive with imperfect (Viw) accounts for another 10.4%. These two sentence types, along with a very low speech word density (0.39%) and a minimal juxtaposition density (0.93%), may be regarded as characteristic of this type of literature. Perfect aspect sentences (Vp0 and Vp1) account for another 9.8%, leaving only 10% for all the other types. Apart from their proportion, these sentence types are also characteristic of detailed descriptions, the difference

---

52 Line (13) contains a subordinate sentence that is dependent on the sentence of line (12), expressing purpose. It has been transformed into its infinitive construct equivalent, creating an adverbial phrase of purpose modifying the sentence it follows.
being subject matter. With regard to literary structure, however, descriptive lists are distinctively different from other types, lacking any apparent story line, and lacking many conjunctions.\textsuperscript{53}

Total number of words = 24,803  
Total number of verses = 1,680  
Total number of speech words = 17  
Total number of imperatives = 13  
Total number of juxtapositions = 40  
Average words per verse = 14.76  
Average words per sentence = 5.65  
Average sentences per verse = 2.61  
Speech word density = 0.39\%  
Imperative density = 0.30\%  
Juxtaposition density = 0.93\%

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>3,069</td>
<td>69.861</td>
<td>Cp1</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>0.569</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>459</td>
<td>10.448</td>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>0.546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>6.761</td>
<td>Vdiw</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0.250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>3.050</td>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>94</td>
<td>2.140</td>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>1.980</td>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.091</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>63</td>
<td>1.434</td>
<td>Ci0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.046</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0.911</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>38</td>
<td>0.865</td>
<td>Cy0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.637</td>
<td>Vdp1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.023</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>4,393</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) "These are the names of the men .................................................................
(2) who shall stand with you: ............................................................................
(3) from Reuben, Elizur the son of Shedeur; .................................................

\textsuperscript{53} For this type of literature, the measure of juxtaposition density is faulty because its detection depends on the presence of verbals. In a long sequence of verbless sentences its presence goes undetected.
20.4.4 Procedural Type

Procedural literature provides step-by-step instruction on how to do things such as build the tabernacle, offer sacrifices, conduct ceremonies and rituals, etc. Table 20.11 provides the frequency distribution of the various sentence types in this type of literature in the Hebrew Bible. Verbless sentences (type Ve) account for 35.8%, and Waw consecutive with perfect (type Vpw) carries the story line, accounting for another 23.4%. This is followed by imperfect aspect sentences (types Vi0 and Vi1) accounting for another 23.8%. These four sentence types, along with a low speech word density (1.60%) and moderate juxtaposition density (7.0%), may be regarded as characteristic of this type of literature, leaving only 17% for all the other types.

The literary structure of procedural narrative is much like that of predictive prose. The narrative is initiated by an event declared by an imperfect aspect verbal sentence (type Vi0 or Vi1) set in future time by semantic markers (as in Exod. 26:1), or by an imperfect aspect copulative sentence (type Ci0 or Ci1 as in Lev. 2:1). Or it is initiated by a Wᵉhyh sentence (type Cpw), usually with future time semantic markers (cf. § 20.3.3). Or where the time frame of the broader context is clearly future tense, the narrative may begin with an initial Wᵉqtl sentence (type Vpw) as in the following example. The story line is then carried on by Wᵉqtl sentences (type Vpw), placing each
new event in its proper sequential order. Each W$qtl sentence may be followed by any related background episodes or details. The narrative ends with a closing event or other statement of closure.

Total number of words = 13,214
Total number of verses = 674
Total number of speech words = 33
Total number of imperatives = 41
Total number of juxtapositions = 135
Average words per verse = 19.60
Average words per sentence = 6.64
Average sentences per verse = 2.93
Speech word density = 1.66%
Imperative density = 2.0%
Juxtaposition density = 6.78%

Table 20.11
Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Procedural Literature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>713</td>
<td>35.829</td>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>466</td>
<td>23.417</td>
<td>Ci0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>268</td>
<td>13.467</td>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>206</td>
<td>10.352</td>
<td>Vdpw</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>4.322</td>
<td>Vdi1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>3.729</td>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>3.317</td>
<td>Vdqc0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>2.010</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>1.759</td>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.050</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>1.156</td>
<td>Vdqc1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.050</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Count = 20
Total = 2,002

(1) "You shall also make a table of acacia wood;
(2) Two cubits shall be its length,
(3) a cubit its width,
(4) and a cubit and a half its height.
(5) And you shall overlay it with pure gold,
(6) and make a molding of gold all around.................................

(7) 25°You shall make for it a frame of a handbreadth all around,........

(8) and you shall make a gold molding for the frame all around........

(9) 26°And you shall make for it four rings of gold,...........................

(10) and put the rings on the four corners.................................

(11) that are at its four legs..............................................

(12) 27°The rings shall be close to the frame, (Ci1)..........................

(13) as holders for the poles to bear the table.............................

(14) 28°And you shall make the poles of acacia wood,...................

(15) and overlay them with gold...........................................

(16) that the table may be carried with them............................

(17) 29°You shall make its dishes, its pans, its pitchers, and its bowls.

(18) which shall be for pouring...........................................

(19) You shall make them of pure gold...................................

(20) 30°And you shall set the showbread on the table before Me always.

(Exod. 25:23-30)

20.4.5 Instructional Type

Instructional literature provides step-by-step instruction on how to carry out Levitical duties, conquer a city, establish geographical boundaries, and conduct worship, etc. Table 20.12 provides the frequency distribution of the various sentence types in this type of literature in the Hebrew Bible. Verbless sentences (type Ve) account for 35.6%, and Waw consecutive with perfect (type Vpw) accounts for another 25.3%. This is followed by imperfect aspect sentences (types Vi0 and Vi1) accounting for another 18.4%. These four sentence types, along with a low speech word density (0.51%) and a moderate juxtaposition density (3.5%), may be regarded as characteristic of

54 Line (13) contains a subordinate sentence that is dependent on the sentence of line (12), expressing purpose. It has been transformed into its infinitive construct equivalent, creating an adverbial phrase of purpose modifying the sentence it follows.
this type of literature, leaving 20.7% for all the other types. These characteristics are very much like those of the procedural literature.

The literary structure of instructional narrative is also much like that of procedural narrative. The narrative is initiated by an event declared by an imperfect aspect verbal sentence (type Vi0 or Vi1) set in future time by semantic markers. Or it is initiated by a Wchyh sentence (type Cpw), usually with future time semantic markers (cf. § 20.3.3). Or where the time frame of the broader context is clearly future tense, the narrative may begin with an initial Wcqt1 sentence (type Vpw), or with a verbless sentence as in the following example. The story line is then carried on by Wcqt1 sentences (type Vpw), placing each new event in its proper sequential order. Each Wcqt1 sentence may be followed by any related background episodes or details. The narrative ends with a closing event or other statement of closure.

Table 20.12
Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Instructional Literature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>35.642</td>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>2.365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>25.338</td>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1.520</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>8.615</td>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>9.797</td>
<td>Vdn1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>6.081</td>
<td>Vdn0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>2.872</td>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2.703</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>4.054</td>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>592</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total number of words = 3,618
Total number of verses = 169
Total number of speech words = 5
Total number of imperatives = 21
Total number of juxtapositions = 21
Average words per verse = 21.40
Average words per sentence = 6.40
Average sentences per verse = 3.50
Speech word density = 0.51%
Imperative density = 2.14%
Juxtaposition density = 3.55%
(1) If his offering is a burnt sacrifice of the herd,
(2) he shall offer a male without blemish;
(3) he shall offer it of his own free will at the door of the tabernacle of meeting before the LORD;
(4) Then he shall put his hand on the head of the burnt offering,
(5) and it will be accepted on his behalf to make atonement for him.
(6) He shall kill the bull before the LORD;
(7) and the priests, Aaron's sons, shall bring the blood
(8) and they shall sprinkle the blood all around on the altar
(9) that is by the door of the tabernacle of meeting.
(10) And he shall skin the burnt offering
(11) and he shall cut it into its pieces.
(12) The sons of Aaron the priest shall put fire on the altar
(13) and lay the wood in order on the fire.
(14) Then the priests, Aaron's sons, shall lay the parts, the head, and the fat in order on the wood
(15) that is on the fire
(16) that is upon the altar;
(17) but he shall wash its entrails and its legs with water.
(18) And the priest shall burn all on the altar as a burnt sacrifice, an offering made by fire,

a sweet aroma to the LORD. (Lev. 1:3-9)

20.4.6 Juridical Type

Juridical literature provides law codes regulating various public and religious practices, such as the Ten Commandments, Sabbath and festival laws, civil case laws, etc. Table 20.13 provides the frequency distribution of the various sentence types in this type of literature in the Hebrew Bible. Verbless sentences (type Ve) account for 28.4%, and Waw consecutive with perfect (type Vpw) accounts for another 18.7%, followed by imperfect aspect sentences (types Vi0 and Vi1) accounting for another 30.7%. These four sentence types, along with a low speech word density (1.60%) and a moderate juxtaposition density (8.5%), may be regarded as characteristic of this type of literature, leaving 22.3% for all the other types. One would expect the imperative
density (1.2%) to be much higher in this literature type, but evidently once the imperative mood is introduced by an imperative sentence, the mood is carried on by succeeding Waw consecutive with perfect sentences (type Vpw) or even succeeding imperfect sentences (types Vi0 and Vi1).

The literary structure of juridical narrative is similar to that of instructional narrative. The narrative is initiated by a command expressed by an imperfect aspect verbal sentence (type Vi0 or Vi1) in the imperative mood\(^{55}\) set in future time by semantic markers. Or where the time frame of the broader context is clearly future tense, the narrative may begin with an initial W\(^{eq}\)tl sentence (type Vpw) as in Deut. 11:1. The story line is then carried on by W\(^{eq}\)tl sentences (type Vpw), placing each new command in its proper sequential order. Each W\(^{eq}\)tl sentence may be followed by any related background information or details. The narrative usually ends with a statement of closure.

Total number of words = 27,967  
Total number of verses = 1,407  
Total number of speech words = 81  
Total number of imperatives = 60  
Total number of juxtapositions = 399  
Average words per verse = 19.88  
Average words per sentence = 5.93  
Average sentences per verse = 3.35  
Speech word density = 1.60%  
Imperative density = 1.18%  
Juxtaposition density = 8.53%

\(^{55}\) The imperative mood may be marked by an imperative verb form, as in line (2) of the example, or by semantic markers, or it may be resident in the context.
Table 20.13
Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Juridical Literature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>1,327</td>
<td>28.367</td>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>0.470</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>874</td>
<td>18.683</td>
<td>Cp1</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0.363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>867</td>
<td>17.162</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>0.192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>632</td>
<td>13.510</td>
<td>Vdn0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.086</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>354</td>
<td>7.567</td>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>3.206</td>
<td>Vdn1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.064</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>106</td>
<td>2.266</td>
<td>Vdi1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.043</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>2.245</td>
<td>Vdi0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.043</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>1.967</td>
<td>Vdqe1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.043</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>1.881</td>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci0</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>0.962</td>
<td>Vdqe0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>0.855</td>
<td>Vdp1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count =</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total = 4,749</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) And the LORD spoke to Moses, saying: .........................................................וַיֵֹ֥אמֶר יְׁהוֶָ֖ה אֶל־מֹשֵֶ֥ה לֵאמֵֹּ֔ור
(2) Speak also to the children of Israel, saying: .............................................וְׁאַתַָּ֞ה דַבֵֹ֙ר אֶל־בְׁנֵָּ֤י יִשְׁרָאֵלֹ֙ לֵאמֵֹּ֔ר
(3) `Surely My Sabbaths you shall keep,.............................................................כִֹי אֲנִֵ֥י יְׁהוֶָ֖ה מְׁקַדִּישְׁכֶָּֽם
(4) for it is a sign between Me and you throughout your generations, ...................לְּדֹרִֹ֣תֵיכֵֶּ֔ם
(5) that you may know ..........................................................וְּיָדְעוּ כִֵ֥י אֲנִֵ֥י יְׁהוֶָ֖ה מְׁקַדִּישְׁכֶָּֽם
(6) that I the LORD am sanctifying you. .................................................................לְּךָ יִהְיֶֹ֥ה מְׁקַדִּישְׁכֶָּֽם
(7) You shall keep the Sabbath, therefore,.............................................................וֹשֳֵֹ֥מֶרֶה אַתֹּ הַשָּׁבַֹ֖ת
(8) for it is holy to you.........................................................................................כִֹי קָדֶּ֣שׁ הָיְֽהָּ לָכֶָ֖ם
(9) Everyone who profanes it shall surely be put to death;.................................מַחְלַלֵֹ֥ה מִתֹּת יוֹמֵֽהַת
(10) for whoever does any work on it, .................................................................וְּאֵֽהָּ֥בוֹא יִוְּשָׁב בְּֽהַמָּעָֽלֶּה

56 Line (5) contains a subordinate sentence that is dependent on the sentence of line (4), expressing purpose. It has been transformed into its infinitive construct equivalent, creating an adverbial phrase of purpose modifying the sentence it follows.
that person shall be cut off from among his people.

Work shall be done for six days, but the seventh is the Sabbath of rest, holy to the LORD.

Whoever does any work on the Sabbath day, he shall surely be put to death.

Therefore the children of Israel shall keep the Sabbath to observe the Sabbath throughout their generations as a perpetual covenant to observe the Sabbath throughout their generations as a perpetual covenant. It is a sign between Me and the children of Israel forever; a sign between Me and the children of Israel forever; for in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, and on the seventh day He rested and was refreshed.

And He gave Moses, when He had made an end of speaking with him on Mount Sinai, two tablets of the Testimony, tablets of stone, written with the finger of God.

### 20.4.7 Predictive Prose Type

Predictive prose provides prophecies of the future found mainly in the prose sections of the prophets. Table 20.14 provides the frequency distribution of the various sentence types in this type of literature in the Hebrew Bible. Verbless sentences (type Ve) account for 25.1% of the text, and Waw consecutive with perfect (type Vpw) accounts for another 14.8%, followed by imperfect aspect sentences (types Vi0 and Vi1) accounting for another 21.4%. These four sentence types, along with a high speech word density (7.4%), a moderate imperative density (4.6%) and a moderate juxtaposition density (8.1%), may be regarded as characteristic of this type of literature.
Interestingly, perfect aspect sentences (types Vp0 and Vp1) also account for another 19.9%, leaving only 18.8% for the other sentence types.

The literary structure of predictive prose is much like that of procedural narrative. The narrative is initiated by an event declared by an imperfect aspect verbal sentence (type Vi0 or Vi1) set in future time by semantic markers (as in the example below), or by an imperative (as in Jer. 19:1; 22:1, etc.), or by an imperfect aspect copulative sentence (type Ci0 or Ci1 as in Zech. 13:1). Or it may be initiated by a Whyhy sentence (type Cpw), usually with future time semantic markers (cf. § 20.3.3), as in Deut. 28:1 and 30:1. The story line is then carried on by Wqtl sentences (type Vpw), placing each new event in its proper sequential order. Each Wqtl sentence may be followed by any related background episodes or details. The narrative ends with a closing event or other statement of closure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>1,339</td>
<td>25.106</td>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>0.431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>791</td>
<td>14.829</td>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>586</td>
<td>10.986</td>
<td>Vdn0</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0.262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>583</td>
<td>10.930</td>
<td>Ci0</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0.112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>558</td>
<td>10.461</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.075</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>477</td>
<td>8.934</td>
<td>Vdp1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>446</td>
<td>8.361</td>
<td>Vdpw</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.056</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>2.081</td>
<td>Vd1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.037</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>2.137</td>
<td>Vdi0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.037</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>1.594</td>
<td>Vdqc1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.037</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>71</td>
<td>1.331</td>
<td>Vdp0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>1.087</td>
<td>Vdqc0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cp1</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>0.619</td>
<td>Cy0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>0.619</td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>5,334</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total number of words = 29,716
Total number of verses = 1,342
Total number of speech words = 395
Total number of imperatives = 234
Total number of juxtapositions = 418
Average words per verse = 22.14
Average words per sentence = 5.57
Average sentences per verse = 3.97
Speech word density = 7.40%
Imperative density = 4.38%
Juxtaposition density = 8.14%

1. "The LORD your God will raise up for you a Prophet like me from your midst, from your brethren....."

2. Him you shall hear, according to all you desired of the LORD your God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, "Let me not hear again the voice of the LORD my God, nor let me see this great fire anymore, lest I die.'

3. 16th according to all you desired of the LORD your God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, "Let me not hear again the voice of the LORD my God, nor let me see this great fire anymore, lest I die.'

4. 17 'And the LORD said to me: 'What they have spoken is good. And it shall be that whoever will not hear My words, that prophet shall die.'

5. 18 whoever will not hear My words, that prophet shall die.'

6. 19 And it shall be which He speaks in My name, that prophet shall die.'

7. 20 But the prophet who presumes to speak a word in My name which I have not commanded him to speak, or who speaks in the name of other gods,

8. 59 Lines (15) and (16) contain a casus pendens compound subject noun phrase standing apart from its associated sentence with which it is idiomatically joined by a conjunction. The phrase is resumed in the associated sentence by the phrase "that prophet." (See § 13.4.3).
"How shall we know the word which the LORD has not spoken?"

When a prophet speaks in the name of the LORD, if the thing does not happen, that is the thing which the LORD has not spoken; the prophet has spoken it presumptuously; you shall not be afraid of him.

### 20.4.8 Expository Prose Type

Expository prose contains such things as prayers and expressions of praise and honor for God and man. This literature type has the smallest corpus of any other type, having only fourteen of the possible thirty sentence types. Table 20.15 provides the frequency distribution of the various sentence types in this type of literature in the Hebrew Bible. Verbless sentences (type Ve) account for 37.6% of the text, followed by perfect aspect sentences (types Vp0 and Vp1) accounting for another 21.2%. These three sentence types may be regarded as characteristic of this literature type. Interestingly, Waw consecutive with imperfect (Viw, 9.9%) and Waw consecutive with perfect (type Vpw, 9.3%) have approximately the same distribution, while imperfect aspect sentences (types Vi0 and Vi1) account for another 12%, leaving only 10% for the other sentence types. The literary structure of expository prose seems to have no definable syntactic structure, but the structure of each narrative differs according the semantic affinities of the content.

- Total number of words = 1,854
- Total number of verses = 83
- Total number of speech words = 3
- Total number of imperatives = 6
- Total number of juxtapositions = 19
- Average words per verse = 22.34
- Average words per sentence = 5.72
- Average sentences per verse = 3.90
- Speech word density = 0.92%
- Imperative density = 1.85%
- Juxtaposition density = 4.63%
Table 20.15
Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Expository Prose

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>37.654</td>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>3.395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>15.741</td>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2.160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>9.877</td>
<td>Cy0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.926</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>9.259</td>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>8.642</td>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>5.427</td>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>5.247</td>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>324</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

60 Line (4) contains a subordinate sentence that is dependent on the sentence of line (3), expressing purpose. It has been transformed into its infinitive construct equivalent, creating an adverbial phrase of purpose modifying the sentence it follows. Similar comments apply to lines (16), (19), (20), (21), (35), (40), (41), (42), (44), and (46).

(1) "For this commandment which I command you today is not too mysterious for you, it is not far off.

(2) nor is it far off.

(3) It is not in heaven.

(4) that you should say,

(5) `Who will ascend into heaven for us and bring it to us, that we may hear it and do it?'

(6) and bring it to us, that we may hear it and do it?

(7) that you should say,

(8) `Who will go over the sea for us and bring it to us, that we may hear it and do it?'

(9) Nor is it beyond the sea,

(10) that you should say,

(11) `Who will go over the sea for us and bring it to us, that we may hear it and do it?'

(12) and bring it to us, that we may hear it and do it?

(13) that you should say,

(14) `But the word is very near you, in your mouth and in your heart,'
(16) that you may do it. 

(17) “See, I have set before you today life and good, death and evil, 

(18) in that I command you today 

(19) to love the LORD your God, 

(20) to walk in His ways, 

(21) and to keep His commandments, His statutes, and His judgments, 

(22) that you may live. 

(23) and you may multiply; 

(24) and the LORD your God may bless you in the land 

(25) which you go to possess. 

(26) But if your heart turns away 

(27) so that you do not hear, 

(28) and are drawn away, 

(29) and worship other gods, 

(30) and serve them, 

(31) I announce to you today 

(32) that you shall surely perish; 

(33) you shall not prolong your days in the land 

(34) which you cross over the Jordan. 

(35) to go in and possess 

(36) I call heaven and earth as witnesses today against you, 

(37) that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing: 

(38) therefore choose life, 

61 Line (35) contains a subordinate sentence that is dependent on the sentence of line (34), expressing purpose. It has been transformed into its infinitive construct equivalent, creating an adverbial phrase of purpose modifying the sentence it follows. This applies also to lines 41, 42, 43, and 46.
(39) that both you and your descendants may live; ...........................................
(40) \( ^{20w} \) that you may love the LORD your God, ...................................................
(41) that you may obey His voice, ...........................................................................
(42) and that you may cling to Him, ........................................................................
(43) for He is your life and the length of your days; .................................................
(44) and that you may dwell in the land ...................................................................
(45) which the LORD swore to your fathers, to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, ................
(46) to give them.” (Deut. 30:11-20) ........................................................................

**20.4.9 Expository Poetry Type**

Expository poetry contains such things as prayers and expressions of praise and honor for God and man, in poetry as distinguished from prose. This literature type occurs in the poetical books and in other poems scattered throughout the prose books. Table 20.16 provides the frequency distribution of the various sentence types in this type of literature in the Hebrew Bible. Verbless sentences (type Ve) account for 21.1% of the text, followed by imperfect aspect sentences (types Vi0 and Vi1) accounting for another 42.1%, while perfect aspect sentences (types Vp0 and Vp1) account for another 20.6%. These five sentence types, along with minimal word density (4.5), and a maximum imperative density (8.8%) and maximum juxtaposition density (18.2%), may be regarded as characteristic of this literature type. Interestingly, Waw consecutive with imperfect (Viw, 5.3%) and Waw consecutive with perfect (type Vpw, 1.9%) contribute little, leaving only 9% for the other sentence types. Like that of expository prose, the literary structure of expository poetry seems to have no definable syntactic structure, but the structure of each narrative differs according the semantic affinities of its content.

- Total number of words = 58,600
- Total number of verses = 5,393
- Total number of speech words = 271
- Total number of imperatives = 1,128
- Total number of juxtapositions = 2,346
- Average words per verse = 10.87
- Average words per sentence = 4.56
- Average sentences per verse = 2.38
- Speech word density = 2.11%
Imperative density = 8.78%
Juxtaposition density = 18.28%

Table 20.16
Frequency Distribution of Sentence Types for Expository Poetry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>2,949</td>
<td>22.974</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>31</td>
<td>0.242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>2,713</td>
<td>21.136</td>
<td>Cy0</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0.218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>2,458</td>
<td>19.149</td>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>0.210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>1,419</td>
<td>11.055</td>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>1,227</td>
<td>9.559</td>
<td>Vdy0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.078</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>683</td>
<td>5.321</td>
<td>Vdn1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.039</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>516</td>
<td>4.020</td>
<td>Vdp1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.031</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>241</td>
<td>1.878</td>
<td>Vdpw</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>1.145</td>
<td>Vdi1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>127</td>
<td>0.989</td>
<td>Vdi0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci0</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>0.467</td>
<td>Vdqc0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>0.366</td>
<td>Cy1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cp1</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>0.343</td>
<td>Vdiw</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>0.304</td>
<td>Vdp0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vdn0</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>0.265</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total</td>
<td>12,836</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) Then David lamented with this lamentation over Saul and over Jonathan his son, ...........................................
(2) 18 and he said ...........................................................................................................................................
(3) to teach the children of Judah the Song of the Bow, 62 ........................................................................
(4) indeed it is written in the Book of Jasher: ...............................................................................................
(5) 19 "The beauty of Israel is slain on your high places! .................................................................
(6) How the mighty have fallen! ....................................................................................................................
(7) 20 Tell it not in Gath, ..............................................................................................................................
(8) Proclaim it not in the streets of Ashkelon— .........................................................................................

62 See f. n. 53 above.
(9) Lest the daughters of the Philistines rejoice,

פֶָּֽן־תִשְׁמַֹ֙חְׁנָהֹ֙ בְׁנִ֣וֹת פְׁלִשְׁתִֵּ֔ים

(10) Lest the daughters of the uncircumcised triumph.

פֶָּֽן־תִשְׁמַֹ֙חְׁנָהֹ֙ בְׁנִ֣וֹת הָעֲרֵלִָּֽים

(11) 21 O mountains of Gilboa, Let there be no dew.

וּרְּחִֵ֣י בַגִּלְׁבָֹ֗עַ אַל־טֵַ֧ל

(12) nor let there be rain upon you,

וּרְּחִֵ֣י בַגִּלְׁבָֹ֗עַ אַל־טֵַ֧ל

(13) Nor let there be fields of offerings.

וּשְׁדִֵ֣י תְׁרוּמָֹ֑ת

(14) For the shield of the mighty is cast away there!

כִִ֣י שָָּ֤ם נִגְׁעַלֹ֙ מָגִֵֶּֽן גִּבוֹרִֵּ֔ים

(15) The shield of Saul, not anointed with oil.

וְׁאַל־מָטָָּ֛ר עֲלֵיכֶֶ֖ם

(16) From the blood of the slain, From the fat of the mighty, The bow of Jonathan did not turn back,

וְׁחִֶ֣רֶב שָאֵ֕וּל לֵֹ֥א תָשֶ֖וּב רֵיָקָָּֽם

(17) And the sword of Saul did not return empty.

וְׁחִֶ֣רֶב שָאֵ֕וּל לֵֹ֥א תָשֶ֖וּב רֵיָקָָּֽם

(18) Saul and Jonathan were beloved and pleasant in their lives,

וְׁבְׁמוֹתֶָ֖ם לִֹ֣א נִפְׁרָָ֑ד

(19) And in their death they were not divided;

וְׁבְׁמוֹתֶָ֖ם לִֹ֣א נִפְׁרָָ֑ד

(20) They were swifter than eagles,

כִִ֣י שָָּ֤ם נִגְׁעַלֹ֙ מָגִֵֶּֽן גִּבוֹרִֵּ֔ים

(21) They were stronger than lions.

כִִ֣י שָָּ֤ם נִגְׁעַלֹ֙ מָגִֵֶּֽן גִּבוֹרִֵּ֔ים

(22) “O daughters of Israel, weep over Saul,

בְׁנוֹת יִשְׁרָאֵֵּ֔ל אֶל־שָאֶ֖וּל בְׁכֶָ֑ינָה

(23) Who clothed you in scarlet, with luxury;

הַמַּלְׁבִָּֽשְׁכֶָּ֤ם שָנִיֹ֙ עִם־עֲדָנִֵּ֔ים

(24) Who put ornaments of gold on your apparel.

הַמַּעֲלֶהֹ֙ עֲדִִ֣י זָהֵָ֔ב עֶַ֖ל לְׁבוּשְׁכֶָּֽן

(25) How the mighty have fallen in the midst of the battle!

אֵַ֚יךְ נָפְׁלִ֣וּ גִבֹּרִֵּ֔ים בְׁתֶ֖וֹוכֹ֥הֲלָה

(26) And the weapons of war perished!”

וַיֹּאִבְדֶ֖וּ כְׁלֵֵ֥י מִלְׁחָמָָּֽה

(27) I am distressed for you, my brother Jonathan;

צַר־לִִ֣י עָלֶָ֗יך אָחִיֹ֙ יְׁהִ֣וֹנָתֵָּ֔ן

(28) You have been very pleasant to me;

נָעֵַ֥מְׁתָ לִֶ֖י מְׁאָֹ֑ד

(29) Your love to me was wonderful,

נִפְׁלְׁאַָּ֤תָה אַהֲבָָּֽתְׁךֹ֙ לִֵּ֔י

(30) Surpassing the love of women.

מֵאַהֲבֶַ֖ת נָשִָּֽים

(31) How the mighty have fallen,

אֵַ֚יךְ נָפְׁלִ֣וּ גִבֹּרִֵּ֔ים

(32) And the weapons of war perished!”

וַיֹּאִבְדֶ֖וּ כְׁלֵֵ֥י מִלְׁחָמָָּֽה

(2 Sam. 1:17-27)

63 Lines (23) and (24) are participle phrases that remotely modify the word Saul in the sentence of line (22), and so are not sentences here.
20.4.10 Predictive Poetry Type

Predictive poetry contains prophetic literature written in poetry as distinguished from prose. This literature type occurs primarily in the prophetical books and in other poems scattered throughout the other books. Table 20.17 provides the frequency distribution of the various sentence types in this type of literature in the Hebrew Bible. Verbless sentences (type Ve) account for 21.2% of the text, followed by imperfect aspect sentences (types Vi0 and Vi1) accounting for another 33.0%, while perfect aspect sentences (types Vp0 and Vp1) account for another 22.9%. These five sentence types, along with high imperative density (7.8%) and a high juxtaposition density (18.6%), may be regarded as characteristic of this literature type. Interestingly, Waw consecutive with imperfect (type Viw, 4.1%) and Waw consecutive with perfect (type Vpw, 8.8%) contribute little, leaving only 10% for the other sentence types. Like that of expository prose, the literary structure of predictive poetry seems to have no definable syntactic structure, but the structure of each narrative differs according the semantic affinities of its content.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>2,297</td>
<td>21.215</td>
<td>Vdn0</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>0.462</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>1,880</td>
<td>17.364</td>
<td>Cp0</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>0.434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>1,693</td>
<td>15.637</td>
<td>Cn1</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>0.296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>1,271</td>
<td>11.739</td>
<td>Ci0</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>0.268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>1,214</td>
<td>11.213</td>
<td>Cy0</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>0.046</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>961</td>
<td>8.876</td>
<td>Vdpw</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.037</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>443</td>
<td>4.092</td>
<td>Vdi0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0.037</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde0</td>
<td>295</td>
<td>2.725</td>
<td>Vdqc0</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0.028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cpw</td>
<td>172</td>
<td>1.589</td>
<td>Vdiw</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vde1</td>
<td>138</td>
<td>1.275</td>
<td>Vdqc1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0.018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cn0</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>0.840</td>
<td>Vdn1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ci1</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>0.757</td>
<td>Cy1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ciw</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>0.499</td>
<td>Vdp1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cp1</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>0.499</td>
<td>Vdy0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count =</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td>Total =</td>
<td>10,827</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Total Number of Words = 53,109
Total number of Verses = 2,932
Total number of speech words = 482
Total number of imperatives = 845
Total number of juxtapositions = 2,015
Average words per verse = 18.1
Average words per sentence = 4.90
Average sentences per verse = 3.82
Speech word density = 4.45%
Imperative density = 7.79%
Juxtaposition density = 18.61%

(1) There shall come forth a Rod from the stem of Jesse,
(2) And a Branch shall grow out of his roots.
(3) The Spirit of the LORD shall rest upon Him.
(4) The Spirit of wisdom and understanding,
(5) The Spirit of counsel and might,
(6) The Spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD,
(7) His delight is in the fear of the LORD,
(8) And He shall not judge by the sight of His eyes,
(9) Nor decide by the hearing of His ears;
(10) But with righteousness He shall judge the poor,
(11) And decide with equity for the meek of the earth;
(12) He shall strike the earth with the rod of His mouth,
(13) And with the breath of His lips He shall slay the wicked.
(14) Righteousness shall be the belt of His loins,
(15) And faithfulness the belt of His waist.
(16) The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb,
(17) The leopard shall lie down with the young goat,
(18) The calf and the young lion and the fatling together;
(19) And a little child shall lead them.

64 Lines (4), (5), and (6) are noun phrases modifying the phrase “the Spirit of the LORD” of line (3) and so are not sentences here.
20.5 Summary

20.5.1. The Ten Principal Literary Types of Discourse:

1. historical
2. descriptive details
3. descriptive lists
4. procedural
5. instructional
6. juridical
7. predictive prose
8. expository prose
9. expository poetry
10. predictive poetry

20.5.2. The 31 Principal Types of Sentence Structure:

1. $\text{Cp0} - \text{hyh}$ = copulative, perfect, initial
2. $\text{Cp1} - \text{X hyh}$ = copulative, perfect, non-initial\(^{65}\)
3. $\text{Cpw} - \text{w}^\text{hyh}$ = copulative, perfect, Waw consecutive
4. $\text{Ci0} - \text{yhyh}$ = copulative, imperfect, initial

\(^{65}\) In this sentence structure and the others, the X stands for one or more non-verbal words or phrases. When enclosed in parentheses, X is optional. X does not include negatives and infinitives absolute, which are regarded as part of the verb phrase.
(5) Ci1—X yhyh = copulative, imperfect, non-initial
(6) Ciw—wayyhyh = copulative, imperfect, Waw consecutive
(7) Cy0— 쉼 = copulative, durative, initial (§ 4.3.7; 11.5.2)
(8) Cy1—X 쉼 = copulative, durative, non-initial
(9) Cn0—יֵש = negative copulative, durative, initial (§ 11.5.2)
(10) Cn1—X יֵש = negative copulative, durative, non-initial
(11) Ve—X = verbless sentence
(12) Vp0—qt (X) = verbal, perfect, initial
(13) Vp1—X qt = verbal, perfect, non-initial
(14) Vpw—w^qt = verbal, perfect, Waw consecutive
(15) Vi0—yqt (X) = verbal, imperfect, initial
(16) Vi1—X yqt = verbal, imperfect, non-initial
(17) Viw—wayyqt = verbal, imperfect, Waw consecutive
(18) Vdp0—hyh (X) qotel = verbal, durative, initial
(19) Vdp1—X hyh (X) qotel = verbal, durative, non-initial
(20) Vdpw—w^hyh (X) qotel = verbal, durative, Waw consecutive
(21) Vdi0—yhyh (X) qotel = verbal, durative, initial
(22) Vdi1—X yhyh (X) qotel = verbal, durative, non-initial
(23) Vdiw—wayyhyh (X) qotel = verbal, durative, Waw consecutive
(24) Vdy0—ڴ (X) qotel = verbal, durative, initial
(25) Vdy1—X ڴ (X) qotel = verbal, durative, non-initial
(26) Vdn0—יֵש (X) qotel = negative verbal, durative, initial
(27) Vdn1—X יֵש (X) qotel = negative verbal, durative, non-initial
(28) Vde0—qotel = verbal, durative, initial, no auxiliary
(29) Vde1—X qotel = verbal, durative, non-initial, no auxiliary
(30) Vdq0—qotel (X) Cop = verbal, durative, initial, post-auxiliary
(31) Vdq1—X qotel (X) Cop = verbal, durative, non-initial, post-auxiliary

20.5.3 Distribution of Significant Sentence Types

Table 20.18 lists the distribution of the significant sentence types according to their associated literature types. For each literature type the significant sentence types are highlighted in yellow. The statistics indicates that there is no significant difference between the use of initial and non-initial verbs with perfect and imperfect forms, that is, between types Vp0 and Vp1, and
between types $Vi_0$ and $Vi_1$. The difference has to do with the presence or absence of marked prominence within the sentences themselves and has nothing to do with distinguishing literary types. In addition, the procedural and instructive types are essentially the same, as well as the case of the juridical and predictive prose types.

In addition to sentence types, a few other features contribute to the distinction of literary types. These characteristics include sentence length, speech sentence density, imperative density, and juxtaposition density. These qualities tend to be in the domain of semantic features. Other semantic traits may also contribute to the identity of literary types, such as subordinate conjunction density, conditional conjunction density, and the density of apocopated verbal forms, but these features have yet to be studied.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ve</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>56.1</td>
<td>70.0</td>
<td>35.1</td>
<td>37.3</td>
<td>28.3</td>
<td>24.9</td>
<td>30.8</td>
<td>21.1</td>
<td>21.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp0</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>10.9</td>
<td>20.2</td>
<td>11.0</td>
<td>11.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vp1</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>11.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vpw</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>23.6</td>
<td>27.1</td>
<td>18.1</td>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>8.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi0</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>17.1</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>22.9</td>
<td>17.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vi1</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>2.9</td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>4.9</td>
<td>19.1</td>
<td>15.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viw</td>
<td>31.2</td>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Av. Wds</td>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>5.9</td>
<td>5.6</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>4.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sp. Den.</td>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imp. Den.</td>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>0.3</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>4.6</td>
<td>2.4</td>
<td>8.8</td>
<td>7.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jux. Den.</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>2.8</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>7.0</td>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>3.9</td>
<td>18.2</td>
<td>18.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This chapter discusses the principal literary types of discourse, the frequency distribution of the various verbal forms, mapping of the levels of sentence dependency, and how the different types of sentence structure interrelate in discourse. Expositors should be aware of the information these structures convey. Chapter 21 discusses the principles of discourse analysis.
CHAPTER 21
The Analysis of Hebrew Discourse

Chapters 14 through 17 discuss the syntactic analysis of the various kinds of Hebrew phrases. Chapter 18 discusses the syntactic-semantic analysis of Hebrew sentences. Chapter 20 discusses various types of discourse, the different kinds of sentence structures, how they relate to conjunctions and the story line, and how to map the depth of dependency. This chapter moves into the domain of discourse analysis, tracing the flow of thought with all its intricacies. At this stage of the analysis of a discourse, all its words, phrases, and sentences have been previously analyzed, with all its derived information at hand for the expositor.

Discourse analysis consists of identifying the entities of a discourse, and what the text says about how the interrelationships of their categories, characteristics, capabilities, and actions vary within some space-time environment. The expositor identifies the persons, places, and things of the discourse. He maps the changing prominence of these participants and props as the text moves forward. He maps the flow of thought along the story line, charting the supporting information in the subsidiary sidetracks, and taking note of the mutual discourse affinities among sentences and clusters of sentences. He plots the development of the argument from premise to conclusion.

Discourse analysis involves unearthing the structure of the semantic and logical organization of the information of the text at the discourse level—the natural outline of the passage. This is accomplished by executing a few ordered analysis rules based on grouping according to discourse affinity. That analysis procedure is the subject of this chapter.

21.1 The Role of Prominence in Discourse

Every constituent in a sentence has one of three possible levels of prominence: (1) primary, (2) secondary, or (3) background. By default, the subject of a sentence has primary prominence,\(^1\) with secondary prominence going to the complement of the verb. The other constituents are in the background. But primary prominence may have been granted to another constituent for rhetorical

---

\(^1\) Primary prominence belongs to the first slot of the sentence which the subject normally occupies unless displaced by some prominence transformation. One significant exception is the use of Waw consecutive where the syntactic idiom demands the verb in first position.
purposes or syntactical reasons. At the discourse level, a sentence or cluster of sentences may be granted position prominence for rhetorical reasons, that is, the sentence preempts or else follows what would be its normally expected place in the sequence. Prominence contributes to the information contained in the discourse.

21.2 Discourse Affinity

As in the case of the constituents of sentences, the sentences of a discourse have mutual affinity. Discourse affinity may be regarded as a linguistic force that holds the elements of a discourse together logically and semantically. It is like gravity that holds the planets in orbit around the sun, the moon around the earth, and solar systems together in a galaxy. It is like the forces of chemistry that hold the particles of an atom together, and hold atoms together in molecules. But unlike the forces of nature which can be measured, discourse affinity can only be estimated. A number of discourse characteristics contribute to the mutual affinities of its sentences: (1) position affinity, (2) semantic affinity, and (3) conjunctive affinity. These three forces each contribute to the mutual discourse affinity among sentences.

21.2.1 Position Affinity

Obviously, the closer sentences are in a sequence the greater the position affinity, and adjacent sentences have the greatest, apart from some vetoing influences. But it is not so self-evident that clusters of sentences also have similar affinity, which also contributes to the analysis. contiguous sentences and clusters of sentences have discourse affinity, apart from some veto factor.

21.2.2 Semantic Affinity

The greater the number of linguistic features two sentences share, the greater their mutual semantic affinity. The following is a list of common features that contribute to the mutual semantic affinity of sentences:

(1) common participants and props;
(2) common time frame;
(3) common place;
(4) common tense, mood, mode, and negation;
(5) common theme.

21.2.3 Conjunctive Affinity

Obviously adjacent sentences linked by a conjunction have conjunctive affinity, apart from some vetoing factor. But not only are adjacent sentences linked by conjunctions, contiguous clusters of clauses are likewise linked, and so also clusters of clusters. So it is important to know
whether a conjunction links sentences or clusters. Weak semantic affinity between adjacent sentences marks a break between clusters; the intervening conjunction links clusters not sentences. Adjacent sentences and clusters of sentences must be in semantic agreement with the relationship expressed by their linking conjunction or else discourse affinity is vetoed.

### 21.3 Conjunctions as Discourse Markers

Conjunctions are one of the keys to the structure of discourse (§ 9.0). They link sentences and clusters of sentences, identifying the logical and sequential relationships among sentences and clusters. One may assume that a conjunction exists before every sentence and every cluster of sentences, linking the sentence or cluster to the preceding elements of the discourse. In the case of asyndeton, a conjunction was omitted because its conjunctive sense is inferred and anticipated by semantic context; it is safe and proper to restore omitted conjunctions in the analysis of discourse structure.

In addition to sentence types (discussed in § 20.3) and the conjunctions that join them, the semantic content of the sentences also influences how sentences are arranged hierarchically in sequential clusters and sequences of clusters. Four prominent semantic factors tend to optimize in the flow of thought: time, place, participant-prop, and theme. Other factors that also contribute to marking discourse hierarchy are: tense, mood, mode, negation, and sentence role. Sentences are usually clustered so that they have more of these factors in common with one another than they have with distant sentences (or clusters). The clustering of clusters follows the same tendency except that the ranges of the factors become broader. The result is that the clusters at the lowest hierarchical level have the strongest affinity on these factors. Consequently, the analysis of discourse should begin at the lowest hierarchic level and work through successively higher levels.

### 21.4 Grouping Principles

Seven ordered principles govern the grouping of the sentences and clusters of sentences into semantic clusters: (1) the unpacking principle, (2) the principle of greatest discourse affinity, (3) the principle of conjunctive compatibility, (4) the principle of completeness, (5) the principle of conjunctive priority, (6) the principle of acquired semantic affinity, and (7) the principle of iteration.

#### 21.4.1 Unpacking

A noun phrase may be modified by a dependent relative pronoun clause (or equivalent) in which case the clause has become embedded in the sentence in which the phrase is a constituent. At the discourse level of analysis it may be helpful to unpack the embedded dependent clauses,
making them dependent instead on the sentence in which the phrase it modifies is a constituent. This is particularly helpful when the relative pronoun clause is compound, that is, it consists of multiple coordinate clauses or even a more complex cluster. When unpacking is appropriate, the following steps should be followed:

(1) Replace the relative pronoun (or equivalent) with a subordinating conjunction that expresses the dependent relationship the clauses have with the associated phrase.

(2) In the modifier slot occupied by the dependent clauses, without altering the meaning of the text, insert a terse substitute that encapsules the equivalent meaning of the dependent clauses. The following example taken from Psalm 1:1-2 illustrates unpacking. Here sentences 2 through 6 are dependent on the word man in sentence 1 by means of the relative pronoun נָֽאֲרָּה. They list five characteristics of the man who is blessed, which characteristics may be encapsulated in the term godliness. So the blessed man may be referred to as a godly man because of the description given in the five dependent clauses.

Consequently, the relative pronoun may be replaced by the cause-reason subordinating conjunction because (step 1) and the term godly may be substituted in the modifier slot (step 2), thus unpacking the dependent clauses without altering the meaning. Being mindful that at the sentence level of analysis elided information has already been restored, the unpacked structure is as follows:
21.4.2 Greatest Discourse Affinity

Sentences and clusters of sentences having the greatest mutual discourse affinity should be grouped first. This assures that clusters at the deepest discourse dependency are assembled first. In the above list of clauses it is noted that clauses 2, 3, and 4 share common participants (the godly and the ungodly), and common theme (contrasting moral character and negative contrasting of behavior). These common features indicate a strong semantic affinity between the clauses. On the other hand, clauses 5 and 6 have their own affinity differing from that of clauses 1 to 3: common participants and props (the godly person, the LORD, and His Law), and a common theme (delightful meditation). On the basis of mutual affinity the clauses may be clustered into the following two groups:

(1) 

The godly man is blessed

because

(2)  

the man does not walk in the counsel of the ungodly,

and

(3)  

the man does not stand in the path of sinners,

and

(4)  

the man does not sit in the seat of the scornful;

but

(5)  

the man’s delight is in the law of the LORD,

and

(6)  

the man meditates in the law of the LORD day and night.

21.4.3 Conjunctive Compatibility

Sentences and clusters of sentences in a potential cluster must be semantically compatible with their linking conjunction. The conjunctions within a potential cluster must be the same kind; that is, a cluster cannot have both coordinating and subordinating conjunctions between its sentences or clusters, nor can it have both conjunctive and disjunctives, etc.
21.4.4 Completeness
All the members of a potential cluster must be in a contiguous sequence before marking them as an actual cluster. The presence of an intervening alien sentence or cluster is evidence of premature clustering. The intervening alien should first be grouped into its own cluster.

21.4.5 Conjunctive Priority
Ordinarily, under equally probable clustering options, a potential cluster with a subordinating conjunction should be grouped before an equally potential cluster with coordinating conjunctions. But the protasis and apodosis of the potential cluster must both be complete before marking them as an actual cluster.

21.4.6 Acquired Semantic Affinity
A newly grouped cluster acquires the accumulated semantic affinity of its members as determined by its interrelation with its immediate neighboring discourse environment.

21.4.7 Iteration
When a cluster is correctly identified and marked, the procedure repeats through the above steps marking new clusters until the entire discourse is identified as a single cluster.

21.5 Natural Outline
The natural outline of a discourse is theoretically the outline in the mind of the original author when he wrote it. It is unearthed as part of the analysis procedure by creating a summarizing heading for each analytical cluster together with noting its dependency depth. The outline is assembled at the end of the analysis procedure.

21.5.1 Outline Headings
The headings of the natural outline of the discourse are created for each cluster in the analysis. It is written in the language of the expositor as a summary of the semantic and logical content of the cluster it heads. The following are some characteristics of a good heading:

(1) A heading should be a complete sentence.
(2) A heading should be terse, free of all non-contributing expressions.
(3) A heading should contain the prominent participants and props of the associated cluster, particularly, those of the next lower headings of the cluster.
(4) A heading should summarize what is stated about the prominent participants of the cluster in explicit terms, avoiding being overly general.
(5) A heading should not be a theological or homiletical statement unless such terms come from the text of the cluster it heads.
(6) Sometimes a sentence in the text may qualify as a heading; in that case it merely needs to be condensed.

21.5.2 Assembling the Outline

After the analysis procedure is completed, the headings of the outline are assembled in hierarchical order according to their dependencies in the analytical diagram.

21.6 Analysis Illustrated

A discourse may be primarily (1) historical, declaring what happened or how things were done; (2) descriptive, declaring who, what, how, or why things are the way they are; (3) procedural, declaring how to do something; (4) instructional, declaring how things are expected to be; (5) juridical, declaring how things must be; (6) predictive, declaring how things will be; (7) expository, explaining the meaning or intent of something.\(^2\) The following examples illustrate the analysis of the various types of discourse, each accompanied by a commentary on the analysis together with the associated natural outline. The Hebrew sentences are listed on individual numbered lines in the left column with their corresponding English translation in the right column, and with the conjunctions in intervening lines. Clusters are bracketed together with a right-hand bracket \}. Dependency depth is indicated by indentation to the left, the greater the number of indentations, the greater the dependency depth. For the first illustration, a separate analysis diagram is presented for each iteration cycle; but for subsequent illustrations, only the final diagram is provided.

21.7 Historical Narrative (Job 42:7-9)

This passage is an episode of the final narrative portion of Job. It contains the LORD’s rebuke of Job’s three friends for misrepresenting Him, and the command for them to go to Job with sacrifices so that he may pray and make atonement for them.

21.7.1 First Clustering Cycle

(1) Sentences 1 and 2 form a new cluster (1-2), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (The LORD and Job), expressing a common theme (Divine communication), and having complementary syntactic roles. Sentence 1 introduces the pericope, being the protasis (subsequent event) and sentence 2 the apodosis (previous event), being in semantic concord with the temporal conjunction \(\) joining them: expressing the timeframe of reference for the story.

\(^2\) Only seven of the ten literary types of chapter 20 are included here, because descriptive lists are uninteresting from the perspective of discourse analysis. In addition, the juridical and predictive prose types are essentially the same, as is the case for expository and predictive poetry.
(2) Sentences 4 and 5 form a new cluster (4-5), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD and the Job’s friends), expressing a common theme (wrath-misrepresentation), and having complementary syntactic roles. Sentence 5 is the protasis (result) and sentence 4 the apodosis (reason) of a result-reason argument, being in semantic concord with the result-reason conjunction $\therefore$ joining them: their misrepresentation of the LORD resulted in His wrath against them. Heading: The LORD was angry that Job’s friends misrepresented Him.

(3) Sentences 6, 7, and 8 form a new cluster (6-8), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of three parallel commands having common participants (Job, his friends, and sacrifices), common mood (imperative), common theme (expiatory sacrifices), a priest to mediate the sacrifices (Job), and coordinating conjunctions $\therefore$ joining them. Heading: Job’s friends must have Job offer sacrifices for them.

(4) Sentences 9 and 10 form a new cluster (9-10), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD, Job, and his friends), common tense (future), common theme (acceptance of prayer), and having complementary syntactic roles. Sentence 9 is the protasis (result) and sentence 10 the apodosis (reason) of a result-reason argument, being in semantic concord with the result-reason conjunction $\therefore$ joining them: the LORD will accept Job’s prayer. Heading: Job, the LORD’s accepted priest, will pray for his friends.

(5) Sentences 11 and 12 form a new cluster (11-12), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD, Job, and his friends), common tense (future), common theme (judgment for sin), and having complementary syntactic roles. Sentence 11 is the protasis (result) and sentence 12 the apodosis (reason) of a result-reason argument, being in semantic concord with the result-reason conjunction $\therefore$ joining them: the LORD will judge Job’s friends. Heading: The LORD will judge Job’s friends for misrepresenting Him.
(6) Sentences 14 and 15 form a new cluster (14-15), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD and Job’s friends), common tense (past), common theme (judgment of sin), and having complementary syntactic roles. Sentence 14 is the protasis (object of comparison) and sentence 15 the apodosis (standard of comparison) of a comparative argument, being in semantic concord with the
comparative conjunction מֵעַלְכֶם joining them: the LORD will judge Job’s friends. Heading: Job’s friends obeyed the LORD’s commands.

**Second Clustering Cycle**

(1) And it happened, after

(2) the LORD had spoken . . . to Job, that

(3) the LORD said to Eliphaz

(4) [quote]“My wrath is aroused against you . . . for [result-reason]

(5) you have not spoken right of Me as My servant Job has. Therefore, [reason-result]

(6) now take for yourselves seven bulls and seven rams, and

(7) go to My servant Job, and

(8) offer up for yourselves a burnt offering; and

(9) My servant Job will pray for you. For [result-reason]

(10) I will accept him, lest [undesirable consequence]

(11) I deal with your folly; because [result-reason]

(12) you have not spoken right of Me, as My servant Job has.” Then

(13) Eliphaz the Temanite and . . . and Zophar the Naamathite went and

(14) they did just as [comparison]

(15) the LORD commanded them; for [result-reason]

(16) the LORD had accepted Job.
21.7.2 Second Clustering Cycle

(7) Cluster (9-10) and cluster (11-12) form a new cluster (9-12), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD, Job, and his friends), common tense (future), common theme (avoiding judgment of sin), and having complementary syntactic roles. Cluster (9-10) is the protasis (necessary condition) and cluster (11-12) the apodosis (consequence) of a conditional argument, being in semantic concord with the comparative conjunction עָבַדְוֻ תְּפֵלֹתָיו joining them: Job should pray for his friends to avoid their impending judgment. Heading: Job will pray that the LORD not judge his friends’ sins.

(8) Sentence 13 and cluster (14-15) form a new cluster (13-15), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD and Job’s friends), common tense (past), common theme (obedience of the LORD’s commands), and having complementary syntactic roles. Sentence 13 and cluster (14-15) are in semantic concord with sequential coordinating conjunction וְיָמֵשׁוּ joining them: Job’s friends did what the LORD commanded. Heading: Job’s friends went to obey the LORD’s commands.

21.7.3 Third Clustering Cycle

(9) Cluster (6-8) and cluster (9-12) form a new cluster (6-12), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD, Job, and his friends), common tense (future), common theme (sacrifice and prayer to avoid judgment), and having complementary syntactic roles. Cluster (6-8) and cluster (9-12) are in semantic concord with sequential coordinating conjunction וְיָמֵשׁוּ joining them. Heading: Job’s friends must have him make atonement for them.

(10) Cluster (13-15) and sentence 16 form a new cluster (13-16), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD, Job, and his friends), common tense (past), common theme (obedience to the LORD’s command), and having complementary syntactic roles. Cluster (13-15) and sentence 16 are in semantic concord with sequential coordinating conjunction וְיָמֵשׁוּ joining them. Heading: The friends obediently went to Job to get atonement.
Third Clustering Cycle

(1) And it happened, after the LORD had spoken . . . to Job,

(2) the LORD said to Eliphaz [quote]

(3) “My wrath is aroused against you . . . for [result-reason]

(4) you have not spoken right of Me as My servant Job has. Therefore, [reason-result]

(5) now take for yourselves seven bulls and seven rams,

(6) and go to My servant Job,

(7) and offer up for yourselves a burnt offering;

(8) My servant Job will pray for you. For [result-reason]

(9) I will accept him, lest [undesirable consequence]

(10) I deal with your folly; because [result-reason]

(11) you have not spoken right of Me, as My servant Job has.” Then

(12) Eliphaz the Temanite and . . . and Zophar the Naamathite went and

(13) they did just as [comparison]

(14) the LORD commanded them; for [result-reason]

(15) the LORD had accepted Job.

(16) Third Clustering Cycle

21.7.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle

(11) Cluster (4-5) and cluster (6-12) form a new cluster (4-12), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD, Job, and his friends), common tense (past), common theme (the content of the LORD’s speech to Job’s friends), and having complementary syntactic roles. Cluster (4-5) is the protasis
(reason) of a reason-result argument and cluster (6-12) is the apodosis (result), in semantic concord with subordinating conjunction $\therefore$ joining them.

**Fourth Clustering Cycle**

(1) And it happened, after

(2) the LORD had spoken . . . to Job, that

(3) the LORD said to Eliphaz

(4) [quote]

(5) “My wrath is aroused against you . . .

(6) for [result-reason]

(7) you have not spoken right of Me

(8) as My servant Job has.

(9) Therefore, [reason-result]

(10) now take for yourselves seven bulls

(11) and seven rams,

(12) and

(13) go to My servant Job,

(14) offer up for yourselves a burnt offering;

(15) and

(16) My servant Job will pray for you.

For [result-reason]

I will accept him,

lest [undesirable consequence]

I deal with your folly;

because [result-reason]

you have not spoken right of Me,

as My servant Job has.”

Then

Eliphaz the Temanite and . . .

and Zophar the Naamathite went

and

they did

just as [comparison]

the LORD commanded them;

for [result-reason]

the LORD had accepted Job.
In this case, Waw conjunctive serves as a reason-result subordinating conjunction because the dependent relationship of the clusters is self-evident from their semantic content. Heading: Job’s friends must offer sacrifices to appease the LORD’s wrath.

**Fifth Clustering Cycle**

(1) And it happened, after the LORD had spoken . . . to Job, that the LORD said to Eliphaz [quote]

(2) “My wrath is aroused against you . . . for [result-reason]

(3) you have not spoken right of Me as My servant Job has. Therefore, [reason-result]

(4) now take for yourselves seven bulls and seven rams, and go to My servant Job, and offer up for yourselves a burnt offering;

(5) My servant Job will pray for you. For [result-reason]

(6) I will accept him, lest [undesirable consequence]

(7) I deal with your folly; because [result-reason]

(8) you have not spoken right of Me, as My servant Job has.” Then

(9) Eliphaz the Temanite and . . . and Zophar the Naamathite went

(10) and they did just as [comparison]

(11) the LORD commanded them; for [result-reason]

(12) the LORD had accepted Job.
21.7.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle

(12) Sentence 3 and cluster (4-12) form a new cluster (3-12), having strong mutual discourse affinity distinct from what precedes and follows, consisting of common participants (the LORD, Job, and his friends), common tense (past), common theme (the content of the LORD’s speech to Job’s friends), and having complementary syntactic roles. Cluster (4-5) is the protasis (reason) of a reason-result argument and cluster (6-12) is the apodosis (result), in semantic concord with subordinating conjunction \( \text{\&} \) joining them. In this case, Waw conjunctive serves as a reason-result subordinating conjunction because the dependent relationship of the clusters is self-evident from their semantic content. Heading: The LORD commanded Job’s friends to offer sacrifices to appease His wrath.

21.7.6 Commentary (Job 42:7-9)

This historical episode consists of a setting (cluster 1-2), a command (cluster 3-12), and the execution of the command (cluster 13-16) linked by Waw consecutives marking the story line. The cluster of sentences 1 and 2 sets the time frame of reference for this episode of the larger story, the overall setting having been established earlier in the text. Sentence 3 introduces a quotation of the LORD consisting of sentences 4 through 12; the quotation has its own literary form consisting of a list of commands accompanied by explanatory reasons why the commands should be carried out. Sentences 4 and 5 form a cluster, having common participants (the LORD and Job’s friends), expressing a common theme (wrath-misrepresentation), and having complementary roles. Sentence 5 is the protasis [result] and sentence 4 the apodosis [reason] of a result-reason argument, being in semantic concord with the result-reason conjunction \( \text{\&} \) joining them: their misrepresentation of the LORD resulted in His wrath against them. Sentences 4 through 12 form a cluster, having common participants (the LORD, Job, and Job’s friends), and a common theme (the appeasement of the LORD’s wrath). Cluster (4-5) forms the compound protasis [the reason], and cluster (6-12) forms the compound apodosis [the result] of a reason-result argument, being in semantic concord with the reason-result conjunction \( \text{\&} \) joining them: Job’s friends must offer sacrifices to appease the LORD’s wrath.

This large cluster (6-12) consists of two complementary sub-clusters that outline the behavior necessary to appease the LORD’s wrath. Cluster (6-8) consists of three parallel commands having common participants (Job’s friends), common mood (imperative), common theme (expiatory sacrifices), a priest to mediate the sacrifices (Job), and coordinating conjunctions \( \text{\&} \) joining them:

\[ \text{Job’s friends must offer sacrifices to appease the LORD’s wrath.} \]

3 Waw conjunctive stands in place of the more explicit reason-result subordinating conjunction; this often happens when the anticipated conjunctive sense is evident from the context.
them. Cluster (9-12), consisting of two sub-clusters, provides the complementary closure to the quotation, having common participants (the LORD, Job, Job’s friends), a common theme (resultant appeasement). Sub-cluster (9-10) consists of the protasis [result], and sub-cluster (11-12) the apodosis [undesirable consequence] of a result-consequence argument, being in semantic concord with the result-consequence conjunction אֱלֹהִים יְבִיאָהוּ הַלֹּאָם יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּב יִכְזֹּb joining them: Job needs to pray for his friends in order to avoid the LORD’s chastening them. Sub-cluster (9-10) consists of sentence (9) the protasis [result] and sentence (10) the apodosis [reason] of a result-reason argument, being in semantic concord with the result-reason conjunction דַּעְתַּ הַלֹּאָם יִכְזֹּb joining them: Job should pray for his friends because the LORD will accept his prayer. Sub-cluster (11-12) consists of sentence (11) the protasis [result], and sentence (12) the apodosis [reason] of a result-reason argument, being in semantic concord with the result-reason conjunction דַּעְתַּ הַלֹּaָם יִכְזֹּb joining them: the LORD will otherwise chasten their folly because they have misrepresented Him. Sentence (12) repeats sentence (5) in order to bring closure to the quotation.

Cluster (13-16) forms the last event of the episode. It consists of two sub-clusters: (13-15) and sentence (16). Sub-cluster (13-15) forms the protasis [result] and sentence (16) the apodosis [reason] of a result-reason argument: Job’s friends offered the prescribed sacrifices because the LORD had accepted Job’s prayer for them. Sub-cluster (13-15) itself consists of two sub-clusters: sentence (13) and sub-cluster (14-15). The event of sentence (13) is followed by the event of sub-cluster (14-15), as marked by the Waw consecutive joining them. Sub-cluster (14-15) compares the event of sentence (14) with the command of sentence (15), in semantic concord with the comparative conjunction דַּעְתַּ הַלֹּaָם יִכְזֹּb joining them: the sacrifices were made as commanded. Sentence (16) repeats the thought of sentence (10), closing the episode with the importance of intercessory pray by a person whose prayers the LORD accepts.

This example illustrates that Waw consecutive marks the story line in historical narrative, but that supplementary material may intervene. In addition, Waw consecutive may occur within a sub-cluster out of the main story line: see the Waw consecutive between sentences (13) and (14).

By now it is evident that these commentaries are quite redundant. The redundancy is intentional, being there to illustrate the thinking process of the analytical method. However, the commentary worked from the highest to the lowest hierarchies; the analysis procedure works from the lowest to the highest.

---

4 The Waw consecutive joining these clusters is understood as expressing logical rather than temporal sequence.
21.7.7 Natural Outline (Job 42:7-9)

After Speaking with Job, the LORD Required Job’s Friends to Have Him Offer Sacrifices and Prayer for Them

I. The LORD Commanded Job’s Friends to Offer Sacrifices to Appease His Wrath

A. The LORD was angry that Job’s friends misrepresented Him
   1. My wrath is aroused against you and your two friends
   2. For you have not spoken of Me what is right, as My servant Job has

B. Therefore, Job’s friends must have him make atonement for them
   1. Job’s friends must have Job offer sacrifices for them
      a. Now take for yourselves seven bulls and seven rams,
      b. And Job’s friends must go to Job to offer a sacrifice for themselves
         (1) Go to My servant Job,
         (2) And offer up for yourselves a burnt offering
   2. And Job will pray that the LORD not judge his friends’ sins
      a. Job, the LORD’s accepted priest, will pray for his friends
         (1) My servant Job shall pray for you.
         (2) For I will accept him,
      b. Lest The LORD judge Job’s friends for misrepresenting Him
         (1) I will deal with you according to your folly
         (2) Because you have not spoken of Me what is right, as My servant Job has

II. Then Job’s Friends Obediently Went to Job to Get Atonement

A. Job’s friends went to Job to obey the LORD’s commands
   1. Eliphaz the Temanite and Bildad the Shuhite and Zophar the Naamathite went
   2. And Job’s friends obeyed the LORD’s commands
      a. They did
      b. Just as the LORD commanded them;

B. For the LORD had accepted Job.

Notes:
(1) The first line initiated the pericope and was absorbed into the title.
(2) The second line set the new time frame of reference and was also absorbed into the title.
(3) The third line introduced the quotation and was absorbed into the first main heading.
(4) The linking conjunctions were moved into the line they precede.
21.8 Descriptive Discourse (Psalm 1)

This psalm is descriptive narrative serving as an introduction to the Psalter. It describes the estate of the godly and the ungodly, explaining why godliness is superior to ungodliness. It consists of three progressively shorter strophes, each having its own set of participants and theme.

21.8.1 First Clustering Cycle

Initially it is noted that sentences 2 through 6 are relative pronoun clauses dependent on the word man in sentence 1. These have been unpacked as previously described (§ 21.4.1). In addition, sentences 8 through 10 are relative pronoun clauses dependent on the word tree in sentence 7. These clauses are also unpacked as three coordinate descriptions of the characteristics of the tree to which a godly man is likened: they refer to that which makes the tree fruitful. Also it is noted that this discourse has no temporal or spatial references: its message is universal. Sentences 2 through 4 form a cluster, having common participants (the godly man and the ungodly), common negation, a common theme (avoidance of evil influences), and their semantic content also being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \& \) joining them. Heading: the man avoids ungodly influences.

Sentences 5 and 6 form a cluster, having common participants (the godly man and the Law of the LORD), a common theme (love of God’s word), and their semantic content also being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \& \) joining them. Heading: the man loves the Law of the LORD.

Sentences 8 through 10 form a cluster, having a common participant (the tree), a common theme (the characteristics of fruitfulness), and their semantic content also being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \& \) joining them. Heading: the tree is fruitful.

Sentences 12 and 13 form a cluster, having common participants (the ungodly) a common theme (unfavorable comparison), and their semantic content also being consistent with the adversative coordinating conjunction \( \& \) joining them. Heading: The ungodly life is worthless.

---

5 Sentence 8 is a dependent passive participle clause, which is equivalent to a relative pronoun clause, and is treated so in the unpacking procedure. Thus the three clauses are in parallel and may be regarded as coordinate, so rendering as though it were and.

6 Because sentences 8, 9, and 19 are unpacked relative pronoun clauses, the conjunction \( \& \) between 8 and 9 has been transformed to the equivalent of \( \& \).
(Psalm 1)

1. The man is blessed because [result-reason]
2. the man does not walk in the counsel of the ungodly, and
3. the man does not stand in the path of sinners, and
4. the man does not sit in the seat of the scornful; but
5. the man’s delight is in the law of the LORD, and
6. the man meditates in law of the LORD day and night.

And
7. the godly man is like a tree because [result-reason]
8. the tree is planted by the rivers of water, and
9. the tree brings forth its fruit in its season, and
10. the tree’s leaf does not wither; and
11. whatever the man does prospers. [However]
12. the ungodly are not so, but
13. the ungodly are like the chaff which the wind drives away. Therefore [reason-result]
14. the ungodly shall not stand in the judgment, nor
15. sinners in the congregation of the righteous. For [result-reason]
16. the LORD knows the way of the righteous, but
17. the way of the ungodly shall perish.

Sentences 14 and 15 form a cluster, having common participants (the ungodly), a common theme (detrimental destiny), and their semantic content also being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \text{and} \) joining them. Heading: The destiny of the ungodly is disastrous.

Sentences 16 and 17 form a cluster, having a common topic (man’s way of life), a common theme (the LORD’s part in the godly way and the ungodly way), and their semantic content also being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \text{and} \) joining them. Heading: The LORD sovereignly knows the ways of men.
21.8.2 Second Clustering Cycle

Cluster (2-4) and cluster (5-6) form a new cluster (2-6), having a common participant (the godly man), a common theme (the man’s godliness), and their individual themes also being consistent with the adversative coordinating conjunction אָרְנָהָınaו joining them. Heading: The man’s character is godly.

Sentence 7 and cluster (8-10) form a new cluster (7-10), having a common participant (the tree), a common theme (characteristics that contribute to the tree’s fruitfulness), and their individual themes also being consistent with the subordinating conjunction בָּלָם joining them. Heading: The godly man is like a fruitful tree.

Cluster (12-13) and cluster (14-15) form a new cluster (12-15), having common participants (the ungodly), a common theme (the present and future status of the ungodly), and their individual themes also being consistent with the reason-result subordinating conjunction בָּלָם joining them. The fruitless life of the ungodly will result in their disastrous destiny. Heading: Ungodliness is detrimental.

21.8.3 Third Clustering Cycle

Sentence 1 and cluster (2-6) form a new cluster (1-6), having a common participant (the man who is blessed), a common theme (the reason for his blessedness), and their individual themes also being consistent with the subordinating conjunction יִלְּשָׁנֶה (= because)7 joining them. The man is blessed because of his godly character. Heading: The godly man is blessed.

21.8.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle

Cluster (1-6), cluster (7-10), and sentence 11 form a new cluster (1-11), having a common participant (the godly man), a common theme (the benefits of godliness: blessing, fruitfulness, prospering), and their individual themes also being consistent with the coordinating conjunctions יִלְּשָׁנֶה joining them. Godliness has benefits. Heading: Godliness is beneficial.

21.8.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle

What remains is three principal clusters which on the surface suggests that the final analysis consists of three independent propositions. However the principle of discourse affinity must determine that issue. In the first cluster (1-11) the prominent participant is the godly man, in the second (12-15) the prominent participants are the ungodly, and in the third (16-17) the prominent participants are the godly, the ungodly, and the LORD. So the third cluster has equal semantic affinity

---

7 The conjunction was transformed due to unpacking relative pronoun sentences 2 through 6.
with both earlier clusters. So the first two clusters should be clustered together as a semantic antithesis the explanation of which is found in the third. Therefore cluster (1-11) and cluster (12-15) form a new cluster (1-15), having a common theme (the contrasting benefits of godliness and ungodliness), their individual themes being consistent with the disjunctive coordinating conjunction [ַָּעַ הָּנֵּ] (= however) joining them. The benefits of godliness are superior to those of ungodliness. Heading: Godliness is superior to ungodliness.

Cluster (1-15) and cluster (16-17) form the last cluster, having common participants (the godly and the ungodly), a common theme (the reason for the contrasting benefits), and their individual themes being consistent with the result-reason subordinating conjunction [ִָּוּ הָּנֵּ] joining them. The LORD’s sovereign knowledge of the ways of man is the reason godliness is superior to ungodliness. Heading: The LORD ordained the superiority of godliness.

21.8.6 Commentary (Psalm 1)

This psalm is descriptive narrative, being an explanation of why godliness is superior to ungodliness. It consists of three progressively shorter strophes, each having its own set of participants and theme. The first strophe, sub-cluster (1-11), describes the advantages of godliness; the second strophe, sub-cluster (12-15), in contrast to the first, describes the disadvantages of ungodliness; these two strophes form the first main cluster of the narrative. The third strophe, cluster (16-17), explains why the first two strophes are true, in semantic concord with the result-reason conjunction joining them. The psalm has common participants (the godly, ungodly, and the LORD) and a common theme (the LORD’s predetermined purposes regarding godliness and ungodliness).

The first strophe, cluster (1-11), consists of three progressively shorter parallel sub-clusters: clusters (1-6), (7-10), and (11)—joined by coordinating conjunctions. Cluster (1-6) describes the person God blesses; cluster (7-10), likens that person to a fruitful tree; and cluster (11), describes his prosperity. The three parallel sentences in sub-cluster (7-10) have a common participant and prop (the godly person, a tree), and a common theme (fruitfulness), in semantic concord with the coordinating conjunctions joining them. The third sub-cluster consists of only one sentence (11) describing the prosperity of a godly person.

---

8 This is an instance of juxtaposition (asyndeton) where the conjunctive relationship is clearly understood from the context, and so the conjunction is omitted. The analysis required such elided conjunctions to be restored.

9 An adversative conjunction has been restored based on the contrasting semantic content of the clusters.
The structure of the second stanza, cluster (12-15), contrastingly parallels the first strophe in diminished details: sentence (12) describes the behavior of the ungodly: they are not like the godly; sentence (13) likens them to valueless chaff, and cluster (14-15) describes their ultimate failure. Cluster (12-15) consists of two sub-clusters, (12-13) and (14-15). Sub-cluster (12-13) is the compound protasis [reason] and sub-cluster (13-14) the compound apodosis [result] of a reason-result argument, in semantic concord with the reason-result conjunction joining them: their ungodly life will result in eternal destruction.

In the third strophe, sentences (16) and (17) have common participants (the godly, ungodly, and the LORD), and a common theme (predetermined success of godliness and failure of ungodliness). The sentences are parallel contrasting declarations joined by a disjunctive conjunction. They constitute the apodosis [reason] of the main result-reason argument of the discourse, in semantic concord with the result-reason conjunction joining it with the protasis (cluster 1-14): The LORD’s sovereign purposes predetermined the superiority of godliness over ungodliness.
21.8.7 Natural Outline (Psalm 1)

The LORD Ordained the Superiority of Godliness (Psalm 1)

I. Godliness is Superior to Ungodliness (1:1-5)
   A. Godliness is beneficial (1:1-3)
      1. The godly man is blessed (1:1-2)
         a. Blessed is the man (1:1)
         b. Because the man’s character is godly
            (1) The man avoids ungodly influences
               (a) The man does not walk in the counsel of the ungodly (1:1a)
               (b) The man does not stand in the path of sinners (1:1b)
               (c) The man does not sit in the seat of the scornful (1:1c)
            (2) But the man loves the Law of the LORD.
               (a) The man’s delight is in the law of the LORD (1:2a)
               (b) The man meditates in the law of the LORD day and night (1:2b)
      2. The godly man is like a fruitful tree (1:3)
         a. The godly man is like a tree
         b. Because the tree is fruitful
            (1) The tree is planted by the rivers of water (1:3a)
            (2) The tree brings forth its fruit in its season (1:3b)
            (3) The tree’s leaf does not wither; (1:3c)
      3. And whatever the godly man does shall prosper (1:3d)
   B. However ungodliness is detrimental
      1. The ungodly life is worthless
         a. The ungodly are not so (1:4a)
         b. But the ungodly are like the chaff which the wind drives away (1:4b)
      2. Therefore the destiny of the ungodly is disastrous
         a. The ungodly shall not stand in the judgment (1:5a)
         b. Sinners shall not stand in the congregation of the righteous (1:5b)

II. For the LORD Sovereignly Knows the Ways of Men (1:6)
   A. The LORD knows the way of the righteous (1:6a)
   B. But the way of the ungodly shall perish (1:6b)
21.9 Procedural Discourse (Exodus 25:23-30)

This passage is procedural discourse, setting forth the procedure for constructing the Table of Showbread. It consists of a sequence of instructions interspersed with appropriate details for some of the table’s parts.

21.9.1 First Clustering Cycle

In the beginning it is noted that time frame of reference is future with no general spatial frame of reference. Sentences 2, 3, and 4 form a cluster (2-4), having a common participant (the table of showbread), a common theme (the dimensions of the table), and their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunctions יְ in joining them. Heading: The table has specifications.

Sentences 9, 10, and 11 form a cluster (9-11), having common participants (the golden rings of the table), a common theme (the placement of the rings), and their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunctions יְ in joining them. The table shall have rings.

Sentences 12 and 13 form a cluster (12-13), having common participants (the acacia poles), a common theme (overlaying the poles with gold), and their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction יְ in joining them. One may be tempted to also include sentence 14 in the cluster because it too has Waw conjunctive, but the theme of the sentence (purpose of the poles) differs from that of the others; thus the conjunction must be understood as a purpose-result subordinating conjunction. Heading: The poles have construction specifications.

Sentences 15 and 16 form a cluster (15-16), having common participants (the utensils of the table), a common theme (their golden composition), and their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction יְ in joining them. The table shall have serving utensils.

21.9.2 Second Clustering Cycle

Sentence 1 and cluster (2-4) and sentence 5 form a new cluster (1-5), having a common participant (the table), a common theme (construction details), and their semantic content being consistent with the elided but restored coordinating conjunction יְ in joining them. The table shall be made to specifications.
(Exodus 25:23-30)

(1) And you shall also make a table . . . ;
(2) two cubits shall be its length,
(3) and
(4) a cubit shall be its width,
(5) and
(6) a cubit and a half shall be its height.
(7) And you shall overlay it with pure gold,
(8) and
(9) you shall make a molding of gold all around.
(10) And you shall make a frame for it . . .
(11) and
(12) you shall make a gold molding . . .
(13) And you shall make for it four rings of gold,
(14) and
(15) you shall put the rings on the four corners that are at its four legs.
(16) [And] the rings shall be close to the frame, as holders for the poles to bear the table.
(17) And you shall make the poles of acacia wood,
(18) and
(19) you shall overlay them with gold,
(20) that the table may be carried with them.
(21) And you shall make its dishes, its pans, its pitchers, and its bowls for pouring.
(22) And you shall make them of pure gold.
(23) And you shall set the showbread on the table before Me always.

Cluster (12-13) and sentence 14 form a new cluster (12-14), having a common participant (the poles of the table), a common theme (the purpose of the poles), and their semantic content
being consistent with the purpose-result subordinating conjunction joining them. The purpose of poles will be for transporting the table. The table shall have transport poles.

21.9.3 Third Clustering Cycle

Cluster (1-5), sentences 6, 7, 8, cluster (9-11), cluster (12-14), cluster (15-16), and sentence 17 form the final cluster—the story line—all being semantically consistent with the coordinating conjunctions \( \gamma \) joining them.

21.9.4 Commentary (Exodus 25:23-30)

This passage is procedural discourse, setting forth the procedure for constructing the Table of Showbread. It consists of twelve instructions linked by \( Waw \) consecutive, interspersed with sentence types (2), (4), and (5) providing supplementary details. This passage has no stage-setting introduction because it is one of a sequence of procedures for constructing items of furniture for the Tabernacle; the stage was set earlier in the text. The initial cluster (1-5) consists of the command to build the table, linked by an understood coordinating conjunction\(^\text{10}\) to a supplementary cluster (2-4) of three parallel sentences, having a common theme (the dimensions of the table) and a common role, linked by coordinating \( Waw \) conjunctives \( \gamma \). Four instructions follow that stipulate the construction of the table’s molding (6), its frame (7), and the molding of the frame (8).

Next follows cluster (9-11), having a common theme (the rings of the table); it begins with the command to make the rings (9) linked by \( Waw \) consecutive\(^\text{11}\) to a supplementary cluster (10-12) specifying their location. The cluster begins with a directive (10) of type (7) for the placement of the rings, followed by additional supplementary detail (12), joined with (10) by an understood coordinating conjunction. Sentence (11) has an imbedded infinitive construct sentence that anticipates the poles of the next directive.

Next follows cluster (12-14), having a common theme (the poles of the table); it begins with a sub-cluster of commands (12-13) linked by \( Waw \) consecutive, ordering the construction and overlay of the poles; this cluster forms the protasis [result], and sentence (14) the apodosis [reason] of a result-reason argument; the \( Waw \) consecutive joining them expresses logical, not temporal, sequence in this case: the purpose of the poles is for carrying the table.

\(^{10}\) \( Waw \) conjunctive restores the elided conjunction.

\(^{11}\) Note that the \( Waw \) consecutive here is not part of the story line, but it introduces supplementary material, the first of which mandates the placement of the rings.
Next follows cluster (15-17), having a common theme (the utensils of the table) containing two parallel instructions joined by a coordinating conjunction: the utensils are to be made of pure gold. The final directive of the discourse, sentence (17) brings closure to the passage, commanding the placement of the showbread on the table.

21.9.5 Natural Outline (Exodus 25:23-30)

Make the Table of Showbread

I. You Shall Make a Table (25:23)
   A. You shall also make a table of acacia wood (23a)
   B. The table has specified dimensions
      1. Two cubits shall be its length (23b)
      2. A cubit shall be its width (23c)
      3. And a cubit and a half shall be its height (23d)
   C. And you shall overlay it with pure gold (24a)

II. You Shall Make a Molding of Gold All Around (24b)

III. You Shall Make For It a Frame of a Handbreadth All Around (25a)

IV. You Shall Make a Gold Molding For the Frame All Around (25b)

V. The Table Shall Have Rings.
   A. You shall make for it four rings of gold (26a)
   B. You shall put the rings on the four corners that are at its four legs (26b)
   C. The rings shall be close to the frame, as holders for the poles to bear the table (27)

VI. The Table Shall Have Transport Poles
   A. The poles have construction specifications.
      1. You shall make the poles of acacia wood (28a)
      2. You shall overlay them with gold (28b)
   B. That the table may be carried with them (28c)

VII. The Table Shall Have Serving Utensils.
   A. You shall make its dishes, its pans, its pitchers, and its bowls for pouring (29a)
   B. You shall make them of pure gold (29b)

VIII. You Shall Set the Showbread on the Table Before Me Always (30)
21.10 Instructional Discourse (Exodus 13:11-13)

In this passage Moses gave the Israelites instructions regarding the redemption of the firstborn. The first main cluster sets the time and space frames of reference for when the instructions are to be executed, and the next gives the necessary instructions.

(Exodus 13:11-13)

1. And it shall be, when the LORD brings you into the land of the Canaanites, just as He swore to you and your fathers, and He has given it to you,

2. then you shall set apart to the LORD all that open the womb, every firstborn that comes from an animal of yours, the males shall be the LORD's.

3. But every firstborn of a donkey you shall redeem with a lamb;

4. however if you will not redeem it, then you shall break its neck.

5. And all the firstborn of man among your sons you shall redeem.

21.10.1 First Clustering Cycle

Sentences 2 and 3 form a cluster (2-3), having common participants (the LORD and Israel), a common theme (fulfilling an oath), and their semantic content being consistent with the comparative conjunction כִּי that joins them. The future deed compares with its past sworn promise. Heading: The LORD shall have kept His promise.

Sentences 5 and 6 form a cluster (5-6), having common participants (firstborn men and animals), a common theme (being set apart to the LORD), and their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction וְ that joins them. Firstborn men and domestic animals must be set apart to the LORD. Heading: All firstborn must be set apart to the LORD.
Sentences 8 and 9 form a cluster (8-9), having common participants (Israelites and firstborn donkeys), a common theme (alternative to redemption), and their semantic content being consistent with the conditional subordinating conjunctions אָז and ֵּֽֽ֖֖֔וּ that join them. The donkey’s neck should be broken if it is not redeemed. Heading: Redemption of animals has an alternative.

### 21.10.2 Second Clustering Cycle

Cluster (2-3) and sentence 4 form a new cluster (2-4), having common participants (the LORD, Israel, and the land), a common theme (actual possession of the land), and their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction ָּּ that joins them. Heading: Israel shall have received the Promised Land.

Sentence 7 and cluster (8-9) form a new cluster (7-9), having common participants (Israelites and firstborn donkeys), a common theme (redemption and its alternative), and their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction ָּּ that joins them. Heading: Donkeys must be redeemed or killed.

### 21.10.3 Third Clustering Cycle

Cluster (7-9) and sentence 10 form a new cluster (7-10), having common participants (those set apart to the LORD), a common theme (redemption of the exceptions), and their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction ָּּ that joins them. Certain exceptions should be redeemed. Heading: Male Israelites and unclean animals should be redeemed.

### 21.10.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle

Cluster (5-6) and cluster (7-10) form a new cluster (5-10), having common participants (male Israelites and domestic animals), a common theme (being set apart to the LORD with some exceptions), and their semantic content being consistent with the disjunctive coordinating conjunction ָּּ that joins them. The conjunction is understood to be disjunctive because of the adverse semantics of the clusters. Heading: All firstborn males except the redeemed shall be the LORD’s.

### 21.10.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle

Cluster (2-6) and cluster (7-10) form the story line. The first sets the time and place frames of reference (the future in the Promised Land) and the second gives the instructions for setting apart the firstborn males to the LORD. Heading: Firstborn males shall be the LORD’s in the Promised Land.

### 21.10.6 Commentary (Exodus 13:11-13)

This passage is instructional discourse, explaining how the firstborn should be dedicated to the LORD when Israel inherits the Promised Land. Sentence (1) is of type (9), marking the
beginning of a discourse set in the future. The first cluster (2-4) sets the perquisite conditions under which the instructions should carried out; it forms the compound protasis [prerequisite], and cluster (5-10) forms the compound apodosis [implementation] of conditional instruction, in semantic concord with the conditional subordinating conjunctions ( . . . ) that join them.12

Cluster (2-4) stipulates two parallel prerequisites, sub-cluster (2-3) and sentence (4), joined by the coordination conjunction .13 Sub-cluster (2-3) consists of the first prerequisite (2) with a dependent comparative sentence (3), in semantic concord with the comparative conjunction () joining them, indicating the certainty of this prerequisite: it is based on an oath of God. The second prerequisite (4), an example of a perfect aspect verb in a future context; this construction also expresses the certainty of the prerequisite.

Cluster (5-10) stipulates the instructions to be carried out when the prerequisites are fulfilled. It consists of cluster (5-6) modified by explanatory sub-cluster (7-10), in semantic concord with the explanatory conjunction ()14 joining them. Cluster (5-6) specifies the basic action to be taken: dedicate all firstborn males to the LORD, including the domestic animals. Sub-cluster (7-10) provides three parallel explanatory details joined by disjunctive coordinating conjunction Waw conjunctive (?). This cluster discusses the exception to (5-6): all unclean firstborn animals (represented by the donkey) should be redeemed with a lamb. Sentence (10) declares that all firstborn male Israelites should be redeemed. Sub-cluster (7-9) consists of sentence (7), the main stipulation for unclean animals—they should be redeemed—and sub-cluster (8-9), the undesirable alternative—their neck must be broken—joined by a coordinating conjunction (?). The alternative, sub-cluster (8-9), is expressed as a conditional sentence: sentence (8) is the protasis [condition], and sentence (9) the apodosis [consequence], in semantic concord with the conditional conjunctions ( . . . ) joining them.15

---

12 The Waw consecutive functions as the companion of the temporal conjunction ; in this case, it expresses both temporal and logical sequence.

13 The conjunction is Waw conjunctive, not Waw consecutive; the sentences express coordinate, not sequential, actions. The verb is in first position because its subject is elided.

14 Semantic content anticipates an explanation, not coordination; Waw conjunctive is used here in place of a more explicit conjunction because the author expected the reader to understand the relationship with minimal information.

15 The Waw consecutive functions as the companion of the conditional conjunction , expressing both logical and temporal sequence.
21.10.7 Natural Outline (Exodus 13:11-13)

All Male Firstborns Shall Be the LORD’s in the Promised Land

I. When Israel Shall Have Received the Promised Land
   A. The LORD shall have kept His promise (11a)
      1. The LORD brings you into the land of the Canaanites (11b)
      2. As He swore to you and your fathers (11c)
   B. And the LORD has given the land to you (11d)

II. Then All Firstborn Males Except the Redeemed Shall Be the LORD’s
   A. All firstborn must be set apart to the LORD
      1. You shall set apart to the LORD all that open the womb (12a)
      2. And every firstborn male domestic animal shall be the LORD's (12b)
   B. But male Israelites and unclean animals must be redeemed
      1. Donkeys must be redeemed or killed
         a. Every firstborn of a donkey you shall redeem with a lamb (13a)
         b. However redemption of animals has an alternative.
            (1) If you will not redeem it (13b)
            (2) Then you shall break its neck (13c)
      2. And all the firstborn of man among your sons you shall redeem (13d)
21.11 Juridical Discourse (Exod. 20:2-17)

Juridical discourse is characterized by imperatives and prohibitions.\(^\text{16}\) A code of law is introduced by a preamble identifying the authority that established it.

אֲנִי, יְהוָה אֲלֹהֵי אֶרֶץ, אֲשֶׁר הָעוֹלָהּ עַל רְאֵי הָאָדָם אֲשֶׁר עָצַבְנָה יְהוָה עַל-אֹרֶץ;  

I am the LORD your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

You shall have no other gods before Me. (Exod. 20:2-3)

The individual laws are separate entities not connected by conjunctions.

- You shall not murder. 
- You shall not commit adultery.
- You shall not steal.
- You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor.
- You shall not covet your neighbor's house . . .

(Exod. 20:13-17)

A law may have an explanatory supplement in descriptive form.

You shall not make for yourself a carved image,  

or any likeness of anything 

that is in heaven above,  
or that is in the earth beneath,  
or that is in the water under the earth;  
you shall not bow down to them  
nor serve them.

For I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God,  
visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children  
to the third and fourth generations  
of those who hate Me,  
but showing mercy to thousands,  
to those who love Me and keep My commandments.

(Exod. 20:4-6)

You shall not take the name of the LORD your God in vain,  
for the LORD will not hold him guiltless who takes His name in vain. (Exod. 20:7)

\(^\text{16}\) Prohibitions are expressed by קָרֹא plus the imperfect.
And

God spoke all these words, saying:

2 "I am the LORD your God, Who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

[Therefore,]

3 "You shall have no other gods before Me.

[And]

4 "You shall not make for yourself a carved image, or any likeness that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth;

[And]

5 you shall not bow down to them and you shall not serve them.

For

I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me,

6 but showing mercy to thousands, to those who love Me and keep My commandments.

[And]

7 "You shall not take the name of the LORD your God in vain, for the LORD will not hold him guiltless

who takes His name in vain.
8 "Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy.

9 Six days you shall labor and you shall do all your work,

10 but the seventh day is the Sabbath of the LORD your God.

In it you shall do no work:

you, nor your son, nor your daughter, nor your male servant,

nor your female servant, nor your cattle,

nor your stranger who is within your gates.

11 For in six days the LORD made the heavens

and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them,

and He rested the seventh day.

Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day

and He hallowed it.

12 "you shall honor your father and your mother,

that your days may be long upon the land

which the LORD your God is giving you.
21.11.1 First Clustering Cycle

Sentence 1 introduces the discourse as a direct quotation from God, while sentence 2 establishes the divine authority upon which this juridical discourse derives its authority; these sentences form the preamble and are not bracketed in the analysis. Sentences 4, 5, and 6 form cluster (4-6), having common participants (the Israelites and pagan idols), having a common theme (forbidden worship), the semantics being consistent with the coordinating conjunction joining them. Heading: Do not make, worship, or serve carved images.

Sentences 8 and 9, form cluster (8-9), having common participants (the Israelites and God), a common theme (God’s holy name, blasphemy, and guilt); the semantics of the sentences is compatible with the reason-result subordinating conjunction joining them: sentence 9 gives the reason for the prohibition expressed by sentence 8—impending guilt and judgment. Heading: Avoid divine chastening for blasphemy.

Sentences 11 and 12 form cluster (11-12), having a common theme (the six required weekly work days), the semantics being consistent with the coordinating conjunction joining them. Heading: Do occupational work on the first six days of the week.
Sentences 13 and 14 form cluster (13-14), having a common theme (the seventh day and its prohibited work), the semantics being consistent with the coordinating conjunction joining them. Heading: Do not work on the LORD’s Sabbath, the seventh day.

Sentences 15 and 16 form cluster (15-16), having a common theme (the work schedule of God’s creation week), the semantics being consistent with the coordinating conjunction joining them. Heading: God’s creation work week had one day of rest, the seventh.

Sentences 17 and 18 form cluster (17-18), having a common theme (the LORD’s blessing and hallowing of the Sabbath day), the semantics being consistent with the coordinating conjunction joining them. Heading: God’s blessing hallowed the seventh day.

Sentences 19 and 20 form cluster (19-20), having common participants (the Israelites and their parents), a common theme (honor and blessing), the semantics being consistent with the reason-result conjunction joining them. Sentence (19) is the reason that sentence (20) will result. Heading: Honor your parents to get long life.

Sentences 25 and 26 form cluster (25-26), having common participants (the Israelites and their neighbors), a common theme (prohibited coveting of the private property of others), the semantics being consistent with the coordinating conjunction joining them. Heading: Do not covet a neighbor’s private property.

21.11.2 Second Clustering Cycle

Cluster (4-6) and sentence 7 form a new cluster (4-7), having common participants (the Israelites, God), a common theme (idolatry and judgment), the semantics being consistent with the reason-result conjunction joining them. Sentence (7) is the reason given for the prohibition expressed in cluster (4-6). Heading: God jealously punishes polytheists.

Clusters (15-16) and (17-18) form a new cluster (15-18), having a common participant (the LORD), a common theme (hallowed rest), the semantics being consistent with the reason-result subordinating conjunction joining them: cluster (15-16) is the reason for cluster (17-18). Heading: God hallowed His creation work-week for Israel.

Sentences 21 through 24 and cluster (25-26) form a new cluster (21-26), having common participants (the Israelites and their neighbors), a common theme (prohibition of harm: murder, adultery, theft, false witness, and covetousness), the semantics being consistent with the common coordinating conjunctions joining them. Heading: Respect the personal rights of others.
21.11.3 Third Clustering Cycle

Clusters (13-14) and (15-18) form a new cluster (13-18), having common participants (the Israelites and the LORD), a common theme (a divinely hallowed work-free Sabbath with six work days), the semantics being consistent with the reason-result subordinating conjunction joining them: cluster (15-18) provides the reason that cluster (14-15) is mandatory. Heading: Observe God’s appointed seven-day week of work and rest.

21.11.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle

Sentence 10 and cluster (11-12) together with cluster (13-18) form a new cluster (10-18), having common participants (the Israelites and the LORD), a common theme (Sabbath keeping), the semantics being consistent with the common coordinating conjunction joining them. Heading: Observe God’s appointed seven-day week of work and rest.

21.11.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle

Sentence 3, cluster (4-7), cluster (8-9), cluster (10-18), and cluster (19-20) form a new cluster (3-20), having common participants (the Israelites and the LORD), a common theme (respect for the LORD’s personhood: His uniqueness, immaterialness, name, covenant sign, and appointed authority). The semantics is consistent with the common coordinating conjunctions joining them. The enclosing bracket is not provided in the diagram because it would span the pages. Heading: Respect God’s personhood.

21.11.6 Sixth and Final Clustering Cycles

Clusters (3-20) and (21-26) form a new cluster (3-26), encompassing the entire ten commandments. Finally, sentence 2 and cluster (3-26) form a final cluster (2-26), having common participants (the Israelites and the LORD), a common theme (the LORD’s authoritative law), the semantics being consistent with the reason-result subordinating conjunction joining them: sentence 2 is the reason that laws of cluster (3-26) are authoritative.

21.11.7 Commentary (Exodus 20:1-17)

Sentence (1) introduces the discourse as a quotation from God, and sentence (2) establishes the authority of the law code to be that of the LORD God of Israel. The discourse is divided into two primary clusters: Cluster (3-20) recording five laws regarding the Israelites’ relationship with God, and cluster (21-26) recording five laws regarding Israelites’ relationship with one another.

Cluster (3-20) consists of five sub-clusters stating the laws requiring Israel to revere God’s personhood: Sentence (3) stands alone, declaring that Israel must not have any other God than the
LORD—He alone is God. Cluster (4-7) prohibits Israel from making, worshipping, or serving any carved images, with associated punishment or blessing depending on their obedience. Sentences 4, 5, and 6 compose sub-cluster (4-6) declaring the prohibition; and sentence 7 stands alone declaring the associated consequences.

Cluster (8-9) prohibits blasphemy of the LORD’s name—sentence 8, with associated consequences—sentence 9. Cluster (10-18) states the law of the Sabbath: Israel must revere the Sabbath—the week day the LORD hallowed. This cluster has three sub-clusters: sentence 10 stands alone commanding Israel to keep the day holy; sub-cluster (11-12) commands a six-day work week; and sub-cluster (13-18) explains the significance of the Sabbath. This cluster itself has two sub-clusters: sub-cluster (13-14) explains that no occupational work should occur on the Sabbath; and sub-cluster (15-18) provides the reason there should be no work. This cluster itself has two sub-clusters: sub-cluster (15-16) states that God worked six days in creating the heavens and earth and rested on the seventh; sub-cluster (17-18) declares that God blessed and hallowed the seventh day. The result-reason conjunction joining cluster (13-14) with cluster (15-18) indicates that the reason the Sabbath should be revered is that God hallowed the Sabbath of the creation week.

Cluster (19-20) is the fifth sub-cluster of cluster (3-20) above. It commands Israelites to honor their parents—sentence 19, with an accompanying blessing of long life—sentence 20. This law is included in the group of laws related to God because parents are God’s appointed authority in the family.

The second main cluster (21-26) of sentences in this discourse provides laws relating to Israel respecting the personal rights of individuals. It too has five sub-clusters stating the five remaining laws. Sentences 21 through 24 each stands alone declaring a prohibition against murder, adultery, theft, and falsehoods respectively; and sentences 25 and 26 form a sub-cluster (25-26) prohibiting coveting. While these laws are prohibitions, they may be regarded as equivalent to positive commands to respect the individual rights of a person to life, a wife, private property, truth, and freedom from another’s envy.
21.11.8 Natural Outline (Exodus 20:1-17)

Revere God, Respect Other’s Rights

I. Revere God’s Personhood (20:3-12)
   A. You shall have no other gods before Me. (20:3)
   B. Avoid God’s jealous punishment of polytheists. (20:4-5)
      1. Do not make, worship, or serve carved images. (20:4-5a)
      2. For God jealously punishes polytheists. (20:5b-6)
   C. Avoid divine chastening for blasphemy. (20:7)
   D. Observe God’s appointed seven-day week of work and rest. (20:8-11)
      1. Keep the Sabbath day holy (20:8)
      2. Do occupational word on the first six days of the week. (20:9)
      3. Observe God’s appointed seven-day week of work and rest. (20:10a)
      4. Do not work on the LORD’s Sabbath, the seventh day. (20:10b)
      5. For God hallowed His creation work-week for Israel. (20:11)
         a. God’s creation work week had one day of rest. (20:11a)
         b. God’s blessing hallowed the seventh day. (20:11b)
   E. Honor your parents to get long life. (20:12)

II. Respect the Personal Rights of Others (20:13-17)
   A. Do not commit murder (20:13)
   B. Do not commit adultery (20:14)
   C. Do not commit theft (20:15)
   D. Do not bear false testimony (20:16)
   E. Do not covet a neighbor’s private property. (20:17)

21.12 Case Laws (Exod. 22:15-16; Eng. 16-17)
Case laws, like juridical laws, stand alone, usually without connecting conjunctions. But they take the form of conditional sentences; the case is introduced by מ or עם, and the corresponding judgment is introduced by Waw conjunctive, Waw consecutive, or asyndeton.
Chapter 21

Analysis of Hebrew Discourse

(Exod. 22:15-16; Eng. 16-17)

(1) וַיְאַסֶּפֶנָּה לַאֲזֵרֻהָ הַבִּיטָה עַל־לָא אָכְרֵיהָ

(2) הַשְּׁכָב עָמוֹתָה

(3) מֵהָיוֹת לוֹ אֵלָה קָרְשָה

(4) לְמָאִית נְאָעָה אָבִיה לְלָא אָכְרֵיהָ

(5) כְּפָה שֶׁיַּקֵּל בָּטַחְרָה רַמְנוֹרְלָה: ס

If a man entices a virgin who is not betrothed, and he has lain with her, then he shall surely pay the bride-price for her to be his wife.

[but]

If her father utterly refuses to give her to him, then he shall pay money according to the bride-price of virgins. (Exod. 22:15-16)

21.12.1 First Clustering Cycle

Sentences 1 and 2 form a cluster (1-2), having common participants (a man and a virgin), a common theme (consensual fornication), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction "ו" joining them. Heading: A man seduced a virgin.

Sentences 4 and 5 form a cluster (4-5), having common participants (the man and the virgin’s father), a common theme (consequences of the father’s refusal), their semantic content being consistent with the conditional subordinating conjunctions "ו" . . . "ו" joining them. The man pays the marriage dowry even if the father refuses to give the daughter in marriage. Heading: The dowry must be paid regardless of the father’s approval.

21.12.2 Second Clustering Cycle

Sentence 3 and cluster (4-5) form a new cluster (3-5), having common participants (the man and the virgin’s father), a common theme (payment of the marriage dowry), their semantic content being consistent with the understood and restored disjunctive coordinating conjunction "ו" joining them. The conjunction is understood to be disjunctive because of the semantics of the clusters. Heading: The man must pay the dowry to marry the virgin.

21.12.3 Third Clustering Cycle

Cluster (1-2) and cluster (3-5) form the final cluster—the story line, having common participants (the man, the virgin and her father), a common theme (marriage and dowry), their semantic content being consistent with the conditional subordinating conjunctions "ו" . . . "ו" joining them. The second conjunction "ו" is restored and understood to be the expected companion of "ו". Heading: A fornicating couple must marry.
21.12.4 Commentary (Exodus 22:15-16)

This passage is the case law concerning the seduction of a virgin not engaged to be married. Cluster (1-2) is the compound protasis [case], and cluster (3-5) is the compound apodosis [judgment], in semantic concord with the conditional conjunctions () joining them. Cluster (1-2) contains two parallel sentences having common participants (a man and a virgin), a common theme (seduction), and common role, in semantic concord with the coordinating conjunction () joining them;17 they stipulate the two conditions under which judgment should be executed: enticement (1) and coitus (2).18 Cluster (3-5) specifies two parallel alternative judgments, in semantic concord with the understood disjunctive conjunction () joining them: sentence (3) requires marriage and a dowry, and sub-cluster (4-5) requires monetary retribution equivalent to a dowry if the father refuses to give the daughter in marriage; In sub-cluster (4-5), sentence (4) is the protasis [condition] and sentence (5) the apodosis [consequence] of a conditional argument, being in semantic concord with the conditional conjunctions () joining them: the father’s acceptance or refusal of marriage determines the alternative.

21.12.5 Natural Outline (Exodus 22:15-16)

A Fornicating Couple Must Marry

I. If a Man Seduced a Virgin
   A. The man entices a virgin who is not betrothed (16a)
   B. And he lies with her (16b),

II. Then the Man Must Pay the Dowry to Marry the Virgin
   A. The man shall surely pay the bride-price for her to be his wife (16c)
   B. But the dowry must be paid regardless of the father’s approval
      1. If her father utterly refuses to give her to him (17a)
      2. Then he shall pay money according to the bride-price of virgins (17b)

21.13 Predictive Discourse (Isaiah 2:2-4)

Predictive discourse foretells the future in some sense, whether something actual and certain or potential and uncertain. Isaiah 2:2-4 foretells the establishment of universal peace in the

---

17 The conjunction is Waw conjunctive, not Waw consecutive; the sentences express coordinate, not sequential, conditions. The verb is in first position because its subject is elided.

18 The verb is in the perfect aspect in a future context, expressing certainty, that is, coitus is an established fact, not merely an accusation.
future Millennial Kingdom. The LORD will govern the nations of the world in Jerusalem where people will come to learn His law.

(Isaiah 2:2-4)

Now it shall come to pass in the latter days

That the mountain of the LORD's house Shall be established on the top of the mountains, and

it shall be exalted above the hills; and

all nations shall flow to it.

And many people shall come

and they shall say,

[saying] “Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD,

To the house of the God of Jacob;

and He will teach us His ways,

And we shall walk in His paths.”

For out of Zion shall go forth the law,

and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.

And He shall judge between the nations,

and He shall rebuke many people;

and [as a result] they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and

they shall beat their spears into pruning hooks;

[and] nation shall not lift up sword against nation, and

they shall not learn war anymore. (Isa. 2:2-4)
21.13.1 First Clustering Cycle

First it is noted that sentence 1 sets the time frame of reference in the prophetic last days of the future. Sentences 2 and 3 form a cluster (2-3), having common participants (the mountain of the LORD’s house and other mountains), a common theme (the exaltation of that mountain), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \text{καὶ} \) joining them. The mountain of the LORD’s house will be the highest place on earth. Heading: The mountain of the LORD’s will be the highest.

Sentences 4 and 5 form a cluster (4-5), having common participants (earth’s people and the mountain of the LORD’s house), a common theme (a pilgrimage to the mountain), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \text{καὶ} \) joining them. Everyone will go up to the mountain of the LORD’s house. Heading: Everyone will pilgrimage to the LORD’s house.

Sentences 7 and 8 form a cluster (7-8), having common participants (earth’s people and the mountain of the LORD’s house), a common theme (an invitation to pilgrimage), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \text{καὶ} \) joining them. Many people will invite others to the pilgrimage. Heading: The pilgrims will invite others to go study under the LORD.

Sentences 9 and 10 form a cluster (9-10), having common participants (the LORD and the pilgrims), a common theme (teaching obedience to the LORD’s ways), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \text{καὶ} \) joining them. Heading: The LORD will teach the pilgrims to walk in His ways.

Sentences 11 and 12 form a cluster (11-12), having common participants (the word of the LORD and Jerusalem), a common theme (distributing the word of the LORD), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \text{καὶ} \) joining them. Heading: The word of the LORD will be distributed from Jerusalem.

Sentences 13 and 14 form a cluster (13-14), having common participants (the LORD and the nations), a common theme (international government), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \text{καὶ} \) joining them. Heading: The LORD will govern the nations.

Sentences 15 and 16 form a cluster (15-16), having common participants (the nations), a common theme (international disarmament), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction \( \text{καὶ} \) joining them. Heading: The nations will disarm.
Sentences 17 and 18 form a cluster (17-18), having common participants (the LORD and the nations), a common theme (international peace), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction $\therefore$ joining them. Heading: The nations will have peace.

21.13.2 Second Clustering Cycle

Cluster (7-8) and cluster (9-10) form a new cluster (7-10), having common participants (the pilgrims and the LORD), a common theme (a learning pilgrimage), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction $\therefore$ joining them. Heading: The pilgrims will go to study under the LORD.

Cluster (15-16) and cluster (17-18) form a new cluster (15-18), having common participants (the nations and armament), a common theme (international peace), their semantic content being consistent with the understood and restored coordinating conjunction $\therefore$ joining them. Heading: There will be international peace.

21.13.3 Third Clustering Cycle

Sentence 6 and cluster (7-10) form a new cluster (6-10), having common participants (the pilgrims), a common theme (their speech), their semantic content being consistent with the understood and restored speech-introducing conjunction $[\mathcal{\alpha\varphi\kappa\varsigma}\mathfrak{m}]$ joining them. The introduction of the pilgrims speech is absorbed into the wording of the heading of cluster (7-9).

Cluster (13-14) and cluster (15-18) form a new cluster (13-18), having common participants (the nations), a common theme (international peaceful government), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunction $\therefore$ joining them. Heading: The LORD will govern the nations in peace.

21.13.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle

Cluster (2-3), cluster (4-5), and cluster (6-10) form a new cluster (2-10), having common participants (pilgrims and the mountain of the house of the LORD), a common theme (educational pilgrimage), their semantic content being consistent with coordinating conjunctions $\therefore$ joining them. Heading: The pilgrims will go to study under the LORD.

Cluster (11-12) and cluster (13-18) form a new cluster (11-18), having common participants (the nations and the LORD), a common theme (world government), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunctions $\therefore$ joining them. Heading: The LORD will govern the nations by His Law.
21.13.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle

Cluster (2-10) and cluster (11-18) form the last cluster (2-18)—the story line, having common participants (the nations, the LORD, and Jerusalem), a common theme (peaceful world government), their semantic content being consistent with coordinating conjunction \( \text{and} \) joining them. Heading: The LORD will govern the nations by His Law.

21.13.6 Commentary (Isaiah 2:2-4)

This passage is introduced by sentence (1) of type (9) setting the time frame in the future latter days; its wording is made part of title of the natural outline; and sentence (2) of type (2) begins a sequence of four type (7) sentences. The discourse consists of two major clusters: cluster (2-10) forms the protasis [result], having common participants (the nations and the LORD), a common prop (the Messianic Temple), and a common theme (pilgrimage for divine instruction); and cluster (11-18) forms the apodosis [reason], having the same participants, common props (Jerusalem and weapons), and a common theme (divinely established universal disarmament) in semantic concord with the result-reason subordinating conjunction (\( \because \)) joining them: regular instructional pilgrimages will be the result of divinely established universal peace.

Cluster (2-11) consists of three sequential sub-clusters joined by \( \text{Waw} \) consecutive (\( \text{?} \)). The first sub-cluster (2-3) consists of two sentences having a common theme (the exaltation of the temple mount) joined by \( \text{Waw} \) consecutive.\(^{19} \) The second sub-cluster (4-5) consists of two sentences having a common theme (pilgrimage to the temple) joined by \( \text{Waw} \) consecutive. The third sub-cluster (6-10) contains the speech of the pilgrims. Sentence (6) introduces the direct quotation of their conversation, and sub-cluster (7-10) is the quotation. Sub-cluster (7-10) has its own literary structure consisting of four type (2) sentences joined by \( \text{Waw} \) conjunctive and arranged in two sub-clusters. The first sub-cluster (7-8) consists of two parallel sentences having common participants (the Gentile nations) and a common theme (mutual exhortation\(^{20} \) to pilgrimage) in semantic concord with the conjunction joining them.

The second sub-cluster (9-10) consists of two parallel sentences having common participants (the LORD and the pilgrims) and a common theme (successful divine instruction) in semantic concord with the conjunction joining them.

---

\(^{19}\) In this sub-cluster and the next, the concept of sequence is not apparent in the sense of the sentences; the use of \( \text{Waw} \) consecutive here may be just to maintain the future tense.

\(^{20}\) Exhortation is expressed by an imperative in the first sentence and by a cohortative in the second.
The second major cluster (11-18) of the passage consists of two sub-clusters: sub-cluster (11-12) and sub-cluster (13-18) joined by Waw consecutive. The first sub-cluster (11-12) consists of two parallel type (2) sentences having common props (Jerusalem and the Law) and a common theme (distribution of the Law); the type (2) sentence begins a new sequence of three type (7) sentences set in the future. The second sub-cluster (13-18) consists of two sub-clusters (13-14) and (15-18) joined by Waw consecutive.

Sub-cluster (13-14) forms the protasis [cause] consisting of two parallel sentences having common participants (the LORD and the nations) and a common theme (rebuking judgment) in semantic concord with the coordinating conjunction joining them; sub-cluster (15-18) forms the apodosis [result] of a cause-result argument in semantic concord with the conjunction joining them.\(^\text{21}\)

Sub-cluster (15-18) itself consists of two sub-clusters: sub-cluster (15-16) forms the protasis [result] and sub-cluster (17-18) the apodosis [purpose] of a result-purpose argument: disarmament will be for the purpose of universal peace. Sub-cluster (15-16) consists of two parallel sentences having common participants (the nations), common props (weapons), and a common theme (disarmament) in semantic concord with the coordinating Waw conjunctive joining them; sub-cluster (17-18) consists of two parallel sentences having common participants (the nations) and a common theme (universal peace) in semantic concord with the coordinating Waw conjunctive joining them.

\(^{21}\) In this case, Waw consecutive stands in place of a more explicit cause-result subordinating conjunction, the cause-result relationship being anticipated by the semantic content of the sentences involved.
21.13.7 *Natural Outline (Isaiah 2:2-4)*

In the Latter Days the LORD Will Govern the Nations by His Law

I. The Nations Will Make a Pilgrimage to Study Under the LORD
   A. The mountain of the lord’s house will be the highest (2:2a-2c)
      1. The mountain of the LORD’s house shall be established on the top of the mountains (2b)
      2. And it shall be exalted above the hills (2c)
   B. Everyone will make a pilgrimage to the LORD’s house (2d-3a)
      1. All nations shall flow to it (2d)
      2. Many people shall come (3a)
   C. And the pilgrims will go to study under the LORD
      1. The pilgrims will invite others go to study under the LORD
         a. Come (3c)
         b. And let us go up to the mountain of the LORD,
            To the house of the God of Jacob (3d)
      2. The LORD will teach the pilgrims to walk in His ways (3e-3f)
         a. He will teach us His ways (3e)
         b. And we shall walk in His paths (3f)

II. For The LORD Will Govern the Nations by His Law
   A. The word of the LORD will be distributed from Jerusalem
      1. Out of Zion shall go forth the law (3g)
      2. And the word of the LORD from Jerusalem (3h)
   B. The LORD will govern the nations in peace
      1. The LORD will govern the nations
         a. He shall judge between the nations (4a)
         b. And He shall rebuke many people (4b)
      2. There will be international peace
         a. The nations will disarm
            (1) They shall beat their swords into plowshares (4c)
            (2) And they shall beat their spears into pruning hooks (4d)
         b. The nations will have peace
            (1) Nation shall not lift up sword against nation (4e)
            (2) And they shall not learn war anymore (4f)

21.14 *Expository Discourse (Isa. 8:19-22)*

Expository discourse explains the meaning of something or the reason for it. Isaiah 8:19-22 explains that the true authoritative source of inquiry is the Word of God, and the dire consequences of seeking guidance from pagan mediums instead of from the LORD.

---

22 The words *they shall say* are inferred in the word *invited.*
And if they say to you, “Seek those who are mediums . . . who whisper and mutter,” then should not a people seek their God? Should they seek the dead on behalf of the living? But seek to the law and to the testimony! For if they do not speak according to this word, then there is no light in them. Therefore they will pass through it hard pressed and hungry; Then it shall happen, when they are hungry, then they will be enraged and they will curse their king and their God, and they will look upward. And they will look to the earth, and behold there will be trouble and darkness, gloom of anguish; and they will be driven into darkness.

21.14.1 First Clustering Cycle

Sentences 1 and 2 form a cluster (1-2), having common participants (idolatrous Israelites), a common theme (divine inquiry), their semantic content being consistent with the understood but
restored speech introducing conjunction [חַוְּר] joining them. Heading: Idolatrous Israelites advised others to seek mediums.

Sentences 3 and 4 form a cluster (3-4), having common participants (Israelites and God), a common theme (divine inquiry), a common mode (rhetorical question), their semantic content being consistent with the understood but restored coordinating conjunction [ו] joining them. Heading: Israelites should inquire of God not the dead.

Sentences 6 and 7 form a cluster (6-7), having common participants (pagan mediums), a common theme (divine inquiry), their semantic content being consistent with the conditional subordinating conjunctions [ו]...[ו] joining them. Sentence 6 is the protasis (condition) and sentence 7 is the apodosis (consequence). Heading: Pagan mediums have no light.

Sentences 11 and 12 form a cluster (11-12), having common participants (idolatrous Israelites), a common theme (raging curses), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunctions [ו] joining them. Heading: Idolatrous Israelites will curse the king and God in rage.

Sentences 13 and 14 form a cluster (13-14), having common participants (idolatrous Israelites), a common theme (search for relief), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunctions [ו] joining them. Heading: Idolatrous Israelites will look high and low for relief.

Sentences 15 and 16 form a cluster (15-16), having common participants (idolatrous Israelites), a common theme (dark distress), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunctions [ו] joining them. Heading: Idolatrous Israelites will find only dark distress.

21.14.2 Second Clustering Cycle

Cluster (1-2) and cluster (3-4) form a new cluster (1-4), having common participants (Israelites, godly and ungodly), a common theme (divine inquiry), their semantic content being consistent with the conditional subordinating conjunctions [ו]...[ו] joining them. Cluster (1-2) is the protasis (condition) and cluster (3-4) is the apodosis (consequence). Heading: Israelites should not inquire from mediums.

Sentence 5 and cluster (6-7) form a new cluster (5-7), having common participants (Israelites), a common theme (divine inquiry), and their semantic content being consistent with the understood but restored result-reason subordinating conjunction [ו] joining them. The conjunction is understood because of the semantic inferences of the clusters. Heading: Israelites should inquire from God not mediums.
Cluster (11-12), cluster (13-14), and cluster (15-16) form a new cluster (11-16), having common participants (idolatrous Israelites), a common theme (chastening distress), and their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunctions \( \wedge \) joining them. Heading: The enraged Israelites will experience distress.

**21.14.3 Third Clustering Cycle**

Cluster (1-4) and cluster (5-7) form a new cluster (1-7), having common participants (Israelites), a common theme (divine inquiry), their semantic content being consistent with the understood but restored adversative coordinating conjunction \( \left[ \wedge \right] \) joining them. The conjunction is understood because of the antithetical distinction of the clusters. Heading: Idolatrous Israelites inquire from mediums not God’s word.

Sentence 10 and cluster (11-16) form a new cluster (10-16), having common participants (idolatrous Israelites), a common theme (angry reaction to famine), their semantic content being consistent with the temporal subordinating conjunctions \( \cdots \leftarrow \) joining them. Heading: The idolatrous Israelites will be enraged by the famine.

**21.14.4 Fourth Clustering Cycle**

Sentence 9 and cluster (10-16) form a new cluster (9-16), but the sentence sets the time frame of reference for what follows and so it only adds the future tense to the heading of the cluster.

**21.14.5 Fifth Clustering Cycle**

Sentence 8 and cluster (9-16) form a new cluster (8-16), having common participants (idolatrous Israelites), a common theme (famine and its resultant distress), their semantic content being consistent with the coordinating conjunctions \( \wedge \) joining them. Heading: The idolatrous Israelites will experience distressful famine.

**21.14.6 Sixth Clustering Cycle**

Cluster (1-7) and cluster (8-16) form the last cluster—the story line, having common participants (idolatrous Israelites), a common theme (judgment for consulting mediums), their semantic content being consistent with the cause-consequence subordinating conjunctions \( \wedge \) joining them. The conjunction is understood because of the semantic inferences of the clusters. Heading: Idolatrous Israel will be judged for abandoning the word of God.

**21.14.7 Commentary (Isaiah 8:19-22)**

Isaiah 8:19-22 is expository discourse, explaining that the true authoritative source of inquiry is the Word of God. It consists of two major sections: cluster (1-7), having common participants (unbelievers and believers) and a common theme (inquiry), forming the protasis [reason] of
a reason-result argument, and cluster (8-16), having common participants (pagan-source inquirers) and a common theme (judgment), forming the apodosis [result] of the reason-result argument: the wrong source of inquiry results in judgment.\textsuperscript{23}

The first main section, cluster (1-7) consists of two contrasting sub-clusters.\textsuperscript{24} The first sub-cluster (1-4) presents the false source of inquiry, and the second cluster (5-7) defends the true source of inquiry. Because of the introductory conjunction (נו), the first sub-cluster (1-4) has the initial appearance of a conditional argument; but the argument is elliptical because the anticipated apodosis is regarded as self-evident and omitted; consequently, the broader argument continues without it.

This cluster consists of two contrasting sub-clusters: Sub-cluster (1-2) contains a hypothetical quotation, introduced by sentence (1), of unbelievers urging the consultation of pagan sources, sentence (2). Contrasting sub-cluster (3-4) contains two parallel rhetorical questions inferring that inquiry should be made from the LORD.

The second sub-cluster (5-7) argues that God’s Word is the only reliable source of inquiry. It consists of two sub-clusters: sentence (5) forms the protasis [result], and sub-cluster (6-7) forms the apodosis [reason] of a result-reason argument:\textsuperscript{25} one should inquire from God’s Word because contradictory advice lacks light. Sub cluster (6-7) forms a conditional argument: sentence (6) is the protasis [condition] and sentence (7) is the apodosis [consequence] in semantic concord with the conditional conjunctions (ונ...וח) joining them: pagan sources that contradict God’s word have no light.

The second main section of this passage, cluster (8-16), pronounces judgment on those who inquire from pagan sources. It consists of two parallel sub-clusters joined by Waw consecutive. The first sub-cluster, sentence (8), foretells the judgment of hardship and hunger. The second sub-cluster (9-16) foretells consequential future judgment; it consists of a temporal conditional argument, sub-cluster (10-16), introduced by sentence (9) of type (9) setting the events in the future. Sentence (10) is the protasis [temporal condition: hunger] of sub-cluster (10-16). Sub-cluster (11-

\textsuperscript{23} The reason-result conjunction is expressed by Waw consecutive indicating logical consequence as well as temporal sequence.

\textsuperscript{24} The disjunctive conjunction is omitted because the disjunctive relationship of the clusters is understood on the basis of the contrasting semantic content of the clusters.

\textsuperscript{25} The result-reason conjunction is omitted because that subordinating relationship is understood on the basis of the semantic content of the clusters.
16) forms the apodosis [consequence: judgment] of a temporal-conditional argument, in semantic concord with the temporal-conditional conjunctions () joining them.

Sub-cluster (11-16) consists of three parallel sub-clusters joined by coordinating conjunctions, each foretelling judgment. Sub-cluster (11-12) consists of two parallel sentences joined by Waw consecutive, expressing resultant rage and cursing; sub-cluster (13-14) consists of two parallel sentences joined by Waw conjunctive, expressing fruitless search for guidance; and sub-cluster (15-16) consists of two parallel sentences joined by Waw conjunctive, expressing dark despair.
21.14.8 Natural Outline

Idolatrous Israel Will Be Judged for Abandoning the Word of God

I. Idolatrous Israelites Inquire from Mediums Not God’s Word

A. Israelites should not inquire from mediums
   1. Idolatrous Israelites advise to seek mediums
      a. When they say to you (19a)
      b. Seek those who are mediums and wizards, who whisper and mutter (19b)
   2. Israelites should inquire of God not the dead
      a. Should not a people seek their God? (19c)
      b. Should they seek the dead on behalf of the living? (19d)

B. But Israelites should inquire from God not mediums of darkness
   1. Seek to the law and to the testimony (20a)
   2. For pagan mediums have no light
      a. If they do not speak according to this word (20b)
      b. Then there is no light in them (20c)

II. Therefore the Idolatrous Israelites Will Experience Distressful Famine

A. They will pass through hard pressed and hungry (21a)
B. The idolatrous Israelites will be enraged by the famine
   1. When they are hungry (21c)
   2. Then the enraged Israelites will experience distress
      a. Idolatrous Israelites will curse the king and God in rage
         (1) They will be enaged (21d)
         (2) And they will curse their king and their God (21e)
      b. And idolatrous Israelites will look high and low for relief
         (1) They will look upward (21f)
         (2) And they will look to the earth (22a)
      c. And idolatrous Israelites will find only dark distress
         (1) They will see trouble and darkness, gloom of anguish (22b)
         (2) And they will be driven into darkness (22c)
21.15 Summary

Discourse analysis involves unearthing the structure of the semantic and logical organization of a text together with its natural outline. This is accomplished by executing a few ordered analysis rules based on grouping according to discourse affinity.

Discourse Affinity

Discourse characteristics that contribute to the mutual discourse affinity of its sentences:

Position Affinity

Semantic Affinity

(1) common participants and props
(2) common time frame
(3) common place
(4) common tense, mood, mode, and negation
(5) common theme

Conjunctive Affinity

Grouping Principles

Seven ordered principles govern the grouping of the sentences and clusters of sentences into semantic clusters:

Unpacking
Greatest Discourse Affinity
Conjunctive Compatibility
Completeness
Conjunctive Priority
Acquired Semantic Affinity
Iteration
CHAPTER 22
The Accents in the Hebrew Bible

Besides the familiar diacritical marks known as vowel points, the Masoretic text of the Hebrew Old Testament also uses various other marks of significance. They consist of (1) marks denoting possible textual problems, (2) marks referring to marginal notes, (3) marks signifying that certain words should be pronounced together as though a single word (phonetic union), and (4) marks of accentuation that indicate where pauses should or should not occur in reading the text—a kind of punctuation—and that serve as a kind of musical notation.

22.1 Textual Problems

The marks that denote possible textual problems are known as *nigqudoth* (נִיקּוּדְוּת—dots) or *puncta extraordinaria*. They consist of prominent dots placed above the characters of the word or words in question. No explanation is given in the Masoretic notes as to why the words are so marked. Ernst Wurthwein suggested that “these points register textual or doctrinal reservations on the part of scribes (sopherim) who dared not alter the text because they held it to be sacrosanct.”

But Esau ran to meet him, and embraced him, and fell on his neck and kissed him, and they wept. (Gen. 33:4)

The word נֵלֵלָה (and he kissed him) is marked with extra dots to indicate some possible textual problem. The editors of BHS speculate that the word has been added by a later hand.

22.2 Masoretic Notes

The printed editions of the Hebrew Old Testament commonly referred to as BHK and BHS display a small circule (°) above a word which refers to a marginal Masoretic note. Other printed

---

editions use a star or asterisk. A companion volume to BHS provides a catalog of all the Masoretic notes.  

22.3 Phonetic Union

The Maqqeph (ḥəḇ—hyphen) is frequently used to join words that are closely related syntactically. Such word clusters are run together and pronounced as a single word having only one primary stress; they are called “phonetic units” in this chapter. Secondary stress occurs in such word clusters much like it would in a single long word with a corresponding number of syllables. In the rules of accentuation, such phonetic units are treated as though they were one word.

\[\text{And it was so. (Gen. 1:9)}\]

The words are pronounced as one: wa-yᵉ-hî-kēn.

22.4 Accent Marks

The remaining non-vowel marks in the Hebrew Bible are marks of accentuation, otherwise referred to as marks of cantillation, that is, the public liturgical reading of the Hebrew Scriptures in the synagogue. The Hebrew Bible uses accent marks to denote secondary stress and primary stress.

The term stress refers to the relative degree of loudness with which the syllables of a word are spoken. Biblical Hebrew has four levels of stress (loudness) used in pronunciation. The syllable with the strongest level of stress is marked by a primary accent in the Hebrew Bible. The syllable with the medium level of stress is marked by a secondary accent. The two lowest levels of stress are not marked in the Bible. Syllables with the lowest level of stress usually have vocal Sheva (ָ) as the vowel. The following example illustrates the four levels of stress:

\[\text{And it was so. (Gen. 1:9)}\]

The words are pronounced as WA-yᵉ-hî-KĒN where the last syllable KĒN receives the primary (strongest) pronunciation stress, the first syllable WA receives secondary (moderate) stress, and the syllable yᵉ receives the weakest stress, and the syllable hî next weakest.

Secondary Accents. Some marks of accentuation are not involved with the syntactic and musical aspects of cantillation. They are used to mark a syllable receiving secondary stress in

---

pronunciation. The most common mark for this purpose is the *Metheg* (חיש—bridle). It consists of a small vertical bar ( ), placed below the word and immediately to the left of the vowel in the syllable receiving secondary stress.\(^3\)

Primary stress usually occurs on the last syllable (*ultima*) of a word or phonetic unit, less frequently on the next-to-last syllable (*penultima*), but never earlier in the word. Secondary stress may occur on words with more than two syllables, and long words or phonetic units may have two or more syllables with secondary stress. On rare occasions a word with primary stress on the penultima may have secondary stress on the ultima.\(^4\)

In special cases one of the other accent marks (usually used to denote primary stress) may replace the *Metheg* to mark secondary stress. When used to mark secondary stress, these accents should be interpreted as a substitute for *Metheg* with no conjunctive or disjunctive function in accentuation.

*Primary Accents.* The primary accents are the subject of the remaining part of this chapter.

### 22.5 The Importance of the Accents

The study of the Masoretic accents in the Hebrew Old Testament has been neglected by most Hebrew grammarians of the twentieth century. Most contemporary grammarians give only a brief description of the accents with a meager discussion of their function in the Hebrew Bible. Even Gesenius’ Hebrew Grammar\(^5\) devotes only five pages to them. Max L. Margolis\(^6\) wrote a detailed article on the accents, but it is so terse and complex that it is of little value except to scholars. William Wickes\(^7\) wrote the most comprehensive work on Hebrew accents in 1881-1887. His work is still regarded as the classical treatment of the accentuation of the Hebrew Bible.

---

\(^3\) In BHK the editors added *Metheg* and *Silluq* when they were lacking in MS Leningrad B19a. These added signs were placed to the right of the vowel. This practice was discontinued in BHS, although the signs were placed at the right of the vowel when found in that position in B19a. See BHS, xii.

\(^4\) See הַשְּׁבָע (Gen 3:18), יִכְּפֹּר (22:7), יִכְּפֹּר חָיָה (31:28). Syllables with reduced vowels (vocal Shewa and the hateph vowels) are ignored when determining the penultima.


In more recent times, several other important works have been published on the Hebrew accents. In spite of the information available about the accents, most expositors of the Hebrew Old Testament regard them to be of little importance to a clear understanding of the text. On the contrary, the accents may be quite important to the student of Scripture. Wickes correctly explained their importance: “The accentuators thus did their best to assist both reader and hearers in apprehending what seemed to them the true meaning of the Sacred Text. And this is for us the recommendation of their system.”

The accents complement the grammar and syntax of Hebrew, preserving the traditional understanding of the text, an understanding with roots in the deep recesses of antiquity. No serious expositor of Scripture should neglect such important keys to Biblical exposition. Bruce K. Waltke, a modern authority on the Hebrew language, correctly evaluated the importance of the Hebrew accents to Biblical exposition:

So important is the accentuation of Hebrew grammar for understanding that medieval Jewish sources paid more attention to it than to establishing the correct pronunciation of words. At present it is best to consider the accents as an early and relatively reliable witness to a correct interpretation of the text.

### 22.6 Three Purposes of Primary Accents

The accents in Biblical Hebrew serve three purposes: (1) phonetically they mark the syllable that receives the principal stress in pronunciation; (2) syntactically they indicate the degree of grammatical separation or connection between adjoining words and phrases much like punctuation marks in English; (3) musically they indicate the relative intonation of a word in cantillation.

#### 22.6.1 Marking Stress

Every Hebrew word or phonetic unit has a prominent syllable that receives stress in pronunciation. The prominent stressed syllable of a Hebrew word is marked by one of the accents. Some accent marks are written above the first consonant of the stressed syllable, whereas others are written below the first consonant of the stressed syllable and immediately to the left of any vowel there. As stated previously, most Hebrew words receive the prominent stress on the last

---

8 See the bibliography for a selected list.
9 Wickes, I, 51.
11 A few accents are written on the first or last letter of the word regardless of where the stress occurs. Those that appear on the first letter of the word are called *prepositive*, and those that appear on the last *postpositive*. For words marked with these accents, the stressed syllable must be determined by the traditional place of stress associated with the inflected form of the word.
syllable (the ultima); a few are stressed on the next-to-last syllable (the penultima). The prominent stress never occurs earlier than the penultima. In a few cases the stress distinguishes inflected forms that otherwise would be spelled exactly the same.

**22.6.2 Marking Syntactic Relationship**

Syntactically the Hebrew accents indicate the degree of grammatical separation or connection between adjoining words and phrases much like punctuation marks in English. There are two types of accents: (1) disjunctive accents that divide words or phrases, and (2) conjunctive accents that join words or phrases. In the reading of Hebrew Scripture, the disjunctive accents call for a pause following the words on which they occur. The duration of the pause depends on the type of accent: the stronger disjunctive accents call for longer pauses. In addition, the two strongest disjunctive accents frequently alter the pronunciation of a word, causing the stress to shift to the penultima with a corresponding lengthening of the vowel of the stressed syllable where possible.\(^1\)

On the other hand, a conjunctive accent calls for the word on which it occurs to be read with no pause between it and the word that follows.

The syntax of the accents and the syntax of Hebrew grammar, while similar in many respects, do not have a one-to-one correspondence. For example, the syntactic domain of the accents is always a verse, regardless of its length; whereas, the syntactic domain of Hebrew grammar is a sentence, where a verse may contain more than one sentence, or occasionally only a partial sentence. In exposition, where the accents contradict grammar, grammar dominates.

**22.6.3 Marking Musical Cantillation**

In addition to marking the stressed syllable and syntactic relationships, the marks of accentuation also indicate the relative intonation of a word in cantillation. Avigar Herzog described an elaborate system of cantillation.\(^2\) Several different traditions have developed throughout the extended history of synagogue worship.\(^3\) Some modern scholars have doubted that the accent marks were originally intended to provide notation for cantillation. The debate over this issue is beyond the purpose of this chapter. However, there seems to be no convincing reason to doubt the originality of that intent.\(^4\)

---

\(^1\) Word forms with such altered pronunciation are called pausal forms (see Chapter 23).


22.7 The Accents Used in the Prose Books

Two sets of accent marks are used in the Hebrew Bible: (1) those used in the so-called Books of Poetry (Psalms, Job, and Proverbs), also referred to as the Books of Truth, based on an acronym אב―ש―ר (truth) constructed from the first letters of their Hebrew names אב―ש―ר—Job, ש―ר—Proverbs, and שר―ב—Psalms; and (2) those used in the twenty-one other so-called prose books of the Hebrew canon. This section describes the function of the accents for each division of the Hebrew Bible, beginning with those used in the prose books.

The following is a list of the accents used in the 21 so-called prose books. They are listed and numbered according to the list provided as a companion to BHK and BHS.

### Disjunctive Accents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(0) Soph Pasuq (םּוֹפַע)</td>
<td>סּופַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) Silluq (זֶלֶע)</td>
<td>זֶלֶע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Athnach (אַתְנַךְ)</td>
<td>אַתְנַךְ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Segolta (סֶגוֹלָטָה) (postpositive)</td>
<td>סֶגוֹלָטָה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Shalsheleth (שַלְשֶׁלֶת)</td>
<td>שַלְשֶׁלֶת</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Little Zaqeph (לַטּ)</td>
<td>לַטּ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) Great Zaqeph (גּוֹעֵד)</td>
<td>גּוֹעֵד</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) Rebia (רְבִיָּה)</td>
<td>רְבִיָּה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8) Tiphcha (תִּפְחָא)</td>
<td>תִּפְחָא</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9) Zarqa (זַרָּקָה) (postpositive)</td>
<td>זַרָּקָה</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) Pashta (פָּשָׁתָה) (postpositive)</td>
<td>פָּשָׁתָה</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Although she has presented evidence supporting the musical nature of the accents and their antiquity, her decipherment is unconvincing.

---

16 The prose books are counted as 21 according to the Hebrew canon, but as 36 according to the English canon. The Hebrew canon counts 1 & 2 Samuel as one book. The same is true for the books of Kings and Chronicles. Also the 12 minor prophets are counted as one book, also Ezra-Nehemiah as one book.

17 *Erläuterung der Accente zu Kittels Biblia Hebraica*, Privileg. Bibelanstalt, Stuttgart. Some authorities have used different names for some of the accents. These are not regarded as important for this work. Consult Wickes for more detail. The number in parentheses should not be considered an indication of the relative hierarchic rank of the accents. Such rank is discussed in a later section.

18 Contrary to accepted authorities I treat *Soph Pasuq* as a member of the set of disjunctive accents, because it fits into the syntax rules that govern their use. It is true that *Soph Pasuq* does not mark the stressed syllable of a word, but it does mark the end of a verse segment—that segment consisting of the entire verse. The consistency of the rules of hierarchic governance demonstrate that *Silluq* closes the last major segment of a verse, and not the verse as a whole.
Chapter 22  The Accents

Conjunctive Accents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(19) Munach (מואך)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(20) Mahpak (מַפָּק)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21) Mereka (מְרֵק)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22) Double Mereka (מְרִיקָא)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(23) Darga (דרג)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(24) Azla (ازל)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(25) Little Telisha (תלישא)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(26) Galgal (גלגול)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(27) Mayela (מַיֶּלֶה)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(28) Paseq (פָּשֶׁק)</td>
<td>ד' א&quot;מ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

22.7.1 The Laws of the Prose Accents

The use of the accents in the Hebrew Bible is governed by strict well-behaved rules. They have their own laws of grammar and syntax, which are in turn in relative harmony with the grammar and syntax of Biblical Hebrew.

---

19 Paseq is not on the standard list of accents, but it must be included in any discussion of them. It is not a conjunctive accent as its position in the list implies; nor does it mark a stressed syllable as do most of the other accents. But it does call for a slight pause in imitation of a disjunctive accent.


21 When the syntactic grammar of the accents is in disharmony with the syntactic grammar of the Hebrew language, then the grammar of the accents dominates.
The Laws of Hierarchic Governance. The early authorities recognized a hierarchic order among the disjunctive accents, referring to the various ranks in terms of European nobility, such as

- Emperors: *Silluq, Athnach*
- Kings: *Segolta, Zaqeph, Tiphcha*
- Princes: *Rebia, Zarqa, Pashta, Tebir*
- Officers: *Pazer, Great Telisha, Geresh*
- Servants: All Conjunctives

The idea was that the accents of highest rank mark the major syntactic divisions of a verse, and the lower ranking accents mark secondary and tertiary divisions within the domain of the higher ranking accents. Other grammarians arranged them in different ranks, but most recognized some hierarchic order. Wickes noted a hierarchic order among the accents, but he avoided specific categories and terms of nobility, preferring rather to view their disjunctive strength as relative rather than absolute. Evident differences in the classification of the accents demonstrate the lack of agreement among the authorities. My own research supports the existence of hierarchic order among the accents, but with the following hierarchic ranks:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Disjunctive Accents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emperor</td>
<td>*Soph Pasuq (°), Athnach (°)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kings</td>
<td>*Silluq (°), Athnach (°)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Princes</td>
<td>*Tiphcha (°), Zaqeph (°), Segolta (°)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dukes</td>
<td>*Tebir (°), Pashta (°), Zarqa (°), Rebia (°)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counts</td>
<td>*Geresh (°), Great Telisha (°), Pazer (°), Legarmeh (</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Servants</td>
<td>All Conjunctives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In addition, the disjunctive accents observe the following rules of governance:

1. A disjunctive accent governs the domain of a segment of a verse. It stands at the end of the segment it governs, marking the presence of a syntactic division. The domain of the segment

---

22 See my work cited in footnote 20. Wickes was correct in observing that the disjunctive strength of the accents is relative, not absolute, with respect to the grammar of the Hebrew language; that is, a given disjunctive accent does not designate the same level of syntactic division in every verse, nor does it mark the same kinds of syntactic division in every case. However, within a verse the governance of a given disjunctive always follows the same strict grammar rules of accentuation. Thus, in this sense, the hierarchy of the accents may be regarded as absolute, not relative. Although the use of the terms of nobility may seem archaic, they are suitably accurate and serve well as a tool for teaching.
extends from the given accent forward toward the beginning of the verse until it reaches an accent of equal or greater hierarchic rank, or until it reaches the beginning of the verse.

Example (Gen. 1:1)

In the beginning God created / the heavens and the earth.

The domain of Soph Pasuq () includes the whole verse. The domain of the Athnach () includes the first half of the verse, and that of Silluq () includes the last half.

(2) The domain of a given disjunctive accent may include lesser segments (if any) governed by one of two possible disjunctive accents immediately subordinate to the given accent. That is, the domain may have additional syntactic divisions of lesser rank. For example: the domain of a king includes the domains of its subordinate princes, and the domain of a prince includes the domains of its subordinate dukes, and so forth. In the above example, the domain of Soph Pasuq () includes the domains of the Silluq () and the Athnach (). The domains of both the Silluq and the Athnach include the domain of a Tipcha ().

(3) The domain of a disjunctive accent may be empty, fractional, or full. Its domain may consist of only the one word (or word-unit) on which the accent appears, in which case the domain is regarded as empty—that is, it has no subordinate syntactic divisions. Its domain may include only one lesser segment, in which case the lesser segment is governed by the immediately subordinate disjunctive accent defined as the “near” or “favorite” subordinate of the given accent; this lesser segment is referred to as “the near subordinate segment,” and the domain of the superior accent is regarded as fractional. Finally, its domain may include a near subordinate segment and one or more lesser segments each governed by an immediately subordinate disjunctive accent defined as the “remote” or “less favorite” subordinate of the given accent; in this case the additional lesser segments are referred to as “remote subordinate segments,” and the domain is regarded as full. Thus the domain of a disjunctive accent may be:

---

23 The term “remote” is used with respect to the given disjunctive accent and in the direction toward the beginning of the verse. Thus a “near” subordinate segment is adjacent to the word-unit of the given accent, and a “remote” subordinate segment is at a distance from the word-unit of the given accent in the direction of the beginning of the verse. There can be no remote subordinate segment without at least an empty near subordinate segment.
(a) **Empty**, containing only the word-unit bearing the given accent, with no subordinate segments (i.e., a king standing alone without his princes).

**Example** (Gen. 1:3)

```
SOP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIL</th>
<th>ATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

Then God said, “Let there be light”; / and there was light.

The *Silluq* (′) segment is empty, having no subordinate disjunctives in its domain.

(b) **Fractional**, containing only a “near” subordinate segment (i.e., a king standing with only his favorite prince in his domain, or a duke standing with only his favorite count in his domain).

(c) **Full**, containing a “near” and one or more “remote” subordinate segments (i.e., a prince standing with the favorite duke and one or more of the less favorite dukes in his domain).

**Example** (Gen. 1:2)

```
SOP

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SIL</th>
<th>ATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TIP</th>
<th>ZAQ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```

And the Spirit of God / was hovering over the face of the waters.

In this example, the *Silluq* segment is full, containing a near subordinate *Tiphcha* (′) segment and a remote subordinate *Zaqeph* (′′) segment. The *Tiphcha* segment includes the word-unit containing the *Silluq* (′) that governs it.

The defined order of subordination among the disjunctive accents is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Defined Subordinates</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emperor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Near King</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote King</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24 Only one *Atnach* segment is permitted.

25 In the domain of *Atnach*, a *Segolta* segment may replace an initial *Zaqeph segment* under certain conditions.
Near Prince  \( Tiphcha (\,\,') \)  \( Tebir (\,\,') \)  \( Rebia (\,\,*\,) \)
Remote Prince  \( Zaqeph (\,\,') \)  \( Pashta (\,\,') \)  \( Rebia (\,\,*\,) \)
Remote Prince  \( Segolta (\,\,*\,) \)  \( Zarqa (\,\,*\,) \)  \( Rebia (\,\,*\,) \)
Near Duke  \( Tebir (\,\,') \)  \( Geresh (\,\,') \)  \( Pazer (\,\,*\,) \)
Near Duke  \( Pashta (\,\,') \)  \( Geresh (\,\,') \)  \( Pazer (\,\,*\,) \)
Near Duke  \( Zarqa (\,\,') \)  \( Geresh (\,\,') \)  \( Pazer (\,\,*\,) \)
Remote Duke  \( Rebia(\,\,*\,)^{26} \)  \( Geresh (\,\,') \)  \( Pazer (\,\,*\,) \)
Near Count  \( Geresh (\,\,') \)  \( Legarmeh (\,\,') \)
Remote Count  \( G.Telisha (\,\,') \) Empty
Remote Count  \( Pazer (\,\,*\,) \) Empty

The domain of the hierarchy may be illustrated by the following diagram (in Hebrew order).\(^{27}\)

\[
\begin{array}{|c|c|c|c|c|}
\hline
& \text{Near King} & \text{Emperor} & \text{Remote King} \\
& (\text{Silluq}) & (\text{Soph Pasuq}) & (\text{Atnach}) \\
\hline
\text{Near Prince} & \text{Remote Prince} & \text{Near Prince} & \text{Remote Prince} \\
(Tiphcha) & (Zaqeph) & (Tiphcha) & (Zaqeph/Segolta) \\
\hline
\text{N-Duke} & \text{R-Duke} & \text{N-Duke} & \text{R-Duke} \\
(Teb) & (Reb) & (Pash) & (Reb) \\
\hline
\text{N-Count} & \text{R-Count} & \text{N-Count} & \text{R-Count} \\
(Ger) & (Paz) & (Ger) & (Paz) \\
\hline
\end{array}
\]

(4) The chain of command is absolute; that is, a lower ranking disjunctive may only stand in the domain of its immediate superior, and the succession of rank always extends to the highest order in every verse. Thus a duke must be governed by a prince, a prince must be governed by a king, and a king by the emperor. So, if a verse has a \( Zarqa (\,\,*\,) \), the \( Zarqa \) must be governed by a \( Segolta (\,\,*\,) \) which is governed by an \( Atnach (\,\,') \) which is governed by \( Soph Pasuq (\,\,') \).

(5) The law of favoritism is absolute; that is, a near (favorite) subordinate must always stand between a governing disjunctive and a remote (less favorite) subordinate, if any. That is,

\(^{26}\) \textit{Rebia} may be preceded by a \textit{Legarmeh} segment.

\(^{27}\) Space does not permit the mapping of the domain of every duke. Because the domain of each duke is the same in every case, the domain of each is mapped only once.
Chapter 22

The Accents

The favorite prince Tiphcha ( ) must stand between king Silluq ( ) and less favorite prince Zaqqeph ( ), favorite duke Tebir ( ) must stand between prince Tiphcha ( ) and less favorite duke Rebia ( ), and so forth. Pashta ( ) must stand between a Rebia ( ) and its governing Zaqqeph ( ); a Tiphcha ( ) must stand between a Zaqqeph ( ) and its governing Athnach ( ), and Silluq ( ) between Athnach ( ) and Soph Pasuq ( ). The law extends to the conjunctives (servants): servants (if any) must stand between a governing disjunctive and its near subordinate; and favoritism exists among servants of different kinds.

The Law of Substitution. Some of the disjunctive accents do not appear in the laws of hierarchic governance, but serve the role of designated substitutes for some of the accents in those laws. Except for Segolta, in most cases substitution takes place when the regular segment is empty and the associated disjunctive accent has no preceding conjunctives. The following is a list of the substitute segments and the segments which they replace:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular Segment</th>
<th>Substitute Segment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Little Zaqeph ( )</td>
<td>Great Zaqeph ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Zaqeph ( )</td>
<td>Segolta ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segolta ( )</td>
<td>Shalsheleth (</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pashta ( )</td>
<td>Yethib ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geresh ( )</td>
<td>Garshaim ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Pazer ( )</td>
<td>Great Pazer ( )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Law of Transformation. For musical reasons, Geresh ( ) may not stand too close to Tebir ( ), Pashta ( ), or Zarqa ( )—the dukes that govern Geresh as their favorite count. If Geresh would occur too close to its governing duke, it is replaced by the servant conjunctive that would normally serve these dukes (see below), leaving in place any of its own servant conjunctives and subordinate segments that may be required. Such a transformed Geresh functions virtually as though it were there as far as the laws of the accents are concerned, but it functions as a conjunctive as far as cantillation is concerned. A similar musical restraint causes Rebia ( ) to transform into Pashta ( ) under certain conditions.

The Law of Conjunctives. A sequence of words closely related grammatically and syntactically usually are joined together by conjunctive accents; that is, the first and intermediate words in the sequence have conjunctive accents, and the last word has a disjunctive accent. The conjunctives behave as though they were personal servants to the disjunctive that immediately follows. As far as the governance is concerned, the presence of conjunctive accents has little or no effect on the way a disjunctive accent governs its subordinates. The kings ignore their servants.
(conjunctives) in the exercise of governance over the princes; the princes ignore their servants in
governing the dukes, and so forth.

On the other hand, a given disjunctive accent has a specific number and kind of conjunctive
accents (servants) that may appear on the words preceding it. The following is a list of the number
and kind of conjunctive accents that may precede each of the disjunctives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disjunctive Accent</th>
<th>Permitted Conjunctive Accents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Soph Pasuq (:)</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silluq ( )</td>
<td>0-1 Mereka ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athnach ( )</td>
<td>0-2 Munach ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiphcha ( )</td>
<td>0-1 Mereka ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Zaqeph ( )</td>
<td>0-2 Munach ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Zaqeph ( )</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segolta ( )</td>
<td>0-2 Munach ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shalsheleth ( )</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tebir ( )</td>
<td>0-4 Various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pashta ( )</td>
<td>0-4 Various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yeth ib ( )</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zarqa ( )</td>
<td>0-4 Various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebia ( )</td>
<td>0-3 Various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geresh ( )</td>
<td>0-5 Various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garshaim ( )</td>
<td>0-1 Munach ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Telisha ( )</td>
<td>0-5 Munach ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Little Pazer ( )</td>
<td>0-6 Munach ( )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Pazer ( )</td>
<td>2-6 Various</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legarmeh ( )</td>
<td>0-1 Mereka ( )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For those disjunctive accents that admit various conjunctives before them, an ordered rank
exists among the admitted conjunctives. In Hebrew order, the ranks are as follows:

---

28 The accents are listed in the order of their hierarchic rank, with substitute accents following the accent
which they may replace.

29 The roman numerals indicate the ordered rank, and stand in the position occupied by the conjunctive accent
of that rank, in Hebrew order. See Table 11 for further explanation.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of Conjunctives</th>
<th>Order of the Conjunctive Ranks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Disjunctive + I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Disjunctive + I + II/III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>Disjunctive + I + II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Disjunctive + I + II + III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Disjunctive + I + II + III + III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5+</td>
<td>Disjunctive + I + II + III + III..+ (III)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A conjunctive in ordered rank I stands immediately before its governing disjunctive. A conjunctive in ordered rank II stands immediately before its companion in rank I, and a conjunctive in rank III stand immediately before its companion in ranks I or II. A conjunctive of rank III may be repeated when there are more than three conjunctives. Except for Great Pazer (’), the service of disjunctive accents by their admissible conjunctives (servants) is optional. But if conjunctives are used, they must appear in their ordered rank; those of lower ordered rank may not be used without their following companions of higher rank (the law of favoritism). Thus, a conjunctive of ordered rank II must be followed by its companion of rank I. For musical reasons, some conjunctives of ordered rank I may be replaced by an alternate.

Several additional observations are of interest. The disjunctive accents of highest hierarchic rank admit the least number of preceding conjunctives. The emperor, Soph Pasuq (‘), admits none. Kings and princes admit a sequence of no more than two of the same kind of conjunctive. Dukes and Geresh (‘) among the counts admit sequences of specific conjunctives in ordered ranks; whereas the other counts admit longer sequences of only one kind of conjunctive.

Mereka (,) serves exclusively as a conjunctive for accents governing near subordinate segments, never repeating. Munach (,) serves exclusively as a conjunctive for accents governing remote subordinate segments, or exclusively in ordered rank III, frequently repeating. Table 22.1 defines the ordered rank of the conjunctives with respect to their associated disjunctive.

### 22.7.2 Interpreting the Prose Accents

Although some accents are easy to interpret, the tension between the rules that govern the placement of the accents and the syntax of the language itself causes the interpretation of the accents to be difficult at times. The interpretation of the conjunctive accents and disjunctive accents is discussed separately.
Table 22.1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disjunctive Accent</th>
<th>Ordered Rank</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Regular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Alternate</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebia (ʼ)</td>
<td>Munach (ʼ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tebir (ʼ)</td>
<td>Darga (ʼ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pashta (ʼ)</td>
<td>Mahpak (ʼ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zarqa (ʼ)</td>
<td>Munach (ʼ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geresh (ʼ)</td>
<td>Azla (ʼ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.Pazer (ʼ)</td>
<td>Galgal (ʼ)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Conjunctive Accents. Conjunctive accents join words that are closely related syntactically. The follow are examples of syntactic relationships that usually involve conjunctive accents:

1. Two nouns in apposition;
2. Two nouns joined by a conjunction and forming a compound part of speech;
3. A substantive with its modifier, such as:
   a. a substantive with an adjectival modifier;
   b. a substantive with a relative pronoun;
   c. a substantive with an adverbial modifier;
4. A construct noun with its following absolute noun;
5. Two verbs in the same grammatical construction.

Conjunctive accents are usually used to join constructions like the above, but when the constructions are too long for the allowable number of conjunctives, then disjunctives must be used in spite of the grammatical syntax.

The Disjunctive Accents. The disjunctive accents usually mark places in a verse where syntactic division is expected. This is nearly always true in the case of the remote disjunctive accents, but less often in the case of near disjunctives.

The emperor and kings mark the strongest divisions. Every verse in the Prose Books is closed by Soph Pasuq (the emperor) which marks the end of the verse; it governs the domain of the whole verse. The kings (Silluq and Athnach) govern the two main segments of a verse. The division is usually determined by logical or syntactical relations. Thus, for example, in English order, the two segments may consist of:
**Atnach Segment**  
Clause  
Subject  
Subject + Verb  
Object  
Adverbial Phrase  
Vocative  
Phrase

**Silluq Segment**  
Clause  
Predicate  
Object  
Verb + Subject  
Clause  
Clause  
Phrase

**Example 1** (Gen. 1:1)

SOP  
SIL  |  ATH

In the beginning God created / the heavens and the earth.

In this example the *Atnach* (א) segment consists of the subject plus the verb phrase, and the *Silluq* (ל) segment consists of a compound object.

**Example 2** (Gen. 1:3)

SOP  
SIL  |  ATH

Then God said, “Let there be light”; / and there was light.

In this example the *Atnach* (א) segment consists of an action clause, and the *Silluq* (ל) segment consists of a result clause.

The princes—Zaqeph (צ), Segolta (ס), and Tiphcha (ת)—divide the major segments into secondary segments. At times Segolta (ס) may govern the first remote segment in the domain of *Atnach* (א), otherwise Zaqeph (צ) governs it. There may be more than one Zaqeph (צ) segment. Tiphcha (ת) always governs the last (near) secondary segment, but from the next-to-last word-unit. A Tiphcha (ת) segment may stand alone. These secondary segments should be interpreted as being on an equal par syntactically, logically, or rhetorically.
### Example 1 (Gen. 1:2)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOP</th>
<th>SIL</th>
<th>ATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sil</td>
<td>TIP</td>
<td>ZAQ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ה鸬ות ורוחו אלהים מרהבת על פניwaters.

In this example the *Silluq* (Buscar) segment consists of a clause. The subject is contained in a *Zaqeph* (גבוה) segment, and the predicate is contained in the *Tiphcha* segment.\(^{30}\)

### Example 2 (Gen. 2:5)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOP</th>
<th>SIL</th>
<th>ATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sil</td>
<td>TIP</td>
<td>ZAQ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

כָּלָה אִמָּסַר הָלָהוּ אֱלֹהָדָה שָׁלָהוּ אֶת הָאָדָם אָחָתוֹ אַל יִכְרַם אַל תָּאֹכְלוֹ אֶת כל עֵץ הַגֶּרֶנֶגֶר:... 

For the LORD God had not caused it to rain on the earth, / and there was no man / to till the ground.

In this example the *Silluq* (Buscar) segment consists of three clauses: two independent clauses, the second with a dependent infinitive clause of purpose. The first two are contained in *Zaqeph* (גבוה) segments, and the last in the *Tiphcha* (Buscar) segment. The first is longer than the others, but evidently on about the same par rhetorically.

### Example 3 (Gen. 3:1)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOP</th>
<th>SIL</th>
<th>ATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sil</td>
<td>TIP</td>
<td>ZAQ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

וּלְשָׁמָה יָאִישָׁה אָבְרָהֲם אֱלֹהָדָה אִשָּׁה כֹּרַם אָלָהוּ לֹא יִאֲכַלוֹ אֶת כל עֵץ הַגֶּרֶנֶגֶר... 

And he said to the woman, / “Has God indeed said, / ‘You shall not eat / of every tree of the garden’?”

---

30 As stated above, *Tiphcha* governs its segment from the next-to-last word unit—that is, its segment includes the word unit bearing the *Silluq*, but a near disjunctive accent cannot stand on the same word unit as the superior accent that governs its domain. Therefore it must govern its own domain from the position adjacent to its superior officer. This is true of all near disjunctive accents, as explained and illustrated in a later section.
In this example the Silluq (ְ) segment contains four secondary segments: three clauses plus a dependent adverbial phrase of source. The first three are contained in Zaqeph (ֱ) segments, and the last in the Tiphcha (ֲ) segment.

**Example 4** (Gen. 1:5)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOP</th>
<th>SIL</th>
<th>ATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ath</td>
<td>TIP</td>
<td>ZAQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Then God called the light Day, / and the darkness He called Night.

In this example the Athnach (ֳ) segment consists of two independent clauses. The first is contained in a Zaqeph (ֱ) segment, and the last is in the Tiphcha (ֲ) segment.31

The dukes—Tebir (ִ), Pashta (ֵ), Zarqa (ֶ), and Rebia (ַ)—divide the secondary segments into tertiary segments. In the domain of a prince, Rebia (ַ) governs the remote segments; and a Tebir (ִ), Pashta (ֵ), or Zarqa (ֶ) governs the near segment, depending on the prince governing the domain. A Tebir (ִ), Pashta (ֵ), or Zarqa (ֶ) segment may stand alone. These segments should be regarded as on about equal par syntactically, logically, or rhetorically.

**Example 1** (Gen. 1:14)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SOP</th>
<th>ATH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ath</td>
<td>TIP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Then God said, “Let there be lights in the firmament of the heavens / to divide / the day from the night.”

In this example the first Zaqeph (ֱ) segment consists of two clauses. The first is contained in a Rebia (ַ) segment, and the second in a Pashta (ֵ) segment.32 The second Zaqeph segment is marked with Great Zaqeph—a substitute for Zaqeph when the segment is short.

---

31 The Tiphcha segments includes the word unit bearing the Athnach for the same reason that it included the word unit bearing Silluq. See footnote 30.

32 Pashta, being a near disjunctive, its segment includes the word unit bearing the Zaqeph.
Example 1 (Exod. 15:2-5)

(2) The LORD is my strength and song, //
And He has become my salvation; //
He is my God, and I will praise Him; //
My father’s God, and I will exalt Him. //

(3) The LORD is a man of war; //

---

33 *Tebir*, being a near disjunctive, its segment includes the word unit bearing *Tiphcha.*
the LORD is His name. //

(4) Pharaoh’s chariots and his army
He has cast into the sea; //
His chosen captains also
are drowned in the Red Sea. //

(5) The depths have covered them; //
They sank to the bottom like a stone. //

In example 1 above, verse two contains two poetic lines each half of which consists of one or two short clauses; the ends of the poetic lines are marked by kings—Athnach (ַ) and Silluq (ֵ)—and the end of the first half of each line is marked by a remote prince—Zaqeph (ץ). Verse three contains only one poetic line, so the ends of the half-lines are marked by kings. Verse four contains two poetic lines, each consisting of a single clause; so the ends of the lines are marked by kings.

Example 2 (Exod. 34:6-7)

(6) And the LORD passed before him / and proclaimed, //
“The LORD, the LORD, / the merciful and gracious God, //
Longsuffering, / and abounding in kindness and truth, //
(7) Keeping mercy for thousands, /
forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, //
By no means clearing (the guilty), /
Visiting the iniquity of the fathers / upon the children and the children’s children /
To the third and the fourth generation.” //

The verses of example 2 above, although contained in a so-called prose passage, exhibit poetic structure. Verse six contains three poetic lines. The first two lines consist of an Athnach (ַ) segment; the first line is its remote Segolta (ץ) segment which introduces the declaration of the divine name; and the second line consists of its near Tiphcha (ץ) segment. The third consists of the Silluq (ֵ) segment. Each line has two half-lines. In the second line, the first half-line, a Zaqeph (ץ) segment, contains a double declaration of the name הַיְהָ (separated by Paseq (|) [in BHK but not BHS]; and the second, a Tiphcha (ץ) segment, contains an appositive with a compound adjectival modifier. The third line contains two additional compound adjectival modifiers, one in each half-line. Apart from the influence of the poetic structure [which requires an Athnach (ַ) to set
off the poetic line], the Athnach ( \( \checkmark \) ) should be a Zaqeph ( ‹ ) [on purely syntactic grounds], because it is unnatural to have such a strong disjunctive between adjectival phrases modifying the same word.

Verse seven has four poetic lines, the first and third lines containing two half-lines. The first two lines together with the first half of line three contain four participle clauses, parallel in thought and grammatical form; and the last half of line three together with line four contain two adverbial phrases, parallel in thought and form, modifying the fourth participle clause. The Athnach ( \( \checkmark \) ) segment contains the first two participle clauses (which make positive statements), and the Silluq ( \( \checkmark \) ) segment contains the last two (which make negative statements) along with the two adverbial phrases. Apart from the influence of the poetic structure the Silluq ( \( \checkmark \) ) segment surely would be divided differently.

The remote disjunctives—Atnach ( \( \checkmark \) ), Zaqeph ( ‹ ), Segolta ( ‒ ), Rebia ( † ), Great Telsa ( ‡ ), and Pazer ( † )—rest on the last word of the domain they govern. Thus they unambiguously mark a place of division in the verse. The same is not true for the near disjunctives—Silluq ( \( \checkmark \) ), Tiphcha ( † ), Tebir ( † ), Pashta ( † ), Zarqa ( † ), and Geresh ( † ). Except for Silluq ( \( \checkmark \) ), these accents cannot rest on the last word of the domain they govern, because their immediate superior is already there governing the domain of a larger segment that also ends with that word. Therefore, they must of necessity stand one word-unit short of the end of their domain, and then govern their own subordinate segments from that position. From an analytical and syntactical point of view, these disjunctives pose several problems.

Replacing a Conjunctive. One problem is that a near disjunctive accent may occur where a conjunctive accent is expected syntactically. For example, Silluq ( \( \checkmark \) ) and Tiphcha ( † ) may be served, at the most, by only one conjunctive, Mereka ( † ); and Athnach ( \( \checkmark \) ), Zaqeph ( ‹ ), and Segolta ( ‒ ) may be served, at the most, by only one conjunctive, Munach ( † ). Thus when a segment ends with a compound phrase requiring more conjunctive accents than is permitted, the near subordinate disjunctive must occur of necessity where syntax (or logic) expects a conjunctive.

---

34 Two Munachs may occur on rare occasions in places where two short words could (and probably should) have been joined by Maqqeph.
Example 1 (Gen. 47:9)

וַיָֹּ֤אמֶר יַעֲקֹב֙ אֶל־פַרְׁעֵֹּ֔ה יְׁמֵיֹ֙ שְׁנִֵ֣י מְׁגוּרֵַּ֔י
שְׁלֹשִֵ֥ם וּמְׁאֶַ֖ת שָנָָ֑ה
מְׁעִַ֣ט וְׁרָעִָ֗ים הָיוֹּ֙ יְׁמֵיֹ֙ שְׁנֵיֹ֙ חַיֵַּ֔י
וְׁלִֹ֣֚ם הִשִָ֗יגוּ אֶת־יְׁמֵיֹ֙ שְׁנֵיֹ֙ חַיִֵ֣י אֲבֹתֵַּ֔י   בִימֵֶ֖יהֶָּֽם׃

And Jacob said to Pharaoh, /  
“The days of the years of my pilgrimage  
are one hundred and thirty years; //  
few and evil have been the days of the years of my life, /  
and they have not attained  
to the days of the years of the life of my fathers /  
in the days of their pilgrimage.”

In this example the phrase  (thirty and a hundred of years) is the near subordinate Tiphcha ( ) segment of the Athnach ( ) segment. Syntactically the phrase should be one unit, and particularly the construct  should be joined with ; but Tiphcha ( ) divides them. This is because, in the rules of the accents, Tiphcha ( ) must stand on the first or second word before Athnach ( ) regardless of syntax or logic. In interpreting this accentuation, the Tiphcha ( ) should be understood to close its segment on the same word with Athnach ( ) (which closes its larger segment with the same word), and to stand in place of a conjunctive accent.

Also in this verse, the phrases יְׁמֵיֹ֙ שְׁנִֵ֣י מְׁגוּרֵַּ֔י (the days of the years of my pilgrimage) and יְׁמֵיֹ֙ שְׁנֵי֙ חַיִֵ֣י (the days of the years of my life) are the Pashta ( ) segments of Zageph ( ) segments. Syntactically the phrases each should be one unit, particularly because the words constitute a string of construct forms which should not be divided. But Pashta ( ) divides the first from the last two. This is because, in the rules of the accents, Pashta ( ) must stand on the first or second word before Zageph ( ) regardless of syntax or logic. In interpreting the accentuation of this verse, the Pashta ( ) should be understood to close its segment on the same word with Zageph ( ), and to stand in place of a conjunctive accent. See Genesis 40:7 where Tebir stands on a construct form; the explanation is similar.
22.8 Accents Used in the Books of Poetry

The following is a list of the accents used in the three Books of Poetry. They are listed and numbered according to the list provided as a companion to BHK.\(^{(35)}\)

**Disjunctive Accents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(1) Silluq (שִלּוּק)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) Ole WeYored (וֶּיָרֶדֶת נֹלַע)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Athnach (אֵתָנָךְ)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) Great Rebia (רֹבֵיאָה עֵרָיָה)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Rebia Mugrash (רֹבֵיאָה מֶגרָשָׁנ)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) Great Shalsheleth (שַלְשָּׁלֶת עֵרָיָה)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) Sinnor (סִנּוֹר) (postpositive)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(8) Little Rebia (רֹבֵיאָה קֲפָנָא)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9) Dechi (דְּכִי) (prepositive)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10) Pazer (פָּזֶר)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(11) Mahpak Legarmeh (מַפְּקַת לֶגַרְמֶה)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(12) Azla Legarmeh (אֶזֶל לֶגַרְמֶה)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Conjunctive Accents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(13) Munach (מְנוֹךְ)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(14) Mereka (מֵרֶקָא)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(15) Illuy (יָלִיעֵי)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(16) Tarcha (טָרְחָא)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(17) Galgal (גָּלוֹגְלָא)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(18) Mahpak (מַפְּקַת)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(19) Azla (אֶזֶלְא)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(20) Little Shalsheleth (שַלְשָּׁלֶת קְפָנָא)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(21) Sinnorit Mereka (סִנּוֹרֵי מֵרֶקָא)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(22) Sinnorit Mahpak (סִנּוֹרֵי מַפְּקַת)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(23) Paseq (פָּסֵק)</td>
<td>יָבַע</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Paseq* is not on the standard list of accents, but it must be included in any discussion of them. It is not a conjunctive accent as its position in the list implies; nor does it mark a stressed

---

\(^{(35)}\) Erläuterung der Accente zu Kittels Biblia Hebraica. Privileg. Bibelanstalt, Stuttgart. Some authorities have used different names for some of the accents. These are not regarded as important for this work. Consult Wickes for more detail.
syllable as do most of the other accents. But it does call for a slight pause in imitation of a weak disjunctive accent.

22.8.1 The Laws of the Poetic Accents

The accents used in the Books of Poetry follow laws similar to those used in the Prose Books. The following sections discuss the differences.

The Laws of Hierarchic Governance. As in the case of the accents used in the Prose Books, the disjunctive accents used in the Books of Poetry are subject to hierarchic order, but the hierarchy is somewhat different. The hierarchic order among the accents in the Poetical Books has the following hierarchic ranks:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Disjunctive Accents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emperor</td>
<td><em>Silluq</em> (* )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kings</td>
<td><em>Rebia Mugrash</em> (* - <em>), <em>Atnach</em> (</em> ), <em>Ole WeYored</em> (* )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Princes</td>
<td><em>Dechi</em> (* ), <em>Sinnor</em> (* ), <em>Great Rebia</em> (* )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duke</td>
<td><em>Pazer</em> (* )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td><em>Legarmeh</em> (</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The disjunctive accents used in the Poetical Books observe rules of governance similar to those used in the Prose Books with minor differences. The following table lists the governance of each disjunctive accent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank</th>
<th>Disjunctive</th>
<th>Defined Subordinate</th>
<th>Near</th>
<th>Remote</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emperor</td>
<td><em>Silluq</em> (* )</td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Rebia Mugrash</em> (* - * )</td>
<td><em>Atnach</em> (* ) / <em>Ole WeYored</em> (* )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kings</td>
<td><em>Rebia Mugrash</em> (* - * )</td>
<td><em>Dechi</em> (* ), <em>Great Rebia</em> (* )</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Atnach</em> (* )</td>
<td><em>Dechi</em> (* ), <em>Great Rebia</em> (* )</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Ole WeYored</em> (* - * )</td>
<td><em>Sinnor</em> (* ), <em>Great Rebia</em> (* )</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Princes</td>
<td><em>Dechi</em> (* )</td>
<td><em>Legarmeh</em></td>
<td><em>Pazer</em> (* )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sinnor</em> (* )</td>
<td><em>Legarmeh</em></td>
<td><em>Pazer</em> (* )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Great Rebia</em> (* )</td>
<td><em>Legarmeh</em></td>
<td><em>Pazer</em> (* )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duke</td>
<td><em>Pazer</em> (* )</td>
<td><em>Legarmeh</em></td>
<td>Empty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td><em>Legarmeh</em> (</td>
<td>)</td>
<td><em>Empty</em></td>
<td><em>Empty</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The domain of the hierarchy may be illustrated by the following diagram (in Hebrew order):

---

36 Unlike the accents of the Prose Books, *Soph Pasuq* does not govern its own segments. In the Poetical Books *Silluq* governs the entire verse.

37 In the domain of *Silluq*, only one *Atnach/Ole WeYored* segment may occur. If two are required, the first is an *Ole WeYored* segment and the second is an *Atnach* segment.
The Law of Substitution. Some of the disjunctive accents do not appear in the laws of hierarchic governance, but serve the role of designated substitutes for some of the accents in those laws. In most cases substitution takes place when the regular segment is empty and the associated disjunctive accent has no preceding conjunctives. The following is a list of the substitute segments and the segments which they replace:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regular Segment</th>
<th>Substitute Segment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rebia Mugrash (‟ ‾)</td>
<td>Great Shalsheleth (</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinnor („)</td>
<td>Little Rebia ( ‾)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Law of Conjunctives. A sequence of words closely related grammatically and syntactically is joined together by conjunctive accents; that is, the first and intermediate words in the sequence have conjunctive accents, and the last word has a disjunctive accent. As far as the governance of the disjunctive accents is concerned, such a sequence of words functions as a single word (or word-unit); therefore, the presence of conjunctive accents has little or no effect on the syntax of the disjunctive accents.

On the other hand, a given disjunctive accent determines the number and kind of conjunctive accents that may appear on the words conjoined preceding it. The following is a list of the number and kind of conjunctive accents that may precede each of the disjunctives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disjunctive Accent</th>
<th>Number and Kind of Permitted Conjunctive Accents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Silluq („)</td>
<td>0-1 Munach („) /Mereka („) /Illuy („)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebia Mugrash (‟ ‾)</td>
<td>0-1 Mereka („)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Great Shalsheleth (</td>
<td>‾)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athnach („)</td>
<td>0-1 Munach („) /Mereka („)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ole WeYored („)</td>
<td>0-1 Galgal („) /Mahpak („)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dechi („)</td>
<td>0-1 Munach („)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The law of conjunctives allows only one conjunctive to serve a given disjunctive. If more than two words occur in a close syntactical relationship, then Maqqeph (−) is employed to limit the sequence to two phonetic-units. In some cases this required Maqqeph (−) is lacking (usually after a one-syllable word when it is lacking); in such instances Mereka (.) or Mahpak (.) is used in lieu of the expected Maqqeph. This may result in two conjunctives before a given disjunctive in apparent violation of this law. But the law regards this use of Mereka (.) and Mahpak (.) as the equivalent of the Maqqeph for which they stand. For musical reasons, some of the conjunctive accents have alternates, depending on the rhythmic nature of the context.

Under appropriate musical conditions, the law of transformation (see below) converts certain disjunctives into their virtual form, in which case a conjunctive stands in place of the virtual disjunctive. Such transformations may produce sequences of two or more conjunctives before a given disjunctive in apparent violation of the law of conjunctives. However, any conjunctive accent that stands in place of a virtual disjunctive is regarded by this law as the equivalent of the disjunctive for which it stands.

The Law of Transformation. In the Prose Books, Geresh (’) cannot stand very close to the disjunctive that governs it without being transformed into a Virtual Geresh which has a conjunctive standing in its place. In such cases the transformed Geresh functions musically as a conjunctive, while continuing to function syntactically as a disjunctive. In a similar fashion Rebia (’) is transformed into Pashta (’) under certain conditions.

In the Books of Poetry, three of the near subordinate disjunctives—Rebia Mugrash ( ), Dechi ( ), and Legarmeh ( | or | )—are subject to transformation into their virtual equivalent (a conjunctive). The transformations of all three have been confirmed to be simple and quite consistent, even when they occur in sequence.

22.8.2 Interpreting the Poetic Accents

In the Books of Poetry the use of the accents is more greatly influenced by poetic structure than in the Prose Books. This is particularly true for the kings—Rebia Mugrash ( ), Athnach
(,), and Ole WeYored (, ). These high ranking accents are found most often marking the end of poetic lines.

But his delight is in the law of the LORD,
And in His law he meditates day and night. (Psa. 1:2)

Therefore the ungodly shall not stand in the judgment,
Nor sinners in the congregation of the righteous. (Psa. 1:5)

In long verses containing numerous poetic lines the remote prince, Rebia (, ), is used to mark the end of some lines. When kings and princes are both used to mark poetic structure, their segments may be of equal par syntactically, logically, or rhetorically; although the kings sometimes may mark breaks of some greater significance.

Pronounce them guilty, O God!
Let them fall by their own counsels;
Cast them out in the multitude of their transgressions,
For they have rebelled against You. (Psa. 5:11)

I also could speak as you do,
If your soul were in my soul's place.
I could heap up words against you,
And shake my head at you. (Job 16:4)

In poetry, grammatical syntax and poetic structure are usually in harmony. So the accents can usually be expected to reflect the syntactic relationships as well as poetic structure. However, whenever grammatical syntax and poetic structure fail to harmonize, the accents usually agree with
the poetry rather than with the grammatical syntax. The interpreter must keep this in mind when working with difficult passages.

As in the Prose Books, the remote poetic disjunctives—Ole WeYored (\(\uparrow\)), Athnach (\(\uparrow\)), Great Rebia (\(\uparrow\)), and Pazer (\(\uparrow\))—unambiguously mark the end of the segments they govern. Again this is not true for the near disjunctives—Rebia Mugrash (\(\uparrow\)), Dechi (\(\uparrow\)), Sinnor (\(\uparrow\)), Little Rebia (\(\uparrow\)), and Legarmeh (\(\uparrow\) or \(\uparrow\)). As in the case of the near disjunctives of the Prose Books, these accents may be found standing in place of an expected conjunctive accent. The interpreter should be careful not to attribute greater disjunctive value to the near disjunctives than their context allows.

Three near disjunctive accents—Rebia Mugrash (\(\uparrow\)), Dechi (\(\uparrow\)), and Legarmeh (\(\uparrow\) or \(\uparrow\) )—are subject to transformation as described above. Whenever a disjunctive accent is served by more than one conjunctive accent, the condition can be explained by the law of transformation, or by the substitution of a conjunctive for Maqeph with a one-syllable word. Whenever the laws of hierarchic governance expect the presence of a near disjunctive, it will be there virtually (as a transformed conjunctive). The interpreter should be mindful of these facts when working with apparent difficulties.

22.9 Conclusion

The accents are helpful for discerning the interpretive tradition preserved by the ancient rabbis, and for resolving grammatical problems that would be difficult otherwise. Usually the disjunctive accents confirm grammatical breaks in the text, much like punctuation marks do in English; and the conjunctive accents mark words that are grammatically related. However, the laws that govern the accents are sometimes in disharmony with the grammar of the Hebrew language. In such cases the expositor needs to know the reason for such disharmony so that he does not misinterpret the intent of the accents.
CHAPTER 23
Pausal Forms with Non-Pausal Accents

It is well known that Hebrew words have both a pausal and non-pausal form, and that the pausal form of a word in the Hebrew Bible nearly always occurs when the word has a major disjunctive accent, either Athnach (ָּ) or Silluq (ַּ). These accents occur at syntactically and rhetorically significant places in the text that influence exegesis. It is not so well known that the pausal form of words also occurs frequently with some of the other accents. An exhaustive computer analysis of the distribution of pausal forms among the various accents reveals that these pausal forms also occur at syntactically and rhetorically significant places. This suggests the possibility that pausal forms, when they occur with non-pausal accents, may have equal or greater significance for rhetoric and exegesis than the associated accents have. The analysis also identified the words that have both a major and minor pausal form. This chapter deals with the implications of the distribution of pausal forms for translation and exegesis.

Hebrew words inflect according to the value of their grammatical attributes, usually having a specific spelling and pronunciation for each inflection a word may assume. In addition, when in a pausal position, the spelling and pronunciation of many Hebrew words are altered from that of their normal inflected form. Such altered forms are known as pausal forms.

1 The content of this chapter is a revision of a paper first presented at the Southeastern Regional Meeting of The Evangelical Theological Society, March 18, 2006.

2 In the prose books, Athnach nearly always marks the major syntactic division of a verse, and Silluq always occurs on the last word of a verse. In the poetic books (Job, Psalms, and Proverbs), Ole WeYored or Athnach mark the major division and Silluq occurs on the last word.

3 The electronic text of the Hebrew Bible used for this study was the Westminster Hebrew Morphology Database, Release 4.4, distributed by the Westminster Hebrew Institute of Westminster Theological Seminary, Philadelphia, PA.

4 In this work, the term non-pausal accent means any accent other than Athnach and Silluq, or Ole WeYored, including conjunctive accents.

5 A pausal position is a place in the flow of thought where a pause is appropriate. It usually occurs where syntactic or rhetorical division occurs. Disjunctive accents usually mark pausal positions.
Because of morphological restraints, not all Hebrew words have an alternate pausal form; but for the many that do, the pausal alteration is usually the lengthening of a short or diminished vowel, the shifting of the accent, or both. For example, the word לֵהָה becomes לֵהָה in pause, experiencing both a lengthened vowel and shift of accent.

And David was told what Rizpah the daughter of Aiah, the concubine of Saul, had done. (2 Sam. 21:11)

Then she gave the savory food and the bread, which she had prepared, into the hand of her son Jacob. (Gen. 27:17)

There are 34,718 unique morphological forms of the words in the Hebrew Bible. Of those, 6,261 have both a normal form and a major pausal form. I anticipated that there would also be a number of words having minor pausal forms; that anticipation partly stimulated my interest in this study. But, as it turned out, only two have all three forms: normal (לָהָו), major pause (לָהָו), and minor pause (לָהָו). Table 23.1 lists the distribution of pausal forms over Hebrew words. The table is arranged alphabetically by the first Hebrew letter of a word’s lemma. That is, the first horizontal row contains the statistics for all words whose dictionary form begins with aleph (א) and so forth. The first vertical column contains the total number of unique words for the given alphabetic group. The second column contains the number of those words having the normal form. The third lists the number having both a normal form and a major pausal form, and the fourth lists the number having all three forms.

According to these numbers, only 18% of Hebrew words in the Bible have major pausal forms. This percentage may seem low on first reflection, but some words are semantically destined to never be syntactically or rhetorically prominent. The same is true for certain grammatical forms such as constructs; they are grammatically bound to the word that follows, so they are never expected to coincide with syntactic division.

---


7 This quantity is based on the number of unique lemmas in the electronic database. A lemma consists of the dictionary form of a word plus a particular combination of its morphological codes.

8 The table is a distribution of unique forms, not words. A unique form of a word is counted only once. A unique grammatical form of a given word may occur many times in the Bible.
Table 23.1
Summary of Total Words by First Letter of the Lemma:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lemma</th>
<th>Total Forms</th>
<th>Normal Form</th>
<th>Major Pause</th>
<th>Minor Pause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>א</td>
<td>2,574</td>
<td>2,134</td>
<td>439</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ב</td>
<td>1,918</td>
<td>1,540</td>
<td>378</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ג</td>
<td>1,170</td>
<td>957</td>
<td>213</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ד</td>
<td>788</td>
<td>636</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ה</td>
<td>747</td>
<td>597</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>י</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ק</td>
<td>681</td>
<td>576</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ל</td>
<td>2,562</td>
<td>2,049</td>
<td>513</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>מ</td>
<td>369</td>
<td>303</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נ</td>
<td>2,309</td>
<td>1,860</td>
<td>449</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ע</td>
<td>1,358</td>
<td>1,094</td>
<td>264</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ו</td>
<td>765</td>
<td>604</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ז</td>
<td>3,026</td>
<td>2,475</td>
<td>551</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>י</td>
<td>2,634</td>
<td>2,203</td>
<td>431</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ק</td>
<td>868</td>
<td>714</td>
<td>154</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ר</td>
<td>2,594</td>
<td>2,138</td>
<td>455</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ש</td>
<td>1,345</td>
<td>1,125</td>
<td>220</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ת</td>
<td>931</td>
<td>762</td>
<td>169</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>י</td>
<td>1,559</td>
<td>1,321</td>
<td>238</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ק</td>
<td>1,805</td>
<td>1,508</td>
<td>297</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ר</td>
<td>767</td>
<td>628</td>
<td>139</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ש</td>
<td>3,109</td>
<td>2,543</td>
<td>566</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ת</td>
<td>825</td>
<td>678</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total:</td>
<td>34,718</td>
<td>28,455</td>
<td>6,261</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 23.2 displays the distribution of major pausal forms by part of speech. The first column of numbers indicates the total number of words having a major pausal form, including those with Silluq and Athnach. The second column includes only those with non-pausal accents.
Chapter 23

Pausal Forms with Non-Pausal Accents

Table 23.2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Speech</th>
<th>All, Including Silluq &amp; Athnach</th>
<th>Non-Pausal Only</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nouns</td>
<td>28,115</td>
<td>564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives</td>
<td>2,245</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>1,007</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verbs</td>
<td>9,283</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>914</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>676</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prepositions</td>
<td>3,129</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interjections</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negatives</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogatives</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\overline{\text{N}}$</td>
<td>294</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

23.1 Pausal Forms in the Prose Books

Table 23.3 lists the distribution of the three types of word forms among the various accents for the prose books. The first vertical column of numbers lists the total number of words in their normal form that are marked with the associated accent. The second column lists the total number of words in their major pausal form that are marked with that accent; and the third column lists the total number of words in their minor pausal form. Table 23.3 reveals interesting departures from expectation.

---

9 One does not expect a preposition to have a pausal form. However, these prepositions have pronoun suffixes that have a pausal form. The WTS morphological text does not separate pronoun suffixes from the words to which they are attached. So these should be counted as pronouns instead of prepositions.

10 One does not expect $\overline{\text{N}}$ to have a pausal form. However, these have pronoun suffixes, and like the prepositions, they should be counted as pronouns. The WTS morphological text regards accusative pronouns as $\overline{\text{N}}$ plus a pronoun suffix.

11 The prose books consist of all the books of the Old Testament except Job, Psalms, and Proverbs. These three books, called the books of poetry, have a different set of accents. In fact, the prose sections of Job (1:1-3:2, and 42:7-17) contain the prose accents.
Table 23.3
Distribution of Pausal Forms by Accent for the Prose Books

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accent Name</th>
<th>Normal Form</th>
<th>Major Pause</th>
<th>Minor Pause</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Silluq</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>18,655</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>18,659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athnach</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>17,268</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>17,276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tiphcha</td>
<td>35,744</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>35,840</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-Zaqeph</td>
<td>24,801</td>
<td>595</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>25,419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G-Zaqeph</td>
<td>1,629</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1,651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Segolta</td>
<td>915</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G-Shalshleth</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tebir</td>
<td>7,822</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7,828</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pashta</td>
<td>19,121</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>19,139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yethib</td>
<td>1,168</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1,168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zarqa</td>
<td>916</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>917</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rebia</td>
<td>8,775</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8,864</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geresh</td>
<td>4,122</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4,129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Garshaim</td>
<td>1,717</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1,720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pazer</td>
<td>843</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>846</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G-Pazer</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G-Telisha</td>
<td>1,142</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1,142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legarmeh</td>
<td>1,310</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1,311</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Munach</td>
<td>31,662</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>31,668</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mahpak</td>
<td>11,617</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>11,619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mereka</td>
<td>28,652</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>28,652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merikaim</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darga</td>
<td>3,262</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3,262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azla</td>
<td>6,886</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6,886</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-Telisha</td>
<td>1,770</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1,770</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galgal</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Totals: 193,937 36,766 32 230,735

Total non-accented words = 154,608

Normally one expects a major pausal form to occur with Silluq and Athnach; that happens all but 12 times in the prose books. Likewise, words in their pausal forms are not normally expected to occur with the other disjunctive accents, and particularly that is true with the conjunctive accents. But in spite of expectations, many pausal forms occur with non-pausal accents. This section discusses the syntactical and rhetorical significance of these unexpected departures in the Prose Books. Table 23.4 lists the minor pausal forms in the prose books. Only two words have both a major and minor pausal form.\footnote{The column of numbers to the right of the forms lists the number of times the form occurs, not including those listed in the first column. Throughout this chapter, initial \textit{begad kepht} letters occur without daggesh lene in the tables; the analysis software edited them out in order to facilitate the comparison of forms. The references are listed in the full form used in the WTS electronic text: a two digit abbreviation for the name of the book, then chapter number, verse number, word-unit number, and word number within word-unit, with no spaces.}
Chapter 23  Pausal Forms with Non-Pausal Accents

Table 23.4
List of Minor Pausal Forms with Pausal Accents for the Prose Books

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Lemma</th>
<th>Normal Form</th>
<th>Major Pause</th>
<th>Minor Pause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>הִנְי</td>
<td>AT.FH@pi2ms</td>
<td>748</td>
<td>הִנְי</td>
<td>640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>הִנְי</td>
<td>AT.FH@Pd</td>
<td>435</td>
<td>הִנְי</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

“Then I will sow her for Myself in the earth,
And I will have mercy on her who had not obtained mercy;
Then I will say to those who were not My people, ‘You are My people!’
And they shall say, ‘You are my God!’” (Hos. 2:23).

“For the eyes of the LORD run to and fro throughout the whole earth,
to show Himself strong on behalf of those whose heart is loyal to Him.
In this you have done foolishly; therefore from now on you shall have wars” (2 Chr. 16:9).

The following is a list of the number of verses that have one or more major pausal forms besides those with Silluq and Athnach:

- One pausal form: 758
- Two pausal forms:15 39
- Three pausal forms:16 2
- Four pausal forms:17 1
- Total 800

In all these places, the additional pausal form adds some rhetorical nuance to the word or phrase involved.

---

13 Gen. 3:19; 22:12; 29:15; 32:18; 49:3; Exod. 33:3; Jdgs. 12:5; 1 Sam. 17:33; 20:8; 30:13; 2 Sam. 15:2, 19; 1 Kgs. 1:42; 2 Kgs. 9:25; Isa. 41:9; 44:21; Jer. 2:27; 17:17; Hos. 2:25; Hab. 2:16; 1 Chr. 28:3; 2 Chr. 14:10; Ezr. 9:15.

14 Gen. 46:34; Jdgs. 11:7; Isa. 48:6; Jer. 3:4; Ezek. 4:14; Hag. 2:3; 2 Chr. 16:9; Ruth 2:7; Dan. 10:17.

15 Gen. 27:36; Exod. 7:28; Num. 18:1; 18:2; Deut. 2:7; 5:16; 32:13; 33:29; Jdgs. 7:4; 2 Sam. 14:7; 24:13; 1 Kgs. 12:32; 18:12; 20:18; Isa. 28:10, 13; 45:14; Jer. 5:22; 9:2; 32:23; Ezek. 2:6; 10:11; 11:20; 12:2; 14:16; 17:22; 26:16; 40:4; 44:5; Hos. 10:6; Amos 1:2; 7:14; Zech. 12:12, 13; 1 Chr. 20:1; Eccl. 5:5; Est. 3:12; 9:15; Nah. 9:26.

16 1 Sam. 1:11; Isa. 65:1.

17 Deut. 13:5.
Chapter 23

Pausal Forms with Non-Pausal Accents

663

The pausal form of the word יִדְּחָה occurs 37 times (ten times in Genesis). It occurs with various non-pausal accents when the quotation it introduces begins immediately, without יִדְּחָה. The phrase יִדְּחָה occurs 22 times in the Prose Books, always with the pausal form יִדְּחָה, with various accents.

23.1.1 Silluq and Athnach

Table 23.5 lists the 12 instances where a normal form occurs with a pausal accent: Four times it occurs with Silluq, and eight times with Athnach. These are unusual deviations from the norm that seem not to have any effect on interpretation; no alternative pausal forms occur in these verses.

23.1.2 Tiphcha

Tiphcha is the near disjunctive companion of Zaqeph, being subordinate to Silluq and Athnach. It is the musical foretone for Athnach and Silluq, and by the laws of accentuation, it must stand on the first or second word before those accents. If a syntactic division is due on the first or second word before Athnach or Silluq, Tiphcha stands in place of an expected disjunctive accent, regardless of its hierarchy. Thus, if the main syntactic division of a verse occurs at the Tiphcha slot, Tiphcha stands in place of Athnach and evokes the pausal form Athnach would receive. The same is true for disjunctive accents of lower hierarchic level, but without the pausal form of course.

---

18 Gen. 16:8; 18:29; 20:4; 24:12; 27:36; 28:17; 33:5; 43:29; 47:30; 48:9; Exod. 2:14; 32:5; Deut. 33:2; Judg. 6:18; 8:19; 15:18; 1 Sam. 3:18; 7:12; 2 Sam. 19:27; 1 Kgs. 8:23; 17:10; 17:11; 2 Kgs. 1:8; 2:14; 6:17, 18; 13:14; Isa. 38:3; Amos 1:2; Jon. 3:4; 4:2; 2 Chr. 6:14.; Job 1:7; 2:2; Dan. 8:16; 9:22.

19 Exod. 15:7*; Deut. 17:3, 1 Sam. 1:7; Neh. 5:14*. Those marked with * are noted in the Masorah.

20 Gen. 45:2; Exod. 8:24; Judg. 19:5, 7; 1 Sam. 15:27; Isa. 33:11; Ezek. 1:20; Eccl. 5:9.

21 William Wickes, Two Treatises on the Accentuation of the Old Testament (New York: KTAV Publishing House, 1970), II 61. However, 56 times Athnach appears on the first word unit before Silluq. These are the only exceptions where Tiphcha fails before Silluq. Gen. 1:3, 7, 9, 11, 15, 24, 30; 3:3; 5:5, 8, 11, 14, 5:17; 20, 27, 31; 9:29; 27:23; 33:4; 41:21, 47; 42:20; Exod. 14:4; 23:23; 26:23; 36:7; 36:28; 39:24; Lev. 13:18; 18:20; 21:4; Num. 10:28; 15:21; 31:20; Deut. 22:28; Josh. 18:17; Judg. 13:18; 1 Sam. 25:9; 2 Sam. 10:4; 1 Kgs. 4:9; 13:27; 18:14; 2 Kgs. 15:12; Jer. 28:10; 41:13; 51:34; Ezek. 16:17; Hos. 11:6; Mich. 6:3; Hag. 2:5; Zech. 8:15; 1 Chr. 19:4; 2 Chr. 26:9; 32:3; Ruth 4:2; Nah. 8:11.
Table 23.5
List of Normal Forms with Pausal Accents for the Prose Books

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Lemma</th>
<th>Normal Form</th>
<th>Major Pause</th>
<th>Minor Pause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>תֹּחַךְ</td>
<td>)KL@vqi3fs</td>
<td>21 תֹּחַךְ</td>
<td>12 תֹּחַךְ</td>
<td>5 none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>נָסִיך</td>
<td>)KL@vqlcs</td>
<td>10 נָסִיך</td>
<td>7 נָסִיך</td>
<td>1 none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>בָּכֹ</td>
<td>B.:KIH@ncmsa</td>
<td>23 בָּכֹ</td>
<td>14 בָּכֹ</td>
<td>5 none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֶהָ</td>
<td>HLK@vqc</td>
<td>109 לֶהָ</td>
<td>93 לֶהָ</td>
<td>4 none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>וֹירוֹעַ</td>
<td>CWH@vpp1cs</td>
<td>34 וֹירוֹעַ</td>
<td>29 וֹירוֹעַ</td>
<td>2 none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>לֶהָ</td>
<td>QA$@ncmsa</td>
<td>16 לֶהָ</td>
<td>11 לֶהָ</td>
<td>2 none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>תָּדִיה</td>
<td>T.:BW.)FH@ncfsa</td>
<td>4 תָּדִיה</td>
<td>2 תָּדִיה</td>
<td>1 none</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

So he said, “I heard Your voice in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked; and I hid myself.” (Gen 3:10)

And He said, “My Presence will go with you, and I will give you rest.” (Exod. 33:14)

Tiphcha ordinarily does not evoke a pausal form, but occasionally the word it marks is in its pausal form for rhetorical reasons, granting special attention to the syntax or semantics at its place in the verse. Tiphcha occurs with a major pausal form in this fashion 91 times in the prose books. It occasionally bears a pausal form in all the following cases: it marks the main division of a verse in which case it stands in place of Athnach. It divides a Silluq segments as follows: (1) it

---

22 1 Sam. 1:7.
23 Neh. 5:14.
24 Gen. 45:2.
25 Exod. 8:24; Judg. 19:5, 7; 1 Sam. 15:27; Ezek. 1:20.
26 Deut. 17:3.
27 Exod. 15:7; Isa. 33:11.
28 Eccl. 5:9.
29 Num. 9:2; Deut. 6:9; 11:20; 2 Sam. 1:1; Isa. 42:6; 2 Chr. 25:6; Neh. 1:2.
divides two clauses;\(^30\) (2) it divides a clause from a phrase;\(^31\) (3) it divides two phrases;\(^32\) (4) it divides two phrases after Zaqeph;\(^33\) it marks the end of a clause in a sequence of clauses.\(^34\) It divides an Athnach segment as follows: (1) it divides two clauses;\(^35\) (2) it marks the end of a clause in a series of clauses;\(^36\) (3) it divides a clause from a phrase;\(^37\) and (4) it divided two phrases.\(^38\) Finally, it marks the word preceding a final vocative.\(^39\)

### 23.1.3 Little Zaqeph

Little Zaqeph is the remote disjunctive accent in the domain of Athnach and Silluq, occurring 595 times with a major pausal form. It is followed 286 times by the conjunction Waw, indicating the end of a clause or phrase—40 times it is Waw consecutive with an imperfect verb,\(^40\) and 76 times it is Waw consecutive with a perfect verb.\(^41\) In the other 170 instances the word following

---

\(^{30}\) Gen. 3:10; 27:38; Exod. 21:31; 33:14; Lev. 20:13, 16, 20; Deut. 212:10; Jdgs. 17:1; 19:28; 2 Sam. 2:23; 14:5; 1 Kgs. 13:16; 20:18; Isa. 65:13, 24; Hos. 4:17; 7:11; Joel 2:8; Zech. 8:13; Lam. 3:30.

\(^{31}\) Lev. 16:32; 2 Sam. 7:24; 1 Kgs. 5:31; Jer. 1:8; 8:1; 9:2; 13:13; 15:20; 31:14; 50:10; Ezek. 32:29; Amos 7:14; 1 Chr. 26:9; 28:1; Neh. 13:20.

\(^{32}\) Exod. 39:28; Num. 13:2; 35:16, 17, 18; Isa. 24:4; 1 Chr. 15:8, 9.

\(^{33}\) 2 Chr. 28:13; Est. 3:15.

\(^{34}\) Deut. 13:5.

\(^{35}\) Deut. 13:5; 26:2; Isa. 9:9; 14:27.

\(^{36}\) 2 Kgs. 15:10; Ruth 3:13.

\(^{37}\) Isa. 30:20; 38:10; Jer. 23:23; Hos. 9:9; 1 Chr. 17:22; Est. 5:12.


\(^{39}\) Gen. 27:34.


\(^{41}\) Note that the WTS Morf4.4 morphological text no longer encodes Waw consecutive with perfect. I have assumed that all the following are Waw consecutive with perfect without actually verifying all of them: Gen. 24:40; 26:10, 24; 40:13; Exod. 4:9; 4:14; 4:21; 6:7; 32:12; Lev. 9:7; 19:18; 27:8; 27:27; Num. 18:2; Deut. 6:15, 18; 7:15, 24, 26; 17:14; 20:12; 21:13; 22:2, 7; 23:22, 25, 26; 24:5; 33:20; Judg. 13:15; 19:9; 1 Sam. 1:11; 16:2; 20:13; 24:5, 13; 28:22; 2 Sam. 12:8, 11; 14:7; 1 Kgs. 1:47; 8:33; 13:18; 18:12; 20:28; 2 Kgs. 6:2; 9:1; Isa. 14:21; Jer. 5:22; 6:5; 16:19; 22:14; 29:28; Ezek. 3:11; 26:5; 4:17; 23:2; 26:16; 28:7; 38:10; Hos. 10:6; 13:4; Amos 1:14; 9:14; Zep. 1:13; Zech. 3:4; 6:12; 8:10; 11:5; 12:1; 2 Chr. 6:24; Ruth 3:9; Eccl. 5:5; 11:10; Dan. 9:11; Nah. 1:11.
the Waw is not a verb. It occurs with the pausal form הָיְתָּ֝וּן 14 times. It is followed 7 times by אָנַּ֖הוּ, introducing a relative pronoun modifier.

Zaqeph with a pausal form divides an Athnach segment in half 178 times, and a Silluq segment 234 times. Zaqeph with a pausal form is one of two Zaqeph in an Athnach segment 76 times; the pausal form with Zaqeph appears prior to the non-pausal form with Zaqeph 65 times; and the non-pausal form with Zaqeph appears prior to the pausal form with Zaqeph 17 times. Seven times the Zaqeph with a pausal form is one of three in a Silluq segment.

Zaqeph with a pausal form divides an Athnach segment in half 178 times, and a Silluq segment 234 times. Zaqeph with a pausal form is one of two Zaqeph in an Athnach segment 76 times; the pausal form with Zaqeph appears prior to the non-pausal form with Zaqeph 65 times; and the non-pausal form with Zaqeph appears prior to the pausal form with Zaqeph 17 times. Seven times the Zaqeph with a pausal form is one of three in a Silluq segment.

Zaqeph with a pausal form divides an Athnach segment in half 178 times, and a Silluq segment 234 times. Zaqeph with a pausal form is one of two Zaqeph in an Athnach segment 76 times; the pausal form with Zaqeph appears prior to the non-pausal form with Zaqeph 65 times; and the non-pausal form with Zaqeph appears prior to the pausal form with Zaqeph 17 times. Seven times the Zaqeph with a pausal form is one of three in a Silluq segment.

In support of his law of continuous dichotomy, William Wickes stated: “In certain cases, indeed, the same accent is repeated in the division of the clauses; but, from the very nature of the
continuous dichotomy, it loses in disjunctive value each time of repetition."48 However, the examples in this section, together with many more of like nature with or without pausal forms, have grammatically and musically equal segments set off by Zaqeph; there is no reason to suppose that the second Zaqeph has lesser disjunctive value than the first. In fact, in the example of Exod. 4:21 above, since the first clause is dependent and has a non-finite verb, one could suppose that the first Zaqeph has lesser disjunctive value than the second. In my opinion, a given disjunctive accent always has the same disjunctive value musically, but varying disjunctive value syntactically, regardless of the order in which they occur.

Fourteen verses have two Zaqephs with pausal forms,49 and 23 verses have a Zaqeph with a pausal form together with one lower level disjunctive with a pausal form.50 Two verses have a Zaqeph with two lower level disjunctives with pausal forms,51 and one verse has three.52 The following are examples of verses with multiple pausal forms.


49 Exod. 7:28; Num. 18:1, 2; Deut. 2:7; 5:16; 33:29; Isa. 65:1; Ezek. 2:6; 10:11; 11:20; Hos. 10:6; Zech. 12:12, 13; Eccl. 5:5.

50 Exod. 7:28; Num. 18:2; Deut. 2:7; 5:16; 32:13; 2 Sam. 14:7; 24:13; 1 Kgs. 18:12; Isa. 28:10, 13; Jer. 32:23; Ezek. 2:6; 10:11; 11:20; 12:2; 40:4; 44:5; Hos. 10:6; Amos 1:2; Zech. 12:13; 1 Chr. 20:1; Eccl. 5:5; Est. 3:12.

51 1 Sam. 1:11; Isa. 65:1.

52 Deut. 13:5.

53 Judg. 8:19; 2 Sam. 19:27; Dan. 9:22.
Silluq segment.\(^{54}\) It does the same thing in the middle of an Athnach segment.\(^{55}\) Great Zaqeph occurs with \(\text{šé} \text{šé}\) 162 times in its normal form, so in these few instances, some exegetical significance may be anticipated. It marks off a one-word clause at the beginning of an Athnach or Silluq segment,\(^{56}\) or a one-word phrase.\(^{57}\) The phrase \(\text{šé} \text{šé}\) is always rhetorically set off with the pausal form of \(\text{šé}\); among other non-pausal accents, it is sometimes marked with Great Zaqeph.\(^{58}\)

### 23.1.5 Great Shalsheleth

Great Shalsheleth is a rare substitute for Segolta, occurring only seven times in the prose books.\(^{59}\) It always occurs with the first word of a verse and is traditionally regarded as a mark of special exegetical interest. In four of the instances, the word is in its major pausal form.\(^{60}\) In the other three instances, the form is the same in pause as in non-pause, so it is possible to assume that Great Shalsheleth always marks some rhetorical and exegetical significance.

### 23.1.6 Tebir

Tebir is the near disjunctive companion of Rebia, being subordinate to Tiphcha. It appears to mark six major pausal forms. However, some instances may be accounted for by naturally variant forms not intended to express pause. The word \(\text{šé} \text{šé}\) has an alternate form \(\text{šé} \text{šé}\) (2 Kgs. 16:16), which mistakenly may be regarded as a normal form. Likewise, the word \(\text{šé} \text{šé}\) has an alternate form \(\text{šé} \text{šé}\) (Num. 18:29) which probably is not to be regarded as a normal form. So these two instances should likely be excluded.

In Jer. 9:2, Tebir marks the major pausal form \(\text{šé} \text{šé}\), which closes a clause in the Silluq segment; note that it is the near subordinate of Tiphcha marking the pausal form in the next clause that ends the quotation. One would ordinarily expect Zaqeph instead of Tebir here. In Ezek. 33:25, Tebir marks the major pausal form \(\text{šé} \text{šé}\) which closes a clause in an Athnach segment. In Est. 7:4, Tebir marks the major pausal form \(\text{šé} \text{šé}\), which merely separates phrases in a clause; the pausal

---

\(^{54}\) Gen. 20:4; 27:36; 33:5; 43:29; 47:30; 48:9; Judg. 6:18; 1 Sam. 3:18; 7:12; 2 Kgs. 1:8.

\(^{55}\) 2 Kgs. 2:14.

\(^{56}\) Gen. 41:5; Mich. 5:3; Ezek. 34:11.

\(^{57}\) 1 Sam. 13:5; Ezek. 45:21.

\(^{58}\) Ezek. 18:3; 20:33.

\(^{59}\) Gen. 19:16; 24:12; 39:8; Lev. 8:23; Ezr. 5:15; Isa. 13:8; Amos 1:2.

\(^{60}\) Gen. 24:12; Lev. 8:23; Isa. 13:8; Amos 1:2.
form here is rhetorically, not grammatically, significant. The referent is Haman, and the clause is part of Esther’s exposure of him as her enemy.

23.1.7 Pashta

Pashta is the near disjunctive companion of Rebia, being subordinate to Little Zaqeph. It occurs 16 times with a major pausal form. The phrase \( \text{Pashta} \) is always rhetorically set off with the pausal form of \( \text{Rebia} \); among other non-pausal accents, it is marked with Pashta four times.\(^61\) It marks the end of the first in a sequence of several dependent clauses in a Silluq segment.\(^62\) In a Silluq segment, it marks the end of the first in a sequence of six independent clauses each ending with a pausal form.\(^63\) In an Athnach segment, it marks the end of one in a sequence of several independent clauses;\(^64\) still others have a sequence of independent clauses, several of which end with pausal forms.\(^65\) It separates a clause from one or more adverbial modifiers or appositives.\(^66\) In Ezekiel, the word “rebellious” is used 16 times as compared with 3 times in the rest of the Old Testament. The pausal form \( \text{Pashta} \) is used rhetorically rather than syntactically at times for emphasis on the rebellion of Israel.\(^67\)

23.1.8 Zarqa

Zarqa is the near disjunctive companion of Rebia, being subordinate to Segolta. It marks only one pausal form. In 2 Sam. 3:8, the personal pronoun \( \text{Zarqa} \) is in the last (emphatic) position of a copulative clause, with a following dependent relative pronoun clause.

23.1.9 Rebia

Rebia is the remote disjunctive accent subordinate to Tiphcha, Athnach, and Segolta. It occurs 87 times with a major pausal form. It marks the word “and he said” in an Athnach segment introducing a direct quotation without \( \text{Tiphcha} \).\(^68\) It marks the end of a clause in a series of

---

\(^{61}\) Num. 14:28; Jer. 46:18; Ezek. 20:3; 26:16; see a similar function with Great Zaqeph.

\(^{62}\) Deut. 6:7; 11:19.

\(^{63}\) Deut. 13:5.

\(^{64}\) Isa. 45:14; Eccl. 12:5.

\(^{65}\) Isa. 65:13; Jer. 32:23; Ezek. 34:3.

\(^{66}\) 2 Kgs. 5:7; Lam. 1:3.

\(^{67}\) With Tiphcha (Ezek. 2:8), with Rebia (Ezek. 12:25), with Zaqeph (Ezek. 17:2), and with Pashta (Ezek. 24:3; 44:6).

\(^{68}\) Gen. 16:8; Deut. 33:2; 1 Kgs. 8:23; Isa. 38:3; Jon. 4:2; 2 Chr. 6:14.
similar clauses in an Athnach segment,\textsuperscript{69} and in a Silluq segment.\textsuperscript{70} It marks the end of a clause followed by additional supplementary phrases in an Athnach segment,\textsuperscript{71} and in a Silluq segment.\textsuperscript{72} It marks the end of a phrase in a series of related phrases in an Athnach segment,\textsuperscript{73} and in a Silluq segment.\textsuperscript{74} In an Athnach segment, marks the end of a subject followed by its predicate.\textsuperscript{75} It marks an emphatic first person pronoun.\textsuperscript{76} The phrase \textsuperscript{78} is always rhetorically set off with the pausal form of \textsuperscript{79}; among other non-pausal accents, it is sometimes marked with Rebia.\textsuperscript{77}

23.1.10 Geresh

Geresh is the near disjunctive companion of Pazer, being subordinate to Tebir, Pashta, Zarqa, and Rebia. It marks a pausal form seven times. It marks the end of a clause with similar clauses following,\textsuperscript{78} and it marks the end of a clause, with following supportive phrases.\textsuperscript{79} The phrase \textsuperscript{78} is always rhetorically set off with the pausal form of \textsuperscript{79}; among other non-pausal accents, it is sometimes marked with Geresh.\textsuperscript{80}

23.1.11 Garshaim

Garshaim is a substitute for Geresh under certain phonetic conditions. It occurs three times with a pausal form. It closes a clause with similar clauses following.\textsuperscript{81} In Isa. 28:13, it marks the end of a phrase in a series of equal or similar phrases, each ending with a pausal form.

\textsuperscript{69} Gen. 43:23; Lev. 8:15; 16:4; Num. 20:17; 21:22; Deut. 13:6; Josh. 10:13; Judg. 11:17; 1 Sam. 1:11; 17:49; 25:8; 2 Sam. 14:7; 15:20; 1 Kgs. 18:12; 2 Kgs. 13:7; Isa. 63:9; Jer. 44:12; Ezek. 44:2; Hos. 7:12; Joel 4:16; Mich. 3:11; 2 Chr. 1:11; Est. 3:8; 4:16; Dan. 7:7; Nah. 9:26, 29; 12:43.

\textsuperscript{70} Judg. 7:4; 1 Sam. 8:11; Isa. 6:10; Ezek. 12:25; 14:11; 16:34; Joel 2:17; Zech. 8:8; Lam. 1:7.

\textsuperscript{71} Gen. 17:7; 20:17; Lev. 10:9; Deut. 5:14; 21; 14:29; 30:9; Judg. 17:9; 1 Sam. 20:42; 30:13; 1 Kgs. 7:18; 2 Kgs. 19:28; 20:17; Isa. 39:6; Jer. 9:9; Ezek. 44:5; 2 Chr. 2:3; 6:33; 20:6; Ruth 4:11; Song 8:6; Est. 9:15; Dan. 9:24.

\textsuperscript{72} 1 Kgs. 8:43, 53; Isa. 37:29.

\textsuperscript{73} Lev. 5:23.

\textsuperscript{74} Dan. 7:19.

\textsuperscript{75} Est. 9:18.

\textsuperscript{76} Gen. 31:52; Exod. 4:10; Mal. 1:14; Eccl. 5:17; Lam. 1:21; Ezek. 17:22; in the last one, note the same word in pause marked with Zaqeph in the same verse.

\textsuperscript{77} Ezek. 5:11; 14:16, 18, 20; 16:48; 17:16; 20:31; 35:6, 11.

\textsuperscript{78} Ezek. 20:13; note a following clause ending with a pausal form marked with Rebia in the same verse.

\textsuperscript{79} Isa. 16:8; Jer. 5:22; Ezek. 38:4; 40:4; in the last one, note that the clauses that follow also end with pausal forms marked with higher ordered accents.

\textsuperscript{80} Ezek. 34:8.

\textsuperscript{81} Ezek. 33:31; Joel 2:16.
Chapter 23  Pausal Forms with Non-Pausal Accents

23.1.12 Pazer

Pazer is the remote disjunctive accent in the domain of Tebir, Pashta, Zarqa, and Rebia. It marks three pausal forms. It closes a clause with similar clauses following. The phrase is always rhetorically set off with the pausal form of among other non-pausal accents, it is sometimes marked with Pazer.

23.1.13 Legarmeh

Legarmeh is a disjunctive accent subordinate to Rebia, Pashta, and Geresh. It marks only one pausal form. Like several others, it also marks the phrase “as I live” in Ezek. 33:11.

23.1.14 Munach

Munach is a conjunctive accent that serves several disjunctives. It strangely marks six pausal forms used rhetorically for emphasis in spite of a conjunctive accent. Like several others, it also marks the phrase “as I live” in Isa. 49:18.

23.1.15 Mahpak

Mahpak is a conjunctive accent that serves only Pahsta. It marks a pausal form twice, used rhetorically in spite of the conjunctive accent.

23.2 Pausal Forms in the Poetical Books

Table 23.6 lists the distribution of the three types of word forms over the various accents in the Poetical Books. As in Table 23.3, the first vertical column of numbers lists the total number of words in their normal form that are marked with the associated accent. The second column lists the total number of words in their major pausal form that are marked with that accent; and the third column lists the total number of words in their minor pausal form.

---

82 2 Sam. 3:21; 24:13; in the last one, note several following clauses are closed with pausal forms with higher ordered accents.

83 Zep. 2:9.

84 Judg. 9:36; Isa. 65:1, 17 (?); Mal. 1:6; 2 Sam. 3:34; in the last one note that a parallel word also has a pausal form in the same verse, as well as a clause closed with a pausal form marked with Zaqeph.

85 Ezek. 17:15; Est. 4:8.
Five passages in the Poetical Books contain a word in its minor pausal form; all involve the pronoun ꝏ.⁸⁶ In each case, the antecedent of the pronoun is God, or the Messiah (Psa. 2:7), and the pronoun is in the emphatic clause final position. All are marked with Athnach where the major disjunction is marked with Ole WeYored; the one exception is marked with Rebia (Psa. 76:8).

Table 23.6
Distribution of Pausal Forms by Accent For Poetic Books

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accent Name</th>
<th>Normal Form</th>
<th>Major Pause</th>
<th>Minor Pause</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Silluq</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4,449</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4,451</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Ole WeYored</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>509</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Athnach</td>
<td>346</td>
<td>3,856</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4,206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 G-Rebia</td>
<td>768</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>812</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 Rebia Mugrash</td>
<td>2,951</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2,953</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 Sinnor</td>
<td>212</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 L-Rebia</td>
<td>188</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 Dechi</td>
<td>2,426</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2,426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Pazer</td>
<td>88</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Mahpak-Legarmeh</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Azla-Legarmeh</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>321</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 Munach</td>
<td>6,903</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>6,909</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Mereka</td>
<td>3,740</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3,740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 Illuy</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 Tarcha</td>
<td>1,106</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1,106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 Galgal</td>
<td>232</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>232</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 Mahpak</td>
<td>464</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>464</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 Azla</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 L-Shalsheleth</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 Sin-Mer</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 Sin-Mah</td>
<td>180</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 Mugrash</td>
<td>1,204</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1,204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 Sinnorit</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Totals: 21,701 | 8,859 | 5 | 30,575

Total non-accent = 13,388
Total words 432,347

23.2.1 Silluq and Ole WeYored

Silluq lacks a pausal form only twice, and one instance (Prov. 31:12) seems to be an error in the WTS text, because Dotan’s edition of the Leningrad B manuscript has a pausal form. Where a verse has no Ole WeYored, 17 times the Athnach fails to have a pausal form. Where a verse has both Ole WeYored and Athnach, the Athnach also has a pausal form 22 times.

Ordinarily, in longer verses, Ole WeYored marks the major division and bears the pausal form; in shorter verses, Ole WeYored is lacking and Athnach marks the major division and bears the pausal form. Athnach fails to succeed Ole WeYored 52 times, in which case it followed by Great Rebia in place of Athnach 44 times; there remain eight exceptions.

There are 197 verses having neither Ole WeYored nor Athnach; most are the short first verses of Psalms having a title, or the short first verses of chapters in Job introducing a new speech. Excluding these unusually short verses, together with those that have a pausal form with Great Rebia, still 109 verses remain. These mainly include short verses having the major division marked by Great Rebia with a non-pausal form. Excluding these, only four verses remain: a short extension of a title, and short verses divided by Rebia Mugrash without a pausal form. There are 54 verses that have one or more major pausal forms besides those with Ole WeYored, Silluq, or Athnach.

23.2.2 Great Rebia

A major pausal form occurs with Great Rebia 43 times. Once it occurs in a verse with both Ole WeYored and Athnach. It appears prior to Athnach where Ole WeYored would be expected. It appears after Ole WeYored once where Athnach would be expected. It occurs 16

---

87 Psa. 78:10; Prov. 31:12.
89 Psa. 17:10; 26:1; 35:1, 19; 48:5, 11; 83:11; 107:35; 110:5; 119:65; 120:2; 130:7; 140:5; 148:1; Job 9:22; 17:11; Prov. 30:21.
91 Psa. 3:3; 4:7; 31:21; 58:3; 109:16; 125:3; Job 11:6; Prov. 8:13.
92 Psa. 18:2.
93 Psa. 89:53; 137:9; Prov. 1:10.
94 Psa. 79:1.
96 Psa. 30:6.
times in short verses having neither Ole WeYored nor Athnach, always on the second word before Silluq where Athnach would be expected, with one exception where it is on the first word before Silluq; musical reasons must explain these few exceptions, because otherwise Athnach occurs on the second word before Silluq 385 times.

23.2.3 Other Accents

A major pausal accent occurs with Rebia Mugrash twice, marking special rhetorical emphasis. Pazer marks a major pausal form three times in places where an Ole WeYored would be expected; musical reasons must explain these rare exceptions. Azla Legarmeh rests on a pausal form once, standing where Ole WeYored would be expected. Finally, the conjunctive accent Munach accompanies a major pausal form six times, each apparently marking rhetorical emphasis.

23.3 Conclusion

Pausal forms normally occur with Silluq and Athnach, marking the major divisions of a verse. When they occur in other places in a verse, they mark exegetically significant words or phrases in the text that are of rhetorical interest.

---

99 Job 9:20; 37:3.
100 Psalms 5:12; 18:2; Proverbs 30:4.
101 Psalms 25:5.
102 Psalms 3:9; 74:14; 106:28; Job 34:20; Proverbs 7:13, 22.
103 Plus Ole WeYored in the poetical books.
Chapter 24
Hebrew Syntactic Idioms

An idiom is an expression in a language the meaning of which is not conveyed by a literal rendering of its words. Some idioms are unique statements involving specific terms that may be mapped to a definite meaning. Jean-Marc Babut has catalogued a list of 138 idioms of that type, and discussed about a dozen of them in depth. Another kind of idiom involves peculiar syntactic structures that provide the framework for a whole class of idiomatic expressions. This chapter provides, in less technical terms, a unified list of syntactic idioms that are formally defined in various places throughout the syntactic analysis rules.

24.1 The Idiom of Distribution

The idiom of distribution is expressed in its most general form as $X W X$, where $X$ has the same referent in both cases and may be a common noun, an adverb, a number, an adverbial prepositional phrase, or an interrogative pronoun; a conjunctive accent occurs on the first $X$. The ultimate referent of $X$ is a countable entity or a quantifier.

$X = \text{Common Noun}$

|çeša ʕâšèh | differing ephah (Deut. 25:14) |
|ג‘זד Configs | generation by generation (Deut. 32:7) |
|ל‘ב ʕâla | every heart (1 Chr. 12:34) |
|ט‘ב ʕâla | every kind of service (1 Chr. 28:14) |
|מ‘ר ʕâla | every lamp stand (1 Chr. 28:15) |
|כ‘ר ʕâla | every bowl (1 Chr. 28:17) |
|ש‘ר ʕâla | every gate (2 Chr. 8:14) |
|ע‘ר ʕâla | every city (2 Chr. 11:12) |
|כ‘ר ל‘ב ʕâla | all kinds of livestock (2 Chr. 32:28) |
|ע‘ב | every people (Neh. 13:24) |
|א‘ו | every man (Est. 1:8) |
|מ‘ר | every province (Est. 1:22) |

sometimes the idiom of distribution is expressed as above, except without the conjunction, that is, in general as \( X \) \( X \), where \( X \) has the same referent in both cases and may be a noun, a number, or an adverbial prepositional phrase. Again, the ultimate referent is a countable entity or a quantifier; this semantic restraint distinguishes this form of the idiom from the idiom of intensity discussed later.

\( X = \text{Noun} \)

- 

- 

- 

- 

- 

- 

- 

- 

Sometimes the idiom of distribution is expressed as above, except without the conjunction, that is, in general as \( X \) \( X \), where \( X \) has the same referent in both cases and may be a noun, a number, or an adverbial prepositional phrase. Again, the ultimate referent is a countable entity or a quantifier; this semantic restraint distinguishes this form of the idiom from the idiom of intensity discussed later.

\( X = \text{Adverb} \)

- 

- 

- 

- 

\( X = \text{Number} \)

- 

- 

\( X = \text{Adverbial Prepositional Phrase} \)

- 

- 

- 

- 

\( X = \text{Interrogative Pronoun} \)

- whoever (interrogative Exod. 10:8)
Chapter 24

Hebrew Syntactic Idioms

24.2 The Idiom of Intensity

The idiom of intensity is expressed in its most general form as \( X X \), where \( X \) has the same referent in both cases and may be a common noun, an adverb, an adverbial prepositional phrase, an interjection, or an interrogative pronoun; a conjunctive accent occurs on the first \( X \). For this idiom, the referent of \( X \) is not a countable entity.

\[ X = \text{Noun} \]

\( 
\text{perfect peace (1 Chr. 12:19; Isa. 26:3; 57:19)} \\
\text{ruinous overthrow! (Ezek. 21:32)}
\]

\[ X = \text{Adjective} \]

\( 
\text{altogether just (Deut. 16:20)} \\
\text{very proudly (1 Sam. 2:3)} \\
\text{exceedingly deep (Eccl. 7:24)} \\
\text{given entirely (Num. 3:9)}
\]

\[ X = \text{Adverb} \]

\( 
\text{exceedingly (Gen. 17:2) [lit. very very]} \\
\text{very gradually (Exod. 23:30) [lit. little by little]}
\]
very high (Deut. 28:43) [lit.: higher, higher]
very low (Deut. 28:43) [lit.: lower, lower]
completely around (Ezek. 40:16)
very truly (Neh. 8:6)

**Adverbial Prepositional Phrase**

surely for my sake! (Isa. 48:11)

Some nuance of intensity also may be inferred when other parts of speech are repeated, such as pronouns, imperatives, vocatives, interjections, verbs, adjectives, and isolated nouns.

**Pronoun**

I even I (Deut. 32:39)
I, even I (Isa. 43:11)
They, even they (Isa. 57:6)

**Imperative**

Awake, awake! (Judg. 5:12)
Hear, hear! (2 Sam. 20:16)
Come out, come out! (2 Sam. 16:7)
Comfort ye, comfort ye (Isa. 40:1)
Awake, awake! (Isa. 51:17)
Depart, depart! (Isa. 52:11)
Go through, go through! (Isa. 62:10)
Build up, build up! (Isa. 62:10)
Turn, turn! (Eze. 22:11)
Halt, halt! (Nah. 2:9)
Return, return! (Song 7:1)

**Vocative**

Moses, Moses (Exod. 3:4)
Altar, altar (1 Kgs. 13:2)
Ariel, Ariel (Isa. 29:1)
O earth, earth, earth! (Jer. 22:9)

**Interjection**

Far be it, far be it! (2 Sam. 20:20)
Ho, ho! (Zech. 2:10)
Behold me, behold me (Isa. 65:1)
Woe, woe! (Ezek. 16:23)
Chapter 24 Hebrew Syntactic Idioms

24.3 Idiom of Possession

Hebrew has no verb expressing possession. Instead, possession is expressed idiomatically. The syntactic structure is

\[ S^c = N^s + V^c + \text{'} + N \]

Where \( N^s \) is the subject, that which is possessed; \( V^c \) is the verb \( הָיָה \) or its equivalent \( שָׁלֹא \) when the verb is positive and \( גָּלְחָה \) when it is negative; and \( N \) is the possessor. Literally, \( N^s \) has an \( N \). This idiom is fully discussed in chapter 12, and needs no further discussion here.

And the sons of Reuben and the sons of Gad had many cattle. (Num. 32:1)

We have an old father. (Gen. 44:20)

Does Israel have no son? (Jer. 49:1)

Therefore, Levi does not have a portion or an inheritance. (Deut. 10:9)

24.4 Idiom of Becoming

Hebrew has no verb that expresses “become.” Instead, “becoming” is expressed idiomatically. The syntactic structure is similar to that of possession; semantic restraints of context distinguish the two:

\[ S^c = N^s + V^c + \text{'} + N \]

Where \( N^s \) is the subject, \( V^c \) is the verb \( הָיָה \), and \( N \) is that which \( N^s \) becomes. Literally, \( N^s \) became \( N \). This idiom is fully discussed in chapter 12, and needs no further discussion here.
And the man became a living soul. (Gen. 2:7)

So the Moabites became servants of David, paying tribute. (2 Sam. 8:2)

24.5 The Idioms of Comparison

As in most languages, comparison at the word or phrase level may be understood as having been derived by means of a transformation on clauses compared at the text level, that is, two clauses joined by a comparative conjunction. The clauses are identical except for the constituents being compared. Such a transformation results in one of the clauses with a newly formed comparative phrase, consisting of the constituents being compared joined by a comparative preposition equivalent to the comparative conjunction. The operation is expressed formally as

\[ [S^a(X_i) + C^c + S^a(X_j)] \rightarrow S^a(X_i + P^c + X_j) \]

Comparative conjunctions compare the thought of one clause with that of another word, phrase, or clause. Clauses may be compared on the basis of any common element or feature, and they may have six degrees of comparison: (1) the superlative degree, (2) the superior degree, (3) the similar degree, (4) the same degree, (5) the inferior degree, and (6) the most inferior degree. The following are the principal comparative conjunctions in Hebrew:

(a) מַהוּ—just as—this pair of conjunctions compares two clauses on an equal basis. The second conjunction may be omitted. When expressing the same degree of comparison, the conjunction מַהוּ is retained within the resultant phrase of comparison; when expressing the superior or inferior degree of comparison, the conjunction is transformed into its prepositional equivalent מַהוּ.

(b) מַהוּ—more than—compares one clause as superior to another. Rarely, the conjunction is retained within the resultant phrase of comparison; otherwise, the prepositional equivalent is מַהוּ. If the thing compared is a universal statement, the conjunction expresses the superlative degree of comparison.

---

2 The inferior degrees of comparison are expressed by adjectives and adverbs having a semantic nuance of inferiority. The same conjunctions are used as are used to express superiority.
Chapter 24  Hebrew Syntactic Idioms  681

24.5.1 The Same Degree of Comparison

בָּאוֹלֵל כָּלֵלְהַרְפָּה נַעֲשָׂרְנָהוֹ בְּסָמָה
When every male among us is circumcised
   as [comparison of equality]
they are circumcised. (Gen. 34:22)

24.5.2 The Superior Degree of Comparison Comparison of subject:

לֹאָם מֵלָאָם יָאָפָה
One people shall be stronger than the other. (Gen. 25:23)
   [Condensed from “One people shall be strong more than the other people shall be strong.”]

Comparison of predicate attribute:

מָשִׁיחַ כָּלֵל פַּאֲרוֹנִית בְּפָרָה:
They were swifter than eagles,
   They were stronger than lions. (2 Sam. 1:23)
   [Condensed from “They were swift more than eagles are swift,”
   and “They were strong more than lions are strong.”]

Comparison of predicate complement:

נָאָדָה נְפָרָהָרִית מִלָּאָה
He also loved Rachel more than Leah. (Gen. 29:30)
   [Condensed from “He loved Rachel more than he loved Leah.”]

נָאָדָה מִלָּאָה אַוָּאְדָהָרִית מִלָּאָה
The king loved Esther more than all the other women. (Est. 2:17)

וֹתְרָה מָלָאָהְבּ מְנַנָּהָר
And more than these, my son, be admonished. (Eccl. 12:12)

Comparison of predicates:

לָאָדָה רְבּוֹדָהְוֹ מָאָבָהְוֹ
They reverted and behaved more corruptly than their fathers. (Judg. 2:19)

24.5.3 The Superlative Degree of Comparison

In Hebrew the superlative degree of comparison is expressed in the same manner as the
superior degree, except that the universal quantifier is used with the referent being compared.
And the serpent was more cunning than any beast of the field. (Gen. 3:1)

David behaved more wisely than all the servants of Saul. (1 Sam. 18:30)

From his shoulders and upward he was taller than any of the people. (1 Sam. 9:2)

And there was not a man of the sons of Israel better than he (1 Sam. 9:2)

Whom would the king delight to honor more than me? (Est. 6:6)

And look for the best and most qualified of your master’s sons. (2 Kgs. 10:3)

The superlative degree of comparison may also be expressed by denying or questioning the superiority of anyone else:

And there was not a man of the sons of Israel better than he (1 Sam. 9:2)

Whom would the king delight to honor more than me? (Est. 6:6)

At times the universal quantifier is elided if its sense is understood from the context.

And look for the best and most qualified of your master’s sons. (2 Kgs. 10:3)
Finally, the superlative degree of comparison may be expressed as

\[ J_i({\text{sing.}})^3 + N_i({\text{pl. det.}}) \]

— the best of them (Mich. 7:4)

King of Kings and Lord of Lords (Deut. 10:17)

The best of songs (Song 1:1)

[lit., the song of songs]

heaven and the highest heaven (Deut. 10:14)

24.5.4 The Inferior Degree of Comparison

younger than I (Job 30:1)

24.5.5 The Most Inferior Degree of Comparison

the least of all families (1 Sam. 9:21)

the least in my father’s house (Judg. 6:15)

24.6 The Idiom of Emphatic Wish

The word also is used with the word \( \text{idem} \) idiomatically to express an emphatic wish *Oh, that . . .*!

Oh, that we had died by the hand of the LORD in the land of Egypt! (Exod. 16:3)

Oh, that the salvation of Israel would come out of Zion! (Psa. 14:7)\(^{4}\)

\(^{3}\) In some instances the construct is plural: Lev. 21:22.

\(^{4}\) See also Num. 11:29; Deut. 5:29; 28:67; Judg. 9:29; 2 Sam. 19:1; Job 6:8; 11:5; 13:5; 14:4, 13; 19:23; 23:3; 29:2; 31:31, 35; Psa. 53:7; 55:7; Song 8:1; Isa. 27:4; Jer. 8:23; 9:1.
24.7 Idioms with the Infinitive Absolute

The infinitive absolute is regularly used idiomatically as an adverbial modifier of its cognate finite verb. In this function, it intensifies some nuance of the verbal idea, or it adds the nuance of continuance to the verbal action.

24.7.1 The Idiom of Intensity

When the cognate infinitive absolute appears before the verb, it strengthens some nuance of the verbal idea.\(^5\)

\[\text{לִפְנֵי בָנָו אֲרָבָא מַמָּשׂ קָדֶשׁ שִׂמְחָה:}
\]
For in the day you eat from it, you will surely die. (Gen. 2:17)

\[\text{לְאַלְמָאֵשָה אֲרָבָא הֵרִיבָה אָרְבָּא שֵׁשָּׁמָה וּרְחָנָה:}
\]
To the woman He said: “I will greatly increase your sorrow and your conception.” (Gen. 3:17)

24.7.2 The Idiom of Continuance

When the cognate infinitive absolute appears after the verb, it adds the nuance of continuance.\(^6\)

\[\text{לְאֵלָב אָרְבָּא לְחַמְּתָה וְהָיָה בָּרִכָּה בֶּן:}
\]
I brought you to curse my enemies, but indeed you keep blessing \textit{them}. (Num. 23:11)

\[\text{רָאָרָו לְאָסָרְבָּו בְּאֶלֶּפֶּב וְיִשְׁמָלֶב שִׁפָּה:}
\]
And they said: “This one came to sojourn, and he keeps acting as a judge.” (Gen. 19:9)

When the cognate infinitive absolute occurs after the verb with \textit{Waw Consecutive}, the nuance must be determined by context, because the infinitive cannot precede the verb in this case; this is also true of imperatives and participles.

The infinitive absolute is sometimes used in adverbial idioms, where two infinitives absolute are joined by \textit{Waw Consecutive} to form an idiomatic adverbial phrase, usually occurring at the end of the clause it modifies, and expressing some attending circumstances.\(^7\)

---

\(^5\) GKC § 113n; JM § 123e; WO § 35.3.1.

\(^6\) GKC § 113r; however, JM 123f and WO § 35.3.1d question the validity of this meaning, preferring to see no real difference between prepositive and postpositive infinitives absolute.

\(^7\) WO § 35.3.2.
24.7.3 The Idiom of Continuous Action

When the first of the two infinitives absolute is of the verb הָלַך, the emphasis is on the continuous action expressed by the second infinitive.  


And the water receded from the earth, continually receding. (Gen. 8:3)


And Abram journeyed, continually journeying toward the Negev. (Gen. 12:9)


And he scraped it out into his palms and walked along continually eating. (Judg. 14:9)

24.7.4 The Idiom of Recurrent Action

When the first of the two infinitives absolute is the Hiphil of the verb שׁבב, the emphasis is on the persistent action expressed by the second infinitive.


And the LORD God of their fathers sent word to them by the hand of His messengers, persistently sending them, because He had compassion on His people and on His dwelling place. (2 Chr. 36:15)


And I spoke to you, persistently speaking, and you did not listen. (Jer. 25:3)

Other pairs of idiomatically joined infinitives absolute are discussed in § 6.1.4.

24.8 The Idiom of Clause Subordination

In Hebrew, an alternate way of subordinating one clause to another is to change the verb in the subordinate clause to its infinitive construct form, and to introduce the subordinate clause with the preposition that corresponds in meaning to the given subordinating conjunction. This idiom is discussed in § 19.2.7.

---

8 GKC § 113u; § JM 123m, s; see Gen. 8:3, 5; 12:9; Josh. 6:9; Judg. 14:9; 1 Sam. 6:12; 2 Sam. 3:16*; 5:10*; 2 Kgs. 2:11*; 1 Chr. 11:9*; Isa. 3:16*; Jer. 50:4; * marks instances where the first is cognate with the finite verb of the clause.

24.9 The Idiom of Temporal or Logical Sequence

The use of *Waw* consecutive, with the verb in the imperfect or perfect aspect, idiomatically expresses temporal or logical sequence. This idiom is discussed in § 19.1.3 and in Appendix One.

24.10 The Idiom of Numbers

Sometimes the thing quantified is repeated after each number. This is purely idiomatic and does not affect meaning or translation.

Sarah lived one hundred and twenty-seven years; *these were* the years of the life of Sarah.  
(Gen. 23:1)
Glossary of Terms

**Adjunct**: a phrase added to a sentence containing supplemental information not affecting the basic meaning of the sentence.

**Affix**: a *morpheme* attached to or inserted into a word element that affects meaning. It may be either a *prefix*, *suffix*, or *infix*.

**Apodosis**: The sentence that comes afterward in subordinating expressions, as, for example, the consequence in a conditional expression. Compare with *Protasis*.

**Asyndeton**: lacking an understood conjunction.

**Attribute**: a unique characteristic of a linguistic element that may be treated as an independent variable.

**Bound**: the characteristic of a *morpheme* or *constituent* that prohibits it from functioning as an independent entity. A *bound morpheme* or *constituent* must be governed by other elements in the structure of which it is a part, otherwise it violates the laws that define the given construction. Compare with *free*.

**Complement**: the word or phrase that, with the verb, completes the meaning and structure of a predicare.

**Conjugation**: the set of forms that a verb may take in order to encode all the valid combinations of the values of its grammatical *attributes*. When one conjugates a verb he recites all the valid conjugational forms of the word. Compare with *inflection*.

**Constituent**: an elemental unit of syntax and text grammar. A *constituent* may be a word, phrase, clause, or larger group of units that has a single role and function, and that fits into a permissible *slot*.

**Copulative**: a verb that links its subject with a class name, an identifier, an adjectival characteristic, an adverbial characteristic, and the like. The verb function as a *copulative* verb in Hebrew.

**Deep Structure**: the *kernel clauses* and *transformations* that explain the *surface structure* of a *discourse*.

---

1 Words in italics refer to entries in the glossary. They may be consulted for further understanding. The entries are listed in alphabetic order.
**Derivation**: the source from which a word or form is derived. A noun may be derived from a verb, an adjective, another noun, etc. A specific *stem* of a verb is derived from the verb’s *root*.

**Discourse**: A complete body of literature such as a story, sermon, etc.

**Economy of Symbols**: In harmony with the human tendency to minimize effort, in communication, people tend to minimize redundancy and to minimize symbols. A symbol (word) may be assigned more than one meaning where the alternate meanings would never occur in the same context. Where a symbol is required, the simplest non-ambiguous one is preferred.

**Episode**: the largest *constituent* part of an *event*.

**Event**: the largest *constituent* part of a *narrative*, consisting of one or more *episodes*.

**Free**: the characteristic of a *morpheme* or *constituent* that enables it to function as an independent entity. Compare with *bound*.

**Infix**: a *morpheme* that is inserted into a word element that affects meaning. The *", inserted into the Hiphil stem of a verb is an example of an *infix*.

**Inflection**: the set of forms that a noun or adjective may take in order to encode all the valid combinations of the values of its grammatical *attributes*. When one inflects a noun or adjective he recites all the valid *inflectional* forms of the word. Compare with *conjugation*.

**Kernel Clause**: a basic clause in its default form. It is in the active voice, indicative mood, declarative mode, with subject-verb-object word order. A *kernel clause* has no expressed emphasis or prominence. It has no elided elements, and employs no pronoun substitution.

**Lexeme**: a specific value of meaning. Most words have several *lexeme* values depending on the context in which they occur. Once a context is defined, a word takes on a specific *lexeme* value.

**Lexicography**: the study of the meaning of words; the writing of a dictionary or *lexicon*.

**Lexicon**: a book listing the *morphemes* of a language; a book that maps the meaning of the *morphemes* of one language to those of another, such as a Hebrew-English *lexicon*.

**Morpheme**: the smallest meaningful grammatical element of a language. It may be merely an uninflcted word like נב "house" or an *inflectional* element like ב or מ that is affixed to a word to encode the values of *inflectional attributes*. *Inflectional morphemes* usually encode the values of more than one grammatical *attribute* at a time. Thus the morpheme מ encodes the value "plural" for the *attribute* "number" and the value "masculine" for the *attribute* "gender"; and
**Morpheme** \( \text{\textcopyright} \) encodes the value "plural" for the **attribute** "number" and the value "feminine" for the **attribute** "gender." **Morphemes** may be either **bound** or **free**. A **bound morpheme** is one that cannot stand alone—that is, it cannot be regarded as an independent part of speech. The **morphemes** \( \text{\textcopyright} \) and \( \text{\textcopyright} \) are **bound**. A **free morpheme** can stand alone or be regarded as an independent part of speech. The **morpheme** \( \text{\textcopyright} \) is **free**.

**Morphemes** that are appended to the beginning of a **free** form (word) are called **preformatives** or **prefixes**. Those that are appended to the end of a word are called **sufformatives** or **suffixes**. Those inserted within a **free** form are called **infixes**. If the removal of a **morpheme** would destroy the identity of a **free** form, the **morpheme** is called an **affix**. **Preformatives** and **sufformatives** are **affixes**. The removal of an **infix** would also destroy the identity of a **free** form, so technically it too is an **affix**, but to avoid confusion the term **infix** is retained rather than use the term "informative." When the removal of a **morpheme** would not destroy the identity of a **free** form, the **morpheme** is called a **prefix** or **suffix**.

**Morphology**: the study of the forms that words take in order to encode the **inflections**, **derivations**, and compositions in a language. It involves the study of **morphemes** and how they encode the values of the various grammatical **attributes**.

**Narrative**: a complete story that is relatively independent of what precedes or follows in the broader context. A **narrative** consists of one or more **events** consisting of one or more **episodes**.

**Phoneme**: one of the smallest units of speech that distinguish one utterance from another; an elementary unit of speech sounds in a given language. A given language has its own set of **phonemes**.

**Phonemics**: the study and establishment of the **phonemes** of a language.

**Phonetics**: the branch of linguistics dealing with the study of the sounds of speech, the way they are produced in the speech tract, the combinations in which they occur, and the way they are represented by written signs; such a study for the sounds of a given language.

**Phonology**: the science of speech sounds including **phonetics** and **phonemics**.

**Prefix**: a **bound morpheme** appended to the beginning of a **free** form. The removal of a **prefix** does not destroy the identity of the **free** form to which it is appended. The definite article \( \text{\textcopyright} \), the inseparable prepositions \( \text{\textcopyright} \), \( \text{\textcopyright} \), \( \text{\textcopyright} \), and the conjunction \( \text{\textcopyright} \) are examples of **prefixes**. Compare with **preformative**.
**Preformative**: a bound morpheme appended to the beginning of a free form. The removal of a preformative destroys the identity of the free form to which it is appended. The inflectional \( \text{נ, י, ד} \), and \( \text{נ} \) of the imperfect conjugation are examples of preformatives. Compare with prefix.

**Protasis**: The sentence placed first in subordinating expressions, as, for example, the condition in conditional expressions. Compare with Apodosis.

**Root**: the consonants that make up the basic unit of meaning for Hebrew words. Most words are based on roots that have three consonant, but some have two or four.

**Semantics**: the science of meaning in language forms. It involves lexicography and the interrelationships of words and concepts that express meaning.

**Slot**: a position in a grammatical or syntactic structure into which defined constituents are permitted.

**Stem**: one of the several forms that may be imposed upon a root in order to construct a word. There are seven standard stems for verbal roots: Qal, Niphal, Piel, Pual, Hiphil, Hophal, and Hithpael. Other parts of speech also have stems, although there is no standardized classification for them.

**Suffix**: a bound morpheme appended to the end of a free form. The removal of a suffix does not destroy the identity of the free form to which it is appended. The pronominal suffixes are examples. Compare with sufformative.

**Surface Structure**: the sequence of words as actually found in a written or spoken communication. See deep structure.

**Sufformative**: a bound morpheme appended to the end of a free form. The removal of a sufformative destroys the identity of the free form to which it is appended. The inflectional \( \text{ל, י, ח, י, ל, מ, מ} \), etc. of the perfect conjugation are examples of sufformatives. Compare with suffix.

**Transformation**: a syntactical operation that provides for changing the sequential order of the constituents of a sentence. It may change the values of attributes or even add or delete constituents.
APPENDIX ONE

Hebrew Verb Tenses

Many contemporary Hebrew grammarians hold that the Hebrew verbal system is of com-
posite origin, having developed from a mixture of elements from Eastern Semitic (Akkadian), and
Western Semitic (Aramaic). This view came into prominence through the historical comparative
studies of Hans Bauer and the subsequent work of G. R. Driver. Simply stated, the view regards
the Hebrew imperfect inflection to be a mixture of an original Akkadian preterite “tense,” and a
subsequent Western Semitic imperfect “aspect.” The imperfect with Waw consecutive expressing
historic narrative is regarded as a remnant of the Akkadian preterite; whereas the imperfect ex-
pressing the future, or incomplete action, is regarded as a remnant of the Western Semitic “aspect.”

A similar explanation is offered for the varied meanings of the perfect inflection. The per-
fect with Waw consecutive expressing the future is regarded as a remnant of an early Eastern uni-
versal “tense,” whereas the perfect expressing the past or completed action is regarded as a remnant
of a later Western complete “aspect.” Even though the historical comparative method is a valid
approach to the study of the historical development of the Semitic languages, this explanation
contains some serious difficulties.

26.1 Confusion Introduced

First of all, the view proposes that identical (or nearly identical) inflectional forms with
significantly different meanings (tense vs. aspect) were incorporated into a single language. At the
time of such a hypothetical union of these forms, an element of confusion would have been created
in the language that contradicts the usual trend in language development. Languages tend to de-
velop toward simplicity and clarity. Any new elements of complexity tend to make the language
more specific, less ambiguous. The merging of ambiguous and contradictory elements must be
viewed with suspicion.

Although the composite union of languages is possible, Leslie McFall, in his masterful
study of the Hebrew verbal system, correctly argued against that possibility in the case of Hebrew:

Driver’s strong point that Hebrew has a duplicate system of tense/aspects . . . has been considerably
weakened by recent doctoral work on the North-West Semitic verbal system. W. L. Moran (1950) has shown
that Byblos has a qatal form with all the meanings of the Hebrew simple Perfect and Perfect consecutive. It
also has a yaqtol form with all the meanings of the simple Imperfect and Imperfect consecutive in Hebrew.
T. L. Fenton has discovered the same phenomena in Ugaritic (1963), and I. D. Marcus (1971) has confirmed
these observations.2

1 G. R. Driver, Problems of the Hebrew Verbal System (Edinburgh, 1936); McFall, 116-51.
Recent work on the Ugaritic verbal system in particular shows that Hebrew cannot be a composite language, unless, of course, all the North-West Semitic languages are composite.\(^3\)

The recent discovery of Eblaite, which can claim to be the oldest Semitic language to be discovered so far, has the active *qatal* form. If we place alongside this strong evidence the remnants of a *qatal* in Akkadian . . . the overwhelming conclusion is that *qatal* is a proto-Semitic, if not a Hamito-Semitic, form.\(^4\)

In light of these complications, it seems advisable to seek an explanation of the Hebrew verb system other than the composite union of confusing forms.

### 26.2 Tenses Presupposed

Second, this composite view stipulates that some early Semitic verbal inflections expressed “tense” in the true temporal sense of the term. This stipulation is seriously questioned by many scholars. McFall emphasized the seriousness of this problem. In evaluating the views of Hebrew grammarians before the nineteenth century, he noted that

> it was probably assumed in Europe at that time that every language in the world had a tense system; therefore it was natural for them to look for the Indo-European tense system in BH [Biblical Hebrew].\(^5\)

McFall commented on Bauer’s weakness on this point:

> Bauer has no doubts but that the HVS [Hebrew verb system] is a tense-oriented system. He is astonished that anyone could think that the temporal perspective of the Semites were incommensurable with ‘our way of thinking’.\(^6\)

In his criticism of the Bauer-Driver view, McFall observed that

> the introduction of tenses into the HVS inevitably leads to a narrowing of the gap between Hebrew and Indo-Germanic verbal systems. The whole development of the HVS is seen as the development of one universal verb to the complex situation in the HVS which itself is viewed as developing into a fully-fledged tense system. This approach leaves itself open to criticism and censure on many points.\(^7\)

James Barr also warned against the danger of importing tense into the Hebrew verbal conjugation: “It would therefore seem dangerous to use the existence of an aspect system in Hebrew too confidently as a guide to a particular understanding of actions and events and their relation to time.”\(^8\)

McFall further summarized the weakness of the “tense” approach:

---

\(^3\) McFall, 141.
\(^4\) McFall, 143.
\(^5\) McFall, 16.
\(^6\) McFall, 115.
\(^7\) McFall, 184.
We have noted in evaluating the other solutions that the degree to which the Hebrew verbal system was brought into line with the familiar Indo-Germanic, the more problems it raised.9

26.2.1 No Tense in Akkadian

This objection to a true “tense” in Semitic languages is widespread. It is particularly important with respect to Akkadian, because this language is regarded as the source of “tenses” in Hebrew. Richard Caplice, in his discussion of Akkadian “tenses,” stated:

In each stem we find four finite forms, usually called tenses: (1) the present (or durative), which expresses a continuous action, is normally translated by the English present or future; (2) the preterite (or punctual), which expresses an action as taking place at a single point in time, is most often equivalent to a simple past narrative tense; (3) the perfect represents the verbal action in temporal relation to another action or to the present time, and may be translated by a past tense in English (“I did”, ‘I have done’); (4) the stative expresses a state (‘he is old’) rather than an action (‘he becomes old’).10

It should be noted that the terminology employed here, though it is traditional and in common use, is derived from Indo-European languages and inexact in its application to Akkadian. ‘Tense’ might ideally be replaced by ‘verbal aspect’, ‘present’ by ‘durative’, and ‘preterite’ by ‘punctual’.11

With modern scholars departing from a “tense” view of the Akkadian verb, it seems wise to abandon any thought of “tense” in the historic background of the Hebrew verb. This is strengthened by a similar trend among scholars of other Semitic languages.

26.2.2 No Tense in Arabic

W. Wright, the recognized authority on Arabic, wrote concerning Arabic “tenses”:

The temporal forms of the Arabic verb are but two in number, the one expressing a finished act, one that is done and completed in relation to other acts (the Perfect); the other an unfinished act, one that is just commencing or in progress (the Imperfect). . . . The names Preterite and Future, by which these forms were often designated in older grammars do not accurately correspond to the ideas inherent in them. A Semitic Perfect or Imperfect has, in and of itself, no reference to the temporal relations of the speaker (thinker or writer) and of other actions which are brought into juxtaposition with it.12

26.2.3 No Tense in Ugaritic

Cyrus H. Gordon, one of the leading authorities on Ugaritic, seems to have been uncertain about “tenses” in that language. He wrote:

The Semitic verbal system is shrouded in considerable obscurity and even the ‘tenses’ of so well known a language as Hebrew are still a moot question. It is therefore not surprising that the Ugaritic verb is the subject of debate.13

---

9 McFall, 182.  
11 Caplice, 31-32.  
Concerning the imperfect form (yqtl) he stated, “If yqtl had to be called a tense, ‘universal tense’ would be justified inasmuch as it often refers to the past as well as to the present or future.”\(^{14}\) Also regarding the sequences of perfect and imperfect forms, he observed that the consecutions of the forms “show that these forms are not solely evoked by considerations of time or aspect, for other elements (such as sequence) may enter the picture.”\(^{15}\)

### 26.2.4 Hebrew Expresses Tense

The preceding discussion does not suggest that the ancient Semites had no concept of “tense” or that their temporal perspective was primitive and incommensurable with our modern way of thought, a view against which Bauer reacted. It merely suggests that the morphology of the Semitic verb lacks a morpheme for “tense.” Semitic languages have a full complex of temporal nouns, adjectives, adverbs, conjunctions and particles sufficient to express their temporal perspective without the aid of verbal morphemes.

Barr’s study of the concepts of time in the Bible warned against assuming that the Hebrew concept of time was primitive:

We conclude, then, that an examination of vocabulary does not support attempts to depict a special Israelite way of thinking about time for which the quantitative senses of words like ‘hour’ or ‘day’ are relatively unimportant. It is not unlikely that some of the reasoning which leads to such a special way of thinking is an application to Israel of what is supposed to be a ‘primitive’ human apprehension of time. In this very matter of time measurement, however, it is probable that with the influences of neighbouring civilizations the Israelites were far removed from the ‘primitive’.\(^{16}\)

Barr’s evidence demonstrates that the ancient Israelites had a concept of time comparable to contemporary thought. In my opinion, it is not necessary to attribute their concept to the influence of neighboring civilizations. The evidence does not support the idea that the Israelites were dependent on other cultures for their conceptual development.

### 26.3 Proto-Semitic Ideal

Finally, this composite view is based on an evolutionary ideal presupposing that the history of Semitic languages can be traced back to a common ancestral proto-Semitic language from which all other Semitic languages developed. The study of historical comparative linguistics is helpful for identifying the common elements among languages and for mapping their historical

---

\(^{14}\) Gordon, 68.

\(^{15}\) Gordon, 68.

development, but attempts to explain known Semitic languages as descendants of one common proto-Semitic ancestor have invariably resulted in the introduction of unnecessary complications.

Concerning the recently discovered Eblaite language which some have hoped would be the missing link to proto-Semitic, Giovanni Gurbino wrote:

Eblaite is thus the oldest Semitic ‘language’, possibly together with Akkadian; it is impossible to go back further than these, because other ‘languages’, in the sociological sense just mentioned, are not possible.17 He said further that “what we have found is an historical ‘proto-Semitic’, in the sense that Eblaite is the first Semitic language in absolute.”18 Gurbino correctly implied that an ideal proto-Semitic ancestral language is a phantom shrouded in the dark shadows of unrecorded history, defying all attempts to materialize its form. The evidence supports the Mosaic record: The confusion of languages at the Tower of Babel introduced macro-mutations that defy reconstruction of an original Noahic language or any of its hypothetical major branches.

26.4 Other Explanations

Many other explanations of the Hebrew verbal system have been proposed, not one without its problems. McFall has provided a most comprehensive survey and evaluation of the various proposals. He found all to be inadequate to some degree, but unfortunately he offered no better proposal of his own. Instead, he proposed the direction for future research, and the hope that a satisfactory explanation will ultimately result.

In summarizing his observations gleaned from the study of six major explanations of the Hebrew verb system, McFall noted:

(1) Every tense (‘order of time’) in the English language is required to translate the five Hebrew verb forms, namely, qtl, wqtl, yqtl, wyqtl, and wayyqtl.

(2) Every mood (except the imperative in the case of wayyqtl) is required to translate the five Hebrew verb forms.

(3) Both aspects or modes of action (‘kind of time’), i.e., Perfect and Imperfect, are required in the translation of the five Hebrew verb forms.19

From these observations McFall concluded that the morphemes of the Hebrew verb do not correspond precisely with either tense, mood or aspect; for every explanation of the five Hebrew verb forms, exceptions exist that invalidate the explanation. Consequently no current explanation of the Hebrew verb system is adequate according to him.

17 Giovanni Gurbino, CLE, 76-77.
18 Gurbino, 77.
19 McFall, 176.
However, this conclusion is based on the unrealistic expectation that the morphemes of the verb must have a perfect correspondence with a set of linguistic features. No such perfect correspondence occurs in any natural language. Every language has a small percentage of explainable exceptions to the standard rules of morphology and syntax. This is true because the morphology and syntax of a given language do not perfectly encode all the linguistic features of that language, leaving some features to be expressed by semantics, idioms, or other means. Furthermore, the features of a language compete for prominence, and the prominence of some features must be encoded by the use of exceptional morphology or syntax.

In light of these observations it is more realistic to map the morphemes of the Hebrew verb to the most dominant corresponding verbal feature, and then to provide linguistic explanations for exceptions to the norm. The following section provides such justification for the view of the Hebrew verb employed in this work.

26.5 Present View Justified

The present work regards the linguistic feature “aspect” to have the most dominant correspondence with the Hebrew verb forms “perfect” (qtl) and “imperfect” (yqtl). This seems to be the opinion of most Hebrew scholars. There are various explanations for the small percentage of exceptions to this correspondence.

26.5.1 Lack of Morphemes

Although Hebrew is a highly inflected language, it employs a limited set of morphemes that do not perfectly correspond with the linguistic features of the language. For example, all Hebrew nouns are inflected for gender, yet many nouns are semantically inanimate, with no concept of gender whatsoever. Likewise all nouns are inflected for number, yet many are semantically uncountable, with no concept of number whatsoever. Usually when a morpheme has no semantic correspondence for a given noun, it encodes some other semantic nuance. Furthermore, the morphemes of some Hebrew nouns appear to be opposite to the standard values. For example, אַבִּי (fathers, masculine plural) has the feminine plural morpheme, and נָשִׁים (women, feminine plural) has the masculine plural morpheme. Surely these exceptions do not justify rejecting the standard identity of the nominal morphemes as number and gender.

Likewise, all Hebrew verbs must be inflected with “perfect” or “imperfect” forms, even though the sense of the context may be incompatible with the concept of “aspect.” Various circumstances account for these phenomena which do not demand the rejection of “aspect” as the standard identity of these verbal morphemes.
26.5.2 Semantic Incompatibility

The semantics of some verbs is incompatible with the concept of “aspect.” For example, most stative verbs and verbs expressing relationships are semantically incompatible with the perfect aspect, yet they are inflected with the perfect form. In such cases the semantics of the given verb override the aspectual implications of the verb form.

26.5.3 Contradictory Idioms

Some idioms of the language appear to be contradictory to the concept of “aspect.” One such major idiom seems to be the use of Waw consecutive. It appears to the casual observer that a perfect form followed by Waw consecutive with an imperfect form, expressing historic narrative, is an inconsistent use of “aspect”; likewise the use of an imperfect form followed by Waw consecutive with perfect. However, this inconsistency must be in the mind of a modern Western observer, not in the mind of the ancient Hebrews who clearly understood the nuances of such expressions. Therefore this was likely a widespread idiom in which the rhetorical features of the idiom dominate the aspectual implications of the form.

This “idiom” is common in the Northwest Semitic dialects. Gordon noted its presence in Ugaritic: “As in Heb., conversive ω belongs to the prose, but not to the poetry.”20 Also, “One of the most noticeable differences between Heb. and Ugar. is the frequency of waw conversive in Heb. and its infrequency in Ugar.”21 A similar idiom of sequence exists in Akkadian and Arabic. Caplice identified one use of the Akkadian perfect form to express “action subsequent to another action; this is expressed by the sequence pret.-ma + perf. (the so called consecutio temporum.”22 Arabic uses the conjunction fa to express consecution. Wright stated that fa “more usually connects two clauses, showing either that the latter is immediately subsequent to the former in time, or that it is connected with it by some internal link, such as that of cause and effect.”23 If this ma consecutive with perfect exists in Akkadian, and fa in Arabic, it seems strange to invent a composite origin for Hebrew in order to explain a similar idiom.

Another “idiom” that creates some apparent inconsistencies in the minds of some Western observers is Hebrew’s rejection of Waw consecutive with a negated verb (cf. Gen. 41:30-31), also

---

20 Gordon, 69.
21 Gordon, 146.
22 Caplice, 41.
23 Wright, I, 291, § 366 A.
the rejection of an imperative form with a negated verb. However, the phenomenon is so universal, it cannot possibly be an inconsistency; it must be a regular part of Hebrew idiom.

26.5.4 Prominence Competition

Various linguistic features of a language compete for prominence. In places where a common feature may be expected, another feature may dominate, suppressing the normal use of the common feature. For example, in Jeremiah 22:26, a sequence of Waw consecutives with perfects anticipates that the last clause of the verse would also be Waw consecutive with perfect, particularly because the last event (death) is obviously subsequent to the others. However, the last clause uses Waw conjunctive with imperfect, an apparent inconsistency (Bauer). But in the last clause, prominence is given to “place” over “sequence.” The LORD emphasized the place of the king’s death (there, i.e., Babylon) rather than the obvious sequence of the event; so the adverb “there” was given first position prominence, eliminating the possibility of Waw consecutive which demands first position prominence for the verb. Therefore the verb assumed the imperfect aspect consistent with the non-consecutive idiom. Far from being an inconsistency, this is an excellent example of the dominance of a prominent feature.

26.5.5 Feature Dominance

It is more realistic to expect the various formal features of the Hebrew verb system to interact with linguistic features at the clause and discourse level, yielding to those features that have the greater dominance in a given context. No wholly consistent explanation of the Hebrew verb system can be expected apart from such considerations. This present work attempts to give proper attention to feature interaction.
Appendix Two
The Content of the Various Literary Types

This appendix contains the references to the various segments of the Hebrew Bible assigned to the indicated literary types.

I. Historical Narrative

Leviticus 8:1-10:7.
Esther 1:1-10:3.
II. Descriptive Details: How Things Were Done or What Things Were Like

Exodus 36:8-40:33
1 Kings 6:1-7:51
2 Chronicles 3:1-4:22
Ezekiel 1:1-28; 10:8-22

Tabernacle
Temple
Temple
Cherubs
Temple

III. Descriptive Lists

Exodus 6:14-27
13:1-15
33:1-49
Joshua 12:1-24
Ruth 4:18-22
2 Samuel 8:15-18
1 Kings 4:1-19
1 Chronicles 1:1-9:44
11:10-47
12:1-40
18:14-17
23:1-27:34
Ezra 2:1-70
8:1-14
10:18-44
Nehemiah 3:1-32
7:4-72
10:1-27
11:1-12:36
Ezekiel 47:13-48:35

Genealogy
Genealogy
spy list
Travel Itinerary
King list
Land boundaries
Genealogies
David’s mighty men
David’s army
David’s Administrators
same
Returned captives
Heads of families
Pagan wives
Builders of walls
Returned captives
Covenant signers
Various lists
Land boundaries

IV. Procedural: How to Do Something, Sacrificial, Etc.

Genesis 6:13-21;

Ark
Tabernacle
Content of Literary Types

Leviticus 1:1-7:38  Sacrifices
Numbers 5:1-8:26; 18:8-19:22  Ceremonies

V. Instructional: Hortatory, String of Commands

Exodus 29:1-46  Levitical duties
Numbers 3:5-13; 3:40-4:33; 18:1-7  Levite duties
33:50-56  Conquest instructions
34:1-15  Geographical boundaries
Deuteronomy 4:1-40  Worship commands

VI. Juridical: Commandments and Law Codes

Exodus 20:1-17  10 commandments
20:22-23:9; 23:10-19  Case laws
30:11-16  Sabbath and feasts
31:12-18; 35:1-3  Sabbath law
Leviticus 10:8-25:55; 27:1-34  Case laws
Deuteronomy 5:6-22  10 commandments
Joshua 20:1-9  Cities of refuge laws

VII. Predictive Prose

Hosea 3:1-5.
VIII. Expository Prose: Prayers, curses, etc.

   1 Kings 8:14-66.
   1 Chronicles 29:16-20.
   Jeremiah 32:16-25.
   Daniel 9:1-19

IX. Poetry: Expository

   Leviticus 26:1-46.
   Numbers 23:7-10, 18-24; 24:3-9, 15-25.
   2 Kings 19:21-34.
   Nehemiah 9:6-37.
   Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, Song of Solomon
   Lamentations.

X. Poetry: Prophetic

Amos 1:1-9:15.
Jonah 2:1-10.
Nahum 1:1-3:19.
Zechariah 1:5-6, 14-17; 3:6-10; 4:6-10; 7:8-11; 8:1-11:3; 13:7-14:15.
SELECTED

BIBLIOGRAPHY

OF BOOKS AND ARTICLES
BIBLIOGRAPHY

Printed Editions of the Hebrew Bibles


*Elementary Hebrew Grammars*


Bibliography


**Advanced Hebrew Grammars**


Hebrew Syntax


Hebrew-English Interlinear Texts


**Parsing Guides**


**Hebrew Lexicons**

**Student Lexicons**


**Comprehensive Hebrew Lexicons**


Bibliography


**Word-Study Books**


**Concordances**

*Hebrew Concordances*


**English Concordances**


**Books on Hebrew Accents**


**Critical Commentaries**


**Helpful Literature**


Miller, Cynthia L. ed., *The Verbless Clause in Biblical Hebrew*; Winona Lake, IN: Eisenbrauns, 1999


